

Cover Sheet
for
MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements and Guidance

Secretariat's Note

Points relevant to bycatch of cetaceans are found in many parts of the Marine Stewardship Council's revised [Fisheries Certification Requirements and Guidance](#) document. Examples are:

- Page 125: outlining how ETP (endangered, threatened or protected) species to be included in the assessments are assigned; this includes the CMS family, besides IUCN Red List, CITES etc.
- Pages 141-146: tables showing the scoring related to ETP species
- Page 204-205: table showing the requirements for management strategies for ETP species
- Page 418-419: Box GSA8 explaining the MSC intent on unwanted species and habitats, mainly relating to minimizing mortality
- Page 422-423: outlining considerations the assessment team should make regarding use of alternative measures, and listing ASCOBANS and CMS, among others, as international fora with information and/or expertise on reducing unwanted catches

The Secretariat suggests that a request be made to the Bycatch Working Group to advise whether the revised MSC assessment standards meet ASCOBANS' requirements. This would be covered by point 6 of the new ToR (Annex 9 of [AC21 Report](#)). The Bycatch Working group could be asked to report on this to AC22.

Marine Stewardship Council

MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements and Guidance



Version 2.0, 1st October, 2014

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Copyright Notice

The Marine Stewardship Council “MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements” and its content is copyright of “Marine Stewardship Council” - © “Marine Stewardship Council” 2014. All rights reserved.

The official language of this standard is English. The definitive version is maintained on the MSC’s website www.msc.org. Any discrepancy between copies, versions or translations shall be resolved by reference to the definitive English version.

The MSC prohibits any modification of part or all of the contents in any form

Marine Stewardship Council
Marine House
1 Snow Hill
London EC1A 2DH
United Kingdom

Phone: + 44 (0) 20 7246 8900

Fax: + 44 (0) 20 7246 8901

Email: standards@msc.org

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Responsibility for these Requirements

The Marine Stewardship Council is responsible for these Requirements.

Readers should verify that they are using the latest copy of this (and other documents). Updated documents, together with a master list of all available MSC documents, can be found on the MSC's website.

Versions issued

Version No.	Date	Description Of Amendment
Consultation Draft	17 January 2011	First publication of consolidated MSC scheme requirements, released for consultation.
0.0	7 March 2011	First draft of revisions following MSC and CAB consultations.
0.8	19 May 2011	Draft issued to the MSC Technical Advisory Board for final review and sign-off.
1.0	15 August 2011	First version issued for application by Conformity Assessment Bodies.
1.1	24 October 2011	Version issued incorporating revised Group CoC requirements and correcting typos, page numbering, wrong and missing referencing and unreadable flowcharts.
1.2	10 January 2012	Version issued incorporating TAB 20 agreed changes regarding reassessment, objections procedure, modifications to the default assessment tree to assess bivalves, implementation timeframes and ASC requirements. Minor edits, wrong and missing referencing, typos and unreadable Figures were corrected.
1.3	14 January 2013	Version issued incorporating TAB 21 and BoT agreed changes. Minor edits and clarifications were also incorporated.
2.0	1 October 2014	Version issued incorporating changes to the standard as a result of the fisheries standard review and changes to CABs procedures as a result of the speed and cost review...

Marine Stewardship Council

Vision

Our vision is of the world's oceans teeming with life, and seafood supplies safeguarded for this and future generations.

Mission

Our mission is to use our ecolabel and fishery certification programme to contribute to the health of the world's oceans by recognising and rewarding sustainable fishing practices, influencing the choices people make when buying seafood, and working with our partners to transform the seafood market to a sustainable basis.

Focus

We will:

- Collaborate with fishers, retailers, processors, consumers and others to drive change forward;
- Never compromise on the environmental standard we set, nor on our independence;
- Continue to lead the world in wild-capture fishery certification, with the most trusted, recognised and credible seafood ecolabel.

General Introduction

Fisheries certification

With international consultation with stakeholders, the MSC has developed standards for sustainable fishing and seafood traceability. They ensure that MSC-labelled seafood comes from, and can be traced back to, a sustainable fishery.

MSC standards and requirements meet global best practice guidelines for certification and ecolabelling programmes.

The MSC fisheries standard sets out requirements that a fishery must meet to enable it to claim that its fish come from a well-managed and sustainable source.

Throughout the world fisheries are using good management practices to safeguard jobs, secure fish stocks for the future and help protect the marine environment. The science-based MSC environmental standard for sustainable fishing offers fisheries a way to confirm sustainability, using a credible, independent third-party assessment process. It means sustainable fisheries can be recognised and rewarded in the marketplace, and gives an assurance to consumers that their seafood comes from a well-managed and sustainable source.

The MSC standard applies to wild-capture fisheries that meet the scope requirements provided in [section 7.4](#).

The MSC fisheries standard comprises three core principles:

Principle 1: Sustainable target fish stocks

A fishery must be conducted in a manner that does not lead to over-fishing or depletion of the exploited populations and, for those populations that are depleted, the fishery must be conducted in a manner that demonstrably leads to their recovery.

Principle 2: Environmental impact of fishing

Fishing operations should allow for the maintenance of the structure, productivity, function and diversity of the ecosystem (including habitat and associated dependent and ecologically related species) on which the fishery depends.

Principle 3: Effective management

The fishery is subject to an effective management system that respects local, national and international laws and standards and incorporates institutional and operational frameworks that require use of the resource to be responsible and sustainable.

Implementation timeframes

Effective date

Release date: 1st October 2014

Effective date: 1st April 2015

The implementation timelines are different for the process requirements and the standard requirements. Although these requirements are found in the same document, the MSC fisheries standards are located in the S-Annexes, while the process requirements are found in the main document of the FCR and the P-Annexes.

First full assessments that commence after the effective date shall be conducted in accordance with the new standard requirements in FCR v2.0 in addition to using the new processes, including the RBF (Annex PF).

All other assessment processes (including first assessments, surveillance audits, certificate extensions and reassessments) in existing fisheries (in assessment or certified before the effective date) that commence¹ after 1st April 2015 shall be conducted in accordance with the new process requirements in FCR v2.0, with the exception of the RBF requirements (Annex PF). Existing fisheries still using the standard requirements v1.3 shall apply the RBF requirements as published in CR v1.3 (Annex CC), unless variation is requested and granted to allow use of the RBF process in FCR 2.0 (Annex PF). Such request shall confirm how the differences between CR versions are to be allowed for and which sections of Annex PF shall be applied. 

Existing fisheries (in assessment or certified) shall apply the new standard requirements in addition to the RBF (Annex PF) at their first reassessment commencing after 1st October 2017.

Any fishery may elect to use the new process and standard requirements as of the publication date (1st October 2014) if they wish and CABs can confirm their readiness to apply.

Fisheries which entered full assessment prior to 10 March 2012 and which have not published their PCDR by 1 December 2014 shall apply FCR 7.3.

CABs shall use the same version of the FCR process for each full assessment (i.e., from the start of announcement of the fishery through to certification), and for each individual surveillance, except in cases where the assessments are delayed, as covered by FCR sections 7.3.3-4, and allowing for the special case of the RBF process, as outlined above.

Review

Sections of the FCR 1 to Annex PF cover the processes by which fisheries are assessed by CABs. Changes may be made to these documents annually.

Annex SA–SD are the MSC fisheries standard. Changes to these annexes will only be made as part of a standard review conducted in accordance with the ISEAL Standard Setting Code. The next review of the standard will be in 2019.

¹ Commencing: announcing a full assessment, reassessment, or surveillance audit of a fishery, entering a contract for a CoC audit

Fisheries Certification Requirements

MSC welcomes comments on the fisheries standards at any time. Comments will be incorporated into the next review process. Please submit comments by mail or email to contact details provided at the beginning of the document.

More information about the MSC policy development process and MSC standard setting procedure can be found on the [MSC Policy website](#) and [MSC website](#).

Introduction to this document

The set of sections comprising the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements consists of:

1. The MSC fisheries standard, which is composed of three core principles and has three associated modifications for use in different types of fishery (Annexes SA, SB, SC and SD).
2. Guidance to the MSC fisheries standards (Annexes GSA, GSB, GSC and GSD).
3. Sections 1-8 and process annexes (PA-PF).
4. Guidance to sections 1-8 and guidance to the process annexes (GPA-GPX).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The purposes of the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements are:

5. To establish consistent certification requirements to enable all conformity assessment bodies (CABs) to operate in a consistent and controlled manner;
6. To provide the transparency that is required of an international certification scheme for it to have credibility with potential stakeholders, including governments, international governmental bodies (e.g. regulatory bodies, fishery managers), CABs, suppliers of fish and fish products, non-governmental organisations and consumers;
7. To provide documentation designed to assure long-term continuity and consistency of the delivery of MSC certification.

Guidance

The Guidance to the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements (GFCR) has been produced to help CABs interpret the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements.

Guidance has been developed to:

- Provide clarification on questions asked by CABs;
- Address areas of concern to the MSC;
- Act as a training aid for both MSC and CAB staff,
- Detail processes that should be followed in special cases.

Guidance to the MSC fisheries standards has also been developed to:

- Confirm MSC's intent on specific aspects of the assessment requirements in Annex SA, to enable CABs to operate in a consistent and controlled manner;

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- Provide the transparency that is required of an international standard setting body for it to be credible with stakeholders, including governments, fishery managers, CABs, suppliers of fish and fish products, non-governmental organisations and consumers;
- Specify a system that ensures the MSC ecolabel on fish or fish products is a credible assurance that the fish is derived from a well-managed and sustainable fishery, as defined by the MSC's Principles and Criteria.

The headings and numbering in the guidance, when included, match those in the FCR exactly, with numbers prefaced with the letter "G" to indicate Guidance.

The MSC recommends that CABs read the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements in conjunction with the MSC Guidance to the Fisheries Certification Requirements (GFCR). Text from the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements is not repeated in the guidance document.

Where guidance is provided that generally relates to the subject of a major heading, or relates to the content of a specific clause, this icon  appears at the end of the title or clause, and if critical guidance is included, this icon  appears. These icons provide hyperlinks to the related guidance section.

Auditability

This guidance is not directly auditable. It is, however, expected that the critical guidance identified in this document will be followed by CABs where applicable unless there is a justification for not doing so. It is likely that this critical guidance would be referenced by the accreditation body in any non-conformity to related FCR clauses.

The presence of critical guidance is identified with this icon  and includes:

- **Special cases:** These relate to requirements that apply to a particular type of fishery, data or situation. For example, when assessing an LTL stock the species' role in the ecosystem should be considered in reference points.
- **Additional clarification** on how a clause in the FCR would usually be expected to be implemented. The use of different methods would need to be justified.

Critical guidance is identified within the guidance itself with a sidebar, as illustrated in this paragraph.

Within the guidance, this icon  provides a hyperlink back to the corresponding section or clause in the requirements.

Derogations

Derogations are indicated by a footnote including:

- a. The authority who made the decision on the derogation;
- b. The date or meeting number of the decision;
- c. The date on which the derogation came into force or expires; and
- d. A short description of the derogation.

A derogation indicates a measure which allows for all or part of the requirement to be applied differently, or not at all, to certain applicants or certificate holders.

Table of contents

MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements	13
1 Scope	13
2 Normative Documents	13
3 Terms and Definitions	14
4 General Requirements	14
4.1 Submission of reports, data and requests to MSC and publication of reports by MSC	14
4.2 Consultation requirements	14
4.3 Use of confidential information in fishery assessments	14
4.4 Access to information	15
4.5 Confidentiality agreements	15
5 Structural Requirements	16
6 Resource Requirements	16
7 Process Requirements	16
7.1 Pre-assessment	16
7.2 Application review	17
7.3 Assessment timelines	17
7.4 Confirmation of scope	18
7.5 Team selection	24
7.6 Determination of eligibility dates	24
7.7 Preparing for announcement	24
7.8 Announcement of Fishery Assessment	28
7.9 Site visit: Assessment visits, stakeholder consultation and information collection	29
7.10 Scoring the fishery	29
7.11 Setting conditions	32
7.12 Determination of the traceability systems and point(s) at which fish and fish products enter further Chains of Custody	34
7.13 Preliminary Draft Report for client review	35
7.14 Peer review and Peer Review Draft Report	36
7.15 Public Comment Draft Report	37
7.16 Determination	38
7.17 Final Report	39

Fisheries Certification Requirements

7.18	Objections procedure	39
7.19	Public Certification Report	39
7.20	Certification decision and certificate issue	40
7.21	Fisheries that fail or withdraw from assessment	40
7.22	Extension of scope of fishery certificate (Expedited Assessment)	41
7.23	Surveillance	42
7.24	Re-assessment	47
8	Management System Requirements for CABs	49
Annex PA:	Requirements for inseparable or practicably inseparable (IPI) stocks	50
PA1	Scope	50
PA2	Default Tree	50
PA3	Conditions	50
PA4	Entry into Further Chains of Custody	50
PA5	Surveillance	51
PA6	Re-Assessment	51
Annex PB	Harmonised fisheries – Normative	52
PB1	Scope	52
PB2	Assessment Tree	52
PB3	Harmonised Fishery Assessments for Overlapping Fisheries	52
Annex PC:	Fishery team leader, team member, team and peer reviewer qualifications and competencies	55
	Introduction	55
PC1	Fishery Team Leader Qualification and Competency Criteria	55
PC2	Fishery Team Member Qualification and Competency Criteria	57
PC3	Fishery Team Qualification and Competency Criteria	58
Annex PD:	Objections Procedure – Normative	61
PD1	Background	61
PD2	Objections Procedure	61
Annex PE:	Expedited assessment for extension of scope – Normative	72
PE1	Scope	72
PE2	Assessment Process	72
PE3	Reporting	73
PE4	Certification Decision and Certificate Issue	73
Annex PF:	Risk-Based Framework – Normative	74
PF1	Introduction to the Risk-Based Framework (RBF)	74
PF2	Stakeholder Involvement in RBF	75

Fisheries Certification Requirements

PF3	Conducting a Consequence Analysis (CA)	78
PF4	Conducting a Productivity Susceptibility Analysis (PSA)	81
PF5	Scoring the Fishery Using the RBF for PIs 1.1.1, 2.1.1, 2.2.1 and 2.3.1	87
PF6	Setting Conditions Using the RBF for Species PIs.....	89
PF7	Conducting a Consequence Spatial Analysis (CSA) ▣	89
PF8	Conducting a Scale Intensity Consequence Analysis (SICA)	101
Annex SA: The Default Assessment Tree – Normative.....		107
Scope ▣ 107		
SA1	General.....	107
SA2	Principle 1.....	108
SA3	Principle 2.....	124
SA4	Principle 3.....	159
Annex SB Modifications to the Default Tree for Enhanced Bivalve Fisheries – Normative ▣175		
SB1	General.....	175
SB2	Principle 1.....	175
SB3	Principle 2.....	179
SB4	Principle 3.....	182
Annex SC: Modifications to the Default Assessment Tree for Salmon Fisheries – Normative		183
SC1	General.....	183
SC1.1	General requirements	183
SC2	Principle 1.....	184
SC3	Principle 2.....	202
SC4	Principle 3.....	219
SC5	Weighting to be Applied in Enhanced Salmon Fisheries	227
SC6	Allowances for Inseparable or Practicably Inseparable (IPI) Catches in Salmon Fisheries.....	227
Annex SD: Introduced Species Based Fisheries (ISBF) – Normative ▣		229
SD1	General.....	229
SD2	Initial Requirements on Assessment Issues.....	229
SD3	Introduced Species as Non-target Species	230
SD4	Implementation of this Annex.....	230
Guidance to Implementation Timeframes ▲		234
Annex Guidance to MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements.....		295
Annex GPA Inseparable or practicably inseparable (IPI) Fisheries – Guidance		295
Annex GPB Harmonised fisheries – Guidance		296

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Annex GPC: Fishery Team Leader, Team Member, Team And Peer Reviewer Qualifications And Competencies – Guidance.....	300
Annex GPD: Objections Procedure ▲	301
Annex GPE: Expedited assessment for extension of scope ▲	302
Annex GPF: Risk-Based Framework – Guidance.....	303
Fishery Process Annex GPX - Guidance to CABs on Stakeholder Consultation – Informative	340
Annex GPXA – Sample Generic Interview Protocol	359
Annex GSA –	359
Annex GSB Modifications to the Default Tree for Enhanced Bivalve Fisheries – Guidance ▲ 468	468
Annex GSC Modifications to the Default Assessment Tree for Salmon Fisheries – Guidance ▲	479
Annex GSD: Introduced Species Based Fisheries (ISBF) –Guidance ▲	511
MSC-MSCI Vocabulary – Normative	515

Boxes

Box G1: MSC’s advice on allocating costs of certificate sharing	258
Box SA1: Species types that are defined by default as “key LTL stocks”	111
Box GSA1: Precautionary approach	367
Box GSA2: IUU fishing	368
Box GSA3: MSC intent on the achievement of MSY in P1	370
Box GSA4: Generation time	380
Box GSA5: Consideration of fishing mortality rate in MSC assessments	380
Box GSA6: Special management requirements for key Low Trophic Level stocks	382
Box GSA7: MSC Intent: “Ghost fishing” and impacts from gear loss	406
Box GSA8: MSC Intent on unwanted species and habitats	418
Box GSA9: Marine protected areas and other spatial management approaches	465

MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements

1 Scope

MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements are for CAB's use when assessing fisheries against the MSC's fisheries standard.

2 Normative Documents

The documents listed below contain provisions which, through reference in this text, become part of the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements.

For documents which specify a date or version number, earlier amendments or revisions of that document do not apply as a normative requirement. CABs are encouraged to review the most recent editions and any guidance documents available to gain further insight about how a document has changed, and to consider whether or not to implement latest changes.

For documents without dates or version numbers, the latest published edition of the document referred to applies unless otherwise stated in this document.

In addition, the normative documents listed in [MSC General Certification Requirements](#) Section 2 also apply to implementation of the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements.

- a. MSC Pre-Assessment Reporting Template;
- b. Annual Pre-Assessment Reporting Template;
- c. MSC Fishery Announcement Template;
- d. MSC Notification Report Form;
- e. MSC Client Document Checklist;
- f. Use of the RBF in a Fishery Assessment Form;
- g. MSC Fishery Assessment Scoring Worksheet (including special versions for enhanced bivalves and salmon);
- h. MSC RBF Worksheets (now including original PSA worksheet and other options);
- i. MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template (including special versions for enhanced bivalves and salmon);
- j. Template for Peer Review of MSC Fishery Assessments;
- k. MSC Surveillance Announcement Template;
- l. MSC Surveillance Reporting Template;
- m. MSC Surveillance Review of Information Template;
- n. MSC Reduced Re-assessment Reporting Template;
- o. MSC eCert Database User Manual for CABs;
- p. MSC Variation Request Form.

3 Terms and Definitions

All definitions are in the [MSC-MSCI Vocabulary](#).

Terms or phrases used in MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements that have more than one definition are defined within the text where such terms or phrases appear.

4 General Requirements

4.1 Submission of reports, data and requests to MSC and publication of reports by MSC

4.1.1 The CAB shall submit all information and data that are part of the fishery assessment and surveillance process through the MSC database, i.e., eCert.

4.2 Consultation requirements

4.2.1 The CAB shall hold stakeholder consultations so that the team becomes aware of all concerns of relevant stakeholders.

4.2.2 CABs shall send a copy of a consultation announcement to all identified stakeholders including the "[MSC Template for Stakeholder Input into Fishery Assessments](#)" no longer than 4 days after the start of each consultation period. 

4.2.2.1 CABs shall note that the MSC does not consider posting information on the MSC website and MSC email announcements as meeting the requirements set out in 4.2.2.

4.2.3 CABs shall acknowledge receipt of stakeholder comments during the assessment process within 10 days of receiving them.

4.2.3.1 CABs shall inform the sender how and when the CAB will address their comments.

4.2.4 Stakeholder comments may be received in a written or oral form.

4.2.5 Where the RBF is used to evaluate and score specified Performance Indicators (PIs), CABs shall carry out stakeholder consultation to gather data to inform the scoring in conformance with the requirements set out in [PF2.2 Stakeholder involvement](#) with the RBF.

4.2.6 Except where otherwise required, the CAB shall specify, in their consultation announcements, a deadline for the receipt of information or feedback from stakeholders of 5pm GMT on the last day of the consultation period. 

4.2.7 CABs may follow guidance to consultation provided in [Annex GPX](#).

4.3 Use of confidential information in fishery assessments

4.3.1 The CAB shall encourage stakeholders not to withhold information, including

Fisheries Certification Requirements

their concerns and knowledge about the fishery in question.

- 4.3.2 The CAB shall inform stakeholders that unless covered by 4.4.1 below any information that they cannot share with all stakeholders, even under a confidentiality agreement, shall not be:
 - 4.3.2.1 Referenced in the assessment.
 - 4.3.2.2 Used in determining the assessment outcome.
 - 4.3.2.3 Used as the basis for an objection to a certification.
- 4.3.3 The CAB shall ensure that information kept confidential is restricted to:
 - 4.3.3.1 Financial transactions about certification.
 - 4.3.3.2 The financial affairs of individual companies or information that may lead to this information being made public.
 - 4.3.3.3 Information that is the subject of relevant national privacy or data protection legislation in the client's country.
- 4.3.4 If the CAB wishes to use information that the owner requires to be kept confidential and that is additional to that specified in 4.3.3, the CAB shall submit a variation request from the requirements 4.3.3 to the MSC.
 - 4.3.4.1 If the variation request is accepted by the MSC, the CAB may use the information in its assessment.

4.4 Access to information

- 4.4.1 The CAB shall ensure that un-published key information, which is necessary for stakeholders to be able to properly review the logic used by the team to score a PI, are made available.
 - 4.4.1.1 The CAB shall make unpublished key information available before the posting of the Public Comment Draft Report, and shall ensure that the information is available throughout the subsequent stages of the assessment process until such time as a certification decision is made.
 - 4.4.1.2 The CAB shall note that unpublished information does not include peer-reviewed or grey literature.
 - 4.4.1.3 The CAB shall note that providing the information referred to in 4.4.1.2 is made available to stakeholders, this information does not have to be formally published in the public domain.

4.5 Confidentiality agreements

- 4.5.1 The owner of key information may require stakeholders sign confidentiality agreements before granting access to it. In these cases the CAB shall:
 - 4.5.1.1 Require those requesting access to key information to do so in writing.
 - 4.5.1.2 Ensure signed confidentiality agreements are in place before permitting access to the confidential information.
- 4.5.2 The CAB may use the key information in its assessment even if some or all stakeholders refuse to sign a confidentiality agreement.

5 Structural Requirements

- 5.1 There are no additional requirements additional to ISO 17065 and MSC General Requirements for CABs.

6 Resource Requirements

- 6.1. There are no additional requirements additional to ISO 17065 and MSC General Requirements.

7 Process Requirements

7.1 Pre-assessment

- 7.1.1 The pre-assessment is optional.
- 7.1.2 CABs shall have objectives for the pre-assessment that include:
- 7.1.2.1 Enabling CAB planning for a full assessment.
 - 7.1.2.2 Informing the client of the likelihood of achieving certification.
 - 7.1.2.3 Enabling client planning for the full assessment.
- 7.1.3 The CAB shall appoint an individual or team qualified in conformity with the requirements of [Table PC2](#) and any one of the qualifications and competencies listed in Rows 1-5 of [Table PC3](#), to conduct the pre-assessment evaluation.
- 7.1.4 CABs shall ensure that any guidance given to clients during pre-assessment is in conformity with ISO 17065.
- 7.1.5 The CAB shall include the following activities as part of the pre-assessment:
- 7.1.5.1 A meeting with the client.
 - 7.1.5.2 Decisions on potential field site visits, if required.
 - 7.1.5.3 An assessment of the extent to which the fishery is consistent with the MSC fisheries standard ([Annexes SA, SB, SC and SD](#)).
 - 7.1.5.4 An evaluation of the fishery's readiness for assessment.
 - 7.1.5.5 A review of the availability of data:
 - q. If data are not thought to be available, the CAB shall indicate likely use of the RBF ([Annex PF](#)).
 - 7.1.5.6 Defining the options for the scope of the full assessment (consistent with [section 7.4](#)).
 - 7.1.5.7 Describing potential obstacles or problems that may be a barrier to certification.
- 7.1.6 If the CAB conducts a pre-assessment, the report shall conform to the "MSC Pre-Assessment Reporting Template" found at: <http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- 7.1.6.1 CABs shall use the version of the MSC Pre-Assessment Reporting Template which was current at the time the Pre-Assessment report was prepared.
- 7.1.6.2 The CAB shall inform the client that some sections of the Pre-Assessment Reporting Template are mandatory and some optional. ☑
- 7.1.7 The CAB shall inform the client of the requirements for proceeding to a full assessment. This includes ensuring the client informs the CAB of: ☑
 - 7.1.7.1 Any actions known to be needed prior to a full assessment, or issues that may be a barrier to certification.
 - 7.1.7.2 Communications that may need to take place with management agencies, environment groups, post-harvest sectors, relevant commercial and non-commercial fishing groups to explain the MSC assessment process and the implications (including costs and benefits) of certification.
 - 7.1.7.3 The completion of the Client Document Checklist, identifying the type and extent of data and information that the client will need to make available for a full assessment (see checklist [here](#)). !!.
 - 7.1.7.4 The location, timing and form of any announcements to be made about the client's intention to proceed to full assessment.
 - 7.1.7.5 Whether the client would like to receive the optional MSC training material on the fishery assessment process for clients.
- 7.1.8 The CAB shall treat the existence, process and outcomes of the pre-assessment as confidential to the client, the CAB and MSC, unless otherwise directed by the client.
- 7.1.9 CABs shall provide the MSC with an annual report on the fishery pre-assessment reports they have provided to clients over the period 1st April to 31st March by the following 30th of April. ☑
 - 7.1.9.1 Annual reports shall be sent to the MSC standards email (standards@msc.org) as an attachment using the form "Annual PA Reporting Template".
 - 7.1.9.2 Where information relating to a specific MSC pre-assessment report has changed since a previous annual report submitted to MSC, CABs shall include an entry in the bottom section of the latest annual report giving the current status of these fisheries.
 - 7.1.9.3 The first annual report submitted shall include data for all previous MSC pre-assessment reports provided to clients irrespective of the year they were prepared.

7.2 Application review

- 7.2.1 No additional requirements additional to ISO 17065 and MSC General Certification Requirements.

7.3 Assessment timelines ☑

- 7.3.1 The CAB's indicative timeline, submitted with the fishery assessment

Fisheries Certification Requirements

announcement (7.8.2) shall form the basis for tracking the assessment process by stakeholders.

- 7.3.1.1 The CAB shall, within 10 days of a delay occurring, provide an updated timeline and explanation of the cause of the delay to the MSC for posting to the MSC website.
- 7.3.2 If the period from the full assessment announcement to the receipt of the Final Report by the MSC is more than 18 months, the CAB shall withdraw the fishery from the MSC assessment process.
- 7.3.3 If the period from the full assessment announcement to the first on-site assessment visit exceeds 4 months the CAB shall use the most recent version of the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements for the remainder of the assessment. 
- 7.3.4 If the period from full assessment announcement to the receipt of the Public Comment Draft Report by the MSC exceeds 9 months the CAB shall:
 - 7.3.4.1 Within 5 days of the 9 month deadline, provide the MSC with a statement for posting on the MSC website requesting, for a period of 30 days, stakeholder submission of any new information relating to the fishery that the team should consider in the assessment of the fishery.
 - 7.3.4.2 Directly notify stakeholders participating in the fishery assessment of the opportunity to submit new information relating to the fishery that the team should consider in the assessment of the fishery.
 - 7.3.4.3 Following the 30 day period within which stakeholders have the opportunity to submit new information
 - a. Review any new information provided.
 - b. Review the outcomes of any scoring of the fishery previously undertaken against the most recent version of the MSC Certification Requirements.
 - c. Assess new information following all steps from scoring the fishery (7.10) to peer review (7.14) against the most recent version of the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements.
 - i. The team may limit the scope of this assessment to the re-scoring of those PIs for which there is new information and for which the requirements have changed in the most recent version of the MSC Certification Requirements.

7.4 Confirmation of scope

Confirming that the fishery is within the scope of the MSC fisheries standard

- 7.4.1 The CAB shall verify that the fishery is eligible for certification through the following determinations: 
 - 7.4.1.1 The following taxa shall not be target species of the fishery under Principle 1:
 - a. Amphibians;
 - b. Reptiles;
 - c. Birds;

Fisheries Certification Requirements

d. Mammals.

7.4.1.2 The fishery shall not use poisons or explosives.

Controversial unilateral exemption to an international agreement

7.4.1.3 The fishery shall not be conducted under a controversial unilateral exemption to an international agreement.

a. CABs shall use these definitions to interpret this criterion:

- i. Controversial means creating a controversy in the wider international community rather than simply between two states.
- ii. Unilateral means arising from the action of a single state.
- iii. Exemption means a refusal to join or abide by the rules of an international management body, or the taking of a reservation or exception to a measure adopted by such body, when in either such case the effect is to undermine the sustainable management of the fishery.
- iv. International agreements are those with a direct mandate for sustainable management of the resources affected by the fishery according to the outcomes expressed by Principles 1 and 2.

b. When verifying fishery conformity with this criterion, CABs shall take into consideration:

- i. The relationship between international and coastal state jurisdictions recognised by relevant international agreements.
- ii. Whether exemptions result in the implementation of a higher or lower level of conservation than are currently agreed by an international management body.
- iii. In all cases, the important point is whether the sustainable management of the fishery is undermined.

7.4.1.4 The client or client group shall not include an entity that has been successfully prosecuted for a forced labour violation in the last 2 years.

a. If an entity that belongs to a certified client group is successfully prosecuted for violations of laws on forced labour, such entity shall be considered as having become out of scope and shall be withdrawn from the certificate or client group.

Controversy – disputes in fisheries

7.4.2 A fishery shall not be eligible for certification if there is no mechanism for resolving disputes, or if the disputes overwhelm the fishery. 

7.4.2.1 If a fishery applying for certification is the subject of controversy and/or dispute at any time during the assessment process or certification cycle, the CAB shall consider:

- a. If the fisheries management regime (national or international system or plan) includes a mechanism for resolving disputes.
- b. If there is a mechanism for resolving disputes, whether that mechanism is adequate to deal with potential or existing disputes. (e.g. do stakeholders have access to the mechanism for resolving disputes and is there sufficient scope to cover the relevant issues).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- c. If disputes overwhelm the fishery enough to prevent it from meeting the MSC's fisheries standard.

7.4.2.2 The CAB shall decline the application where it judges 7.4.2 applies.

Enhanced fisheries

7.4.3 Using the criteria in [Table 1](#) the CAB shall determine if the fishery is an enhanced fishery. 

7.4.3.1 An enhanced fishery shall only be eligible for assessment if it conforms to all of the scope criteria.

Table 1: Scope criteria for enhanced fisheries

A	Linkages to and maintenance of a wild stock
i	At some point in the production process, the system relies upon the capture of fish from the wild environment . Such fish may be taken at any stage of the life cycle including eggs, larvae, juveniles or adults. The 'wild environment' in this context includes marine, freshwater and any other aquatic ecosystems.
ii	The species are native to the geographic region of the fishery and the natural production areas from which the fishery's catch originates unless MSC has accepted a variation request to include introduced species for the pilot phase.
iii	There are natural reproductive components of the stock from which the fishery's catch originates that maintain themselves without having to be restocked every year.
iv	Where fish stocking is used in hatch-and-catch (HAC) systems, such stocking does not form a major part of a current rebuilding plan for depleted stocks. Note: This requirement shall apply to the "current" status of the fishery. Wild stocks shall be managed by other conventional means. If rebuilding has been done by stocking in the past, it shall not result in an out-of-scope determination as long as other measures are now in place.
B	Linkages to and maintenance of a wild stock
i	The production system operates without substantial augmentation of food supply . In HAC systems, any feeding is used only to grow the animals to a small size prior to release (not more than 10% of the average adult maximum weight), such that most of the total growth (not less than 90%) is achieved during the wild phase. In catch-and-grow (CAG) systems, feeding during the captive phase is only by natural means (e.g. filter feeding in mussels), or at a level and duration that provide only for the maintenance of condition (e.g. crustacean in holding tanks) rather than to achieve growth.
ii	In CAG systems, production during the captive phase does not routinely require disease prevention involving chemicals or compounds with medicinal prophylactic properties.
C	Habitat and ecosystem impacts
i	Any modifications to the habitat of the stock are reversible and do not cause serious or irreversible harm to the natural ecosystem's structure and function. Note: Habitat modifications that are not reversible, are already in place and are not created specifically for the fishery shall be in scope. This includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large-scale artificial reefs. • Structures associated with enhancement activities that do not cause irreversible harm to the natural ecosystem inhabited by the stock, such as salmon fry farms next to river systems.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Introduced Species Based Fisheries (ISBF)

- 7.4.4 A CAB shall only accept an application for certification from a fishery on an introduced species if it meets the scope criteria contained in [Table 2](#).

Table 2: Provisional scope criteria for ISBF

A	Irreversibility of the introduction in the new location
i	The introduced species has a large population size (comparable to or larger than the population sizes of other native species occupying similar ecological niches in the new location).
ii	The species has spread to a range beyond that of its initial introduction in the new location.
iii	There is evidence to demonstrate that the species cannot be eradicated from the location by known mechanisms without serious ecological, economic and/or social consequences.
B	History of the introduction
i	The species was introduced to the new location prior to 1993; this being the year that the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), which includes provisions on introduced species was ratified.
ii	If the introduction occurred after the CBD was ratified such fisheries shall only potentially be in scope if the introduction was non-deliberate and occurred at least 20 years prior to the date the application is made for assessment against the MSC standard.
C	No further introductions
i	There is no continuing introduction of the introduced species being considered for certification to the location (i.e., the species is now entirely self-sustaining in its new location).

- 7.4.4.1 If the fishery is based upon an introduced species, the CAB shall follow the necessary steps in Annex SD.

- 7.4.4.2 CABs shall note that the requirements for ISBF are part of a pilot programme and may be subject to change.

- 7.4.5 During the assessment, the CAB shall withdraw the fishery from assessment if it does not continue to meet scope requirements of [7.4.1–7.4.4](#).

Defining the unit of assessment and unit of certification ■

- 7.4.6 After receiving an application for certification, the CAB shall review all pre-assessment reports about the fishery and other information that is available to it, and shall determine the unit of assessment required.

- 7.4.7 The CAB shall confirm the proposed unit of assessment (UoA) (i.e., what is to be assessed) to include: ■

- 7.4.7.1 The target stock(s),

- 7.4.7.2 The fishing method or gear type/s, vessel type/s and/or practices, and

- 7.4.7.3 The fishing fleets or groups of vessels, or individual fishing operators

Fisheries Certification Requirements

pursuing that stock, including any other eligible fishers that are outside the unit of certification.

- 7.4.8 The CAB shall confirm the proposed unit of certification (UoC) (i.e., what is to be covered by the certificate) to include: ☐
- 7.4.8.1 The target stock(s),
 - 7.4.8.2 The fishing method or gear type/s, vessel type/s and/or practices, and
 - 7.4.8.3 The fishing fleets or groups of vessels or individual fishing operators pursuing that stock including those client group members initially intended to be covered by the certificate.
- 7.4.9 The UoA and UoC shall not be defined based on the species caught as determined at the time of fishing, where the objective is simply to exclude certain hauls from the assessment. ☐
- 7.4.10 The CAB shall not change the UoA and UoC during the assessment unless: ☐
- 7.4.10.1 The UoA is announced provisionally in the initial announcement and confirmed later in conformance with 7.10.2.
- 7.4.11 The CAB shall undertake an initial review of key traceability factors and shall document whether any of the following risks are applicable: ☐
- a. The possibility of non-certified gears being used within the UoC.
 - b. The possibility of vessels from the UoC fishing outside the unit of certification or in different geographical areas (on the same trips or different trips).
 - c. The possibility of vessels from outside the UoC or client group fishing the same stock.
 - d. Any other risks of substitution between fish from the UoC and fish from outside this unit.
- 7.4.11.1 Potential traceability risks found during the initial review are to be included in the Chain of Custody section in the notification report.
 - 7.4.11.2 The CAB shall notify the fishery of its obligations to meet traceability requirements before it sells product as certified or under-assessment including that: ☐
 - a. Systems are in place to ensure that fish and fish products from the UoC are traceable back to the UoC.
 - b. Systems are in place to ensure that fish and fish products from the UoC shall be segregated from any products not included in the UoC.

Other eligible fishers and entities and certificate sharing

- 7.4.12 The CAB shall identify if there are other eligible fishers or other entities that may share the certificate as new client group members. ☐
- 7.4.12.1 Fishers or other entities not identified as part of the UoA or the client group members shall not be eligible to gain access to the certification later unless they conform to the requirements of 7.22.3.
 - 7.4.12.2 If there are other eligible fishers or other potential client group members within the UoA, the CAB shall require the client to:
 - a. Prepare and publish a statement of their understanding and willingness for reasonable certificate sharing arrangements.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- b. Inform other eligible fishers and/or other entities of the public statement and of the opportunity to share the certificate during relevant interactions with the eligible fishers and other entities as is practicable.

Inseparable or practicably inseparable catches

- 7.4.13 The CAB shall identify if there are catches of non-target (P2) stock(s) that are inseparable or practicably inseparable (IPI) from target (P1) stock(s). [☐](#)
- 7.4.13.1 The CAB shall only recognise stock(s) as being an IPI stock, where the inseparability arises because either:
- a. The non-target catch is practicably indistinguishable during normal fishing operations (i.e., the catch is from a stock of the same species or a closely related species); or
 - b. When distinguishable, it is not commercially feasible to separate due to the practical operation of the fishery that would require significant modification to existing harvesting and processing methods.
- And:
- c. The total combined proportion of catches from the IPI stock(s) do not exceed 15% by weight of the total combined catches of target and IPI stock(s) for the UoA;
 - d. The stocks are not ETP species; and
 - e. The stocks are not certified separately.
- 7.4.14 If IPI stocks are identified and are below the level of 15% specified in 7.4.13.1.c, the CAB shall, as early as practicable in the assessment process and following the variation request procedure set out in section 4.12 of the [GCR](#), submit a variation request to the requirements section 7.4 to the MSC to either:
- 7.4.14.1 Allow fish or fish products to be considered as coming from IPI stocks to enter into chains of custody subject to [Annex PA](#).
- a. The variation request to allow fish or fish products to be considered as coming from IPI stocks to enter into chains of custody shall include a detailed and substantiated rationale of how the catches under consideration fulfil the requirements of 7.4.14.1 above.
 - b. If this variation request is accepted, the requirements for IPI stocks in [Annex PA](#) shall apply.
- 7.4.14.2 Allow fish or fish products considered as coming from IPI stocks to enter chains of custody, with an exemption to the additional assessment requirements for IPI stocks given in [PA4.2](#).
- a. The variation request to allow an exemption to requirements for IPI stocks shall include a detailed and substantiated rationale showing that, in addition to [7.4.13.1](#):
 - i. The catch proportion of IPI stocks calculated in 7.4.13.1.c is less than or equal to 2% and the total catch of IPI stock(s) by the UoA does not create a significant impact on the IPI stock(s) as a whole.
 - ii. CABs shall note that significance will be assessed on basis of the status of the IPI stock, and the risk that the IPI catch poses to the health of the IPI stock.
- 7.4.15 The CAB shall use the evaluation against the requirements specified in [7.4.13](#) -

Fisheries Certification Requirements

7.4.14 above to determine the eligibility of catches of IPI stock(s) to enter further certified chains of custody. This evaluation shall not influence the final determination.

Overlapping fisheries

- 7.4.16 The CAB shall determine if the assessment of the applicant fishery will result in an assessment of overlapping fisheries.
 - 7.4.16.1 If the assessment is based on overlapping fisheries, the CAB shall follow the necessary steps for harmonisation in [Annex PB](#).

7.5 Team selection

- 7.5.1 The CAB shall announce a team for a fisheries assessment comprising a team leader and a minimum of one additional team member who meets the qualifications and competency requirements specified in Tables PC1, PC2 and PC3 in Annex PC and in line with the requirements in the General Certification Requirements (GCR).
- 7.5.2 If the CAB is to use the Risk Based Framework (RBF) ([Annex PF](#)), at least one team member shall have received training that has been approved by the MSC in the use of the RBF as detailed in Table PC3 in [Annex PC](#).
- 7.5.3 If events outside the CAB's control mean that team membership must change during an assessment, the CAB shall announce the new team members to stakeholders.

7.6 Determination of eligibility dates

- 7.6.1 The CAB shall nominate a date from which product from a certified fishery is eligible to be sold as MSC certified or bear the MSC ecolabel (the eligibility date). This shall be either: 
 - 7.6.1.1 The date of the certification of the fishery; or
 - 7.6.1.2 The publication date of the first Public Comment Draft Report.
- 7.6.2 If the eligibility date is set before the certification date, the CAB shall inform the fishery that any fish harvested after the eligibility date and sold or stored as under-assessment fish shall be handled in conformity with relevant under-assessment product requirements in the [MSC Chain of Custody standard](#).

7.7 Preparing for announcement

- 7.7.1 CABs shall use the structure and the default set of PISGs in the default tree as set out in Annex SA in all assessments with the following exceptions:
 - 7.7.1.1 For enhanced bivalve fisheries, CABs shall score the fishery according to the requirements set out in the enhanced bivalve default tree ([Annex SB](#)).
 - 7.7.1.2 For salmon fisheries, CABs shall score the fishery according to the requirements set out in the salmon default tree ([Annex SC](#)).
 - 7.7.1.3 If the fishery is an enhanced fishery for a species other than bivalves or

Fisheries Certification Requirements

salmon, CABs shall apply paragraph 7.7.4 below.

- 7.7.1.4 If the CAB judges that the default assessment trees provided are inappropriate for the fishery and require modification, it shall follow paragraph 7.8.5. ☐

Fishery that has failed or withdrawn from assessment ☐

- 7.7.2 If the scope of the fishery contains a fishery that has failed or withdrawn assessment:
- 7.7.2.1 The CAB shall follow the version of the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements in place at the time of the re-assessment.
- 7.7.2.2 The CAB may not require the client to submit a revised [Client Document Checklist](#).

Fishery with IPI stocks

- 7.7.3 Where there are IPI stocks within the scope of certification the team shall apply [Annex PA](#).

Fishery with enhanced stock ☐

- 7.7.4 If the scope of the fishery contains an enhanced fishery that is not covered in Annexes SB and SC:
- 7.7.4.1 The CAB shall review and if necessary modify the default tree taking into account the PIs required to assess the enhancements. The CAB shall assess:
- a. Enhancement activities against the impacts on the natural reproductive component of the associated wild stock
 - b. The extent of translocation against: ☐
 - i. The effect on the natural genetic characteristics of the stock
 - ii. The environmental impacts of translocation
 - c. Environmental modification activities under the P2 assessment for their impacts on other species or the wild environment. The CAB shall consider environmental impacts, including: ☐
 - i. Feed augmentation.
 - ii. The use of medicines or other chemical compounds.
 - iii. Fertilisation to enhance natural food availability.
 - iv. Removal of predators or competitors.
 - d. The impacts of habitat modification under the habitats and ecosystems components in P2. The CAB shall consider environmental impacts including: ☐
 - i. If serious or irreversible harm may be caused to the natural ecosystem's structure and function, including the natural food chains of predator and/or prey species.
 - ii. The types and extent of habitat modifications and the possibility of these causing serious or irreversible impacts.
- 7.7.4.2 The CAB shall note that:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- a. The MSC may require additional consultation with other CABs developing performance assessment guidance for similar fisheries.
- b. In cases where the CAB's proposed modifications to the default tree for an enhanced fishery are later found by the MSC to produce a determination and/or conditions that do not conform to MSC requirements:
 - i. The CAB shall review and, if necessary, revise its assessment and scoring to conform to the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements.
 - ii. The timing of the review and revisions shall be at the discretion of the MSC, and may include a requirement for an expedited audit.
 - iii. The process shall be sufficient to ensure the continued validity of the determination taking account of MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements.

7.7.4.3 If the CAB decides that the tree requires modification it shall follow paragraph 7.8.5.

Harmonisation of overlapping fisheries

7.7.5 If the scope of the fishery contains a fishery that overlaps with another certified or applicant fishery, Annex PB shall be applied.

Use of risk based methods for a data-deficient fishery

7.7.6 The CAB shall use the criteria in Table 3 to make a decision on whether a fishery may or may not be data-deficient with respect to one or more PI. ■

- 7.7.6.1 A PI may contain both data-deficient and non-data-deficient scoring elements.
- 7.7.6.2 The CAB shall use the criteria in Table 3 to make a decision on whether a particular scoring element may or may not be data-deficient.
- 7.7.6.3 The criteria in Table 3 shall be applied to all known scoring elements in P1 and P2. ■
- 7.7.6.4 Uncertainties in the stock definition or stock assessment models shall not be used as a rationale for using Annex PF in cases where some form of indicators and reference points are available for the fishery. ■
- 7.7.6.5 If the decision is taken that a fishery is data-deficient with respect to one or more PI, the team may use Annex PF to score it.
- 7.7.6.6 If a PI contains both data-deficient and non-data-deficient scoring elements, the CAB shall:
 - a. Use Annex PF to assess data-deficient scoring elements
 - b. Score non-data-deficient scoring elements using the tree announced in the assessment.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table 3: Criteria for triggering the use of the RBF

Performance Indicator	Criteria	Consideration	Notes
1.1.1 Stock status	Stock status reference points are available, derived either from analytical stock assessment or using empirical approaches	Yes	Use default PISGs within Annex SA for this PI
		No	Use Annex PF (RBF) for this PI
2.1.1 Primary species outcome & 2.2.1 Secondary species outcome	Stock status reference points are available, derived either from analytical stock assessment or using empirical approaches	Yes	Use default PISGs within Annex SA for this PI
		No	Use Annex PF (RBF) for this PI
2.3.1 ETP species outcome (where there are no national requirements for protection and rebuilding)	Can the impact of the fishery in assessment on ETP species be analytically determined?	Yes	Use default PISGs within Annex SA for this PI
		No	Use Annex PF (RBF) for this PI
2.4.1 Habitats outcome	Are both of the following applicable: 1 Information on habitats encountered is available 2 Information of impact of fishery on habitats encountered is available	Yes	Use default PISGs within Annex SA for this PI
		No	Use Annex PF (RBF) for this PI
2.5.1 Ecosystem outcome	Is information available to support an analysis of the impact of the fishery on the ecosystem?	Yes	Use default PISGs within Annex SA for this PI
		No	Use Annex PF(RBF) for this PI

Weighting

- 7.7.7 The team shall use the default weighting contained within the “MSC Fishery Assessment Scoring Worksheet” when using the default tree.
 - 7.7.7.1 Where necessary, the team shall make changes to the default weighting when they propose changes to the default tree.
- 7.7.8 Weights in each level of the final tree (i.e., Principle, component or PI) shall add up to a total sum of 1.
 - 7.7.8.1 Teams shall give equal weighting to each PI within a component of the tree, and to each component within a Principle of the tree.

7.8 Announcement of Fishery Assessment

- 7.8.1 Prior to announcement the CAB shall obtain from the client a completed Client Document Checklist.
- 7.8.2 The CAB shall formally announce the fishery assessment by completing and submitting the MSC Fishery Announcement Template (available in the [MSC website](#)) for posting on the MSC website.
- 7.8.3 The announcement shall contain the following information: **!!**
 - 7.8.3.1 Confirmation that the fishery is within scope of the MSC standard.
 - 7.8.3.2 An indicative timetable.
 - 7.8.3.3 The statement on certificate sharing described in [7.4.13](#), if applicable.
 - 7.8.3.4 The names and CVs of the team and team leader, an explanation of how they meet the competency criteria in [Annex PC](#) and confirmation that the team has no conflicts of interest in relation to the fishery under assessment.
 - 7.8.3.5 The choice of assessment tree to be used to score the fishery, and whether it requires modification or not. 
- 7.8.4 If a default assessment tree is to be used, the announcement of the fishery assessment shall include the announcement of the site visit, including the date and location of the site visit.
 - 7.8.4.1 The site visit shall commence no earlier than 30 days from the date posting the announcement on the MSC website. **!!**
 - 7.8.4.2 The announcement shall contain an invitation for stakeholder participation in the assessment process.
 - 7.8.4.3 CABs shall additionally ensure that those stakeholders identified in the pre-assessment report are invited to participate in the assessment process.
 - 7.8.4.4 Where the CAB proposes to use the RBF (Annex PF) [PF2.1](#) and [PF2.3](#) shall additionally be followed.
- 7.8.5 If the CAB decides that any of the default trees needs modification the CAB shall: **!!**
 - 7.8.5.1 Apply and obtain a variation from the MSC to FCR [7.7.1](#).
 - 7.8.5.2 Inform stakeholders in the '[Announcement of Fishery Assessment Template](#)' by posting a notice on the MSC website about the draft tree and the reasons for modifications to the default tree.
 - a. The CAB may announce the site visit, following [7.8.4](#), in this announcement taking account of the additional time needed to finalise the assessment tree to be used.
 - 7.8.5.3 Submit the draft tree to MSC for posting on the website.
 - 7.8.5.4 Allow at least 30 days from the date of posting on the MSC website for comment on the draft tree.
 - 7.8.5.5 Consider all stakeholder comments, recording why comments have been accepted or rejected.
 - 7.8.5.6 Review the decision to modify the default tree in light of those comments.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- 7.8.5.7 Confirm the final tree to be used to stakeholders within 10 days of the consultation period closing.
- 7.8.5.8 Proceed to announce the site visit (7.8.4).
- 7.8.5.9 Re-publish the assessment timelines.
- 7.8.5.10 Include the changes to the default tree in the Public Comment Draft Report, and all related fishery assessment reports.
- 7.8.6 CABs shall distribute the “[MSC Template for Stakeholder Input into Fishery Assessments](#)” to all identified stakeholders at the same time as the announcement that the fishery is entering assessment.
- 7.8.7 At the same time as providing documents for publication required in 7.8.2–7.8.3, the CAB shall give the MSC:
 - 7.8.7.1 A completed copy of the “[MSC Notification Report Form](#)”.
 - 7.8.7.2 A copy of the [Client Document Checklist](#).
 - 7.8.7.3 If the fishery is enhanced and is found to be within scope, an assessment of each enhancement activity undertaken by the fishery and a documented rationale for the determination that the fishery is within scope.
- 7.8.8 The CAB shall give the MSC a copy of any pre-assessment report(s) it has written for the fishery. 
 - 7.8.8.1 If the CAB is aware of any other pre-assessment report(s) written by other parties it shall inform the MSC of the report’s author.

7.9 Site visit: Assessment visits, stakeholder consultation and information collection

- 7.9.1 The team shall carry out the on-site assessment as planned. The team shall: 
 - 7.9.1.1 Conduct stakeholder interviews to make sure that the team is aware of any concerns or information that stakeholders may have.
 - a. The team shall allow private interviews with the team for stakeholders who request one.
 - b. The team shall use any information provided in private in conformity with the confidentiality requirements in 4.4.
 - c. If stakeholders do not wish or are not able to be interviewed, the team shall inform them that they may send written information to the team.

7.10 Scoring the fishery

- 7.10.1 After the team has compiled and analysed all relevant information (including technical, written and anecdotal sources), they shall score the UoA against the Performance Indicator Scoring Guideposts (PISGs) in the final tree. The team shall: 
 - 7.10.1.1 Discuss evidence together.
 - 7.10.1.2 Weigh up the balance of evidence.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- 7.10.1.3 Use their judgement to agree a final score following the processes below.
- 7.10.2 Following the site visit, changes to the target stocks listed for assessment under Principle 1 may be made.
- 7.10.2.1 The team shall assess any stock or species initially proposed for assessment under Principle 1 (7.4.8), that will no longer be assessed under P1, instead against the relevant P2 PIs.
- 7.10.2.2 The team shall not assess any stock not originally proposed as P1 species in P1.
- 7.10.2.3 The requirements in the SGs shall be regarded as follows:
- a. In order to achieve an 80 score, all of the 60 scoring issues and all of the 80 issues shall be met, and each scoring issue shall be justified by supporting rationale.
 - b. In order to achieve a 100 score, all of the 60 issues, all of the 80 issues, and all of the 100 issues shall be met, and each scoring issue shall be justified by supporting rationale.
- 7.10.3 The team should assign scores for individual PIs in increments of five points. 🟦
- 7.10.3.1 If scores are assigned in divisions of less than five points, the team shall justify the reason for this in the report. 🟦
- 7.10.4 Scores for each of the three Principles shall be reported to the nearest one decimal place.
- 7.10.5 The team shall score individual PIs.
- 7.10.5.1 The team shall assess the PI against each of the scoring issues at the SG60 level.
- a. If one or more of the SG60 scoring issues is not met, the UoA fails, and no further scoring is required for the PI.
 - i. Teams shall not assign a numeric score of less than 60 for a PI, but they shall record in narrative form their rationale for determining that the PI is scoring less than 60.
 - ii. A UoA for which one or more PIs is not scored shall not be awarded certification.
- 7.10.5.2 If all of the SG60 scoring issues are met, the PI must achieve at least a 60 score, and the team shall assess each of the scoring issues at the SG80 level. 🟠
- a. If not all of the SG80 scoring issues are met, the PI shall be given an intermediate score (65, 70 or 75) reflecting overall performance against the different SG80 scoring issues:
 - i. Award 70 where performance against the scoring issues is mid-way between SG60 and SG80 (some scoring issues are fully met, and some are not fully met); and
 - ii. Award 75 when performance against the scoring issues is almost at SG80 (most scoring issues are fully met, but a few are not fully met); and
 - iii. Award 65 when performance against the scoring issues is slightly above SG60 (a few scoring issues are fully met, but most are not fully met).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- b. If one or more of the SG80 scoring issues is not met, the PI shall be assigned a condition (or conditions).
- 7.10.5.3 If all of the SG80 scoring issues are met, the PI must achieve at least an 80 score, and the team shall assess each of the scoring issues at the SG100 level.
- a. If not all of the SG100 scoring issues are met, the PI shall be given an intermediate score (85, 90 or 95) reflecting overall performance against the different SG100 scoring issues.
 - i. Award 90 where performance against the scoring issues is mid-way between SG80 and SG100 (some scoring issues are fully met, and some are not fully met); and
 - ii. Award 95 when performance against the scoring issues is almost at SG100 (most scoring issues are fully met, but a few are not fully met); and
 - iii. Award 85 when performance against the scoring issues is slightly above SG80 (a few scoring issues are fully met, but most are not fully met).
 - iv. If all of the SG100 scoring issues are met, the PI shall be given a 100 score.
- 7.10.6 To contribute to the scoring of any PI, the team shall verify that each scoring issue is fully and unambiguously met.
- 7.10.6.1 A rationale shall be presented to support the team's conclusion. 
 - 7.10.6.2 The rationale shall make direct reference to every scoring issue and whether or not it is fully met.
 - 7.10.6.3 An exception to 7.10.6.2 is permitted only for those PIs that include only a single scoring issue at each SG level.
 - a. For these PIs, it is permitted to 'partially score' issues to obtain intermediate scores.
 - b. A rationale shall be provided, clearly explaining which aspects of the scoring issue are met.
- 7.10.7 In Principle 1 or 2, the team shall score PIs comprised of differing scoring elements (species or habitats) that comprise part of a component affected by the UoA. 
- 7.10.7.1 If any single scoring element fails to meet SG80, the overall score for that element shall be less than 80 so that a condition is raised, regardless of the situation with regard to other elements, some of which may be at the SG100 level.
 - 7.10.7.2 The score given shall reflect the number of elements that fail and the level of their failure rather than being derived directly as a numerical average of the individual scores for all elements (which might well raise the average score for a PI above 80 if one element scores 100 even when one element is given a condition).
 - 7.10.7.3 Scores should be determined for each scoring element by applying the process in section 7.10.5 to each scoring element.
 - 7.10.7.4 [Table 4](#) shall be used to determine the overall score for the PI from the scores of the different scoring elements.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- 7.10.7.5 Where some scoring elements have been scored using the RBF, the converted MSC score shall be treated as an individual scoring element score when combining element scores in [Table 4](#). 

Table 4: Combining element scores

Score	Combination of individual scoring elements
<60	Any scoring element within a PI which fails to reach SG60 shall not be assigned a score. Teams shall record their rationale in narrative form for the PI rather than assigning actual scores of less than 60.
60	All elements meet SG60 and only SG60.
65	All elements meet SG60; a few achieve higher performance, at or exceeding SG80, but most do not meet SG80.
70	All elements meet SG60; some achieve higher performance, at or exceeding SG80, but some do not meet SG80 and require intervention action to make sure they get there.
75	All elements meet SG60; most achieve higher performance, at or exceeding SG80; only a few fail to achieve SG80 and require intervention action.
80	All elements meet SG80.
85	All elements meet SG80; a few achieve higher performance, but most do not meet SG100.
90	All elements meet SG80; some achieve higher performance at SG100, but some do not.
95	All elements meet SG80; most achieve higher performance at SG100, and only a few fail to achieve SG100.
100	All elements meet SG100.

- 7.10.8 The team should modify these scores where appropriate:
- 7.10.8.1 Downwards by the scores falling between two SGs obtained by the individual elements that fail to meet an upper SG level.
 - 7.10.8.2 Upwards by the scores falling between two SGs obtained by the individual elements that exceed an upper SG level.
 - 7.10.8.3 Upwards change should never rise as high as 80 if the team judges that a condition is required.
- 7.10.9 The CAB shall not certify a UoA if the weighted average score for all PIs under each Principle is less than 80 for any of the three Principles.
- 7.10.10 The CAB shall not certify a UoA if any individual scoring issue is not met at the SG60 level, contributing to a score of less than 60 on any PI.

7.11 **Setting conditions**

- 7.11.1 The CAB shall set one or more auditable and verifiable conditions for continuing certification if the UoA achieves a score of less than 80 but equal to or greater than 60 for any individual PI. 

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- 7.11.1.1 The CAB shall ensure that every PI that receives a score of less than 80 has its own distinct condition associated with it.
- 7.11.1.2 The CAB shall draft conditions to follow the narrative or metric form of the PISGs used in the final tree.
- 7.11.1.3 The CAB shall draft conditions to result in improved performance to at least the 80 level within a period set by the CAB but no longer than the term of the certification unless:
 - a. There are exceptional circumstances, and the CAB determines that achieving a performance level of 80 may take longer than the period of certification. 
 - i. The CAB shall interpret exceptional circumstances in 7.11.1.3.a to refer to situations in which, even with perfect implementation, achieving the 80 level of performance may take longer than the certification period.
 - ii. In exceptional circumstances, the CAB shall specify conditions that spell out:
 - A The significant and measurable improvements (in terms of milestones or outcomes) that must be achieved and the score that must be reached during the certification period and at the end of the certification period.
 - B What constitutes a successful overall outcome to achieve the 80 performance level over a longer, specified time period.
- 7.11.1.4 The CAB shall draft conditions to specify milestones that spell out:
 - a. The measurable improvements and outcomes (using quantitative metrics) expected each year.
 - b. The specific timeframes over which the milestones and the whole condition must be met.
 - c. The outcome and score that shall be achieved at any interim milestones.
- 7.11.1.5 The CAB shall create a schedule of conditions stating the action(s) to be taken within a specified timeframe.
- 7.11.2 The CAB shall require the client to prepare a “client action plan” that includes:
 - 7.11.2.1 How the conditions and milestones will be addressed.
 - 7.11.2.2 Who will address the conditions.
 - 7.11.2.3 The specified time period within which the conditions and milestones will be addressed.
 - 7.11.2.4 How the action(s) is expected to improve the performance of the UoA.
 - 7.11.2.5 How the CAB will assess outcomes and milestones in each subsequent surveillance or assessment.
 - 7.11.2.6 How progress to meeting conditions will be shown to CABs.
- 7.11.3 The CAB shall not accept a client action plan if the client is relying upon the involvement, funding and/or resources of other entities (fisheries management or research agencies, authorities or regulating bodies that might have authority, power or control over management arrangements, research budgets and/or priorities) without:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- 7.11.3.1 Consulting with those entities when setting conditions, if those conditions are likely to require any or all of the following:
 - a. Investment of time or money by these entities.
 - b. Changes to management arrangements or regulations.
 - c. Re-arrangement of research priorities by these entities.
- 7.11.3.2 Being satisfied that the conditions are both achievable by the client and realistic in the period specified.
- 7.11.3.3 Interpreting the word 'entities' in 7.11.3.1 to mean all fisheries management or research agencies, authorities or regulating bodies that might have authority, power or control over management arrangements, research budgets and/or priorities.
- 7.11.4 If the CAB cannot find evidence to show that funding and/or resources are, or will be, in place to address conditions, the UoA shall not be certified.
- 7.11.5 Where the client and the CAB are unable to agree on the terms of conditions and milestones that will achieve the required increase in the score in question, the UoA shall not be certified.
- 7.11.6 Conditions and milestones shall be included in all versions of reports.
- 7.11.7 If a condition or milestone relates to reducing uncertainty or improving processes, the CAB shall include in its reports a narrative about the ultimate ecological or management outcome that the condition aims to achieve over the longer term.
- 7.11.8 7.11.1 to 7.11.3 should be completed prior to peer review.
- 7.11.9 Where there are IPI stocks within the scope of certification, the team shall follow [Annex PA](#) .

7.12 Determination of the traceability systems and point(s) at which fish and fish products enter further Chains of Custody

- 7.12.1 The CAB shall determine if the systems of tracking and tracing in the UoA are sufficient to ensure all fish and fish products identified and sold as certified by the UoA originate from the appropriate Unit of Certification (UoC). 
- 7.12.1.1 Systems shall allow the UoA to trace any fish or fish products sold as MSC-certified back to the UoC.
- 7.12.1.2 Appropriate records shall be maintained that demonstrate the traceability of certified fish or fish products back to the UoC. 
- 7.12.1.3 The CAB shall document the risk factors outlined in the "[MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template](#)", identifying any areas of risk for the integrity of certified products and how they are managed and mitigated. 
- 7.12.1.4 For each risk factor, there shall be a description of the risk present and details of the mitigation or management of risk. 
- 7.12.1.5 The CAB shall identify and document: 
 - a. The UoC,

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- b. The point of intended change of ownership of product, and
 - c. The point from which subsequent Chain of Custody is required.
- 7.12.1.6 Where there are IPI stocks within the scope of certification, teams shall follow [Annex PA](#) and report on the verification of the traceability systems including:
- a. An evaluation of the species, stock, proportion and weight of the catch of IPI stock(s) and their eligibility to enter further certified chains of custody, as per [Annex PA](#).
- 7.12.2 If the CAB makes a positive determination under 7.12.1, fish and fish products from the UoA may enter into certified chains of custody and be eligible to be sold as MSC-certified or carry the MSC ecolabel.
- 7.12.2.1 The CAB shall determine and document the scope of the fishery certificate, including the parties and categories of parties eligible to use the certificate and the point(s) at which chain of custody is needed.
- a. Chain of custody certification shall always be required following a change of ownership of the product to any party not covered by the fishery certificate.
 - b. Chain of custody certification may be required at an earlier stage than change of ownership if the team determines that the systems within the fishery are not sufficient to make sure all fish and fish products identified as such by the fishery originate from the UoC.
- 7.12.3 If the CAB makes a negative determination under 7.12.1, the CAB shall state in its reports that fish and fish products from the UoA are not eligible to be sold as MSC-certified or carry the MSC ecolabel.
- 7.12.3.1 This determination shall remain in force until revised by the CAB in a subsequent assessment.
- 7.12.4 The CAB shall inform the UoA that if they sell or label non-eligible (non-conforming) product as MSC-certified, they must:
- a. Notify any affected customers and the CAB of the issue within 4 days of detection
 - b. Immediately cease to sell any non-conforming products in stock as MSC-certified until their certified status has been verified by the CAB
 - c. Cooperate with the CAB to determine the cause of the issue and to implement any corrective actions required

7.13 Preliminary Draft Report for client review

- 7.13.1 Once conditions (7.11) and the point at which fish may enter further chains of custody (7.12) have been determined, the CAB shall:
- 7.13.1.1 Issue a preliminary draft report to the client.
 - 7.13.1.2 Ensure the preliminary draft report and all subsequent versions of the fisheries assessment report conform to the “[MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template](#)” found at <http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents>.
 - a. CABs shall use the version of the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Template” current at the time of the fishery announcement or any subsequent version.

- 7.13.2 The CAB shall give the client an opportunity to question the team and have an issue re-examined if the client has a concern that insufficient information is available to support the team’s decisions or that a decision has been made in error.
 - 7.13.2.1 The CAB shall require clients to provide objective evidence in support of any additional claims or any claimed errors of fact.
 - 7.13.2.2 The team does not have to accept client requests for changes in the report, but shall provide justifications for whatever responses are made to client comments.
 - 7.13.2.3 A period of up to 30 days shall be made available after receipt of the draft report for the client to consider the report and respond to it. 
- 7.13.3 Following client comments and changes (if any) the team may or may not revise the Preliminary Draft Report to become the Peer Review Draft Report.
- 7.13.4 Any comments made by the client and the team shall be documented and retained by the CAB and shall be available upon request to any party.

7.14 Peer review and Peer Review Draft Report ²

- 7.14.1 The CAB shall arrange a review of the Peer Review Draft Report by a group of experts from the Peer Review College.
- 7.14.2 The CAB shall send the Peer Review College a copy of the announcement of the fishery entering assessment, the Notification Report and an assessment timeline which shall specify a projected timeframe for the peer review process.
 - 7.14.2.1 The CAB shall update the timeframes on the MSC website as and if required.
 - 7.14.2.2 The CAB shall notify the Peer Review College of any changes to the projected timeframe that will affect the peer review process.
- 7.14.3 The CAB shall obtain from the Peer Review College:
 - 7.14.3.1 The names of the peer reviewers that are proposed to carry out the peer review and details of their qualifications and competencies
 - 7.14.3.2 Confirmation that the competencies of the peer reviewers match the required competencies
 - 7.14.3.3 Confirmation of the availability of the peer reviewers within the timetable nominated by the CAB.
- 7.14.4 Following the site visit, CABs shall provide the Peer Review College with the contact details of all the registered stakeholders to enable the college to undertake the stakeholder consultation on potential conflicts of interest of the peer reviewers proposed. 
- 7.14.5 At the same time that the CAB forwards the Preliminary Draft Report to the

² Derogation: CABs shall apply section 27.14 of the MSC Certification Requirements version 1.3 until the MSC publicly announces on the MSC website and notifies CABs that the Peer Review College has been established to undertake the activities detailed in section 7.14 of version 2.0.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

client, the CAB shall provide a copy to the Peer Reviewer College. ■

- 7.14.6 The CAB shall confirm the anticipated date that the Peer Review Draft Report will become available.
- 7.14.8 The CAB shall obtain from the Peer Review College confirmation that the peer reviewers have no conflicts of interest in relation to the fishery under assessment.
- 7.14.8 The number of peer reviewers shall normally be two.
 - 7.14.8.1 Under certain conditions the number of peer reviewers may be less than or more than two. ■
 - 7.14.8.2 CABs shall agree the final number of peer reviewers with the Peer Review College.
 - 7.14.8.3 The Peer Review College's decision on the choice of peer reviewers is final. ■
- 7.14.9 The CAB shall present the information in 7.14.3.1 and 7.14.3.2 in the Public Comment Draft Report and subsequent reports.
- 7.14.10 The peer review draft report shall be sent to the Peer Review College and shall incorporate the client action plan and conditions (if applicable), scores, weightings and a draft determination.
 - 7.14.10.1 The CAB shall use the "MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template" to create the report.
- 7.14.11 Upon receipt of the peer reviewers' written comments, the team shall:
 - 7.14.11.1 Explicitly address all the issues raised changing any part of the scoring, conditions and report as the team sees necessary. !!
 - 7.14.11.2 Incorporate peer reviewer comments, team responses to those comments and any appropriate changes into the peer review draft report to create the Public Comment Draft Report.
 - 7.14.11.3 Amend any conditions as required, and ensure the fishery client amends the client action plan, as required.

7.15 Public Comment Draft Report

- 7.15.1 The Public Comment Draft Report (PCDR) shall include:
 - a. The scores and weightings;
 - b. The draft determination on whether or not the applicant will be recommended for certification;
 - c. The eligibility date;
 - d. The surveillance programme;
 - e. Any conditions, and
 - f. The client action plan for any conditions.
- 7.15.2 Any references used to support statements in the evaluation tables of the reports shall be included in the 'References' section of the table and an in-text reference (e.g. number or author, date) made to the relevant source.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- 7.15.3 The CAB shall use the “[MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template](#)” to create the report.
- 7.15.3.1 The CAB shall make the Public Comment Draft Report available for comment by stakeholders and peer reviewers for a period of at least 30 days. Stakeholders and peer reviewers shall be informed that they are to provide objective evidence in support of any additional claims or any claimed errors of fact.
- 7.15.4 CABs shall include the following in a separate section or appendix to the Public Comment Draft Report:
- 7.15.4.1 Written submissions from stakeholders (if any) received during consultation opportunities on:
- The announcement of full assessment.
 - The proposal for the modification of the default tree and/or use of the RBF (Annex PF).
- 7.15.4.2 All written and a detailed summary of verbal submissions received during site visits material to the outcome of the assessment including those with information that could influence:
- A PI score that would have fallen below 60.
 - A PI score that would have fallen between 60 and 80.
 - A principle score that would have fallen below an aggregate 80 score due to the changes to one or more PIs.
- 7.15.4.3 Explicit responses from the team to submissions described in 7.15.4.1 and 7.15.4.2.
- The CAB shall identify specifically:
 - What (if any) changes to scoring, rationales, or conditions have been made;
 - And where changes are suggested but no change is made, a substantiated justification.
- 7.15.5 The team shall review the Public Comment Draft Report taking account of the stakeholder and peer reviewer comments received during the consultation period ([7.15.3.1](#)) and revise the report as appropriate creating a draft final report.
- 7.15.6 Changes to scoring shall only be made where:
- Justified by stakeholder and peer reviewer comments received during consultation opportunities described in [7.15.3.1](#).
 - The information considered to justify scoring changes was available at the time of publication of the PCDR.

7.16 Determination

- 7.16.1 The team shall consider the changes made to the PCDR under [7.15](#) and shall confirm or amend the draft determination.
- 7.16.2 The team shall record the final determination in a final report following 7.17.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

7.17 Final Report

- 7.17.1 The CAB shall use the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template” to create the report.
- 7.17.2 The CAB shall actively notify stakeholders involved in the fishery’s certification assessment process of the existence of the final report.

7.18 Objections procedure

- 7.18.1 CABs shall note that an objection may be lodged with the MSC’s Independent Adjudicator in conformity with the MSC Objections Procedure found in Annex PD during a period of 15 working days from the posting of the Final Report and the determination on the MSC website.
- 7.18.2 The CAB shall not make a certification decision until:
 - 7.18.2.1 The 15 United Kingdom working day period for objection is complete and no objections have been received; or
 - 7.18.2.2 If objection(s) are received, until the objections procedure has finished in conformity with [Annex PD](#).

7.19 Public Certification Report

- 7.19.1 At the end of the full assessment process the CAB shall finalise a Public Certification Report in accordance with this section that shall incorporate the final report [7.17](#) and, if relevant, any written decisions arising from the objections procedure [7.18](#). The Public Certification Report shall be released to the public identifying an intention to certify or fail the fishery.
- 7.19.2 The CAB shall use the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template” to create the report.
- 7.19.3 If other eligible fishers are identified in the unit of assessment (UoA), the CAB shall make sure that, immediately following the release of the Public Certification Report:
 - 7.19.3.1 A statement describing the certificate sharing mechanism is submitted for public posting on the [MSC website](#).
- 7.19.4 The CAB shall determine which entities should or should not be allowed to use the fishery certificate they have issued. Only fish caught by those fishers that are identified by reference to or on a valid fishery certificate by the CAB shall be eligible for chain of custody certification and subsequent use of the MSC ecolabel.
 - 7.19.4.1 The CAB shall define entities in this case to include any processing companies or producer organisations or other bodies that the client wishes to make the certificate available to, at the exclusion of other non client group members.
 - 7.19.4.2 The CAB shall provide a statement for MSC to post on its website defining:
 - a. Which parties (vessels, fleets and/or any other client group members, including named companies) are currently eligible to access the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

certificate;

- b. Which other eligible fishers, if such exist, may be able to access the certificate through the mechanism of certificate sharing; and
- c. Which points of landing or other transfer may be used for the sale of fish from the certified fishery into further chains of custody.

7.20 Certification decision and certificate issue

- 7.20.1 If the CAB makes a decision to award certification, the award of the certificate shall take place only after the Public Certification Report has been posted on the MSC website.
- 7.20.2 CABs shall submit to the MSC a copy of each fishery certificate issued, for posting on its website, within 10 days from the date it is issued.
- 7.20.3 CABs shall make sure that when changes to the information contained on a fishery certificate are made that they provide the updated copy of the fishery certificate to the MSC for posting on its website within 10 days of changes occurring.

7.21 Fisheries that fail or withdraw from assessment

Fisheries that withdraw from assessment

- 7.21.1 In circumstances where the fishery client and CAB make the decision not to proceed with the assessment, the fishery can be withdrawn from assessment at any time and will be removed from the MSC website.

Fisheries that fail assessment

- 7.21.2 Where the CAB makes a decision not to award certification and fail the fishery, the Public Certification Report released to the public:
 - 7.21.2.1 Shall not specify any mandatory conditions or defined actions that would need to be undertaken before the fishery could be reconsidered for certification in the future.
 - 7.21.2.2 Shall outline draft and non-binding conditions for any PIs that score more than 60 but less than 80.
 - 7.21.2.3 Shall clearly specify that the conditions outlined are non-binding and serve to provide an indication of the actions that may have been required should the fishery have been certified.
 - 7.21.2.4 Shall not include an agreement from the client to address conditions as in [7.11.2](#).

Fisheries that re-enter assessment

- 7.21.3 Full versions of the Preliminary Draft Report, Peer Review Draft Report, Public Comment Draft Report, Final Report and Public Certification Report shall be produced in the event that a failed fishery re-enters full assessment. 
- 7.21.4 The reports shall also:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- 7.21.4.1 Specify that the fishery has re-entered full assessment.
- 7.21.4.2 Summarise the details of the initial assessment, including:
 - a. The results of the original assessment.
 - b. The date of the original determination not to certify.
- 7.21.4.3 Identify those PIs for which scoring and/or the rationale for scoring has changed from the original assessment.

7.22 Extension of scope of fishery certificate (Expedited Assessment)

- 7.22.1 An existing fishery certificate may be extended to include another fishery within its scope providing:
 - 7.22.1.1 The target P1 species of the new proposed UoA was previously assessed under P1 or P2 of the existing fishery certificate.
 - 7.22.1.2 The two fisheries have some assessment tree components that are the same. 
 - 7.22.1.3 The fisheries are in close geographical proximity. 
- 7.22.2 The request for an expedited assessment, for the purpose of extending a fishery certificate can only be made by a holder of a valid MSC fishery certificate.
- 7.22.3 Where the client of an existing certificate requests for an extension of the fishery certificate, the CAB shall use the version of the assessment tree that was used for the assessment of the existing certified fishery, in the assessment of the new UoA.
- 7.22.4 The CAB shall identify the assessment components in the new proposed UoA and carry out a gap analysis to confirm which assessment components are the same as for the certified fishery. 
 - 7.22.4.1 If all the assessment tree components of the new fishery are the same as for the certified fishery, the fisher group is an “other eligible fisher” group. 
 - a. If the new fisher group was not clearly identified at the start of the assessment as such an ‘other eligible fisher’ (and thereby included in the UoA) it may still be possible to extend the certificate providing:
 - i. The client is willing to extend the certificate to the applicant fishery.
 - ii. The CAB confirms that all assessment tree components are the same as for the existing fishery certificate.
 - iii. The CAB confirms that extending the scope of the certificate does not have implications for any PIs.
 - 7.22.4.2 If some assessment tree components are not the same as assessment components in the certified fishery the CAB shall carry out an expedited assessment according to [Annex PE](#).
- 7.22.5 The duration of the extended certificate (if the assessment results in certification) shall only be as long as the initial certificate.
- 7.22.6 Reassessment of both the extended UoA and the originally certified fishery shall be carried out at the same time and using the most recent version of the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

assessment tree. 

- 7.22.7 The expedited assessment mechanism described here and in Annex PE may also be used by an existing fishery seeking to modify its UoA by moving a species previously considered in Principle 2 to Principle 1.

CAB assistance with certificate sharing

- 7.22.8 If the certificate has other eligible fishers and/or a certificate sharing mechanism the CAB shall, within 30 days of receiving a request to share the certificate, facilitate the client's and other eligible fishers' engagement in good faith efforts to enter into a certificate sharing agreement.
- 7.22.9 If the membership of the client group or the unit of certification changes at any point during a certification period (e.g. due to a new certificate sharing agreement), the CAB shall, within 10 days, provide an update to the statement lodged against 7.19.3.1 for MSC to post on its website. 

7.23 Surveillance

Surveillance level

- 7.23.1 During each full assessment, surveillance and re-certification assessment, the team, with input from the client shall determine the level at which subsequent surveillance of the fishery shall be undertaken.
- 7.23.2 Surveillance audits shall take place according to the default surveillance level described in Table 5, unless the team decides on a reduced surveillance programme (see section 7.23.4). 

Table 5: Surveillance Levels

Surveillance level	Surveillance requirements
Level 6 <i>Default Surveillance</i>	4 on-site surveillance audits
Level 5	3 on-site surveillance audits 1 off-site surveillance audit
Level 4	2 on-site surveillance audits 2 off-site surveillance audits
Level 3	1 on-site surveillance audits 3 off-site surveillance audits
Level 2	1 on-site surveillance audits 2 off-site surveillance audits 1 review of information
Level 1 <i>Minimum Surveillance</i>	1 on-site surveillance audit 1 off-site surveillance audit 2 review of information

- 7.23.3 The following types of surveillance audits are available based on the characteristics of the fishery:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- 7.23.3.1 On-site audit – The audit involves face to face engagement with the client, conducting stakeholder interviews and review of changes in management and science in the fishery. ☑
- 7.23.3.2 Off-site audit – The audit involves engagement with the client, conducting stakeholder interviews and review of changes in management and science in the fishery and is undertaken by the auditors from a remote location. ☑
- 7.23.3.3 Review of information – The audit involves seeking the views of the client and identifying if there are any issues requiring further investigation. The audit is undertaken from a remote location. The CAB publishes a statement of review of information.
- 7.23.4 The CAB shall determine whether the fishery is eligible for a reduction of surveillance levels and the number of team members dependent upon the number of conditions outstanding and the ability of the CAB to verify information and progress against the conditions remotely. ☑
 - 7.23.4.1 In the initial certification period the number of auditors for surveillance activities shall be at least 2. The on-site audit may be undertaken by a minimum of 1 auditor who is supported by the rest of the assessment team from a remote location.
 - 7.23.4.2 In the second and subsequent certification periods a reduced team of 1 auditor may be used if the fishery has conditions associated with only one Principle, or no conditions.
 - 7.23.4.3 The surveillance level for the fishery shall be determined on the basis of the confidence of the CAB in its ability to verify information, and progress towards meeting conditions, remotely.
 - a. Surveillance level 1 may only be chosen if, following an assessment or surveillance audit, the fishery has no outstanding conditions.
- 7.23.5 Where a reduced surveillance level is adopted the team shall provide a rationale of how the fishery meets the criteria in 7.23.4.

Surveillance audit timing

- 7.23.6 Surveillance audits shall be undertaken by the anniversary date of the certificate unless the following applies:
 - 7.23.6.1 CABs may elect to undertake surveillance audits up to 6 months earlier or later than the anniversary date, where this deviation is appropriate given the circumstances of the fishery.
 - 7.23.6.2 The reasons for deviating from the anniversary date shall be detailed as part of the surveillance programme.
- 7.23.7 There shall be 4 surveillance audits before the fifth anniversary of the existing certificate.

Surveillance programme

- 7.23.8 The team shall agree a surveillance programme for the duration of the certificate with the client, based on 7.23.1 to 7.23.7. ☑
- 7.23.9 The surveillance programme shall be published in the Public Comment Draft Report.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- 7.23.9.1 The team shall review the proposed surveillance programme for the Final Report and Public Certification Report to take account of any changes to the assessment.
- 7.23.10 The surveillance programme may be amended following a surveillance audit, and if so shall be published in the surveillance report.

Preparing the surveillance audit

- 7.23.11 The CAB shall plan each surveillance audit, including:
- 7.23.11.1 During initial surveillance cycle, the CAB shall appoint a team of 2 or more auditors with the expertise equal to the members of the original team to conduct the surveillance audit.
- a. The team shall comprise a team leader and a minimum of one additional team member who together meet at least three of the Fishery Team qualifications and competency requirements specified in Table PC3.
- 7.23.11.2 During second or subsequent surveillance cycles, the CAB shall appoint one or more auditors to conduct the surveillance audit following the requirements of 7.23.4.2.
- a. If two or more auditors are appointed as the assessment team, the requirements set out 7.5.1 shall apply
 - b. If a single auditor is appointed in accordance with 7.23.11.2 the auditor shall either
 - i. Meet the team leader requirements specified in Table PC1 and at least one of the fishery team qualification and competency criteria (Table PC3) relevant to the outstanding conditions in the fishery; or
 - ii. Meet the team member requirements in Table PC2 and at least one of the fishery team qualification and competency criteria relevant to the outstanding conditions in the fishery, so long as the CAB can demonstrate how oversight of the audit is ensured.
- 7.23.11.3 CABs shall ensure that the auditing team has local knowledge of the fishery and, if the RBF has been used in the assessment, meets the RBF competency requirements in Table PC3.
- 7.23.11.4 CABs shall use the “[MSC Surveillance Announcement Template](#)” found at <http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents> to notify stakeholders and the MSC of the:
- a. Time and dates of the surveillance activities;
 - b. Location the surveillance activities will be carried out;
 - c. What will be assessed/reviewed during the audit; and
 - d. The relevant skills and expertise of auditors carrying out the surveillance audit.
- 7.23.11.5 CABs shall submit this information for posting on the MSC website at least 30 days before the audit activities are carried out.

Surveillance audit activities

- 7.23.12 During each on-site and off-site surveillance audit, the CAB shall:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- 7.23.12.1 Actively seek the views of the client about:
 - a. Changes to the fishery and its management;
 - b. Performance in relation to any relevant conditions of certification;
 - c. Any developments or changes within the fishery which impact traceability and the ability to segregate MSC from non-MSC products; and
 - d. Any other significant changes in the fishery.
- 7.23.12.2 Hold stakeholder interviews and actively seek the views of stakeholders to ensure that the team is aware of any concerns of stakeholders.
 - a. Where stakeholders do not wish to be interviewed they shall be informed that they may submit written information to the team.
- 7.23.12.3 Apply the provisions of 4.3–4.5 regarding access to information.
- 7.23.12.4 Review the following:
 - a. Any potential or actual changes in management systems.
 - b. Any changes or additions/deletions to regulations.
 - c. Any personnel changes in science, management or industry and their impact on the management of the fishery.
 - d. Any potential changes to the scientific base of information, including stock assessments.
 - e. Any changes affecting traceability
- 7.23.12.5 Where the information base for PI scores has changed the CAB shall:
 - a. Report and record what has changed in the information base.
 - b. Re-score the PI following scoring processes set out in 7.10.
 - i. If the new score is less than 80, the CAB shall define conditions and require the client to develop a Client Action Plan for the new conditions.
- 7.23.13 At each on-site or off-site surveillance audit the team shall evaluate progress against conditions.
 - 7.23.13.1 The team shall audit conformity with, and progress and performance against, certification conditions. 
 - a. The CAB shall document conformity with, and progress and performance against, certification conditions using the narrative or metric form of the original condition.
 - b. The CAB shall document whether progress is 'on target', 'ahead of target' or 'behind target', as well as its rationale for such a judgement.
 - i. If progress against the measurable outcomes, expected results or (interim) milestones specified when setting the condition is judged to be behind target, the CAB shall specify the remedial action, and any revised milestones, that are required to bring process back on track within 12 months to achieve the original condition by the original deadline.
 - c. To verify that conditions have been met and outcomes have been achieved, the CAB shall:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- i. Examine relevant objective evidence, and following that examination,
 - ii. Re-score all relevant PISGs relating to that condition and only if the score is raised above 80 should the condition be closed out. In doing this:
 - A The rationale for the re-scoring and closing out of the condition shall be documented in the Surveillance Report.
- 7.23.13.2 In the event that the CAB determines that progress against a condition is not back 'on target' within 12 months of falling 'behind target', the CAB shall:
- a. Consider progress as inadequate.
 - b. Apply the requirements of [GCR 7.4](#) (suspension or withdrawal).
- 7.23.13.3 In the event that the requirements of any condition are changed, the CAB shall provide written justification for this in the Surveillance Report.
- 7.23.14 During each review of information surveillance audit, the CAB shall:
- 7.23.14.1 Perform the activities specified in [7.23.12.1](#) and [7.23.12.5](#).
 - 7.23.14.2 If the CAB has access to new information that may affect the scoring of any PI under a review of information audit, it shall undertake an off-site audit according to [7.23.12](#).
- 7.23.15 In the event that the CAB determines that the information required to carry out an off-site surveillance audit or a review of information has not been provided or is unavailable the CAB shall conduct an on-site audit.

Reporting

- 7.23.16 The CAB shall prepare a surveillance report according to the relevant MSC template below found at <http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents>:
- 7.23.16.1 For on-site and off-site surveillance audits, fisheries surveillance reports shall conform to the template "MSC Surveillance Reporting Template"
 - 7.23.16.2 For review of information surveillance audits, fisheries surveillance review of information reports shall conform to the template "MSC Surveillance Review of Information Template"
- 7.23.17 The CAB shall send the surveillance report to the client along with any requests or conditions that may arise from surveillance activities.
- 7.23.17.1 Where new conditions are identified, the CAB shall require client to prepare a client action plan.
- 7.23.18 This Surveillance Report shall be forwarded to the MSC within 60 days of completing the audit, for publication on the MSC website.
- 7.23.19 The CAB shall include all written submissions made by stakeholders during the annual surveillance audit process in full in a separate section or appendix to the annual surveillance report together with explicit responses of the team that identify what changes to scoring, rationales or conditions have been made and, where no changes were made, justifies that action.
- 7.23.20 At the time of submission of each surveillance report, the CAB shall add catch figures for the UoC share of the catch for the most recent fishing year into the MSC database for each UoC.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Additional audit considerations

- 7.23.21 Where there are IPI stocks within the scope of certification teams shall follow Annex PA during each surveillance audit.

Expedited audit

- 7.23.22 The CAB shall undertake an “expedited audit”, including as it determines necessary review of documents and an on-site audit if:
- 7.23.22.1 The CAB becomes aware of major changes in relation to the circumstances of the fishery, or of significant new information that may cause a major change. 
- a. A ‘major change’ is one that is likely to be material to the certification status. A change in scope, a PI score falling below 60 or outcome PI score falling below 80, or a change that could bring about a Principle Level aggregate score to drop below 80, shall be considered material to the certification status.
 - b. To avoid unnecessary expedited audits, CABs shall ensure that an expedited audit is only triggered when the information available supports the conclusion that an actual material change has taken place in the status or management of the fishery.
 - c. Significant new information becomes available in relation to the circumstances of the fishery including during the period between the original assessment and the issue of a certificate which is likely to be material to the certification status.
- 7.23.22.2 An expedited audit can be a review of information, off-site audit or on-site audit, based on what the CAB determines necessary.

7.24 Re-assessment

- 7.24.1 The CAB should commence the re-assessment of a certified fishery by the fourth anniversary of the existing certificate. Exact timing and planning of the re-assessment shall remain the responsibility of the CAB, in consultation with the client.

Full re-assessment activities

- 7.24.2 When conducting a re-assessment of a certified fishery, the CAB shall:
- 7.24.2.1 Apply all of the steps of the MSC Certification Requirements in force at the time of the re-assessment.
- a. If a modified tree was used during the initial assessment, the CAB shall only have to consult on re-application of this modified tree where no appropriate new default tree has been released by the MSC.
- 7.24.2.2 Take into account all surveillance reports, outcomes, and evaluate progress against certification conditions. 
- Unless exceptional circumstances apply (7.11.1.3) or paragraph (b) applies, the fishery shall have met all conditions and milestones.
- a. In the event that there are unmet conditions, the CAB shall apply 7.23.13.1 and 7.23.13.2 (except 7.23.13.2.b.) in determining the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

adequacy of progress against those conditions and milestones. If the CAB concludes that the client has made inadequate progress, it shall not grant a new fishery certificate. ☐

- b. For fisheries with conditions written against performance indicators in assessment trees which differ from those in the tree being used in the reassessment, CABs shall consider if the conditions as originally formulated are appropriate to meet the SG80 outcome for the PI, or the equivalent PI, within the reassessment tree; ☐
 - i. If the conditions are appropriate to deliver SG80 outcomes in the reassessment tree, progress against these conditions shall be evaluated according to paragraph (a) above.
 - ii. If the conditions are not appropriate to deliver SG80 outcomes in the reassessment tree, CABs shall consider what action is needed to deliver the outcome required at SG80 level, and evaluate whether this outcome has been achieved.
 - A If the SG80 level has not been achieved, such conditions shall be rewritten against the reassessment tree, with a timeline for completion of less than one certification period.
 - B If the SG80 level has been achieved, or if achievement of the condition would not affect the score of any PI which would otherwise score less than 80 in reassessment tree, these conditions shall be considered closed.

7.24.2.3 Maintain records of its consideration of the issues above, as well as any rationale for decisions made relating to these issues.

7.24.3 Where there are IPI stocks within the scope of certification, teams shall follow Annex PA.

7.24.4 The CAB shall note that the objections procedure in Annex PD applies in reassessment.

7.24.4.1 If an objection is made to the recertification of a client, a CAB may extend the expiry date of the existing fishery certificate by up to a maximum of 6 months to allow the objection process to be followed.

7.24.5 The CAB shall produce a Full Re-assessment Report that shall conform to the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template”. ☐

Reduced re-assessment activities

- 7.24.6 A fishery is eligible for reduced reassessment if:
- a. The fishery was covered under the previous certification or scope extension;
 - b. The fishery had no conditions remaining after the 3rd surveillance audit, and
 - c. The CAB confirms that all standard related stakeholder comments have been addressed by the 3rd surveillance audit.
- 7.24.7 If the fishery is eligible for reduced re-assessment, the CAB shall provide a detailed explanation of how the reduced re-assessment criteria (7.24.6) are satisfied at the time of announcing the re-assessment.
- 7.24.8 A reduced re-assessment shall follow the full reassessment requirements except

Fisheries Certification Requirements

that:

- a. The CAB may undertake the assessment with one assessment team member onsite and other team member(s) working from a remote location.
 - i. The CAB shall take into account any issues raised in previous audits by stakeholders, as well as availability of information on P1, P2 or P3, that would enable comprehensive review by an off-site auditor, in determining the competencies required of the on-site and off-site team members.
- b. Only one peer reviewer is required to review the re-assessment peer review report. 

7.24.9 Reduced re-assessment reports shall conform to the template “MSC Reduced Re-assessment Reporting Template”.

8 Management System Requirements for CABs

- 8.1 The CAB shall conduct and document a review of each fishery assessment completed to identify any corrective or preventive actions that would contribute to continual improvement. The CAB shall:
 - 8.1.1 Consider submissions and / or comments from stakeholders or other parties on the CAB's activities and processes in the review.

End of Fisheries Certification Requirements

Annex PA: Requirements for inseparable or practicably inseparable (IPI) stocks

PA1 Scope

- PA1.1 The requirements of this annex shall apply to all inseparable or practicably inseparable (IPI) catch within fisheries being assessed.

PA2 Default Tree

- PA2.1 The CAB shall review and if necessary propose modifications to the default tree if the MSC accepts the variation request to proceed with the assessment of IPI stock(s).
- PA2.1.1 Using the tree, the CAB shall:
- PA2.1.1.1 Assess the IPI catch under the primary or secondary species component of Principle 2 and
 - PA2.1.1.2 Separately assess the impact of all fishing activity on the IPI stock(s) considered for entry into certified chains of custody using the criteria specified in [PA4.2](#) for the purposes of determining the eligibility for the catches of IPI stock(s) to enter further certified chains of custody.

PA3 Conditions

- PA3.1 Where there are IPI stocks within the scope of certification, the CAB may make recommendations to promote the future Principle 1 assessment of the IPI stock(s), or to promote the development of techniques to effectively separate catches of currently IPI stock(s).

PA4 Entry into Further Chains of Custody

- PA4.1 The CAB shall ensure that only defined and limited proportions of catches from MSC-approved IPI stocks enter into certified chains of custody.
- PA4.1.1 The MSC ecolabel is only permitted for use on these catches for a maximum of one certification period.
- PA4.2 The CAB shall verify that the IPI stock(s) meet the following requirements, prior to being considered eligible to enter further certified chains of custody:
- PA4.2.1 The IPI stock(s) are likely to be above biologically based limits (FCR [Table SA8](#)), or if below the limits, there are measures in place that are expected to make sure that all fishing-related mortality does not hinder the recovery and rebuilding of IPI

Fisheries Certification Requirements

stock(s).

- PA4.2.2 If the stock status is poorly known, there are measures or practices in place that are expected to keep the IPI stock(s) above biologically based limits, or to prevent all fishing activity from hindering recovery.
- PA4.2.3 The measures are considered likely to work, based on plausible argument (e.g. general experience, theory or comparison with similar fisheries/species).

PA5 Surveillance

- PA5.1 If the fishery includes IPI stocks, the CAB shall review and document the continuing performance of IPI stock(s) eligible to enter further certified chains of custody against the requirements in [PA4.2](#).

PA6 Re-Assessment

- PA6.1 IPI stocks are only eligible for the period of one certificate. For continued certification CABs shall inform clients of the following options:
 - PA6.1.1 Certify all IPI Stocks against Principle 1 at re-assessment;
 - PA6.1.2 Develop techniques to effectively separate catches of currently IPI stock(s), from target stocks so the ISBF scope criteria are no longer met; or
 - PA6.1.3 Develop measures to reduce the proportion of IPI stocks so as to be able to submit a variation request to the requirements for IPI stocks ([7.4.14.2](#)).
- PA6.2 The CAB shall conduct an assessment of remaining IPI stock(s) against Principle 1 at re-assessment.

End of Annex PA

Annex PB Harmonised fisheries – Normative

PB1 Scope

- PB1.1 This annex shall be used where fisheries overlap, requiring harmonised assessments.

PB2 Assessment Tree

Different versions of standards

- PB2.1 Fisheries using different CR versions of the default trees ([Annexes SA, SB, SC and SD](#)) shall not be required to harmonise their default trees.
- PB2.2 If the scope of the assessment includes a UoA which overlaps with one or more UoAs that are also in assessment or recently certified (within the last 5 years), the assessment should use the same assessment tree as used in the earlier fishery.
- PB2.3 If there is justification for differing trees to be used the CAB shall submit a variation request to requirement [PB2.2](#) to the MSC following the procedure set out in the GCR including providing a detailed and substantiated rationale showing that:
- PB2.3.1 Aspects of previous trees are included in the new tree.
 - PB2.3.2 All PISGs have been set at equivalent levels.
 - PB2.3.3 Where PISGs differ, the differences have been identified and evidence provided to show that if a PI or scoring issue is missing, the topic it covers is adequately covered elsewhere in the tree.
- PB2.4 If the MSC:
- PB2.4.1 Accepts the variation request, differing trees may be used.
 - PB2.4.2 Does not accept the variation request, the same tree shall be used.

PB3 Harmonised Fishery Assessments for Overlapping Fisheries

- PB3.1 CABs assessing overlapping fisheries shall ensure consistency of outcomes so as not to undermine the integrity of MSC fishery assessments.
- PB3.1.1 CABs shall prepare for harmonisation with overlapping fisheries early in each assessment or surveillance process and not later than the site visit stage (rather than after scoring/re-scoring is concluded).
- PB3.2 Where assessments of two or more fisheries occur at the same time, CABs shall coordinate their assessments so as to make sure that harmonisation of important steps in the assessment and subsequent surveillance audits takes place and that

Fisheries Certification Requirements

outcomes are harmonised.

- PB3.2.1 CABs shall undertake the following activities:
- a. Mediation where appropriate.
 - b. Coordination meetings between CABs.
 - c. Coordinated assessment planning and conduct, including coordinated process steps and publications of assessment products.
 - d. Use of common assessment trees where appropriate (covered in PB2).
 - e. Sharing of fishery information.
- PB3.2.2 CABs shall ensure that conclusions are consistent between the two (or more) fisheries, with respect to evaluation, scoring and conditions.
- PB3.3 Where a fishery under assessment overlaps with a certified fishery, CABs shall coordinate their assessments so as to make sure that key assessment products and outcomes are harmonised.
- PB3.3.1 Where an assessment overlaps with a certified fishery or fishery in assessment that a CAB has already scored, the new assessment team shall use as their baseline the rationale and scores detailed for the previously scored fishery.
- PB3.3.2 To achieve harmonisation, CABs shall undertake the following key activities:
- a. The use of common assessment trees where appropriate (as covered in PB2).
 - b. Coordination meetings between CABs and mediation as necessary (particularly where the later CAB does not agree with the conclusions of the earlier CAB).
 - c. The sharing of fishery information.
 - d. The achievement of consistent conclusions with respect to evaluation, scoring and conditions.
- PB3.3.3 The team shall explain and justify any difference in the scores in the scoring rationale for relevant PIs.
- a. Only in exceptional circumstances, such as demonstrably different fisheries, or demonstrably different requirements arising from different versions of the default assessment trees, shall CABs determine that the outcome in harmonised fisheries is materially different in overall scores and conditions.
 - i. Exceptional circumstances shall be fully documented, together with clear indication of agreement between the CABs responsible for the overlapping fisheries.
 - b. Non-material differences in scores shall be clearly justified.
- PB3.3.4 The team responsible for any new assessment shall consider the findings of any recent surveillance report(s) produced for overlapping certified fisheries.
- PB3.4 Where a fishery under surveillance overlaps with a certified fishery, CABs shall also coordinate assessments so as to make sure that key assessment products and outcomes remain harmonised.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- PB3.4.1 In this case, CABs shall follow similar steps to those given in [PB3.3.1](#)–[PB3.3.4](#) in order to achieve harmonisation.
- PB3.5 CABs shall note that the MSC may at its discretion:
- PB3.5.1 Facilitate joint communications and meetings between CABs.
 - PB3.5.2 Require peer review of assessment reports by a member or members of the team assessing an overlapping fishery.
 - PB3.5.3 Undertake other actions, as it sees fit, in order to ensure harmonisation has been carried out effectively, and in order to ensure that the integrity and credibility of the MSC is not undermined by differing assessments of overlapping fisheries.

End of Annex PB

Annex PC: Fishery team leader, team member, team and peer reviewer qualifications and competencies

Introduction

This annex sets out the requirements for fishery team leader, team member and team qualifications and competencies which CABs shall verify in accordance with the GCR.

PC1 Fishery Team Leader Qualification and Competency Criteria

Table PC1: Fishery Team Leader Qualification and Competency Criteria

1. General
Qualifications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Degree or equivalent in business, economics, science or technical subject e.g: supply chain and logistics management, food/seafood science and fisheries science; or b. 5 years' experience in the fisheries sector related to the tasks under the responsibility of the team leader.
Verification Mechanisms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CVs • Certificates
2. Understanding of MSC fisheries standard and MSC fisheries certification requirements
Qualifications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Pass MSC's annual fishery team leader training on updates to the fishery requirements within 3 months of the effective date of new requirements and prior to undertaking assessments against new requirements; and b. Pass MSC's fishery team leader training course every 3 years.
Competencies
To be able to:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Describe the intent and requirements of the MSC Principles & Criteria; ii. Place the different steps of the fisheries assessment process in the correct order; iii. Identify the steps where stakeholder consultation occurs; iv. Score a fishery using the default assessment tree; v. Describe how conditions are set and monitored; vi. Describe the reporting stages including the role of the peer reviewer.
Verification Mechanisms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Examination pass • Witness or office audits by the accreditation body • CAB witness audits
3. Assessment experience

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Qualifications
a. Have undertaken 2 MSC fishery assessment or surveillance site visits as a team member in the last 5 years; or
b. For new fishery team leaders only undertake an assessment as team leader which will be witnessed by ASI as part of a CAB's initial accreditation audit.
Competencies
i. Ability to apply knowledge of auditing techniques in the gathering of information, the scoring of the fishery and the rationales for the scores given.
Verification Mechanisms
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• CAB records• Previous employer reference letter• Witness or office audits by MSC's accreditation body• CAB witness audits• Previous audit reports
8. Communication & Stakeholder Facilitation Skills
Qualifications
a. Experience in applying different types of interviewing and facilitation techniques.
Competencies
i. Ability to effectively communicate with the client and other stakeholders.
Verification Mechanisms
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• CV• CAB records• Witness or office audits by MSC's accreditation body• CAB witness audits

PC2 Fishery Team Member Qualification and Competency Criteria

Table PC2: Fishery Team Member Qualification and Competency Criteria

1. General
Qualifications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. University degree in fisheries or marine conservation biology, or natural resources or environmental management or relevant field e.g. economics, mathematics, statistics; or b. 5 years management or research experience in a marine conservation biology or fisheries, natural resources or environmental management position.
Verification Mechanisms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CVs • Certificates
2. Understanding of MSC Principles & Criteria and relevant MSC certification requirements
Qualifications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Pass MSC's fishery team member training course every 3 years; or b. Have undertaken at least 2 MSC fishery assessment or surveillance site visits in the last 5 years.
Competencies
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. To be able to describe the intent and requirements of the MSC fisheries standard. ii. To be able to score a fishery using the default assessment tree. iii. To be able to describe how conditions are set and monitored.
Verification Mechanisms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Examination pass • CAB records

PC3 Fishery Team Qualification and Competency Criteria

PC3.1.1 CABs shall ensure that the fishery team collectively complies with the qualification and competency criteria listed in [Table PC3](#). 

Table PC3: Fishery Team Qualification and Competency Criteria

1. Fish stock assessment 
Qualifications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. 5 years or more experience applying relevant stock assessment techniques being used by the fishery under assessment; or b. Primary authorship of two peer reviewed stock assessments of a type used by the fishery under assessment.
Competencies
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Ability to undertake a stock assessment using stock assessment techniques relevant to the fishery
Verification Mechanisms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CV with full publication list • Employer's reference letter • CAB witness audits
2 Fish stock biology / ecology 
Qualifications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. 5 years or more experience working with the biology and population dynamics of the target or species with similar biology.
Competencies
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Demonstrate knowledge of, and ability to interpret, scientific information relating to the biological processes of the target species, or species with similar population dynamics.
Verification Mechanisms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CV with full publication list • Employer's reference letter • CAB witness audits
3 Fishing impacts on aquatic ecosystems
Qualifications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. 5 years or more experience in research into, policy analysis for, or management of, fisheries impacts on aquatic ecosystems.
Competencies
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Demonstrate knowledge of and ability to interpret scientific data relating to fishery impacts on the ecosystem
Verification Mechanisms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CV

Fisheries Certification Requirements

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Employer's reference letter • Witness or office audits by MSC's accreditation body • CAB witness audits
4 Fishery management and operations
Qualifications
5 years or more experience as a practicing fishery manager and/or fishery/ policy analyst.
Competencies
Ability to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. identify likely problems for fishery under P1 and P2 that would arise from poor management ii. demonstrate a good understanding of the types of management system(s) and laws applicable to the fishery under assessment
Verification Mechanisms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CV with full publication list • Employer's reference letter • Witness or office audits by MSC's accreditation body • CAB witness audits
5 Current knowledge of the country, language and local fishery context <input type="checkbox"/>
Qualifications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Knowledge of a common language spoken by clients and stakeholders; and either b. Two years fishery work experience in the country or in a relevant fishery in the last 15 years; or c. Two assignments in the country or region in which the fishery under assessment is based in the last 10 years; or d. Primary authorship of at least one published paper in a journal or grey literature in the last 5 years on a fishery issue in the country or region in which the fishery under assessment is based.
Competencies
Ability to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Communicate effectively with stakeholders in the country in a common language i. Explain the geographical, cultural, and ecological context of the fishery under assessment.
Verification Mechanisms
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CV • Employer's reference letter • Journal extracts • Witness or office audits by MSC's accreditation body • CAB witness audits
6 Understanding of the CoC Standard and CoC Certification Requirements
Qualifications
a. Pass MSC's Traceability training module every 3 years
Competencies

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- i. To be able to explain the elements of traceability which are relevant to fishery assessments.

Verification Mechanisms

- Examination pass
- CAB records
- CAB witness audits

7 Use of the RBF (when applicable)

Qualifications

- a. Pass MSC's RBF training course every three years.
- b. Pass MSC's annual RBF training on updates to the RBF requirements within 3 months of the effective date of the FCR.

Competencies

Demonstrate an understanding of:

- i. when the RBF can be used
- ii. how to implement RBF components
- iii. how to engage stakeholders effectively when the RBF is used
- iv. how Performance Indicators are scored when the RBF is used
- v. the reporting of the RBF process and outcomes

Verification Mechanisms

- Examination pass
- CAB witness audits

End of Annex PC

Annex PD: Objections Procedure – Normative

PD1 Background

PD1.1 Documents

- PD1.1.1 The parties to the objection shall:
- a. Use the version of the objections procedure that corresponds with the version of the process requirements against which the fishery is being assessed. (See section on implementation timeframes)
 - b. Use the same version of the objection procedure throughout the entire objection process.

PD2 Objections Procedure

PD2.1 Object and purpose

- PD2.1.1 The purpose of the Objections Procedure is to provide an orderly, structured, transparent and independent process by which objections to the Final Report and determination of a Conformity Assessment Body (CAB) can be resolved.
- PD2.1.1.1 It is not the purpose of the Objections Procedure to review the subject fishery against the MSC fisheries standard, but to determine whether the CAB made an error of procedure, scoring or condition setting that is material to the determination or the fairness of the assessment.
- PD2.1.2 Subject to [PD2.3.1.3](#) the procedure is open only to parties involved in or consulted during the assessment process.
- PD2.1.3 An independent adjudicator will examine the claims made by an objector in a notice of objection and will make a written finding as to whether the CAB made an error that is material to the determination or the fairness of the assessment. If any error is identified, and if there is adjudged to be a real possibility that the CAB may have come to a different conclusion, the independent adjudicator will remand the determination back to the CAB for reconsideration.
- PD2.1.4 In the event that a notice of objection is filed, a certificate shall not be issued or ecolabel licensing agreements entered into relating to any fishery product until the objections procedure has run its course in accordance with the procedures set out in this Annex, and the Public Certification Report has been issued in accordance with FCR 7.19.1.

PD2.2 The independent adjudicator

- PD2.2.1 The MSC Board of Trustees shall appoint an independent adjudicator to consider all objections to a Final Report or determination.
- PD2.2.1.1 The independent adjudicator shall be appointed for a period of 3 years and

Fisheries Certification Requirements

may be reappointed.

- PD2.2.1.2 The decision of the MSC Board of Trustees in appointing or reappointing the independent adjudicator shall be final.
- PD2.2.1.3 The independent adjudicator shall perform all the functions allocated to him or her in accordance with the procedures set out in the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements (FCR).
- PD2.2.1.4 A different independent adjudicator may be appointed at any time to act in cases where original independent adjudicator is unavailable to act for any reason, including a conflict of interest or unavailability.
- PD2.2.1.5 In the event that, in relation to any particular objection, there is a conflict of interest involving the independent adjudicator, unless the parties agree otherwise he or she shall excuse him or herself from further participation in that particular objection. In the event of any difference of opinion between the independent adjudicator and any party to the objection as to whether a conflict of interest exists, the decision of the MSC Board of Trustees on the matter shall be final.
- PD2.2.2 The independent adjudicator may be removed by the MSC Board of Trustees for good cause, including incompetence, bias or impropriety.
- PD2.2.3 The independent adjudicator shall be independent of the MSC, but the MSC may provide him or her with appropriate administrative and logistic support, including sending and receiving notices and correspondence.

PD2.3 Notice of objection

- PD2.3.1 A notice of objection to a Final Report or determination may be submitted by:
 - PD2.3.1.1 The fishery client(s).
 - PD2.3.1.2 Any party to the assessment process that made written submissions to the CAB during the fishery assessment process or attended stakeholder meetings.
 - PD2.3.1.3 Any other party that can establish that the failure of the CAB to follow procedures prevented or substantially impaired the objecting party's participation in the fishery assessment process.
- PD2.3.2 A notice of objection must be submitted no later than fifteen days after the date on which the Final Report and determination is posted on the MSC website.
- PD2.3.3 A notice of objection must be submitted in the format prescribed by the MSC (<http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents>). It shall be addressed to the independent adjudicator and sent to objections@msc.org.
- PD2.3.4 The notice of objection must set out clearly and precisely the basis upon which [PD2.7.2](#) is said to apply. It must:
 - PD2.3.4.1 Identify the alleged errors in the Final Report and determination.
 - PD2.3.4.2 Explain in sufficient detail why it is claimed that the alleged errors were material to the determination or the fairness of the assessment.
 - PD2.3.4.3 Include a summary of the evidence to be relied on in support of the objection.
 - PD2.3.4.4 Include only information that existed in final (not draft) form in the public

Fisheries Certification Requirements

domain at the time the Public Comment Draft Report was published on the MSC website. Information that came into existence after that date cannot be used as a basis for objection (see FCR 7.15.6).

- PD2.3.5 If it is asserted that the determination should be remanded for the reasons set out in [PD2.7.3](#) the notice of objection must specify, in sufficient detail, the:
- PD2.3.5.1 Nature of the additional information that it is asserted should reasonably have been made available to the CAB, and
 - PD2.3.5.2 Reasons why it is considered that the information, if considered, could have been material to the determination or the fairness of the assessment.
- PD2.3.6 Upon receipt of a notice of objection, the independent adjudicator shall proceed in the manner set out in PD2.4.

PD2.4 Procedure on receipt of a notice of objection

- PD2.4.1 If the independent adjudicator, in his or her discretion, determines that the notice of objection is not in the form required by these procedures or has no reasonable prospect of success, the independent adjudicator may either:
- PD2.4.1.1 Dismiss all or part of the objection, giving written reasons; or
 - PD2.4.1.2 Request further clarification from the objector on all or part of the objection.
- PD2.4.2 For purposes of this Section, an objection has a “reasonable prospect of success” if, in the view of the independent adjudicator:
- PD2.4.2.1 It is not spurious or vexatious;
 - PD2.4.2.2 Some evidence is presented on the basis of which the independent adjudicator could reasonably expect to determine that one or more of the conditions set forth in [PD2.7.2](#) are satisfied.
- PD2.4.3 In the event that the independent adjudicator decides to dismiss the objection, the objector may nonetheless submit an amended notice of objection within 5 days of being so notified by the independent adjudicator.
- PD2.4.3.1 An objector shall have only one opportunity to submit such an amended notice of objection.
- PD2.4.4 In the event that the independent adjudicator requests further clarification from the objector, the independent adjudicator shall notify the objector in writing of the clarification sought and the time limit for responding (which, in the absence of special circumstances to justify a longer time, should normally be not more than 5 days).
- PD2.4.4.1 If the objector fails to respond within the time specified, it shall be assumed that the objector does not wish to proceed further and the independent adjudicator shall thereupon issue a notice in writing dismissing the objection.
- PD2.4.5 If the independent adjudicator, in his or her discretion, determines that the amended notice of objection submitted under [PD2.4.2](#) or [PD2.4.3](#) does not disclose any of the grounds set out in [PD2.3.4](#), is not in the form required by these procedures, has no reasonable prospect of success or is spurious or vexatious, the independent adjudicator shall dismiss the objection, giving written reasons therefore.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- PD2.4.6 If a notice of objection is received in the correct format and by a person entitled to make an objection under [PD2.3.1](#) but dismissed on other grounds by the independent adjudicator, the MSC shall ensure the notice of objection and independent adjudicator notice of dismissal are posted on the MSC website.
- PD2.4.7 Where a notice of objection is accepted, the independent adjudicator shall promptly notify the CAB, the fishery client(s) and the objectors.
- PD2.4.7.1 The MSC shall ensure the notice of objection is posted on the MSC website.
- PD2.4.7.2 The date upon which the notice of objection is posted shall be the “date of publication”
- PD2.4.8 The fishery client(s) or any stakeholder that participated in the fishery assessment process (other than the objector(s)) may, within 15 days of the date of publication, submit written representations on the matters raised in the accepted notice of objection.
- PD2.4.8.1 All such written representations shall be submitted through the independent adjudicator and shall be posted on the MSC website.

PD2.5 Reconsideration by the CAB

- PD2.5.1 Where a notice of objection has been accepted, the CAB shall be required to reconsider its Final Report and determination in light of the matters raised in the notice of objection.
- PD2.5.1.1 The CAB shall, within 20 days of the date of publication, provide a written response to the notice of objection.
- PD2.5.1.2 The response shall provide appropriate information indicating the extent to which the matters set forth in the notice of objection were considered in the fishery assessment and the impact thereof on the determination.
- PD2.5.1.3 In formulating its response, the CAB shall also take into account any written representations received in accordance with [PD2.4.8](#).
- PD2.5.1.4 The CAB shall also indicate and give reasons for any proposed changes to its Final Report and determination in the light of the reconsideration.
- PD2.5.2 The response of the CAB shall be made available to all parties, including the objector(s), the fishery client(s) and the MSC and shall be posted on the MSC website.
- PD2.5.3 Upon receipt of the response by the CAB, the independent adjudicator shall consult with the objector(s), the fishery client(s) and the CAB in order to determine whether the response of the CAB, including any proposed changes to the Final Report and determination, adequately addresses the issues raised in the notice of objection.
- PD2.5.3.1 The independent adjudicator shall strive to conclude such consultations within a period of 10 days but may if necessary, at his or her discretion after consultation with the parties, extend such period if it appears that there is a real and imminent prospect of reaching a solution that is acceptable to all relevant parties.
- PD2.5.4 In the event that the issues raised in the notice of objection can be resolved through consultations, the CAB, in consultation with the independent adjudicator,

Fisheries Certification Requirements

shall make such changes and revisions to the Final Report and determination as may be agreed and shall proceed to prepare a Public Certification Report in accordance with FCR 7.19.1 No further appeal or objection shall be permitted.

- PD2.5.5 In the event that some or all of the issues raised in the notice of objection cannot be resolved through consultations, the independent adjudicator shall notify all parties that the adjudication phase will commence immediately in accordance with PD2.6.

PD2.6 Adjudication

- PD2.6.1 Subject to [PD2.9 \(Costs\)](#), the independent adjudicator shall, within 30 days of the date upon which the parties were notified of the intention to proceed to adjudication, convene an oral hearing of the objection, unless the parties to the objection agree otherwise.

PD2.6.1.1 A written hearing shall be undertaken if the parties agree that an oral hearing is not wanted.

- PD2.6.2 The oral hearing is intended to provide an opportunity for the CAB, the objector(s) and the fishery client(s) (if not the objecting party) to present their respective cases in person, including by video or teleconference.

- PD2.6.3 The independent adjudicator shall conduct the hearing in accordance with the provisions of this section but may also promulgate additional rules of procedure, including time limits on oral presentations and rules as to representation.

PD2.6.3.1 The independent adjudicator shall normally aim to complete the hearing during one session but may, where necessary, adjourn to continue the hearing using electronic communications or other means.

- PD2.6.4 The fishery client(s), the objector(s), and the CAB may submit additional or supplementary written representations on the matters raised in the notice of objection or in the written representations submitted by other parties under [PD2.4.8](#).

PD2.6.4.1 All such written representations shall be submitted through the independent adjudicator and must be received no later than 5 days before the date set for an oral hearing or as set out by the independent adjudicator in the case of a written hearing.

PD2.6.4.2 A list of the persons whom the parties would wish to attend the hearing shall be submitted to the independent adjudicator for circulation to all hearing parties and must be received no later than 5 days before the date set for hearing.

- PD2.6.5 The independent adjudicator shall evaluate objections solely on the basis of:

PD2.6.5.1 The record, which shall include and be limited to:

- a. The Final Report of the CAB and the record on which the Final Report was based, including written submissions and reports provided to the CAB during the assessment process, the written record of oral, written or documentary evidence submitted in the assessment process, as well as any other evidence referenced or cited in the final report;
- b. The notice of objection;
- c. Any written representations submitted pursuant to [PD2.4.8](#) and

Fisheries Certification Requirements

PD2.6.4;

- d. Any representations made by any party at an oral hearing pursuant to these procedures; and
- e. Other clarifications required by the independent adjudicator.

PD2.6.5.2 Any additional information, not forming part of the record, that was in existence prior to the posting of the Public Comment Draft Report and is relevant to issues raised in the notice of objection that:

- a. Was known or should reasonably have been known to any party to the assessment process; and
- b. Should reasonably have been made available to the CAB; and
- c. If considered, could have been material to the determination or the fairness of the assessment.

PD2.6.5.3 The MSC fisheries standards ([Annexes SA, SB, SC and SD](#)); and

PD2.6.5.4 The MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements current at the time of the assessment in question, together with Guidance to the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements and amendments thereof made by the MSC Technical Advisory Board and the Board of Trustees, any related interpretations to these documents whether or not of mandatory effect with regard to CAB conformity made by the MSC and MSC's accreditation body.

PD2.6.6 The independent adjudicator may not consider issues not raised in the notice of objection, even if the independent adjudicator is of the view that a particular issue should have been raised.

PD2.6.6.1 In no case shall the independent adjudicator substitute his or her own views or findings of fact for those of the CAB.

PD2.6.7 The independent adjudicator may solicit external advice on technical matters from, and for this purpose may sit with and receive technical advice from, qualified experts.

PD2.6.7.1 Such technical experts shall not take part in decision making.

PD2.6.7.2 Any written reports or advice tendered by the technical experts shall be attached to the independent adjudicator's written decision.

PD2.6.8 The experts selected by the independent adjudicator to provide advice in relation to any particular objection shall not be involved in any activity that constitutes a conflict of interest. Such conflicts include, but are not limited to, the following criteria:

PD2.6.8.1 Experts shall not be members of the MSC Board of Trustees, Technical Advisory Board, Stakeholder Council or MSC;

PD2.6.8.2 Experts shall not have commercial involvement with the CAB, the subject fishery or the objector(s);

PD2.6.8.3 Experts shall not be involved in management or lobbying for or against the fishery or be involved with an organisation that has indicated its opposition to the certification of the fishery under objection;

PD2.6.8.4 Experts shall not have been involved in any part of the current assessment process for the fishery under objection.

PD2.6.9 In order to facilitate the Objections Procedure, the MSC may maintain a public

Fisheries Certification Requirements

register of suitably qualified persons willing and available to act as independent experts. Experts may, however, be selected who are not on the register.

- PD2.6.10 At any stage of the objections process, any party to an objection may, by notification in writing, call the attention of the independent adjudicator to an alleged error of fact, procedural error or unfairness on his or her part with respect to the objections process and the independent adjudicator shall respond as soon practicable.

PD2.7 Powers of the independent adjudicator

- PD2.7.1 The independent adjudicator shall issue a decision in writing either:

PD2.7.1.1 Confirming the determination by the CAB; or

PD2.7.1.2 Remanding the determination to the CAB.

- PD2.7.2 The independent adjudicator shall remand the determination to the CAB if he or she determines either:

PD2.7.2.1 There was a serious procedural or other irregularity in the fishery assessment process that was material to the fairness of the assessment; or

PD2.7.2.2 The setting of conditions by the CAB in relation to one or more performance indicators cannot be justified because the conditions fundamentally cannot be fulfilled, or the condition setting decision was arbitrary or unreasonable in the sense that no reasonable CAB could have reached such a decision on the evidence available to it; or

PD2.7.2.3 The score given by the CAB in relation to one or more performance indicators cannot be justified, and the effect of the score in relation to one or more of the particular performance indicators in question was material to the determination because either:

- a. The CAB made a mistake as to a material fact.
- b. The CAB failed to consider material information put forward in the assessment process by the fishery or a stakeholder.
- c. The CAB failed to consider material information put forward by the peer reviewer(s).
- d. The scoring decision was arbitrary or unreasonable in the sense that no reasonable CAB could have reached such a decision on the evidence available to it.

- PD2.7.3 It is necessary to remand the determination in order to enable the CAB to consider additional information described in [PD2.6.5.2](#) and described in the notice of objection.

PD2.7.3.1 In such a case, the remand shall be limited to a request to the CAB to consider the impact of the additional information on its original determination and to provide a response in accordance with [PD2.8.2](#).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

PD2.8 Remand

- PD2.8.1 In the event that a determination is remanded, the independent adjudicator shall state, in writing, the grounds upon which the objection has been remanded, the specific matters that the CAB must consider in the remand and the relationship of these matters to the MSC fisheries standard or procedural rules.
- PD2.8.1.1 Copies of the remand shall be sent to the MSC, the fishery client(s) and the objecting party.
- PD2.8.2 Within 10 days after receipt of the remand instructions, unless the independent adjudicator has granted the CAB a specific amount of additional time, the CAB shall respond in writing to the matters specified in the remand, with copies sent to the MSC, the fishery client(s) and the objecting party. The response of the CAB shall either:
- PD2.8.2.1 Include a statement of “no change” in relation to the scoring of performance indicators.
- PD2.8.2.1 Indicate any proposed changes to the justification for a score or indicate a change in the score in relation to any of the performance indicators.
- PD2.8.2.3 Give reasons for its decision under either PD2.8.2.1 or PD2.8.2.2.
- PD2.8.3 Any party to the objection may make written submissions on the matters specified in the remand or on the response thereto by the CAB under PD2.8.2. Such submissions must be received by the independent adjudicator no later than 5 days following the response by the CAB.
- PD2.8.4 The independent adjudicator shall, within 10 days of the response by the CAB, either:
- PD2.8.4.1 Accept the response as adequately addressing the findings raised in the remand and confirm the original or amended Final Report and Determination by the CAB.
- PD2.8.4.2 After reviewing the response of the CAB, determine that the objection shall be upheld on one or more of the grounds specified in [PD2.7.2](#).
- PD2.8.5 If the CAB does not respond to the remand within the time limits specified in PD2.8.2 the independent adjudicator shall proceed to PD2.8.4 as if the CAB had made a “no change” response to the remand.
- PD2.8.6 The independent adjudicator shall include in the final decision a summary of conclusions from previous decisions, in order to provide a complete record of issues, including for example issues that are rejected, dismissed or closed prior to the final decision.
- PD2.8.7 A decision by the independent adjudicator under PD2.8.4 is final. No additional objections may be lodged under these procedures in respect of such decision. The certification decision of the CAB shall be made with reference to the decision of the independent adjudicator.
- PD2.8.8 In the event that the independent adjudicator confirms the amended determination, the CAB shall make such amendments to the Final Report and Determination as may be necessary in the light of the findings of the independent adjudicator and shall proceed to issue a Public Certification Report in accordance with FCR 7.19.1, which shall be assessed for adequacy by the independent adjudicator as per [PD2.8.9](#).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- PD2.8.9 The independent adjudicator shall, prior to the issue of the Public Certification Report, determine whether the amendments to the Final Report and Determination made by the CAB adequately address the findings of the independent adjudicator.
- a. If the independent adjudicator determines that the amendments adequately address the findings of the independent adjudicator, the MSC shall publish the Public Certification Report in accordance with [FCR 7.19.1](#).
 - b. If the independent adjudicator determines that the amendments do not adequately address the findings of the independent adjudicator, the Public Certification Report shall not be published, and the independent adjudicator shall send the Public Certification Report back to the CAB for further amendments to be made and then to be considered by the independent adjudicator as per [PD2.8.9](#).
- PD2.8.10 Nothing in these procedures shall prevent any party to a fishery assessment from submitting a complaint relating to the CAB to MSC's Accreditation Body in accordance with the procedures of that provider.
- PD2.8.10.1 No such appeal to the MSC's Accreditation Body shall affect the outcome under this Objection Procedure.

PD2.9 Costs

- PD2.9.1 The costs of the adjudication process, up to a maximum level established from time to time by the MSC Board of Trustees, shall be borne by the objector or, if there is more than one objector, the objectors in equal shares.
- PD2.9.2 In exceptional circumstances, the independent adjudicator may decide to waive the costs in respect of an objector in whole or in part in accordance with [PD2.9.6](#).
- PD2.9.3 The MSC shall provide information relating to the costs agreement and waiver application to the objector(s) at the earliest opportunity after the acceptance of the notice of objection and in any case no later than 5 days from when the notice of objection is accepted as per [PD2.4.7](#).
- PD2.9.4 Notwithstanding the provisions of [PD2.6](#), an objection shall not proceed to adjudication unless, within 10 days after the date on which the independent adjudicator notifies the parties that the adjudication phase will commence, the objector(s) has either:
- PD2.9.4.1 Signed a costs agreement with the MSC; or
 - PD2.9.4.2 Obtained a waiver from the independent adjudicator in accordance with [PD2.9.6](#).
- PD2.9.5 An application for a waiver shall be made in writing to the independent adjudicator by a duly authorised representative of the objector within 15 days from when the notice of objection is accepted per [PD2.4.7](#).
- PD2.9.5.1 Such an application should provide the justification as to why a waiver is sought and must be accompanied by appropriate evidence to demonstrate exceptional circumstances, including, where available, the objector's most recent audited financial report.
- PD2.9.6 The independent adjudicator shall decide within 5 days, to refuse the application or to waive the whole or part of the costs that would otherwise be attributed to

Fisheries Certification Requirements

the objector. A waiver shall only be granted if the independent adjudicator is satisfied that there are exceptional circumstances justifying such a waiver. The onus is on the objector to demonstrate that there are such exceptional circumstances. In determining whether there are exceptional circumstances, the independent adjudicator shall take into account:

- PD2.9.6.1 Any evidence relating to the financial ability of the objector to meet the costs of the adjudication process.
 - PD2.9.6.2 The impact on the objector's other activities of paying the costs of the adjudication process.
 - PD2.9.6.3 The ability of the objector to raise funds from external sources, including support from other participants in the assessment process, for the purposes of meeting the costs of the adjudication process.
- PD2.9.7 Where the application is refused or where a partial waiver is granted, the objector must sign a costs agreement with the MSC in order for the objection to proceed further.
- PD2.9.8 In the event that, 10 days after the date on which the independent adjudicator notified the parties that the adjudication phase will commence, any objector has not either signed a costs agreement with the MSC or obtained a waiver from the independent adjudicator in accordance with [PD2.9.6](#), the objection in respect of that objector shall be considered to have been dismissed.
- PD2.9.8.1 If there is more than one objector, the independent adjudicator shall nonetheless go on to consider the notice of objection submitted by those objectors that have either signed a costs agreement with the MSC or obtained a waiver from the independent adjudicator in accordance with [PD2.9.6](#).
 - PD2.9.8.2 If the independent adjudicator fails to decide the waiver issue within the time specified by [PD2.9.6](#), and such failure is attributable solely to the independent adjudicator, the time deadline specified in the first sentence of this subsection shall be extended for such limited period as the MSC considers appropriate under the circumstances.
- PD2.9.9 Nothing in this section shall prevent reconsideration by the CAB and consultations pursuant to [PD2.5](#).

PD2.10 General provisions relating to the objections process

- PD2.10.1 Where these procedures require that any notice or document is to be submitted to the independent adjudicator or to the MSC within, or before, a specified time limit, the following provisions shall be applied in order to determine whether the notice or document was served in time:
- PD2.10.1.1 Any references to time shall be, unless it is otherwise specifically stated, British Standard Time or, during daylight savings, British Daylight Time.
 - PD2.10.1.2 "Days" means "working days".
 - PD2.10.1.3 A document served after 5 p.m. or at any time on a Saturday, Sunday or a United Kingdom Bank Holiday will be treated as being served on the next working day.
 - PD2.10.1.4 Where the time limits prescribed in these procedures do not account for statutory holidays in countries where involved stakeholders reside, the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

independent adjudicator may allow an extension of time limits so as to give effect to the intent of these procedures; that all parties have the nominated number of days within which to respond.

PD2.10.1.5 In exceptional circumstances, the independent adjudicator may consider and grant an extension to any of the time limits set out in these procedures.

PD2.10.2 Service shall be effective if made by hand, or by facsimile or by the provision of the information in an electronic document containing a digital signature.

PD2.10.3 Service by hand shall be effective when made. Delivery by facsimile shall be effective when the "transmit confirmation report" confirming the transmission to the recipient's published facsimile number is received by the transmitter. An electronic document is presumed to be received by the addressee when it enters an information system designated or used by the addressee for the purpose of receiving documents of the type sent and it is capable of being retrieved and processed by the addressee.

PD2.10.4 The working language of the MSC is English. Documents shall be submitted in English, or with an accompanying full English translation at the cost of the submitting party.

PD2.10.5 For the avoidance of any doubt, every notice or document issued, or posted on the MSC website, by the independent adjudicator or the MSC, shall bear the date upon which it was so issued or posted and shall also specify the date upon which any subsequent notice, response, submission or document is required to be submitted in accordance with these procedures. Notwithstanding any other provision of these procedures, and regardless of whether a particular document is posted on the MSC website or not, any documentation submitted by any party to an objection, except for documentation relating to costs under [PD2.9](#), shall be available to any other party.

PD2.11 Final documentation of an objection on the MSC website

PD2.11.1 In accordance with [FCR 7.19.1](#), the Public Certification Report shall include all decisions made by the independent adjudicator and shall indicate all the changes to the Final Report and Determination that have been made as a result of the objection.

PD2.11.2 All objections-related documents, except the Public Certification Report, will be removed from the MSC website 6 months after the completion of the assessment.

End of Annex PD

Annex PE: Expedited assessment for extension of scope – Normative !!

PE1 Scope

- PE1.1 The requirements of this annex shall apply to all expedited assessments for the purpose of extending an existing fishery certificate.

PE2 Assessment Process

- PE2.1 Prior to full announcement the CAB shall submit a statement to the MSC announcing its intent to undertake an expedited assessment.
- PE2.1.1 The statement shall include the following: ☐
- PE2.1.1.1 Rationale justifying the outcome of the gap analysis described in 7.22.3;
 - PE2.1.1.2 The assessment components held in common between the two fisheries;
 - PE2.1.1.3 The assessment components that will be assessed in the expedited audit; and
 - PE2.1.1.4 Rationale confirming if there are any potential implications for other PIs.
- PE2.2 The expedited assessment shall be undertaken including at least the following steps:
- PE2.2.1 The CAB shall announce at least one auditor meeting the criteria in Annex PC, [Table PC2](#).
- PE2.2.1.1 The auditor shall also meet the criteria in [Table PC3](#) rows 1–4 appropriate to the assessment components to be re-assessed.
- PE2.2.2 The CAB shall conduct the expedited assessment either during a special on-site expedited audit or during a regular on-site surveillance audit.
- PE2.2.2.1 The CAB shall notify stakeholders and the MSC specifically identifying that the scope of the expedited assessment or regular surveillance audit will include an extension of scope of the certificate to another fishery.
 - b. The CAB shall identify in the notification which assessment components will be assessed in the expedited assessment.
- PE2.2.3 CABs shall evaluate the assessment components using all requirements in section SA2 following the process as described in FCR7.10, 7.11, and 7.12. !!
- PE2.2.3.1 If the stock under assessment overlaps with another fishery or fisheries, the harmonisation steps in [Annex PB](#) shall be followed.
 - PE2.2.3.2 If there are any changes in the other assessment components, the relevant PI shall be re-scored.

PE3 Reporting

- PE3.1 CABs shall produce the following reports using the appropriate templates and follow procedures outlined in sections 7.13 through to 7.19:
- c. Preliminary Draft Report for client review;
 - d. Peer Review Draft Report;
 - e. Public Comment Draft Report;
 - f. Final report; and
 - g. Public Certification Report.
- PE3.1.1 When the expedited assessment is taking place during a regular surveillance audit for the certified fishery, separate reports shall be produced for the expedited assessment according to sections 7.13 through to [FCR 7.19.1](#):
- PE3.1.2 Sections 1, 2, 3.1-3.3, 4, 5, and 6 of the “Full Assessment Reporting Template” shall, where appropriate, be populated from the previous Public Certification Report
- PE3.1.3 The minimum number of peer reviewers for expedited audits shall be one.
- PE3.1.3.1 All other requirements for peer review outlined in section [FCR7.14](#) shall apply³.

PE4 Certification Decision and Certificate Issue

- PE4.1 CABs shall make a determination regarding the assessment outcome and notify stakeholders of the Final Report.
- PE4.2 An objection may be lodged in conformity with the MSC Objections Procedure found in [Annex PD](#) during a period of fifteen working days from the posting of the Final Report and determination on the MSC website.
- PE4.3 If it is determined that the scores from the assessed PIs in combination with the scores obtained for the commonly held components with the existing certificate meet the requirements for certification, the CAB shall:
- PE4.3.1 Include the new UoA within the scope of the existing valid fishery certificate.
- PE4.3.2 Follow the requirements on certification decision and certification issue in [FCR 7.20](#).
- PE4.4 If the determination is that the fishery has not met the requirements for certification, the CAB shall report this in the Final Report and Public Certification Report and shall make no changes to the existing certificate’s scope, which shall remain valid.

End of Annex PE

³ CABs shall apply section CL3.2 of the MSC Certification Requirements version 1.3 until the MSC publicly announces on the MSC website and notifies CABs that the Peer Review College has been established to undertake the activities detailed in section PE3.1.1.3 of version 2.0.

Annex PF: Risk-Based Framework – Normative

PF1 Introduction to the Risk-Based Framework (RBF)

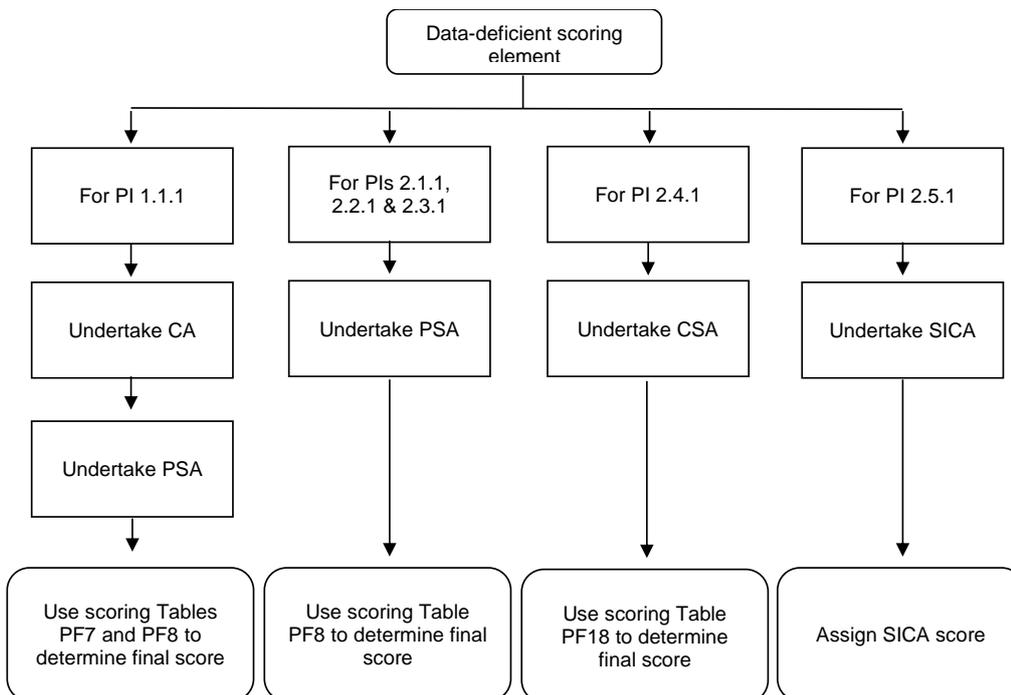
PF1.1 Applying the RBF in scoring different PIs

PF1.1.1 There are four methodologies within the RBF: 

- a. Consequence Analysis (CA);
- b. Productivity Susceptibility Analysis (PSA);
- c. Consequence Spatial Analysis (CSA);
- d. Scale Intensity Consequence Analysis (SICA).

PF1.1.2 The team shall verify that they can use the RBF for a particular PI and shall identify any implications for other PIs using [Figure PF1](#) and [Table PF1](#) prior to proceeding. 

Figure PF1: How to apply the RBF in scoring



Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table PF1: RBF methodologies PIs and implications for non-RBF PIs

PI	RBF	Notes
1.1.1 Stock status	Yes	CA and PSA shall both be undertaken if scoring using the RBF.
1.1.2 Stock rebuilding	No	If the RBF is used to score PI 1.1.1, this PI is not scored.
1.2.1 Harvest strategy	No	Score as normal.
1.2.2 Harvest control tools and rules	No	Score as normal.
1.2.3 Information/monitoring	No	Score as normal.
1.2.4 Assessment of stock status	No	If RBF is used to score PI 1.1.1, a default score of 80 shall be awarded to this PI.
2.1.1 Primary species outcome	Yes	PSA alone shall be undertaken if using the RBF.
2.1.2 Primary species management strategy	No	Score as normal.
2.1.3 Primary species information	No	If the RBF is used to score PI 2.1.1, use the RBF alternative within scoring issue (a).
2.2.1 Secondary species outcome	Yes	PSA alone shall be undertaken if using the RBF.
2.2.2 Secondary species management strategy	No	Score as normal.
2.2.3 Secondary species information	No	If the RBF is used to score PI 2.2.1, use the RBF alternative within scoring issue (a).
2.3.1 ETP Species outcome	Yes	PSA alone shall be undertaken if using the RBF.
2.3.2 ETP Species management strategy	No	Score as normal.
2.3.3 ETP Species information	No	If the RBF is used to score PI 2.3.1, use the RBF alternative within scoring issue (a).
2.4.1 Habitats outcome	Yes	CSA alone shall be undertaken if using the RBF.
2.4.2 Habitats management strategy	No	Score as normal.
2.4.3 Habitats information	No	If the RBF is used to score PI 2.4.1, use the RBF alternative within scoring issues (a) and (b).
2.5.1 Ecosystem outcome	Yes	SICA alone shall be undertaken if using the RBF.
2.5.2 Ecosystem management strategy	No	Score as normal.
2.5.3 Ecosystem information	No	Score as normal.
Principle 3 PIs	No	The RBF shall not be used to score any PIs within Principle 3.

PF2 Stakeholder Involvement in RBF

PF2.1 Announcing the RBF !!

PF2.1.1 If the team determines that the RBF is to be used, the team shall:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- PF2.1.1.1 Describe and justify the use of the RBF using the form "[Use of the RBF in a fishery assessment form](#)".
- PF2.1.1.2 Send the form to the MSC for publication on its website.
- PF2.1.1.3 Using the form, notify stakeholders of the proposal to use the RBF.
- PF2.1.1.4 Allow at least 30 days for comment.
- PF2.1.1.5 Consider all stakeholder comments, recording why each comment has been accepted or rejected.
- PF2.1.1.6 Review the decision to use the RBF (in light of those comments).
- PF2.1.1.7 Notify the MSC if a decision is made not to use the RBF for any PI for which it was previously announced.
- PF2.1.1.8 Repeat steps PF2.1.1.1 to PF2.1.1.7 if the team determines that the RBF is to be used for PIs not previously announced.

PF2.2 Information gathering

- PF2.2.1 Prior to the site visit, the team shall gather information needed for scoring including: 
 - a. Management arrangements in place together with any specific strategies, such as bycatch mitigation or recovery strategies. 
 - b. Descriptions of any monitoring strategies in place, including at-sea observer programmes (coverage, duration, objectives).
 - c. Maps of:
 - i. The distribution of fishing effort within the jurisdictional boundaries of the fishery.
 - ii. The distribution of all fishing effort on the target stock outside the fishery being certified.
 - iii. Species, habitat and community distributions (including depth ranges).
 - d. When using the CA, information needed to:
 - i. Assist in identifying the most vulnerable subcomponent for a species.
 - ii. Score the consequence of fishing activity on the species.
 - e. When using the PSA, information needed for scoring:
 - i. The productivity attributes of each species.
 - ii. The susceptibility attributes of the species.
 - f. When using the CSA, information needed to: 
 - i. Define habitat(s)
 - ii. Score the consequence attributes of the UoA's habitat(s)
 - iii. Score the spatial attributes of the UoA's habitat(s).
 - g. When using the SICA, information needed for scoring:
 - i. The spatial scale of the fishery on the ecosystem
 - ii. The temporal scale of the fishery on the ecosystem.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- iii. The intensity of the fishery on the ecosystem
 - iv. The consequence of the activity on the ecosystem.
- PF2.2.2 The information shall be used to inform the stakeholder meetings and should be made available to attendees where possible. Information can also be collected during the site visit, and post-site visit as necessary.
- PF2.2.3 The team shall use all the data available as part of the assessment and reflect the analysis of this information when scoring the fishery.

PF2.3 Stakeholder consultation

- PF2.3.1 The team shall carry out a stakeholder consultation process to gather data and to seek expert opinions (see section 7.8).
- PF2.3.2 The CAB shall inform stakeholders of the use of the RBF in the fishery assessment by including in communication, as a minimum, text equivalent to the following: ☐
- PF2.3.2.1 “A key purpose of the site visit is to collect information and speak to stakeholders with an interest in the fishery. For those parts of the assessment involving the MSC’s Risk Based Framework (RBF, see <http://www.msc.org/about-us/standards/methodologies/fam/msc-risk-based-framework>), we will be using a stakeholder-driven, qualitative and semi-quantitative analysis during the site visit. To achieve a robust outcome from this consultative approach, we rely heavily on participation of a broad range of stakeholders with a balance of knowledge of the fishery. We encourage any stakeholders with experience or knowledge of the fishery to participate in these meetings.”
- PF2.3.3 The team shall plan the stakeholder consultation strategy to ensure effective participation from a range of stakeholders. ☐
- PF2.3.3.1 A range of stakeholder groups shall be consulted. !!
- PF2.3.3.2 Stakeholders shall be identified early in the assessment process. !!
- PF2.3.3.3 Meetings shall be organised to allow for the highest participation of stakeholders. ☐
- PF2.3.3.4 Meetings shall be structured to encourage engagement amongst stakeholders. ☐
- PF2.3.3.5 Where different language groups, educational/vocabulary levels or cultural behaviours are present, the team shall consider separate consultations tailored to those specific interest groups. ☐
- PF2.3.3.6 Stakeholder consultation shall be conducted in a language that can be understood by all stakeholders. ☐
- h. Any materials required for the stakeholder consultation shall be prepared in language understood by all participants.
- PF2.3.3.7 Background information shall be made available on the fishery ahead of the meeting so that the stakeholder consultation process is focused on providing information required for the RBF scoring process, while allowing participants to express their expert opinions. ☐

Fisheries Certification Requirements

PF2.3.3.8 Participatory tools shall be used, where appropriate, to increase the effectiveness of the consultation. ☑

PF2.3.4 This information shall be used to inform the scoring of the CA, PSA, CSA and SICA.

PF2.3.5 The team shall be responsible for scoring PIs. ☑

PF3 Conducting a Consequence Analysis (CA)

PF3.1 Preparation

PF3.1.1 The team shall conduct a CA for each data-deficient species identified under PI 1.1.1 (target species). !!

PF3.1.2 A CA shall only be conducted where some qualitative or quantitative data exist from which trends in one or more of the four key consequence subcomponents listed in Table PF2 can be identified.

PF3.1.2.1 Where there are no indicator data as defined in PF3.1.2, the fishery cannot be assessed against the MSC standard. ☑

PF3.1.3 The team shall use the CA scoring template in Table PF2, reproduced in the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template” <http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents> to present the scores and rationales of the CA.

PF3.2 Stakeholder involvement within CA ☑

PF3.2.1 The team shall use input from stakeholders to:

- Provide information suitable for the qualitative evaluation of the risks that the fishing activity poses to the species included in the risk assessment.
- Assist in identifying the most vulnerable subcomponent for a species.
- Assist in scoring the consequence of fishing for a species.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table PF2: CA Scoring Template

Principle 1: Stock status outcome	Scoring element	Consequence subcomponents	Consequence score
		Population size	
		Reproductive capacity	
		Age/size/sex structure	
		Geographic range	
Rationale for most vulnerable subcomponent			
Rationale for consequence score			

Fisheries Certification Requirements

PF3.3 Determine the CA score

PF3.3.1 Scoring shall be undertaken only for the subcomponent (population size, reproductive capacity, age/size/sex structure or geographic range) on which the team decides that the fishing activity is having the most impact.

PF3.3.2 The team shall draw on indicator and trend data and use this data in working with stakeholders at the CA consultation meeting(s) to assign a score for the consequence of the fishing activity on the subcomponent on which the fishery is having the most impact, using

Table PF3. !!

PF3.3.3 The team shall interpret the terms 'insignificant change', 'possible detectable change' and 'detectable change' as follows:

PF3.3.3.1 'Insignificant change' shall mean that changes in the subcomponents are undetectable or if detectable, these are of such a low magnitude that the impact of the fishing activity cannot be differentiated from the natural variability for this population.

PF3.3.3.2 'Possible detectable change' shall mean that changes are detected and can be reasonably attributable to the fishing activity, but these are of such a low magnitude that the impact of the fishery is considered to be minimal on the population size and dynamics.

PF3.3.3.3 'Detectable change' shall mean that changes to the subcomponent can be attributed to the fishing activity and changes are of such magnitude that cannot be considered as minimal.

PF3.3.4 Where there is no agreement between stakeholders, the team shall use the consequence category with the lowest score (60, 80 or 100).

PF3.3.5 The team shall fail the fishery if the consequence of the activity is determined to be at higher risk than 60 level in

Table PF3.

PF3.3.6 The team shall take the final CA score into section PF5.

Table PF3: CA Scoring of subcomponents

Subcomponent	Consequence Category			
	100	80	60	Fail
Population size	Insignificant change to population size/growth rate (r). Change is unlikely to be detectable against natural variability for this population.	Possible detectable change in size/growth rate (r) but minimal impact on population size and none on dynamics.	Full exploitation rate but long-term recruitment dynamics not adversely damaged.	Consequence is higher-risk than 60 level.
Reproductive capacity	Insignificant change in reproductive capacity. Unlikely to be detectable against natural	Possible detectable change in reproductive capacity but minimal impact on	Detectable change in reproductive capacity. Impact on population dynamics at	

Fisheries Certification Requirements

	variability for this population	population dynamics.	maximum sustainable level, long-term recruitment dynamics not adversely affected.
Age/size/sex structure	Insignificant change in age/size/sex structure. Unlikely to be detectable against natural variability for this population.	Possible detectable change in age/size/sex structure but minimal impact on population dynamics.	Detectable change in age/size/sex structure. Impact on population dynamics at maximum sustainable level, long-term recruitment dynamics not adversely affected.
Geographic range	Insignificant change in geographic range. Unlikely to be detectable against natural variability for this population.	Possible detectable change in geographic range but minimal impact on population distribution and none on dynamics.	Detectable change in geographic range up to 10% of original distribution due to fishing activities.

PF4 Conducting a Productivity Susceptibility Analysis (PSA)

PF4.1 Preparation

- PF4.1.1 The team shall use the “MSC RBF Worksheet” found at <http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents/forms-and-templates> to calculate PSA scores.
- PF4.1.1.1 The score for each component of the PSA shall be recorded in the “MSC RBF Worksheet”.
- PF4.1.2 The scores and rationales for each component shall be documented in the PSA rationale tables in the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template” found at <http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents/forms-and-templates>
- PF4.1.3 The team shall conduct a PSA for each data-deficient scoring element identified within a given PI, unless the options in PF4.1.4 or PF4.1.5 are chosen.
- PF4.1.4 The team may elect to conduct a PSA on “main” species only when evaluating PI 2.1.1 or 2.2.1.
- PF4.1.4.1 If the team decides to consider “main” species only, final PI score shall be adjusted downward according to clause [PF5.3.2](#).
- PF4.1.5 When assessing a large number of species under PI 2.1.1 or 2.2.1, the team may elect to group species according to similar taxonomies and undertake a reduced number of PSAs. If the team decide to group species, it shall:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- PF4.1.5.1 List all species and group them according to similar taxonomy. !!
- PF4.1.5.2 Identify at least the two most at-risk species within each taxonomic group. The decision of which the species are most at risk shall be determined by:
!!
- Selecting the species with the highest risk score when scoring the productivity part of the PSA for all species; and
 - Working with stakeholders to identify qualitatively which species are most at risk within each group.
- PF4.1.5.3 If there are several species that appear to have a similar level of risk and the team and stakeholders cannot agree on which one is most at-risk for a given PI, a PSA shall be conducted on all of them.
- PF4.1.5.4 The process of grouping species and choosing the species most at risk within each group shall be well documented and the choice justified in the assessment documentation.
- PF4.1.5.5 The representative most at-risk species shall be included in the PSA and will determine the score for the species group. ☑
- PF4.1.5.6 If the team decide to group species according to similar taxonomies, the final PI score shall be adjusted downwards according to clause [PF 5.3.2](#). ☑

PF4.2 Stakeholder involvement within the PSA

- PF4.2.1 The team shall use input from stakeholders to:
- Assist in the identification of species that are affected by the UoA.
 - Assist in the scoring of the susceptibility attributes within the PSA.

PF4.3 PSA Step 1: Score the Productivity attributes ☑

- PF4.3.1 The team shall score the productivity of each data-deficient species. !!
- PF4.3.2 The team shall score each productivity attribute on a three-point risk scale: low (3), medium (2) or high (1), using the cut-offs in Table PF4. !!
- The average maximum size and average size at maturity attributes shall be scored in non-invertebrate species only.
 - The density dependence attribute shall be scored in invertebrate species only.
 - The team shall enter the three-point scores into the “MSC RBF Worksheet” to calculate the overall productivity score.
 - Where there is limited information available for a productivity attribute, the more precautionary score shall be awarded.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table PF4: PSA Productivity attributes and scores

Productivity determinant	High productivity (Low risk, score=1)	Medium productivity (medium risk, score=2)	High productivity (high risk, score=3)
Average age at maturity	<5 years	5-15 years	>15 years
Average maximum age	<10 years	10-25 years	>25 years
Fecundity	>20,000 eggs per year	100-20,000 eggs per year	<100 eggs per year
Average maximum size (not to be used when scoring invertebrate species)	<100 cm	100-300 cm	>300 cm
Average size at maturity (not to be used when scoring invertebrate species)	<40 cm	40-200 cm	>200 cm
Reproductive strategy	Broadcast spawner	Demersal egg layer	Live bearer
Trophic Level	<2.75	2.75-3.25	>3.25
Density dependence !! (to be used when scoring invertebrate species only)	Compensatory dynamics at low population size demonstrated or likely	No dependant or compensatory dynamics demonstrated or likely	Dependant dynamics at low population sizes (Allee effects) demonstrated or likely

PF4.4 PSA Step 2: Score the susceptibility attributes

- PF4.4.1 The team shall score the susceptibility of each data-deficient species. !!
- PF4.4.2 The team shall score 4 susceptibility attributes (areal overlap (availability), encounterability, selectivity and post-capture mortality) on a 3-point risk scale: high (3), medium (2) or low (1), using the cut-offs in [Table PF5](#).
- PF4.4.2.1 The team shall enter the 3-point scores into the “MSC RBF Worksheet” to calculate the overall susceptibility score.
- PF4.4.2.2 Where there is limited information available to score a susceptibility attribute, the more precautionary score shall be awarded.
- PF4.4.3 When scoring susceptibility, the team shall take into account the impacts of fisheries other than the UoA according to the following requirements:
- PF4.4.3.1 When scoring PI 1.1.1, all fisheries impacting the given target stock shall be identified and listed separately. 
- PF4.4.3.2 When scoring PI 2.1.1, all MSC UoAs impacting each main primary species shall be identified and listed separately. 
- PF4.4.3.3 When scoring PI 2.2.1, if the UoA has main species with catches at 10% or more of the total catch by weight of the UoA, all MSC UoAs having a catch of the same species that is 10% or more of the total catch of the UoAs shall be identified and listed separately.
- a. If the UoA does not have main species with catches at 10% or more of

Fisheries Certification Requirements

the total catch by weight of the UoA, the team may elect to conduct the PSA on the UoA only.

PF4.4.3.4 When scoring PI 2.3.1, only the UoA shall be taken into account.

Table PF5: PSA Susceptibility attributes and scores

Susceptibility attribute	Low susceptibility (Low risk, score=1)	Medium susceptibility (medium risk, score=2)	High susceptibility (high risk, score=3)
Areal overlap (availability) Overlap of the fishing effort with a species concentration of the stock	<10% overlap	10-30% overlap	>30% overlap
Encounterability The position of the stock/species within the water column relative to the fishing gear, and the position of the stock/species within the habitat relative to the position of the gear	Low overlap with fishing gear (low encounterability)	Medium overlap with fishing gear	High overlap with fishing gear (high encounterability) Default score for target species (P1)
Selectivity of gear type Potential of the gear to retain species	a Individuals < size at maturity are rarely caught b Individuals < size at maturity can escape or avoid gear	a Individuals < size at maturity are regularly caught b Individuals < half the size at maturity can escape or avoid gear	a Individuals < size at maturity are frequently caught b Individuals < half the size at maturity are retained by gear
Post-capture mortality (PCM) The chance that, if captured, a species would be released and that it would be in a condition permitting subsequent survival	Evidence of majority released postcapture and survival	Evidence of some released postcapture and survival	Retained species or majority dead when released Default score for retained species (P1 or P2)

PF4.4.4 Where the impacts of fisheries other than the UoA are taken into account each fishery affecting the given stock shall be identified and listed separately. 

PF4.4.4.1 To account for impact of other fisheries on a given stock the team shall determine the contribution of each fishery on the total catch of the given stock.

- a. If precise catch data are available, weights for each fishery shall be assigned according to known proportions of total catch of the given stock. 
- b. If catch data are not available, a qualitative information-gathering process shall be used and documented to apply a weight to each fishery according to [to](#)

Fisheries Certification Requirements

c. Table PF6. ■

PF4.4.5 A weighted average of PSA scores for each fishery affecting the given stock shall be calculated in order to derive the final overall PSA score except in the following case:

PF4.4.5.1 If catch data cannot be estimated for a particular fishery (gear type) using either qualitative or quantitative data, the susceptibility score for the overall PSA shall be based on the attributes of the gear with the highest susceptibility score.

Table PF6: Weighting of fisheries

% contribution of catch	Weighting score
0–25	1
25–50	2
50–75	3
75–100	4

PF4.4.6 The team shall score areal overlap (availability) as follows: !!

PF4.4.6.1 The team shall generate areal overlap scores after consideration of the overlap of the fishing effort with the distribution of the stock.

PF4.4.6.2 Where the impacts of fisheries other than the UoA are taken into account, the areal overlap shall be scored as the combined overlap of all listed fisheries with the areal concentration of a stock.

PF4.4.6.3 The resulting areal overlap risk scores shall be entered into those cells in the “MSC RBF Worksheet” for all listed fisheries.

PF4.4.6.4 The scoring of areal overlap shall consider the concentration of species and the overlap of the fishing gear with the concentration species. ■

PF4.4.6.5 For species with good distribution maps, availability areal overlap shall be scored using detailed mapping analysis: the amount of overlap between fishing effort and species stock distribution.

PF4.4.6.6 For species without good distribution maps, stakeholder generated maps may be used.

PF4.4.7 The team shall score encounterability as follows: !!

PF4.4.7.1 The team shall generate encounterability scores after consideration of the likelihood that a species will encounter fishing gear that is deployed within the geographic range of that species.

PF4.4.7.2 Where the impacts of fisheries other than the UoA are taken into account, encounterability shall be scored as the combined encounterability of all listed fisheries.

PF4.4.7.3 The resulting encounterability risk scores shall be entered into those cells in the “MSC RBF Worksheet” for all listed fisheries.

PF4.4.7.4 The scoring of encounterability shall consider the concentration of species and the overlap of the fishing gear with the concentration species.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

PF4.4.7.5 The deployment of fishing gear in relation to each species adult habitat is the main aspect to be considered for each species.

PF4.4.8 The team shall score selectivity as follows: !!

PF4.4.8.1 The team shall generate a selectivity score for each gear type after consideration of the potential of gear to capture or retain the species that encounters the fishing gear.

PF4.4.8.2 The selectivity risk scores for each combination of gear type and species shall be determined individually, and entered into the "MSC RBF Worksheet".

PF4.4.8.3 Scores for gear selectivity shall be assigned using the two categories specified in Table PF5. ☑

a. Where elements (a) and (b) indicate different risk scores, the team shall assign a score as the average of the two categories, rounded up to the nearest whole number on the 1:3 scale.

PF4.4.8.4 Terms 'rarely', 'regularly' and 'frequently' in Table PF5 shall be interpreted as follows:

a. 'Rarely' means that the capture of individuals smaller than the size at maturity occurs in less than 5% few gear deployments.

b. 'Regularly' means that the capture of individuals smaller than the size at maturity occurs in 5% to 50% of the gear deployments.

c. 'Frequently' means that the capture of individuals smaller than the size at maturity occurs in more than 50% of gear deployments.

PF4.4.9 The team shall score PCM as follows:

PF4.4.9.1 The team shall use its knowledge of species biology and fishing practice together with independent field observations to assess the chance that, if captured, a species would be released and that it would be in a condition to permit subsequent survival. !!

PF4.4.9.2 The PCM risk scores for each combination of gear type and species shall be determined individually, and entered into the "MSC RBF Worksheet".

PF4.4.9.3 In the absence of observer data or other verified field observations made during commercial fishing operations that indicate the individuals are released alive and post-release survivorship is high, the default value for the PCM of all species shall be high.

PF4.4.9.4 The team may reduce the PCM score from the default score in situations where:

a. A high score has been allocated for the selectivity; and

b. A large portion of animals are returned alive and survive the encounter.

PF4.4.10 The team may adjust the susceptibility scores if additional information regarding an attribute that justifies a change in score is available and the source of data is appropriate to the fishery(ies) or region(s). ☑

PF4.4.10.1 The team shall record the rationale for all changes made.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

PF4.5 PSA Step 3: Determine the PSA score and equivalent MSC score

PF4.5.1 The team shall use the “MSC RBF Worksheet” to calculate the overall productivity and susceptibility risk scores (PSA score) and the equivalent MSC scores for each scoring element. 

PF5 Scoring the Fishery Using the RBF for Species Performance Indicators (PIs 1.1.1, 2.1.1, 2.2.1 and 2.3.1)

PF5.1 Scoring species PIs

PF5.1.1 When scoring PI 1.1.1, both the CA and PSA shall be used to produce an overall score for each scoring element.

PF5.1.1.1 The overall score for the scoring element shall be assigned according to the rules in [Table PF7](#). 

Table PF7: Rules for use of CA or PSA scores

CA	PSA	Rule
80 or 100	≥80	Score awarded shall be at the midway point between CA and PSA scores.
80 or 100	≥60 and <80	Score awarded for PI shall be less than 80, as near to the midway point between CA and PSA scores as possible.
80 or 100	<60	Fail
60	≥80	Score awarded for PI shall be less than 80, as near to the midway point between CA and PSA scores as possible.
60	≥60 and <80	Score awarded for PI shall be at the midway point between CA and PSA scores.
60	<60	Fail
<60	≥80	Fail
<60	≥60 and <80	Fail
<60	<60	Fail

PF5.1.2 When scoring PIs 2.1.1, 2.2.1 and 2.3.1, the PSA alone shall be used to produce an overall score for each scoring element.

PF5.2 Combining scoring elements

PF5.2.1 In cases where there is only one scoring element for the PI, the team shall consider this as the overall MSC score.

PF5.2.2 In cases where there are multiple scoring elements and they are all ‘data-

Fisheries Certification Requirements

deficient' (RBF), the team shall derive a final MSC score by applying rules in Table PF8. 

- PF5.2.3 In cases where there is a combination of both 'data-deficient' (RBF) and species scored using default tree, the team shall consider all scoring elements for this PI to derive a final MSC score by using [Table PF8](#).

Table PF8: Combining multiple species scores

MSC Score	Requirement to gain score
none	Any scoring elements within a PI that fail to reach a score of 60 represent a failure against the MSC fisheries standard and no score shall be assigned.
60	All elements have a score of 60, and only 60.
65	All elements score at least 60; a few achieve higher scores, approaching or exceeding 80, but most do not reach 80.
70	All elements score at least 60; some achieve higher scores, approaching or exceeding 80; but some fail to achieve 80 and require intervention action
75	All elements score at least 60; most achieve higher scores, approaching or exceeding 80; only a few fail to achieve 80 and require intervention action
80	All elements score 80
85	All elements score at least 80; a few achieve higher scores, but most do not approach 100
90	All elements score at least 80; some achieve higher scores approaching 100, but some do not.
95	All elements score at least 80; most achieve higher scores approaching 100; only a few fail to score at or very close to 100
100	All elements score 100.

PF5.3 Adjusting PIs scores

- PF5.3.1 Where no additional information exists to bring to bear on the PI, the team shall apply the score directly to the PI with the accompanying scoring template and a rationale provided as justification.
- PF5.3.1.1 If there is additional information that justifies modifying the MSC score either upward or downward by a maximum of 10 points, such information shall be used to reach the final MSC score for the PI. 
- a. The team shall use all information that is available on the UoA to inform the assessment.
- b. The team shall provide the justification for any score modification.
- PF5.3.2 The final PI score shall be capped by the team in cases where only a subset of the total number of species has been evaluated.
- PF5.3.2.1 If the team has only considered "main" species in the PSA analysis, the final PI score shall not be greater than 80.
- PF5.3.2.2 If the team has opted to use the species grouping option, the final PI score shall not be greater than 80.
- PF5.3.3 The CA, PSA scores (equivalent MSC score) and overall MSC scores shall be

Fisheries Certification Requirements

recorded in the Scoring Tables in the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template”.

PF6 Setting Conditions Using the RBF for Species PIs

PF6.1 PIs 1.1.1, 2.1.1, 2.2.1 & 2.3.1

- PF6.1.1 Where any score is less than 80 the team shall set a condition on that PI.
- PF6.1.2 If a condition is triggered when assessing a PI using the CA or PSA, the team shall make sure that the client action plan proposed by the fishery is capable of raising the score to 80, addressing all the species for which the score falls below 80, and without causing additional associated problems for other species. ☑
- PF6.1.3 If the action plan is not capable of raising the CA or PSA score to 80 within a suitable timeframe, the team shall not allow a fishery to use the RBF for this species in subsequent MSC assessments. ☑
 - PF6.1.3.1 In such cases, the team shall raise a condition on the PI that there shall be information collected and analysis completed when there is a direct measure of stock status that can be compared with biologically-based reference points by the time of re-assessment.

PF7 Conducting a Consequence Spatial Analysis (CSA)



PF7.1 Preparation

- PF7.1.1 The team shall use the “MSC RBF Worksheet” found at <http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents/forms-and-templates> to calculate CSA scores.
- PF7.1.2 The scores and rationales for each scoring element (habitat) shall be documented in the CSA rationale tables in the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template” found at <http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents/forms-and-templates>.
- PF7.1.3 The team shall use the CSA to score the outcome PI 2.4.1 when the available information is not adequate to score the default assessment tree. ☑
- PF7.1.4 The team shall conduct the CSA for each data-deficient UoA.
- PF7.1.5 The team may elect to conduct the CSA on “main” habitats only. ☑
 - PF7.1.5.1 If the team decides to consider “main” habitats only, the final PI score shall be adjusted downward according to clause [PF7.6.4](#).
- PF7.1.6 Expert judgement shall be applied throughout the CSA.
- PF7.1.7 When scoring, the team shall consider the full range of possible interactions, and a precautionary approach shall be taken, scoring the highest possible risk score of the relevant ranges, if: ☑

Fisheries Certification Requirements

PF7.1.7.1 Possible scores from fishing activity or impact cut across more than one threshold range or more than one proxy range.

PF7.1.7.2 Gear has been modified in a way that could increase its impact.

PF7.2 Stakeholder involvement within the CSA

PF7.2.1 The team shall use input from stakeholders to:

PF7.2.1.1 Assist in the identification of the habitat(s) that are impacted by the UoA.

PF7.2.1.2 Assist in the scoring of the consequence and spatial attributes within the CSA.

PF7.2.2 The team shall be responsible for scoring the PI.

PF7.2.2.1 Stakeholders do not have to reach consensus.

PF7.3 CSA Step 1: Define the habitat(s)

PF7.3.1 The team shall list and define each habitat associated with the “managed area” (i.e., each habitat in the full area managed by the governance body(s) responsible for fisheries management in the area(s) where the UoA operates). 

PF7.3.1.1 SA3.13.5 and the subclauses shall apply here.

PF7.3.1.2 Each habitat within the UoA shall be treated as a scoring element.

PF7.3.2 Habitats in the UoA shall be categorised on the basis of their substratum, geomorphology, and (characteristic) biota (SGB) characteristics ([Table PF9: SGB habitat nomenclature \(modified from Williams et al., 2011\)](#)). For example, one habitat may be defined as “Medium-Outcrop-Large erect.”

PF7.3.3 The biome, sub-biome, and feature shall also be listed ([Table PF10](#)). 

Table PF9: SGB habitat nomenclature (modified from Williams et al., 2011⁴)

Substratum	Geomorphology	Biota
Fine (mud, sand) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mud (0.1 mm) • Fine sediments(0.1-1 mm) • Coarse sediments (1-4 mm) 	Flat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Simple surface structure • Unrippled/flat • Current rippled/directed scour • Wave rippled 	Large erect Dominated by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large and/or erect sponges • Solitary large sponges • Solitary sedentary/sessile epifauna (e.g., ascidians/ bryozoans) • Crinoids • Corals • Mixed large or erect communities
Medium	Low relief	Small erect/

⁴ Williams, A., Dowdney, J., Smith, A.D.M., Hobday, A.J., and Fuller, M., 2011. Evaluating impacts of fishing on benthic habitats: A risk assessment framework applied to Australian fisheries. *Fisheries Research* 112(3):154-167.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gravel/pebble (4-60 mm) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Irregular topography with mounds and depressions Rough surface structure Debris flow/rubble banks 	encrusting/burrowing Dominated by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Small, low-encrusting sponges Small, low-standing sponges Consolidated (e.g., mussels) and unconsolidated bivalve beds (e.g., scallops) Mixed small/low-encrusting invertebrate communities Infaunal bioturbators
Large <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cobble/boulders (60 mm - 3 m) Igneous, metamorphic, or sedimentary bedrock (>3 m) 	Outcrop <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subcrop (rock protrusions from surrounding sediment <1 m) Low-relief outcrop (<1 m) 	No fauna or flora <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No apparent epifauna, infauna, or flora
Solid reef of biogenic origin <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Biogenic (substratum of biogenic calcium carbonate) Depositions of skeletal material forming coral reef base 	High relief <ul style="list-style-type: none"> High outcrop (protrusion of consolidated substrate >1 m) Rugged surface structure 	Flora Dominated by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Seagrass species

Table PF10: List of example biomes, sub-biomes, and features (modified from Williams et al., 2011)

Biome	Sub-biome	Feature
Coast (0-25 m) Shelf (25-200 m) Slope (200-2,000 m) Abyss (>2,000 m)	Coastal margin (<25 m) Inner shelf (25-100 m) Outer shelf (100-200 m) Upper slope (200-700 m) Mid-slope (700-1,500 m)	Seamounts Canyons Abyss Shelf break (~150-300 m) Sediment plains Sediment terraces Escarpments Plains of scattered reef Large rocky banks

PF7.4 CSA Step 2: Score the consequence attributes (Table PF11)

Table PF11: Consequence attributes (modified from Williams et al., 2011)

Habitat-productivity attributes	Gear-habitat interaction attributes
1. Regeneration of biota 2. Natural disturbance	1. Removability of biota 2. Removability of substratum 3. Substratum hardness 4. Substratum ruggedness

Fisheries Certification Requirements

	5. Seabed slope
--	-----------------

PF7.4.1 Regeneration of biota

- PF7.4.1.1 This attribute shall be scored on the basis of the rate of the recovery of biota associated with the habitat using information on age, growth, and recolonisation of biota where available ([Table PF12](#)).
- PF7.4.1.2 Where information on age, growth, and recolonisation of associated biota is not available for the UoA, reference shall be made to comparable data from studies elsewhere. In the absence of such comparable studies, the proxies in [Table PF12](#) shall be used as a surrogate for accumulation and recovery time.
- PF7.4.1.3 Record the “regeneration of biota” score for each habitat in the “MSC RBF Worksheet”.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table PF12: Scoring regeneration of biota based on age, growth, and recolonisation of biota (modified from Williams et al., 2011)

Sub-biome	Using available data			Using surrogate when data are not available					
	Annual	Less than decadal	More than decadal	No epifauna	Small erect/encrusting	Large erect (sponges)	Large erect (ascidians and bryozoans)	Seagrass communities/mixed faunal communities/hard corals	Crinoids/solitary/mixed communities/hard and soft corals
Coastal margin (<25 m)	1	2	3	1	1	1	1	2	1
Inner shelf (25-100 m)	2	3	4	2	2	2	2	2	2
Outer shelf (100-200 m)	1	2	3	1	1	3	2	3	3
Upper slope (200-700 m)	1	2	3	1	1	3	3	3	3
Mid-slope (700-1,500 m)	1	2	3	1	2	3	3	3	3

Fisheries Certification Requirements

PF7.4.2 Natural disturbance

- PF7.4.2.1 This attribute shall be scored on the basis of the natural disturbance that is assumed to occur at the particular depth zone in which the habitat and fishing activity occurs ([Table PF13](#)).
- PF7.4.2.2 Where information on disturbance is unavailable, proxies shall be used as outlined in [Table PF13](#).
- PF7.4.2.3 Record the “natural disturbance” score for each habitat in the “MSC RBF Worksheet”.

Table PF13: Scoring natural disturbance (modified from Williams et al., 2011)

Attribute	Score		
	1	2	3
Natural disturbance	Regular or severe natural disturbance	Irregular or moderate natural disturbance	No natural disturbance
Natural disturbance (in absence of information)	Coastal margin and shallow inner shelf (<60 m)	Deep inner shelf and outer shelf (60-200 m)	Slope (>200 m)

PF7.4.3 [Table PF14](#) and [Table PF15](#) shall be used to score the gear-habitat interaction attributes.

- PF7.4.3.1 If the UoA’s gear type is not provided in [Table PF14](#) and [Table PF15](#), the team shall score the attributes using the most similar gear in terms of extent of bottom contact that is provided.
 - a. The team shall be precautionary when determining the most similar gear type.
 - b. The team shall provide justification for the selection of the most similar gear type.

PF7.4.4 Removability of biota

- PF7.4.4.1 This attribute shall be scored on the basis of the likelihood of attached biota being removed or killed by interactions with fishing gear ([Table PF13](#)).
- PF7.4.4.2 This attribute shall also consider the removability and mortality of structure-forming epibiota and bioturbating in fauna.
- PF7.4.4.3 Record the “removability of biota” score for each habitat in the “MSC RBF Worksheet”.

PF7.4.5 Removability of substratum

- PF7.4.5.1 This attribute shall be scored on the basis of clast (rock fragment or grain resulting from the breakdown of larger rocks) size and likelihood of the substratum being moved ([Table PF14](#)).
- PF7.4.5.2 Scoring of this attribute shall consider the gear type being assessed.
- PF7.4.5.3 Record the “removability of substratum” score for each habitat in the “MSC RBF Worksheet”.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table PF14: Scoring the removability of biota and removability of substratum attributes (modified from Hobday et al., 2007⁵)

Gear type	Removability of biota			Removability of substratum		
	Low, robust, small (<5 cm), smooth, or flexible biota OR robust, deep-burrowing biota	Erect, medium (<30 cm), moderately rugose, or inflexible biota OR moderately robust, shallow-burrowing biota	Tall, delicate, large (>30 cm high), rugose, or inflexible biota OR delicate, shallow-burrowing biota	Immovable (bedrock and boulders >3 m)	<6 cm (transferable)	6 cm - 3 m (removable)
Hand collection	1	1	1	1	1	2
Demersal longline	1	1	2	1	1	1
Handline	1	1	2	1	1	1
Trap	1	2	2	1	1	1
Bottom gill net or other entangling net	1	2	3	1	1	1
Danish seine	1	2	3	1	2	3
Demersal trawl (including pair, otter twin-rig, and otter multi-rig)	1	3	3	1	3	3
Dredge	3	3	3	1	3	3

PF7.4.6 Substratum hardness

PF7.4.6.1 This attribute shall be scored on the basis of substrata composition ([Table PF15](#)).

PF7.4.6.2 Scoring of this attribute shall consider the substrata identified via the SGB characterisation process (CSA step 1).

PF7.4.6.3 Record the “substratum hardness” score for each habitat in the “MSC RBF Worksheet”.

PF7.4.7 Substratum ruggedness

PF7.4.7.1 This attribute shall be scored on the basis of the extent to which available

⁵ Hobday, A. J., Smith, A., Webb, H., Daley, R., Wayte, S., Bulman, C., Dowdney, J., Williams, A., Sporic, M., Dambacher, J., Fuller, M. and Walker, T., 2007. *Ecological risk assessment for the effects of fishing: methodology*. Report R04/1072 for the Australian Fisheries Management Authority, Canberra.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

habitat is actually accessible to mobile gear given the ruggedness of the substratum ([Table PF15](#)).

PF7.4.7.2 Scoring of this attribute shall consider the characteristics of the substratum and the gear type being used.

PF7.4.7.3 Record the “substratum ruggedness” score for each habitat in the “MSC RBF Worksheet”.

PF7.4.8 Seabed slope

PF7.4.8.1 This attribute shall be scored on the basis of the impact to habitat that occurs as a result of slope steepness and mobility of substrata once dislodged ([Table PF15](#)). Scoring this attribute shall consider the degree of slope.

PF7.4.8.2 Record the “seabed slope” score for each habitat in the “MSC RBF Worksheet”.

PF7.4.9 The aggregate consequence score for each habitat shall be determined by using the “MSC RBF Worksheet”.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table PF15: Scoring the substratum hardness, substratum ruggedness, and seabed slope attributes (modified from Hobday et al., 2007)

Gear type	Substratum hardness			Substratum ruggedness			Seabed slope		
	Hard (igneous, sedimentary, or heavily consolidated rock types)	Soft (lightly consolidated, weathered, or biogenic)	Sediments (unconsolidated)	High relief (>1 m), high outcrop, or rugged surface structure (cracks, crevices, overhangs, large boulders, rock walls)	Low relief (<1.0 m), rough surface structure (rubble, small boulders, rock edges), subcrop, or low outcrop	Flat, simple surface structure (mounds, undulations, ripples), current rippled, wave rippled, or irregular	Low degree (<1): Plains in coastal margin, inner or outer shelf or mid-slope OR terraces in mid-slope OR rocky banks/fringing reefs in coastal margin, inner or outer shelf, or upper or mid-slope	Medium degree (1-10): Terraces in outer shelf or upper slope	High degree (>10): Canyons in outer shelf, or upper or mid-slope OR seamounts/bioherms in coastal margin, inner shelf, or upper or mid-slope
Hand collection	1	2	3	3	3	1	1	2	3
Demersal longline	1	2	3	2	3	3	1	2	3
Handline	1	2	3	2	3	3	1	2	3
Trap	1	2	3	2	3	3	1	2	3
Bottom gill net or other entangling net	1	2	3	2	3	3	1	2	3
Danish seine	1	2	3	1	1	3	1	2	3
Demersal trawl (including, pair, otter twin-rig, and otter multi-rig)	1	2	3	1	3	3	1	2	3
Dredge	1	2	3	1	1	3	1	2	3

Fisheries Certification Requirements

PF7.5 CSA Step 3: Score the spatial attributes

PF7.5.1 Gear footprint

PF7.5.1.1 This attribute shall be scored on the basis of the gear's potential for disturbance and the number of encounters required to produce an impact on a habitat, taking into account the size, weight, and mobility of individual gears and the footprint of the gears (Table PF16).

PF7.5.1.2 PF7.4.3.1 and its subclauses shall apply here.

PF7.5.1.3 Record the "gear footprint" score for each habitat in the "MSC RBF Worksheet".

Table PF16: Scoring the gear footprint attribute (modified from Hobday et al., 2007)

Gear type	Gear footprint score
Hand collection	1
Handline	1
Trap	1
Demersal longline	2
Bottom gill net or other entangling net	2
Danish seine	2
Demersal trawl (including pair, otter twin-rig, and otter multi-rig)	3
Dredge	3

PF7.5.2 Spatial overlap

PF7.5.2.1 This attribute shall be scored on the basis of spatial overlap between the habitat(s) distribution within the "managed area" and the distribution of areas fished by the UoA (Table PF17:).

PF7.5.2.2 SA3.13.5 and the subclauses shall apply here.

PF7.5.2.3 Record the "spatial overlap" score for each habitat in the "MSC RBF Worksheet".

PF7.5.3 Encounterability

PF7.5.3.1 This attribute shall be scored on the basis of the likelihood that a fishing gear will encounter the habitat within the "managed area", taking into account the nature and deployment of the fishing gear and the possibility of its interaction with the habitat (Table PF17:).

PF7.5.3.2 SA3.13.5 and the subclauses shall apply here.

PF7.5.3.3 Record the "encounterability" score for each habitat in the "MSC RBF Worksheet".

PF7.5.4 The aggregate spatial score shall be determined by using the "MSC RBF Worksheet".

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table PF17: Scoring spatial attributes (modified from Williams et al., 2011)

Spatial attribute	Score					
	0.5	1	1.5	2	2.5	3
Spatial overlap	UoA overlap with a habitat is ≤15%	UoA overlap with a habitat is ≤30%	UoA overlap with a habitat is ≤45%	UoA overlap with a habitat is ≤60%	UoA overlap with a habitat is ≤75%	UoA overlap with a habitat is >75%
Encounter-ability	Likelihood of encounter-ability is ≤15%	Likelihood of encounter-ability is ≤30%	Likelihood of encounter-ability is ≤45%	Likelihood of encounter-ability is ≤60%	Likelihood of encounter-ability is ≤75%	Likelihood of encounter-ability is >75%

PF7.6 CSA Step 4: Determine the CSA score and equivalent MSC score

PF7.6.1 The team shall use the “MSC RBF Worksheet” to obtain the MSC CSA-derived score for each habitat (scoring element) and the equivalent MSC score.

PF7.6.2 The team shall convert the CSA score into a final MSC score for PI 2.4.1.

PF7.6.2.1 In cases where there is only one habitat (scoring element), the team shall convert the MSC CSA-derived score into the final MSC score.

a. The MSC score for the one scoring element shall become the final MSC score.

b. The final MSC score shall be rounded to the nearest whole number (e.g., 87) and shall be recorded in the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template”.

PF7.6.2.2 In cases where there is more than one scoring element and they all receive the same MSC CSA-derived score, the team shall convert the MSC CSA-derived scores into the final MSC score.

a. The MSC scores for the scoring elements shall become the final MSC score (e.g., if they are all 64, the final score is 64).

b. The final MSC score shall be rounded to the nearest whole number and shall be recorded in the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template”.

PF7.6.2.3 In cases where there is more than one scoring element and they receive different MSC CSA-derived scores, the team shall derive the final MSC score by applying the rules in [Table PF18](#).

a. The final MSC score shall be in an increment of 5 (e.g., 60, 65, 70) and shall be recorded in the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template”.

b. The PI shall fail if any scoring element is assessed as high risk (i.e., <60).

Table PF18: Combining multiple scoring element scores

MSC Score	Requirement to gain score
-----------	---------------------------

Fisheries Certification Requirements

none	Any scoring elements within a PI that fail to reach a score of 60 represent a failure against the MSC fisheries standard and no score shall be assigned.
60	All elements have a score of 60 and only 60.
65	All elements score at least 60; a few achieve higher scores, approaching or exceeding 80, but most do not reach 80.
70	All elements score at least 60; some achieve higher scores, approaching or exceeding 80; but some fail to achieve 80 and require intervention action.
75	All elements score at least 60; most achieve higher scores, approaching or exceeding 80; only a few fail to achieve 80 and require intervention action.
80	All elements score 80.
85	All elements score at least 80; a few achieve higher scores, but most do not approach 100.
90	All elements score at least 80; some achieve higher scores approaching 100, but some do not.
95	All elements score at least 80; most achieve higher scores approaching 100; only a few fail to score at or very close to 100.
100	All elements score 100.

PF7.6.3 Where no additional information exists to bring to bear on the PI, the team shall apply the MSC score directly to the PI within the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template” and provide rationale as justification.

PF7.6.3.1 If there is additional information regarding the attribute(s) that justifies modifying the MSC score either upward or downward by a maximum of 10 points, such information shall be used to reach the final MSC score for the PI. ❗

- a. The team shall use all information that is available on the UoA to inform the assessment.
- b. The team shall provide the justification for any score modification.

PF7.6.4 If the team has only considered “main” habitats in its CSA analysis, the final PI score shall not be greater than 95, reflecting the fact that only the “main” habitats were assessed.

PF7.7 Setting conditions using the CSA

PF7.7.1 Where any habitat (scoring element) score is less than 80 the team shall set a condition on the PI. 🟩

PF7.7.1.1 If a condition is triggered when assessing the PI using the CSA, the team shall make sure that the proposed client action plan is capable of raising the score to 80, addressing all the habitats for which the score was below 80 and without causing additional associated problems.

PF8 Conducting a Scale Intensity Consequence Analysis (SICA)

PF8.1 Preparation

PF8.1.1 The team shall conduct a SICA for each data-deficient ecosystem identified within PI 2.5.1.

PF8.2 Stakeholder involvement within the SICA

PF8.2.1 The team shall use input from stakeholders to:

PF8.2.1.1 Assist in the identification of ecosystems which are affected by the fishery.

PF8.2.1.2 Provide information suitable for the qualitative evaluation of the risks that the fishing activity poses to the ecosystem included in the risk assessment.

PF8.2.1.3 Assist in scoring the spatial and temporal scales and the intensity of the fishing activity.

PF8.2.1.4 Assist in scoring the consequence for the ecosystem.

PF8.3 SICA Step 1: Prepare SICA scoring template for each data-deficient ecosystem

PF8.3.1 The scores and rationales shall be documented in the SICA scoring template (Table PF19), in the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template” found at <http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents/templates>.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table PF19: SICA scoring template for PI 2.5.1 Ecosystem

Performance Indicator PI 2.5.1 Ecosystem outcome	Spatial scale of fishing activity	Temporal scale of fishing activity	Intensity of fishing activity	Relevant subcomponents	Consequence score
Fishery name:				Species composition	
				Functional group composition	
				Distribution of the community	
				Trophic size/structure	
Rationale for spatial scale of fishing activity					
Rationale for temporal scale of fishing activity					
Rationale for intensity of fishing activity					
Rationale for Consequence score					

PF8.4 SICA Step 2: Score spatial scale of fishing activity potentially causing an impact to the ecosystem

- PF8.4.1 The team shall work with stakeholders at the SICA consultation meeting(s) to assign a spatial scale score.
- PF8.4.2 The greatest spatial extent shall be used to determine the spatial scale score for the overlap of the ecosystem with the fishing activity (Table PF20). 
- PF8.4.2.1 Only the overlap of the ecosystem with the fishing activity of the UoA shall be considered.
- PF8.4.3 The score shall be recorded in the SICA scoring template for each component and the rationale documented.

Table PF20: SICA spatial scale score Table

<1%	1-15%	16-30%	31-45%	46-60%	>60%
1	2	3	4	5	6

PF8.5 SICA Step 3: Score temporal scale of fishing activity potentially causing an impact to the ecosystem

- PF8.5.1 The team shall work with stakeholders at the SICA consultation meeting(s) to assign a temporal scale score.
- PF8.5.2 The highest temporal frequency shall be used for determining the temporal scale score for the overlap of the ecosystem with the fishing activity (Table PF21). 
- PF8.5.2.1 Only the number of the days of the fishing activity of the unit of assessment shall be considered.
- PF8.5.3 The score shall be recorded onto the SICA scoring template for each component and the rationale documented.

Table PF21: SICA temporal scale score

1 day every 10 years or so	1 day every few years	1-100 days per year	101-200 days per year	201-300 days per year	301-365 days per year
1	2	3	4	5	6

PF8.6 SICA Step 4: Score the intensity of the relevant activity

- PF8.6.1 The team shall work with stakeholders at the SICA consultation meeting(s) to assign a score for intensity. 
- PF8.6.1.1 The intensity of the activity shall be based on the spatial and temporal scale of the activity, its nature and extent.
- PF8.6.1.2 The direct impacts of the fishing activity to the ecosystem under evaluation

Fisheries Certification Requirements

shall be considered for the score for intensity ([Table PF22](#)). ❗

PF8.6.2 The score shall be recorded in the SICA scoring template for the component in question and the rationale documented.

Table PF22: SICA intensity score Table

Level	Score	Description
Negligible	1	remote likelihood of detection of fishing activity at any spatial or temporal scale
Minor	2	activity occurs rarely or in few restricted locations and detectability of fishing activity even at these scales is rare
Moderate	3	moderate detectability of fishing activity at broader spatial scale, or obvious but local detectability
Major	4	detectable evidence of fishing activity occurs reasonably often at broad spatial scale
Severe	5	occasional but very obvious detectability or widespread and frequent evidence of fishing activity
Catastrophic	6	local to regional evidence of fishing activity or continual and widespread detectability

PF8.7 SICA Step 5: Identify the most vulnerable subcomponent of the ecosystem, and score the consequence of the activity on the subcomponent

PF8.7.1 The team shall work with stakeholders at the SICA consultation meeting(s) to select the subcomponent on which the fishing activity is having the most impact.

PF8.7.2 One subcomponent shall be selected that represents the subcomponent on which the fishing activity is having the most impact. 🗳️

PF8.7.3 When choosing which subcomponent to score, the team shall recognise that different subcomponents may be proxies for measuring the same effect but are much easier to observe and score on a qualitative basis.

PF8.7.4 The consequence score shall be based on information provided by all stakeholders and the expert judgement of the team and shall draw qualitatively from the scale and intensity scores. ❗

PF8.7.4.1 In the absence of agreement or information, the highest risk score considered plausible shall be used. 🗳️

PF8.7.5 The consequence of the activity shall be scored using the SICA consequence [Table PF23](#).

PF8.7.6 The team shall record the consequence score as fail if the consequence of the activity is determined not to meet the performance levels in consequence category 60.

PF8.7.7 When assessing “changes” to subcomponents, only changes due to fishing activities shall be considered.

PF8.7.8 The consequence score shall be recorded in the SICA scoring template for each component and the rationale documented.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table PF23: SICA consequence score

Subcomponent	Consequence Category			
	100	80	60	Fail
Species composition	Interactions may be occurring that affect the internal dynamics of communities, leading to change in species composition not detectable against natural variation	Impacted species do not play a keystone role (including trophic cascade impact) – only minor changes in relative abundance of other constituents. Changes of species composition up to 5%. Time to recover from impact up to 5 years	Detectable changes to the community species composition without a major change in function (no loss of function). Changes to species composition up to 10%. Time to recover from impact on the scale of several to 20 years	Consequence is higher-risk than 60 level
Functional group composition	Interactions that affect the internal dynamics of communities leading to change in functional group composition not detectable against natural variation	Minor changes in relative abundance of community constituents up to 5%	Changes in relative abundance of community constituents up to 10% chance of flipping to an alternate state/ trophic cascade	
Distribution of the community	Interactions that affect the distribution of communities unlikely to be detectable against natural variation	Possible detectable change in geographic range of communities but minimal impact on community dynamics change in geographic range up to 5% of original	Detectable change in geographic range of communities with some impact on community dynamics. Change in geographic range up to 10% of original. Time to recover from impact on the scale of several to twenty years	
Trophic/size structure	Changes that affect the internal dynamics unlikely to be detectable against natural variation.	Change in mean trophic level and biomass/number in each size class up to 5%.	Changes in mean trophic level and biomass/number in each size class up to 10%. Time to recover from impact on the scale of several to 20 years.	

Fisheries Certification Requirements

PF8.8 Scoring PI 2.5.1 using the RBF

- PF8.8.1 The converted SICA score shall determine the final score for the ecosystem.
- PF8.8.2 The team shall consider if there is additional information to bring to bear on the PI.
- PF8.8.2.1 If not, the team shall apply the converted score directly to the PI with the accompanying scoring template and a rationale provided as justification.
 - PF8.8.2.2 If there is additional information that justifies modifying the MSC score either upward or downward by a maximum of 10 points, such information shall be used to reach the final MSC score for the PI.
 - PF8.8.2.3 The team shall use all information that is available on the UoA to inform the assessment.
 - PF8.8.2.4 The team shall provide the justification for any score modification.
 - PF8.8.2.5 The team shall record all changes to the score and justification for the changes.
- PF8.8.3 The team shall record the final PI score in the SICA table within the “MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template”.

PF8.9 Setting conditions using the RBF (PI 2.5.1)

- PF8.9.1 Where any score is less than 80, the team shall set a condition on that PI.
- PF8.9.1.1 If a condition is triggered when assessing a PI using the SICA, the team shall make sure that the client action plan proposed by the fishery is capable of raising the score to 80.
 - PF8.9.1.2 If the action plan is not capable of raising the SICA score to 80 within a suitable timeframe, the team shall not allow a fishery to use the RBF for this PI in subsequent MSC assessments.
 - a. In such cases, the team shall raise a condition on the PI that there shall be information collected to support an analysis of the impact of the fishery on the ecosystem by the time of re-assessment.

End of Annex PF

Annex SA: The Default Assessment Tree – Normative

The default tree structure, includes the PISGs for each of the three MSC Principles to be used in fishery assessments [▣](#)

Scope [▣](#)

To be eligible for certification against the MSC fisheries standard a fishery must meet the scope criteria. The normative requirements for scope criteria are presented in FCR 7.4.

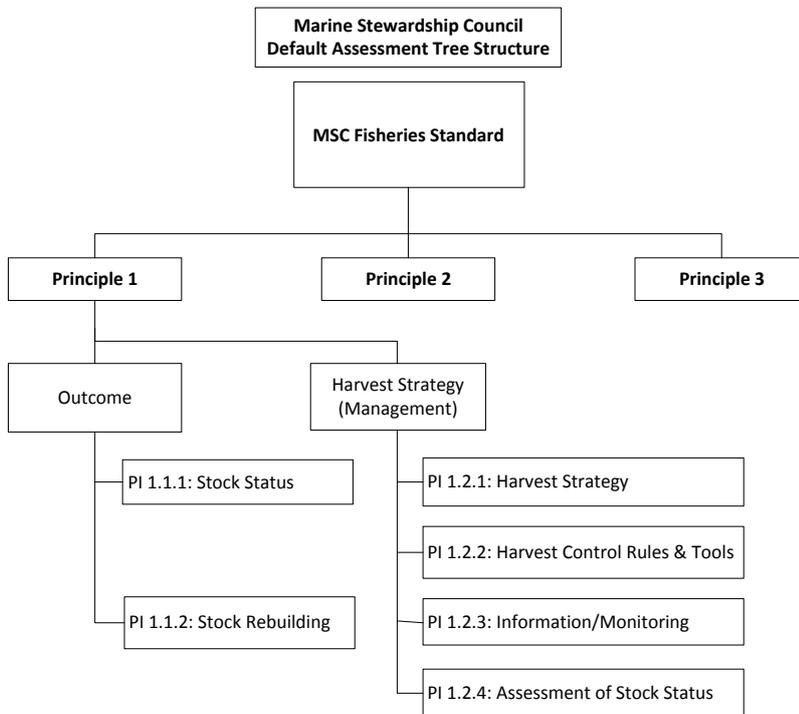
SA1 General

SA1.1 General requirements [▣](#)

- SA1.1.1 CABs shall focus all assessments of fisheries against the MSC fisheries standard on:
 - a. The outcomes of fisheries management process.
 - b. The management strategies implemented that aim to achieve those outcomes.
- SA1.1.2 CABs shall apply requirements set out in Annex PF when using the RBF.
- SA1.1.3 CABs shall follow subsequent standard annexes for species that require the use of a modified default tree.

SA2 Principle 1

Figure SA1: Principle 1 Default Tree Structure



SA2.1 General requirements for Principle 1 !!

SA2.1.1 In Principle 1, teams shall score the whole of the target stock(s) selected for inclusion in the Unit of Assessment (UoA).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA2.2 Stock status PI (PI 1.1.1)

Table SA1: PI 1.1.1 Stock status PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Outcome	Stock status 1.1.1 The stock is at a level which maintains high productivity and has a low probability of recruitment overfishing.	(a) Stock status relative to recruitment impairment.	It is likely that the stock is above the point where recruitment would be impaired (PRI).	It is highly likely that the stock is above the PRI.	There is a high degree of certainty that the stock is above the PRI
		(b) Stock status in relation to achievement of Maximum Sustainable Yield (MSY). !!		The stock is at or fluctuating around a level consistent with MSY.	There is a high degree of certainty that the stock has been fluctuating around a level consistent with MSY or has been above this level over recent years.

Scoring stock status **!!**

SA2.2.1 In P1 the terms “likely”, “highly likely” and “high degree of certainty” are used to allow for either qualitative or quantitative evaluation. In a probabilistic context and in relation to scoring issue (a):

SA2.2.1.1 Likely means greater than or equal to the 70th percentile of a distribution (i.e., there shall be at least a 70% probability that the true status of the stock is higher than the point at which there is an appreciable risk of recruitment being impaired).

SA2.2.1.2 Highly likely means greater than or equal to the 80th percentile.

SA2.2.1.3 High degree of certainty means greater than or equal to the 95th percentile.

SA2.2.2 The team shall consider the biology of the species and the scale and intensity of both the UoA and management system and other relevant issues in determining time periods over which to judge fluctuations. **!!**

SA2.2.3 Where information is not available on the stock status relative to the Point of Recruitment Impairment (PRI) or MSY levels, proxy indicators and reference points may be used to score PI 1.1.1. **!!**

SA2.2.3.1 Where proxy indicators and reference points are used to score PI 1.1.1, the team shall justify their use as reasonable proxies of stock biomass for the PRI and/or MSY. **!!**

SA2.2.4 The recent trends in fishing mortality rate may be used as a means of scoring stock status. **!!**

SA2.2.4.1 In this case, teams shall demonstrate that F has been low enough for long

Fisheries Certification Requirements

enough to ensure that the required biomass levels are now likely to be met.

Stock complexes

- SA2.2.5 Where several species or stocks are fished as stock complexes, they may be treated as separate UoAs, or as separate scoring elements within a single UoA (as in the case of multiple primary species considered under PI 2.1.1). In either case, for each SG the team shall seek evidence that, as an outcome, the levels of 'likelihood' meet the levels of 'likelihood' specified in SA2.2.1 for each separate stock. 
- SA2.2.6 Where species or stocks are fished as stock complexes, the overall target reference points should be consistent with the intent of the PI, and maintain the high productivity of the stock complex.

Consideration of Environmental Variability

- SA2.2.7 As ecosystem productivity may change from time to time as marine environments change naturally, for instance under conditions of regime shift, the team shall verify that reference points are consistent with ecosystem productivity.



- SA2.2.7.1 If changes in fishery productivity are due to natural environmental fluctuations, teams shall accept adjustments to the reference points consistent with such natural environmental fluctuations.
- SA2.2.7.2 If fishery productivity is being affected through human-induced impacts (either directly from the UoA or from other sources such as pollution or habitat degradation), no changes to reference points are justified.
- The impacts should be resolved.
 - The UoA should receive a reduced score in PI 1.1.1 until the stock is above the unadjusted reference points.

Treatment of key Low Trophic Level (LTL) stocks

- SA2.2.8 The team shall consider the trophic position of target stocks to ensure precaution in relation to their ecological role, in particular for species low in the food chain. 
- SA2.2.9 Teams shall treat a stock under assessment against Principle 1 as a key LTL stock if: 
- It is one of the species types listed in Box SA1 and in its adult life cycle phase the stock holds a key role in the ecosystem, such that it meets at least two of the following sub-criteria i, ii and iii.
 - A large proportion of the trophic connections in the ecosystem involve this stock, leading to significant predator dependency;
 - A large volume of energy passing between lower and higher trophic levels passes through this stock;
 - There are few other species at this trophic level through which energy can be transmitted from lower to higher trophic levels, such that a high proportion of the total energy passing between lower and higher trophic levels passes through this stock (i.e., the ecosystem is 'wasp-waisted').
 - It is not one of the species types listed in [Box SA1](#), but in its adult life

Fisheries Certification Requirements

cycle phase it meets at least two of the sub criteria in SA2.2.9a.i–iii, and additionally meets the following criteria:

- i. The species feeds predominantly on plankton; has a trophic level of about 3 (but potentially ranging from 2 to 4); is characterised by small body size, early maturity, high fecundity and short life span (default values: <30cm long as adults, mean age at maturity ≤ 2, >10,000 eggs/spawning, maximum age <10 years respectively); and forms dense schools.
- c. Teams shall provide evidence specifically addressing each of the sub-criteria in SA2.2.9 to justify any decision to not define the stock as a key LTL species in the ecosystem under assessment.
 - i. In the case where there is no information on a sub-criterion in SA2.2.9, the stock shall be assumed to meet that sub-criterion.
 - ii. In providing rationales against the key LTL sub-criteria (SA2.2.9.a.i–iii), teams shall document the choice of spatial scale and provide reasonable justification for the choice.

SA2.2.10 Teams shall determine whether a species is to be considered a key LTL species based on its status at the time of assessment. The determination shall be reviewed at each surveillance audit.

Box SA1: Species types that are defined by default as “key LTL stocks” for the purposes of an MSC assessment. See ASFIS List of Species for species included in different families and orders (<http://www.fao.org/fishery/collection/asfis/en>)

Box SA1: Species types that are defined by default as “key LTL stocks” for the purposes of an MSC assessment. ■

See ASFIS List of Species for species included in different families and orders (<http://www.fao.org/fishery/collection/asfis/en>)

- Family Ammodytidae (sandeels, sandlances)
- Family Clupeidae (herrings, menhaden, pilchards, sardines, sardinellas, sprats)
- Family Engraulidae (anchovies)
- Family Euphausiidae (krill)
- Family Myctophidae (lanternfish)
- Family Osmeridae (smelts, capelin)
- Genus Scomber (mackerels)
- Order Atheriniformes (silversides, sand smelts)
- Species *Trisopterus esmarkii* (Norway pout)

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Scoring of key LTL stocks

Table SA2: PI 1.1.1 Stock status PISGs applicable to key LTL stocks

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Outcome	Stock status 1.1.1A The stock is at a level which has a low probability of serious ecosystem impacts.	(a) Stock status relative to ecosystem impairment.	It is likely that the stock is above the point where serious ecosystem impacts could occur.	It is highly likely that the stock is above the point where serious ecosystem impacts could occur.	There is a high degree of certainty that the stock is above the point where serious ecosystem impacts could occur.
		(b) Stock status in relation to ecosystem needs.		The stock is at or fluctuating around a level consistent with ecosystem needs.	There is a high degree of certainty that the stock has been fluctuating around a level consistent with ecosystem needs or has been above this level over recent years.

SA2.2.11 Stocks identified as key LTL stocks shall be scored using [Table SA2](#) and as detailed in SA2.2.12 to SA2.2.16 below.

SA2.2.12 When scoring PI 1.1.1A scoring issue (a), the point where serious ecosystem impacts could occur shall be interpreted as being substantially higher than the point at which recruitment is impaired (PRI), as determined for the target species in a single species context. 

- a. Such point may be analytically determined from ecosystem models, but in any case shall not be less than 20% of the spawning stock level that would be expected in the absence of fishing.

SA2.2.13 When scoring PI 1.1.1A scoring issue (b), the expectations for key LTL species shall be as given below: 

- a. The default biomass target level consistent with ecosystem needs shall be 75% of the spawning stock level that would be expected in the absence of fishing.
- b. A higher or lower target level, down to a minimum allowed 40% of the spawning stock level that would be expected in the absence of fishing, may still achieve an 80 level score if it can be demonstrated, through the use of credible ecosystem models or robust empirical data for the UoA/ecosystem being assessed, that the level adopted: 
 - i. Does not impact the abundance levels of more than 15% of the other species and trophic groups by more than 40% (compared to their state in the absence of fishing on the target LTL species); and
 - ii. Does not reduce the abundance level of any other species or trophic

Fisheries Certification Requirements

group by more than 70%.

- SA2.2.14 At SG100 in scoring issue (b) a higher degree of certainty is required when considering the ecological impact of the UoA on the stock.
- a. For key LTL species to score 100 the expectations for ecosystem needs reference levels may remain as specified at SG80, but teams shall demonstrate that biomass levels are fluctuating “above” the required level.
- SA2.2.15 Where proxy indicators and reference points are used to score key LTL species at PI 1.1.1A, the team shall justify their use as reasonable proxies of stock biomass for the points where serious ecosystem impacts could occur and the level consistent with ecosystem needs. !!
- a. Where fishing mortality rate is used to score stock status, the default fishing mortality required to maintain a stock fluctuating around the level consistent with ecosystem needs shall take the value of $0.5M$ or $0.5 F_{MSY}$, where F_{MSY} has been determined in a single species context.
 - b. Proxy fishing mortalities required to maintain the stock above the point where serious ecosystem impacts could occur shall be lower than assumed to be able to keep the population above the point where recruitment would be impaired.
 - c. Departures from these default levels may be justified if it can be demonstrated that SA2.2.13.b is met.
- SA2.2.16 Performance against these reference points shall be judged (in PI 1.1.1A) in the context of recruitment variability typical for the given species in its ecosystem. ■

Consideration of uncertain information

- SA2.2.17 The consideration of the status of the stock in P1 shall include mortality that is observed and mortality that is unobserved.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA2.3 Stock rebuilding PI (PI 1.1.2) !!

Table SA3: PI 1.1.2 Stock rebuilding PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Outcome	Stock Rebuilding 1.1.2 Where the stock is reduced, there is evidence of stock rebuilding within a specified timeframe.	(a) Rebuilding timeframes	A rebuilding timeframe is specified for the stock that is the shorter of 20 years or 2 times its generation time . For cases where 2 generations is less than 5 years, the rebuilding timeframe is up to 5 years. !!		The shortest practicable rebuilding timeframe is specified which does not exceed one generation time for the stock.
		(b) Rebuilding evaluation	Monitoring is in place to determine whether the rebuilding strategies are effective in rebuilding the stock within the specified timeframe.	There is evidence that the rebuilding strategies are rebuilding stocks, or it is likely based on simulation modelling, exploitation rates or previous performance that they will be able to rebuild the stock within the specified timeframe .	There is strong evidence that the rebuilding strategies are rebuilding stocks, or it is highly likely based on simulation modelling, exploitation rates or previous performance that they will be able to rebuild the stock within the specified timeframe .

- SA2.3.1 Teams shall only score this PI when Stock Status PI 1.1.1 does not achieve an 80 score.
- SA2.3.2 In cases where stocks score 80 or above on PI 1.1.1 at the time of assessment, but scores are then reduced during a certification cycle, the team shall ensure that rebuilding strategies and monitoring are put in place within one year of becoming aware of the reduced status, (or as early as practicable in stocks that are not assessed on an annual basis). !!
- SA2.3.3 The team shall require that where a score of between 60 and 80 is awarded, the subsequent conditions are fulfilled within one certification period. !!
- SA2.3.4 In Scoring Issue (b), where fishing mortality rate is available for the UoA: !!

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA2.3.4.1 Current F shall be “likely” to be less than F_{MSY} to justify an 80 score; and

SA2.3.4.2 Current F shall be “highly likely” to be less than F_{MSY} to justify a 100 score.

SA2.3.4.3 A UoA need not meet the above requirements if there is alternative clear evidence that the stocks are rebuilding.

SA2.3.5 In UoAs that use assessments and reference points that are regarded as proxies of F_{MSY} and/or B_{MSY} , teams shall take account in their scoring of any differences between the proxy reference levels and MSY levels and shall provide justification that the assigned Scoring Guidepost (SG) level is met.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA2.4 Harvest strategy PI (PI 1.2.1) !!

Table SA4: PI 1.2.1 Harvest strategy PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Harvest strategy (management)	Harvest strategy 1.2.1 There is a robust and precautionary harvest strategy in place.	(a) Harvest strategy design !!	The harvest strategy is expected to achieve stock management objectives reflected in PI 1.1.1 SG80.	The harvest strategy is responsive to the state of the stock and the elements of the harvest strategy work together towards achieving stock management objectives reflected in PI 1.1.1 SG80.	The harvest strategy is responsive to the state of the stock and is designed to achieve stock management objectives reflected in PI 1.1.1 SG80.
		(b) Harvest strategy evaluation	The harvest strategy is likely to work based on prior experience or plausible argument.	The harvest strategy may not have been fully tested but evidence exists that it is achieving its objectives.	The performance of the harvest strategy has been fully evaluated and evidence exists to show that it is achieving its objectives including being clearly able to maintain stocks at target levels.
		(c) Harvest strategy monitoring	Monitoring is in place that is expected to determine whether the harvest strategy is working.		
		(d) Harvest strategy review			The harvest strategy is periodically reviewed and improved as necessary.
		(e) Shark finning	It is likely that shark finning is not taking place.	It is highly likely that shark finning is not taking place.	There is a high degree of certainty that shark finning is not taking place.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

		(f) Review of alternative measures	There has been a review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of the target stock.	There is a regular review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of the target stock and they are implemented as appropriate.	There is a biannual review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of the target stock, and they are implemented, as appropriate.
--	--	---------------------------------------	--	---	--

SA2.4.1 Teams shall interpret: ■

SA2.4.1.1 “Evaluated” at SG100 to mean ‘tested for robustness to uncertainty, appropriate to the scale and intensity of the UoA’.

SA2.4.1.2 “Tested” at SG80 to mean the involvement of some sort of structured logical argument and analysis that supports the choice of strategy.

SA2.4.2 If conditions are set, changes to the Harvest Control Rules or assessment method may be needed to make these conditions operational. If new HCRs or assessment methods require different or additional information, the team shall ensure that it shall be either already available or shall be made part of the condition.

Shark finning ■

SA2.4.3 If the target species is a shark, the team shall score scoring issue (e) to ensure that shark finning is not being undertaken in the fishery.

SA2.4.4 In Scoring Issue (e) the terms “likely”, “highly likely” and “high degree of certainty” are used to allow for either qualitative or quantitative evaluation.

SA2.4.4.1 The team shall consider how the level of external validation and regulations in place work together to deliver the required confidence that shark finning is not taking place.

SA2.4.5 When scoring SI (e) at SG60, the expectation shall be that one of the following subparagraphs applies:

SA2.4.5.1 If fins are cut on board:

- a. There are regulations in place governing the management of sharks; ■
- b. Shark fins and carcasses shall be landed together in compliance with a ratio specifically relevant for the species, fishing fleet and initial post-catch processing (e.g. fresh/frozen/dried); and ■
 - i. The team shall document the justification for using the specific ratio.
- c. Good external validation of the vessels’ activities is available to confirm that it is likely that shark finning is not taking place. !!

SA2.4.5.2 If sharks are processed on board: ■

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- a. There are regulations in place governing the management of sharks;
- b. There is full documentation of the destination of all shark bodies and body parts; and
- c. Some external validation of the vessel's activities is available to confirm that it is likely that shark finning is not taking place.

SA2.4.6 When scoring SI (e) at SG80, the expectation shall be that one of the following subparagraphs applies:

SA2.4.6.1 All sharks are landed with fins naturally attached;

SA2.4.6.2 If sharks are processed on board:

- a. There are regulations in place governing the management of sharks;
- b. There is full documentation of the destination of all shark bodies and body parts; and
- c. Good external validation of the vessels' activities is available to confirm that it is highly likely that shark finning is not taking place.

SA2.4.7 When scoring SI (e) at SG100, the expectation shall be that one of the following subparagraphs applies:

SA2.4.7.1 If sharks are landed with fins naturally attached, there is some external validation such that there is a high degree of certainty that shark finning is not taking place.

SA2.4.7.2 If sharks are processed on board

- a. There are comprehensive regulations in place governing the management of sharks;
- b. There is full documentation of the destination of all shark bodies and body parts; and
- c. Comprehensive external validation of the vessels' activities is available to confirm with a high degree of certainty that shark finning is not taking place.

Unwanted catch

SA2.4.8 Scoring issue (f) requires that UoAs review whether the use of alternative measures could reduce the mortality arising from unwanted catches from the target stocks.

SA2.4.8.1 Teams shall apply scoring issue (f) to target stocks in P1 in the same way as applied to species in P2, noting sections [SA3.5.3](#) and [related guidance](#).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA2.5 Harvest control rules and tools PI (PI 1.2.2) !!

Table SA5: PI 1.2.2 Harvest control rules and tools PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Harvest strategy	Harvest control rules and tools 1.2.2 There are well defined and effective harvest control rules (HCRs) in place.	(a) HCRs design and application	Generally understood HCRs are in place or available that are expected to reduce the exploitation rate as the point of recruitment impairment (PRI) is approached.	Well defined HCRs are in place that ensure that the exploitation rate is reduced as the PRI is approached, are expected to keep the stock fluctuating around a target level consistent with (or above) MSY, or for key LTL species a level consistent with ecosystem needs.	The HCRs are expected to keep the stock fluctuating at or above a target level consistent with MSY, or another more appropriate level taking into account the ecological role of the stock, most of the time.
		(b) HCRs robustness to uncertainty ■		The HCRs are likely to be robust to the main uncertainties.	The HCRs take account of a wide range of uncertainties including the ecological role of the stock, and there is evidence that the HCRs are robust to the main uncertainties.
		(c) HCRs evaluation ■	There is some evidence that tools used or available to implement HCRs are appropriate and effective in controlling exploitation.	Available evidence indicates that the tools in use are appropriate and effective in achieving the exploitation levels required under the HCRs.	Evidence clearly shows that the tools in use are effective in achieving the exploitation levels required under the HCRs.

SA2.5.1 Teams should require additional precaution to be built into the HCR at SG100 so

Fisheries Certification Requirements

the HCR keeps stocks well above limit reference points.

Scoring 'available' HCRs at SG60 !!

- SA2.5.2 In scoring issue (a) at the SG60 level, teams shall accept 'available' HCRs (instead of HCRs that are 'in place') in cases where: !!
- Stock biomass has not previously been reduced below the MSY level or has been maintained at that level for a recent period of time that is at least longer than 2 generation times of the species, and is not predicted to be reduced below B_{MSY} within the next 5 years; or
 - In UoAs where B_{MSY} estimates are not available, the stock has been maintained to date by the measures in use at levels that have not declined significantly over time, nor shown any evidence of recruitment impairment.
- SA2.5.3 Teams shall recognise 'available' HCRs as 'expected to reduce the exploitation rate as the point of recruitment impairment is approached' only in cases where: !!
- HCRs are effectively used in some other UoAs, that are under the control of the same management body and of a similar size and scale as the UoA; or
 - An agreement or framework is in place that requires the management body to adopt HCRs before the stock declines below B_{MSY} .
- SA2.5.4 In scoring issue (a) at the SG100 level, where quantitative simulation testing is available, "most of the time" should be interpreted as the stock being maintained at or above MSY or some ecologically more relevant target point at least 70% of the time. ■
- SA2.5.5 In scoring issue (c) at the SG60 level, where HCRs are recognised as 'available', teams shall include in their rationale: !!
- Evidence that HCRs are being 'effectively' used in other named UoAs, also managed by the same management body, including the basis on which they are regarded as 'effective'; or
 - A description of the formal agreement or legal framework that the management body has defined, and the indicators and trigger levels that will require the development of HCRs.

Evaluating the effectiveness of HCRs ■

- SA2.5.6 In scoring issue (c) for "evidence" teams shall include consideration of the current levels of exploitation in the UoA, such as measured by the fishing mortality rate or harvest rate, where available. ■
- SA2.5.7 Where information is not available on the exploitation rate consistent with achieving a long term MSY, proxy indicators and reference points may be used to evaluate the effectiveness of HCRs in scoring issue (c). ■
- SA2.5.7.1 Where proxies are used to score scoring issue (c), the team shall justify their use as reasonable proxies of the exploitation rate.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA2.6 Information and monitoring PI (PI 1.2.3) 

Table SA6: PI 1.2.3 information and monitoring PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Harvest strategy	Information / monitoring 1.2.3 Relevant information is collected to support the harvest strategy.	(a) Range of information	Some relevant information related to stock structure, stock productivity and fleet composition is available to support the harvest strategy.	Sufficient relevant information related to stock structure, stock productivity, fleet composition and other data are available to support the harvest strategy.	A comprehensive range of information (on stock structure, stock productivity, fleet composition, stock abundance, UoA removals and other information such as environmental information), including some that may not be directly relevant to the current harvest strategy, is available.
		(b) Monitoring 	Stock abundance and UoA removals are monitored and at least one indicator is available and monitored with sufficient frequency to support the harvest control rule.	Stock abundance and UoA removals are regularly monitored at a level of accuracy and coverage consistent with the harvest control rule, and one or more indicators are available and monitored with sufficient frequency to support the harvest control rule.	All information required by the harvest control rule is monitored with high frequency and a high degree of certainty, and there is a good understanding of the inherent uncertainties in the information [data] and the robustness of assessment and management to this uncertainty.
		(c) Comprehensiveness of information 			There is good information on all other fishery removals from the stock.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- SA2.6.1 The team should identify which information from the information categories in SA2.6.1.1 is relevant to both the design and effective operational phases of the harvest strategy, Harvest Control Rules and tools, and their evaluation should be based on this information. ❗
- SA2.6.1.1 The team shall determine a combined score for this PI on the quality of data available, weighted by information category on the relevance to the harvest strategy, HCR and management tools. Information categories include:
- a. Stock structure;
 - b. Stock productivity;
 - c. Fleet composition;
 - d. Stock abundance;
 - e. UoA removals;
 - f. Other data.
- SA2.6.2 Teams shall interpret “sufficient information” at the SG80 level to mean that all information required to implement the harvest strategy is available at a quality and quantity necessary to demonstrate achievement of the SG80 outcome PI 1.1.1.
- SA2.6.3 Teams shall interpret “a comprehensive range of information” and “all information” at the SG100 level to include information provided by a strategic research plan.
- SA2.6.3.1 This information shall go beyond the immediate short-term management needs to create a strategic body of research relevant to the long-term UoA-specific management system.
- SA2.6.4 The teams shall also consider the veracity of information.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA2.7 Assessment of stock status PI (PI 1.2.4)

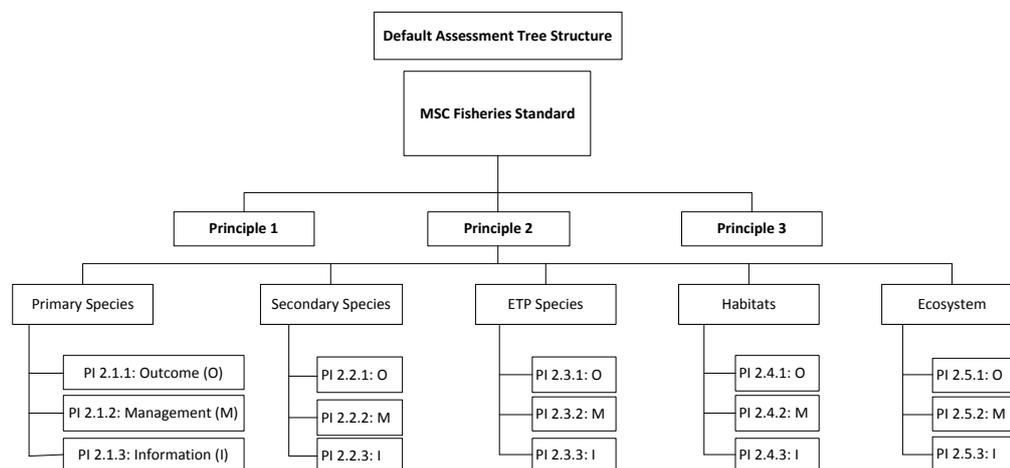
Table SA7: PI 1.2.4 Assessment of stock status PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Harvest strategy	Assessment of stock status 1.2.4 There is an adequate assessment of the stock status.	(a) Appropriateness of assessment to stock under consideration		The assessment is appropriate for the stock and for the harvest control rule.	The assessment takes into account the major features relevant to the biology of the species and the nature of the UoA.
		(b) Assessment approach	The assessment estimates stock status relative to generic reference points appropriate to the species category.	The assessment estimates stock status relative to reference points that are appropriate to the stock and can be estimated.	
		(c) Uncertainty in the assessment	The assessment identifies major sources of uncertainty.	The assessment takes uncertainty into account.	The assessment takes into account uncertainty and is evaluating stock status relative to reference points in a probabilistic way.
		(d) Evaluation of assessment			The assessment has been tested and shown to be robust. Alternative hypotheses and assessment approaches have been rigorously explored.
		(e) Peer review of assessment		The assessment of stock status is subject to peer review.	The assessment has been internally and externally peer reviewed.

SA2.7.1 For SG80, when considering an assessment which covers multiple sub-stocks of a single species or a complex of several different species, the team should take into account that the level of assessment required for individual stocks within the stock complex should reflect their ecological importance.

SA3 Principle 2

Figure SA2: Principle 2 Assessment Tree Structure



SA3.1 General requirements for Principle 2

SA3.1.1 The team shall determine and document under which component P2 species will be assessed prior to scoring the Unit of Assessment (UoA).

SA3.1.1.1 Teams shall provide both the common and the scientific name for each main species in a P2 assessment. If applicable, the stock component that each species belongs to shall also be outlined in the report.

SA3.1.2 The team shall consider each P2 species within only one of the primary species, secondary species or ETP species components.

SA3.1.3 The team shall assign primary species in P2 where all the following criteria are met:

SA3.1.3.1 Species in the catch that are not covered under P1 because they are not included in the UoA;

SA3.1.3.2 Species that are within scope of the MSC program as defined in FCR 7.4.1.1; and

SA3.1.3.3 Species where management tools and measures are in place, intended to achieve stock management objectives reflected in either limit or target reference points.

a. In cases where a species would be classified as primary due to the management measures of one jurisdiction but not another that overlaps with the UoA, that species shall still be considered as primary.

SA3.1.4 The team shall assign secondary species in P2 as species in the catch that are within scope of the MSC program but are not covered under P1 because they are not included in the Unit of Assessment and:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- SA3.1.4.1 Are not considered 'primary' as defined in [SA 3.1.3](#); or
- SA3.1.4.2 Species that are out of scope of the program, but where the definition of ETP species is not applicable.
- SA3.1.5 The team shall assign ETP (endangered, threatened or protected) species as follows:
- SA3.1.5.1 Species that are recognised by national ETP legislation;
- SA3.1.5.2 Species listed in the binding international agreements given below:
- a. [Appendix 1 of the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species \(CITES\)](#), unless it can be shown that the particular stock of the CITES listed species impacted by the UoA under assessment is not endangered.
 - b. Binding agreements concluded under the Convention on Migratory Species (CMS), including:
 - i. [Annex 1 of the Agreement on Conservation of Albatross and Petrels \(ACAP\)](#);
 - ii. [Table 1 Column A of the African-Eurasian Migratory Waterbird Agreement \(AEWA\)](#);
 - iii. [Agreement on the Conservation of Small Cetaceans of the Baltic and North Seas \(ASCOBANS\)](#);
 - iv. [Annex 1, Agreement on the Conservation of Cetaceans of the Black Sea, Mediterranean Sea and Contiguous Atlantic Area \(ACCOBAMS\)](#);
 - v. [Wadden Sea Seals Agreement](#);
 - vi. Any other binding agreements that list relevant ETP species concluded under this Convention.
- SA3.1.5.3 Species classified as 'out-of scope' (amphibians, reptiles, birds and mammals) that are listed in the IUCN Redlist as vulnerable (VU), endangered (EN) or critically endangered (CE).
- SA3.1.6 In PIs 2.1.2 and 2.2.2, the term 'unwanted catch' shall be interpreted by the team as the part of the catch that a fisher did not intend to catch but could not avoid, and did not want or chose not to use.
- SA3.1.7 The team shall consider species used as bait in the UoA, whether they were caught by the UoA or purchased from elsewhere, as either primary or secondary species using the definitions provided under [SA 3.1.3](#) and [SA 3.1.4](#) respectively.
- SA3.1.8 The consideration of the impact of the UoA on all components in P2, including unwanted catch, shall include mortality that is observed and mortality that is unobserved.
- SA3.1.9 The team shall interpret key words or phrases used in P2 as shown in [Table SA8](#).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table SA8: Principle 2 Phrases

Term	Definition and discussion
Biologically based limits	<p>There is a benchmark against which status of a component can be evaluated, and the benchmark is chosen to provide a high probability of persistence of the species over time.</p> <p>For many fish species this will be equivalent to the point below which recruitment may be impaired (PRI). For others (e.g. out of scope species) this should have the same general intent but alternatives such as minimum viable population size (MVP), Potential Biological Removal (PBR) or other metrics which help determine the sustainability of a population, may be used.</p> <p>The benchmark should be derived from biological information that is relevant to the ecosystem feature and UoA, although the information does not necessarily have to come from the specific area.</p>
Broadly understood	<p>There is a general knowledge of the component's status, the UoA's impact on the component, the component's distribution or the key elements of the component. This general knowledge can be acquired from diverse sources that are relevant to the component and UoA but does not have to be locally derived information.</p>
Does not hinder	<p>The impact of the UoA is low enough that if the species is capable of improving its status, the UoA will not hinder that improvement. It does not require evidence that the status of the species is actually improving.</p>
If necessary	<p>The term "if necessary" is used in the management strategy PIs at SG60 and SG80 for the primary species, secondary species, habitats and ecosystems components. This is to exclude the assessment of UoAs that do not impact the relevant component at these SG levels.</p>
In place	<p>When a measure or strategy is "in place" the measure or strategy has been implemented, and if multiple measures have been identified to address an impact of the UoA, there is a specified process with a clear timetable and endpoint for implementation of all of the measures.</p>
Information is adequate	<p>"Adequate" refers to the quantity and quality of information needed to justify the level of risk or certainty associated with the specific Scoring Guidepost (SG). The adequacy of information may vary for the different information scoring issues and SGs, depending on what the information is used to support.</p>
Measures / Partial Strategy/ Strategy/ Comprehensive Strategy	<p>"Measures" are actions or tools in place that either explicitly manage impacts on the component or indirectly contribute to management of the component under assessment having been designed to manage impacts elsewhere.</p> <p>A "partial strategy" represents a cohesive arrangement which may comprise one or more measures, an understanding of how it/they work to achieve an outcome and an awareness of the need to change the measures should they cease to be effective. It may not have been designed to manage the impact on that component specifically.</p> <p>A "strategy" represents a cohesive and strategic arrangement which may comprise one or more measures, an understanding of how it/they work to achieve an outcome and which should be designed to manage impact on that component specifically. A strategy needs to be appropriate to the scale, intensity and cultural context of the fishery and</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition and discussion
	<p>should contain mechanisms for the modification fishing practices in the light of the identification of unacceptable impacts.</p> <p>A “comprehensive strategy” (applicable only for ETP component) is a complete and tested strategy made up of linked monitoring, analyses, and management measures and responses.</p>
MSC UoAs	Those UoAs that are in assessment or certified at the time the UoA announces its assessment or reassessment on the MSC website.
Objective Basis for Confidence	<p>“Objective basis for confidence”, as used at the SG80 level in the P2 management PIs (Management Strategy Evaluation scoring issue) refers to the levels of information required to evaluate the likelihood that the management partial strategy will work.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The SG60 level for these PIs requires “plausible argument” based on expert knowledge; • The SG80 level requires expert knowledge augmented by some information collected in the area of the UoA and about the specific component(s) and/or UoA; • The SG100 level requires all preceding information augmented by relatively complete information on the component, much of which comes from systematic monitoring and/or research.
Serious or irreversible harm to “structure and function”	<p>Serious or irreversible harm to “structure or function” means changes caused by the UoA that fundamentally alter the capacity of the habitat or ecosystem to maintain its structure and function.</p> <p>For the habitat component, this is the reduction in habitat structure, biological diversity, abundance and function such that the habitat would be unable to recover to at least 80% of its unimpacted structure, biological diversity and function within 5-20 years, if fishing were to cease entirely.</p> <p>For the ecosystem component, this is the reduction of key features most crucial to maintaining the integrity of its structure and functions and ensuring that ecosystem resilience and productivity is not adversely impacted. This includes, but is not limited to, permanent changes in the biological diversity of the ecological community and the ecosystem’s capacity to deliver ecosystem services.</p>
Within	“Within” means on the precautionary side of a limit, for example, above B_{LIM} or below F_{LIM} .

SA3.2 General requirements for outcome PIs

- SA3.2.1 If a team determines that a UoA has no impact on a particular component, it shall receive a score of 100 under the Outcome PI.
- SA3.2.2 The team shall consider both the current outcome status and the resilience of historical arrangements to function adequately and deliver low risk under future conditions when scoring outcome PIs.
- SA3.2.3 The definitions of required probability in P2 shall be those in [Table SA9](#). 

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table SA9: Probability required at different scoring guideposts. The language of probability in PI 2.4.1 and 2.5.1 is reversed, but holds the same probability expectation as for PI 2.2.1

Performance indicator	SG60 probability requirement	SG80 probability requirement	SG100 probability requirement
PI 1.1.1	Likely = > 70th %ile	Highly likely = > 80th %ile	High degree of certainty = > 95th %ile
PI 2.1.1	Likely = > 70th %ile	Highly likely = > 80th %ile	High degree of certainty = > 90th %ile
PI 2.2.1	Likely = > 60th %ile	Highly likely = > 70th %ile	High degree of certainty = > 80th %ile
PI 2.3.1	Likely = > 70th %ile	Highly likely = > 80th %ile	High degree of certainty = > 90th %ile
PI 2.4.1	Unlikely = < 40th %ile	Highly unlikely = < 30th %ile	Evidence of highly unlikely = < 20th %ile
PI 2.5.1	Unlikely = < 40th %ile	Highly unlikely = < 30th %ile	Evidence of highly unlikely = < 20th %ile

SA3.2.4 The team shall interpret the phrase ‘above the point where recruitment would be impaired’ in the SGs for primary species as outlined in [SA2.2.3](#) under Principle 1.

SA3.3 General requirements for information PIs !!

SA3.3.1 If a team determines that the UoA has no impact on a particular component and has therefore scored 100 under the Outcome PI, the Information PI shall still be scored.

SA3.3.2 Teams shall interpret the SG100 level relating to “information adequate to support a strategy” to include information provided by a strategic research plan, that addresses the information needs of management. This information shall go beyond the immediate short-term management needs to create a strategic body of research relevant to the long-term fishery-specific management system.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.4 Primary species outcome PI (PI 2.1.1)

Table SA10: PI 2.1.1 Primary species outcome PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Primary species	Outcome Status 2.1.1 The UoA aims to maintain primary species above the point where recruitment would be impaired (PRI) and does not hinder recovery of primary species if they are below the PRI.	(a) Main primary species stock status	Main primary species are likely to be above the PRI OR If the species is below the PRI, the UoA has measures in place that are expected to ensure that the UoA does not hinder recovery and rebuilding	Main primary species are highly likely to be above the PRI OR If the species is below the PRI, there is either evidence of recovery or a demonstrably effective strategy in place between all MSC UoAs which categorise this species as main , to ensure that they collectively do not hinder recovery and rebuilding.	There is a high degree of certainty that main primary species are above PRI and are fluctuating around a level consistent with MSY.
		(b) Minor primary species stock status			For minor species that are below the PRI, there is evidence that the UoA does not hinder the recovery and rebuilding of minor primary species

SA3.4.1 The team shall determine and justify which primary species are considered 'main' and which are not. 🟩

SA3.4.2 A species shall be considered 'main' if: !!

SA3.4.2.1 The catch of a species by the UoA comprises 5% or more by weight of the total catch of all species by the UoA, or;

SA3.4.2.2 The species is classified as 'Less resilient' and the catch of the species by the UoA comprises 2% or more by weight of the total catch of all species by the UoA. !!

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- a. Teams shall use one or both of the following criteria to determine whether a species should be classified as 'Less resilient'
 - i. The productivity of the species indicates that it is intrinsically of low resilience, for instance, if determined by the productivity part of a PSA that it has a score equivalent to low or medium productivity; or
 - ii. Even if its intrinsic resilience is high, the existing knowledge of the species indicates that its resilience has been lowered due to anthropogenic or natural changes to its life-history. ■
- SA3.4.3 In the case where individuals are released alive they shall not contribute to the definition of 'main'. ❗
- a. Teams shall provide strong scientific evidence of a very low post-capture mortality.
- SA3.4.4 In cases where a species does not meet the designated weight thresholds of 5% or 2% as defined in SA3.4.2.1 and SA3.4.2.2, the assessment team shall still classify a species as main if the total catch of the UoA is exceptionally large, such that even small catch proportions of a P2 species significantly impact the affected stocks/populations. ■
- SA3.4.5 All other primary species not considered 'main' shall be considered 'minor' species.
- SA3.4.6 At the SG80 level, where a species is below the level at which recruitment could be impaired, the team shall recognise "evidence of recovery" or a "demonstrably effective strategy" as being in place such that all MSC UoAs do not collectively hinder recovery of the species using any or a combination of the following as rationale: ❗
- a. Direct evidence from time series estimates of stock status.
 - b. Indirect evidence from time series of indicators or proxies of stock status indicative of the state of the whole stock.
 - c. Indicators, proxies or absolute estimates of exploitation rate that show that fishing mortality experienced by the stock is lower than F_{MSY} .
 - d. Direct evidence that the proportion of combined catch by all MSC UoAs relative to the total catch of the stock does not hinder recovery.
- SA3.4.7 When assessing scoring issue (a), the team shall take into account whether there are any changes in the catch or mortality of unwanted species resulting from the implementation of measures to minimise their mortality (PI 2.1.2 scoring issue (e)). ❗

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.5 Primary species management strategy PI (PI 2.1.2) !!

Table SA11: PI 2.1.2 Primary species management strategy PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Primary species	<p>Management strategy</p> <p>2.1.2</p> <p>There is a strategy in place that is designed to maintain or to not hinder rebuilding of primary species; and the UoA regularly reviews and implements measures, as appropriate, to minimise the mortality of unwanted catch.</p>	(a) Management strategy in place	There are measures in place for the UoA, if necessary, that are expected to maintain or to not hinder rebuilding of the main primary species at/to levels which are likely to be above the PRI.	There is a partial strategy in place for the UoA, if necessary, that is expected to maintain or to not hinder rebuilding of the main primary species at/to levels which are highly likely to be above the PRI.	There is a strategy in place for the UoA for managing main and minor primary species.
		(b) Management strategy evaluation	The measures are considered likely to work, based on plausible argument (e.g., general experience, theory or comparison with similar UoAs/ species).	There is some objective basis for confidence that the measures/ partial strategy will work, based on some information directly about the UoA and/or species involved.	Testing supports high confidence that the partial strategy/ strategy will work, based on information directly about the UoA and/or species involved.
		(c) Management strategy implementation		There is some evidence that the measures/ partial strategy is being implemented successfully .	There is clear evidence that the partial strategy/ strategy is being implemented successfully and is achieving its overall objective as set out in scoring issue (a) .
		(d) Shark finning	It is likely that shark finning is not taking place.	It is highly likely that shark finning is not taking place.	There is a high degree of certainty that shark finning is not taking place.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

		(e) Review of alternative measures ■	There is a review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of main primary species.	There is a regular review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of main primary species and they are implemented as appropriate.	There is a biannual review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of all primary species, and they are implemented, as appropriate.
--	--	---	--	---	---

SA3.5.1 Teams shall score this PI even if the UoA has no impact on this component. !!

Shark finning

SA3.5.2 If the primary species is a shark, the team shall score scoring issue (d) (following [SA2.4.3–SA2.4.7](#)) to ensure that shark finning is not being undertaken in the UoA. ■

Reviewing measures for unwanted catch

SA3.5.3 If there is unwanted catch as defined in [SA3.1.6](#), the team shall assess scoring issue (e). !!

SA3.5.3.1 “Alternative measures” in scoring issue (e) shall be interpreted by the team as alternative fishing gear and/or practices that have been shown to minimise the rate of incidental mortality of the species or species type to the lowest achievable levels. !!

SA3.5.3.2 “Regular review” in scoring issue (e) shall mean at least once every 5 years. ■

SA3.5.3.3 “As appropriate” in scoring issue (e) in the context of implementing reviewed measures shall be interpreted by the team as situations where potential alternative measures reviewed are: !!

- a. Determined to be more effective at minimising the mortality of unwanted catch than current fishing gear and practices,
- b. Determined to be comparable to existing measures in terms of effect on target species catch, and impacts on vessel and crew safety,
- c. Determined to not negatively impact on other species or habitats, and
- d. Not cost prohibitive to implement. ■

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.6 Primary species information PI (PI 2.1.3) 

Table SA12: PI 2.1.3 Primary species information PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Primary species	<p>2.1.3</p> <p>Information on the nature and amount of primary species taken is adequate to determine the risk posed by the UoA and the effectiveness of the strategy to manage primary species.</p>	(a) Information adequacy for assessment of impact on main species 	<p>Qualitative information is adequate to estimate the impact of the UoA on the main primary species with respect to status.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If RBF is used to score PI 2.1.1 for the UoA: Qualitative information is adequate to estimate productivity and susceptibility attributes for main primary species.</p>	<p>Some quantitative information is available and is adequate to assess the impact of the UoA on the main primary species with respect to status.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If RBF is used to score PI 2.1.1 for the UoA: Some quantitative information is adequate to assess productivity and susceptibility attributes for main primary species.</p>	<p>Quantitative information is available and is adequate to assess with a high degree of certainty the impact of the UoA on main primary species with respect to status.</p>
		(b) Information adequacy for assessment of impact on minor species 			<p>Some quantitative information is adequate to estimate the impact of the UoA on minor primary species with respect to status.</p>
		(c) Information adequacy for management strategy	<p>Information is adequate to support measures to manage main primary species.</p>	<p>Information is adequate to support a partial strategy to manage main primary species.</p>	<p>Information is adequate to support a strategy to manage all primary species, and evaluate with a high degree of certainty whether the strategy is</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
					achieving its objective.

- SA3.6.1 For any data-deficient scoring elements that have been scored using the RBF, the team shall use the second part of Scoring Issue (a) for those elements.
- SA3.6.2 The team shall report the catch and UoA-related mortality of all main species taken by the UoA together with a description of the adequacy of the information, including identifying data sources used and indicating whether they are qualitative or quantitative.
- SA3.6.2.1 Where a coefficient of variation (CV) or precision of an estimate is known, this shall be included in the description of adequacy of the information delivered.
- SA3.6.2.2 Where a species or proportion of the catch of a species has been assessed by the team to be 'unwanted' as determined under SA3.1.6, the estimates of the proportion of the catch that are unwanted for each of these species shall be indicated.
- SA3.6.3 In scoring issues (a) and (b) teams shall consider the following when determining the adequacy of the information in relation to its ability to determine and to detect changes in the outcome indicator score: !!
- SA3.6.3.1 That higher quality information shall be required to demonstrate adequacy as the importance, or difficulty, of estimating the true impact of the UoA on a species in relation to its status increases. !!
- SA3.6.3.2 That in determining the adequacy of the methods used for data collection, the team shall consider: ■
- a. The precision of the estimates (qualitative or quantitative);
 - b. The extent to which the data are verifiable (on their own or in combination with other data sources);
 - c. Potential bias in estimates and data collection methods;
 - d. Comprehensiveness of data; and
 - e. The continuity of data collection.
- SA3.6.4 For scoring issue (c) teams shall consider the adequacy of information in relation to supporting the management measures, partial strategy or strategy including the ability to detect any changes in risk level to main species, e.g. due to changes in the operation of the UoA or the effectiveness or implementation of the management system. !!

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.7 Secondary species outcome PI (PI 2.2.1)

Table SA13: PI 2.2.1 Secondary species outcome PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Secondary species	Outcome Status 2.2.1 The UoA aims to maintain secondary species above a biological based limit and does not hinder recovery of secondary species if they are below a biological based limit.	(a) Main secondary species stock status	Main secondary species are likely to be above biologically based limits. OR If below biologically based limits, there are measures in place expected to ensure that the UoA does not hinder recovery and rebuilding.	Main secondary species are highly likely to be above biologically based limits OR If below biologically based limits, there is either evidence of recovery or a demonstrably effective partial strategy in place such that the UoA does not hinder recovery and rebuilding. AND Where catches of a main secondary species outside of biological limits are considerable , there is either evidence of recovery or a, demonstrably effective strategy in place between those MSC UoAs that have considerable catches of the species , to ensure that they collectively do not hinder recovery and rebuilding.	There is a high degree of certainty that main secondary species are above biologically based limits
		(b) Minor secondary species stock status			For minor species that are below biologically based limits there is evidence that

Fisheries Certification Requirements

					the UoA does not hinder the recovery and rebuilding of secondary species.
--	--	--	--	--	---

- SA3.7.1 The team shall determine and justify which secondary species are considered 'main' and which are not. ■
- SA3.7.1.1 For species that are defined as 'in scope', the requirements in [SA3.4.2–SA3.4.5](#) shall apply here.
- SA3.7.1.2 For species that are defined as 'out of scope' (amphibians, reptiles, birds, mammals) that are not classified as ETP, all species impacted by the UoA shall be considered 'main'.
- a. The requirements in [SA3.4.3](#) shall also apply here
- SA3.7.2 The team shall evaluate the evidence of recovery or the demonstrable effectiveness of the strategy in place by following the general approach outlined in [SA3.4.6](#). !!
- SA3.7.2.1 In the last part of scoring issue (a) at SG80, teams shall consider only the impacts of those MSC UoAs with 'considerable catches'.
- SA3.7.2.2 Considerable catches should be interpreted as those where main secondary species comprise more than 10% of the catch by weight of the UoA.
- SA3.7.3 When assessing scoring issue (a), the team shall take into account whether there are any changes in the catch or mortality of unwanted species resulting from the implementation of measures to minimise their mortality (PI 2.2.2 scoring issue (e)) !!

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.8 Secondary species management strategy PI (PI 2.2.2) **!!**

Table SA14: PI 2.2.2 Secondary species management strategy PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Secondary species	2.2.2 There is a strategy in place for managing secondary species that is designed to maintain or to not hinder rebuilding of secondary species; and the UoA regularly reviews and implements measures, as appropriate, to minimise the mortality of unwanted catch.	(a) Management strategy in place ■	There are measures in place, if necessary, which are expected to maintain or not hinder rebuilding of main secondary species at/to levels which are highly likely to be above biologically based limits or to ensure that the UoA does not hinder their recovery.	There is a partial strategy in place, if necessary, for the UoA that is expected to maintain or not hinder rebuilding of main secondary species at/to levels which are highly likely to be above biologically based limits or to ensure that the UoA does not hinder their recovery.	There is a strategy in place for the UoA for managing main and minor secondary species.
		(b) Management strategy evaluation	The measures are considered likely to work, based on plausible argument (e.g. general experience, theory or comparison with similar UoAs/ species).	There is some objective basis for confidence that the measures/ partial strategy will work, based on some information directly about the UoA and/or species involved.	Testing supports high confidence that the partial strategy/ strategy will work, based on information directly about the UoA and/or species involved.
		(c) Management strategy implementation ■		There is some evidence that the measures/ partial strategy is being implemented successfully .	There is clear evidence that the partial strategy/ strategy is being implemented successfully and is achieving its overall objective as set out in scoring issue (a) .

Fisheries Certification Requirements

		(d) Shark finning 	It is likely that shark finning is not taking place.	It is highly likely that shark finning is not taking place.	There is a high degree of certainty that shark finning is not taking place.
		(e) Review of alternative measures to minimise mortality of unwanted catch	There is a review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of main secondary species.	There is a regular review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of main secondary species and they are implemented as appropriate.	There is a biannual review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of all secondary species, and they are implemented, as appropriate.

- SA3.8.1 The team shall score this PI even if the UoA has no impact on this component.
- SA3.8.2 If the secondary species is a shark, the team shall score scoring issue (d) (following [SA2.4.3–SA2.4.7](#)) to ensure that shark finning is not being undertaken in the UoA.
- SA3.8.3 For this PI, in addition to determining unwanted catch as defined in clause [SA3.1.6](#), the team shall consider all species that are out of the scope of the programme as defined in FCR 7.4.1.1 as unwanted catch.
- SA3.8.4 In assessing scoring issue (e), clause [SA3.5.3](#) and its sub-clauses shall apply here.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.9 Secondary species information PI (PI 2.2.3) 

Table SA15: PI 2.2.3 Secondary species information PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Secondary species	<p>2.2.3</p> <p>Information on the nature and amount of secondary species taken is adequate to determine the risk posed by the UoA and the effectiveness of the strategy to manage secondary species.</p>	(a) Information adequacy for assessment of impact on main secondary species 	<p>Qualitative information is adequate to estimate the impact of the UoA on the main secondary species with respect to status.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If RBF is used to score PI 2.2.1 for the UoA: Qualitative information is adequate to estimate productivity and susceptibility attributes for main secondary species.</p>	<p>Some quantitative information is available and is adequate to assess the impact of the UoA on the main secondary species with respect to status.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If RBF is used to score PI 2.2.1 for the UoA: Some quantitative information is adequate to assess productivity and susceptibility attributes for main secondary species.</p>	<p>Quantitative information is available and is adequate to assess with a high degree of certainty the impact of the UoA on main secondary species with respect to status.</p>
		(b) Information adequacy for assessment of impact on minor secondary species 			Some quantitative information is adequate to estimate the impact of the UoA on minor secondary species with respect to status.
		(c) Information adequacy for management strategy	Information is adequate to support measures to manage main secondary species.	Information is adequate to support a partial strategy to manage main secondary species.	Information is adequate to support a strategy to manage all secondary species, and evaluate with a high degree of certainty whether the strategy is achieving its objective .

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- SA3.9.1 Clauses [SA3.6.1](#)–[SA3.6.4](#) shall apply here also, noting that where those clauses refer to primary species they apply here to secondary species. !!

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.10 ETP species outcome PI (PI 2.3.1)

Table SA16: PI 2.3.1 ETP species outcome PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
ETP species	Outcome Status	<p>(a) Effects of the UoA on population/stocks within national or international limits, where applicable</p> <p>⚠</p>	Where national and/or international requirements set limits for ETP species, the effects of the UoA on the population/stock are known and likely to be within these limits.	Where national and/or international requirements set limits for ETP species, the combined effects of the MSC UoAs on the population/stock are known and highly likely to be within these limits.	Where national and/or international requirements set limits for ETP species, there is a high degree of certainty that the combined effects of the MSC UoAs are within these limits.
	2.3.1				
	The UoA meets national and international requirements for protection of ETP species.				
	The UoA does not hinder recovery of ETP species.	(b) Direct effects	Known direct effects of the UoA are likely to not hinder recovery of ETP species.	Direct effects of the UoA are highly likely to not hinder recovery of ETP species.	There is a high degree of confidence that there are no significant detrimental direct effects of the UoA on ETP species.
		(c) Indirect effects		Indirect effects have been considered for the UoA and are thought to be highly likely to not create unacceptable impacts.	There is a high degree of confidence that there are no significant detrimental indirect effects of the UoA on ETP species.

SA3.10.1 In scoring issue (a), “where national and/or international requirements set limits” refers to limits set for protection and rebuilding, provided through the national legislation or binding international agreements, as defined in SA3.1.5 and subclauses.

SA3.10.1.1 If there is no applicable national legislation or binding international agreement, scoring issue (a) shall not be scored.

SA3.10.2 The team’s scoring shall reflect the likelihood that the UoA meets these requirements and its likelihood of causing unacceptable impacts.

SA3.10.2.1 The team shall interpret the requirement for the UoA to be “within national or international limits” as:

- a. At SG60, where it is likely that the UoA meets the requirements, there is some evidence that requirements for protection and rebuilding are

Fisheries Certification Requirements

being achieved.

- b. At SG80, where it is highly likely that the combined MSC UoAs meet the requirements, there would be direct demonstration that requirements for protection and rebuilding are being achieved.
- c. At SG100, there should be full compliance with all requirements, and mortality of ETP species caused by the combined impacts of MSC UoAs should be negligible. In addition, if there are no ETP species caught in the MSC UoAs then the UoA would meet SG 100.

SA3.10.3 When assessing scoring issue (a) and (b), the team shall take into account whether there are any changes in the catch or mortality of ETP species resulting from the implementation of measures to minimise their mortality (PI 2.3.2 scoring issue (e)).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.11 ETP species management strategy PI (PI 2.3.2) !!

Table SA17: PI 2.3.2 ETP species management strategy PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
ETP species	<p>Management strategy</p> <p>2.3.2</p> <p>The UoA has in place precautionary management strategies designed to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - meet national and international requirements; and - ensure the UoA does not hinder recovery of ETP species. <p>Also, the UoA regularly reviews and implements measures, as appropriate, to minimise the mortality of ETP species.</p>	(a) Management strategy in place (national and international requirements)	There are measures in place that minimise the UoA-related mortality of ETP species, and are expected to be highly likely to achieve national and international requirements for the protection of ETP species.	There is a strategy in place for managing the UoA's impact on ETP species, including measures to minimise mortality, which is designed to be highly likely to achieve national and international requirements for the protection of ETP species.	There is a comprehensive strategy in place for managing the UoA's impact on ETP species, including measures to minimise mortality, which is designed to achieve above national and international requirements for the protection of ETP species.
		(b) Management strategy in place (alternative)	There are measures in place that are expected to ensure the UoA does not hinder the recovery of ETP species.	There is a strategy in place that is expected to ensure the UoA does not hinder the recovery of ETP species.	There is a comprehensive strategy in place for managing ETP species, to ensure the UoA does not hinder the recovery of ETP species.
		(c) Management strategy evaluation	The measures are considered likely to work, based on plausible argument (e.g. general experience, theory or comparison with similar UoAs/ species).	There is an objective basis for confidence that the partial strategy/ strategy will work, based on information directly about the UoA and/or the species involved.	The strategy/ comprehensive strategy is mainly based on information directly about the UoA and/or species involved, and a quantitative analysis supports high confidence that the strategy will work.
		(d) Management strategy implementation		There is some evidence that the measures/strategy is being	There is clear evidence that the strategy/ comprehensive strategy is being

Fisheries Certification Requirements

				implemented successfully.	implemented successfully and is achieving its objective as set out in scoring issue (a) or (b).
		(e) Review of alternative measures to minimise mortality of ETP species	There is a review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of ETP species.	There is a regular review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of ETP species and they are implemented as appropriate.	There is a biannual review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of ETP species, and they are implemented, as appropriate.

SA3.11.1 When scoring the ETP Management Strategy PI SGs teams shall consider the need to minimise mortality. ❗

SA3.11.1.1 All sources of direct mortality shall be considered, including, but not limited to, direct deaths and injuries leading to death.

SA3.11.2 The team shall evaluate either scoring issue (a) or scoring issue (b) on the ETP species management strategy:

SA3.11.2.1 Where there are requirements for protection and rebuilding provided through national ETP legislation or international agreements, the team shall score scoring issue (a).

SA3.11.2.2 Where there are no requirements for protection and rebuilding provided through national ETP legislation or international agreements, the team shall score scoring issue (b).

SA3.11.3 In assessing scoring issue (e), clause [SA3.5.3](#) and its sub-clauses shall apply here, noting that where those clauses refer to mortality of unwanted species they apply here to mortality of ETP species. 🟩

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.12 ETP species information PI (PI 2.3.3) 

Table SA18: PI 2.3.3 ETP species information PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
ETP species	<p>Information</p> <p>2.3.3</p> <p>Relevant information is collected to support the management of UoA impacts on ETP species, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - information for the development of the management strategy; - information to assess the effectiveness of the management strategy; and - information to determine the outcome status of ETP species 	(a) Information adequacy for assessment of impacts	<p>Qualitative information is adequate to estimate the UoA related mortality on ETP species.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If RBF is used to score PI 2.3.1 for the UoA</p> <p>Qualitative information is adequate to estimate productivity and susceptibility attributes for ETP species.</p>	<p>Some quantitative information is adequate to assess the UoA related mortality and impact and to determine whether the UoA may be a threat to protection and recovery of the ETP species.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If RBF is used to score PI 2.3.1 for the UoA:</p> <p>Some quantitative information is adequate to assess productivity and susceptibility attributes for ETP species.</p>	<p>Quantitative information is available to assess with a high degree of certainty the magnitude of UoA-related impacts, mortalities and injuries and the consequences for the status of ETP species.</p>
		(b) Information adequacy for management strategy	<p>Information is adequate to support measures to manage the impacts on ETP species</p>	<p>Information is adequate to measure trends and support a strategy to manage impacts on ETP species</p>	<p>Information is adequate to support a comprehensive strategy to manage impacts, minimize mortality and injury of ETP species, and evaluate with a high degree of certainty whether a strategy is achieving its objectives.</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- SA3.12.1 The team should interpret “UoA related mortality” for SG60 and SG80 to mean the mortality in the UoA under assessment.
- SA3.12.2 [SA3.6.1–SA3.6.4](#) shall apply here (except SA3.6.2.2) noting that the paragraphs apply to all ETP species (i.e., there is no ‘main’ for ETP).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.13 Habitats outcome PI (PI 2.4.1)

Table SA19: PI 2.4.1 Habitats outcome PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Habitats	<p>Outcome status</p> <p>2.4.1</p> <p>The UoA does not cause serious or irreversible harm to habitat structure and function, considered on the basis of the area(s) covered by the governance body(s) responsible for fisheries management.</p>	(a) Commonly encountered habitat status	The UoA is unlikely to reduce structure and function of the commonly encountered habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.	The UoA is highly unlikely to reduce structure and function of the commonly encountered habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.	There is evidence that the UoA is highly unlikely to reduce structure and function of the commonly encountered habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.
		(b) VME habitat status	The UoA is unlikely to reduce structure and function of the VME habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.	The UoA is highly unlikely to reduce structure and function of the VME habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.	There is evidence that the UoA is highly unlikely to reduce structure and function of the VME habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.
		(c) Minor habitat status			There is evidence that the UoA is highly unlikely to reduce structure and function of the minor habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.

SA3.13.1 The team shall assess the habitats component in relation to the effects of the UoA on the structure and function of the habitats impacted by the UoA. 

SA3.13.1.1 Where the team does not have enough information to assess SA3.13.1, the RBF (CSA) shall be used. 

SA3.13.1.2 The RBF (CSA) may be used even when there is sufficient information to assess SA3.13.1 but is not mandatory under these circumstances.

SA3.13.2 If a benthic habitat is being assessed, the team shall recognise habitat categories based on the following habitat characteristics: 

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- a. Substratum – sediment type (e.g., hard substrate)
- b. Geomorphology – seafloor topography (e.g., flat rocky terrace)
- c. Biota – characteristic floral and/or faunal group(s) (e.g., kelp-dominated seagrass bed and mixed epifauna, respectively)

SA3.13.3 The team shall determine and justify which habitats are commonly encountered, vulnerable marine ecosystems (VMEs), and minor (i.e., all other habitats). [■](#)

SA3.13.3.1 A commonly encountered habitat shall be defined as a habitat that regularly comes into contact with a gear used by the UoA, considering the spatial (geographical) overlap of fishing effort with the habitat's range within the management area(s) covered by the governance body(s) relevant to the UoA. [■](#)

SA3.13.3.2 A VME⁶ shall be defined as is done in paragraph 42 subparagraphs (i)-(v) of the FAO Guidelines⁷ (definition provided in [GSA3.13.3.2](#)). This definition shall be applied both inside and outside EEZs and irrespective of depth. [■](#)

SA3.13.4 The team shall interpret “serious or irreversible harm” as reductions in habitat structure and function (as defined in [Table SA8](#)) such that the habitat would be unable to recover at least 80% of its structure and function within 5-20 years if fishing on the habitat were to cease entirely. **!!**

SA3.13.4.1 In the case of VMEs the team shall interpret “serious or irreversible harm” as reductions in habitat structure and function below 80% of the unimpacted level. [■](#)

SA3.13.5 When assessing the status of habitats and the impacts of fishing, the team shall consider the full area managed by the local, regional, national, or international governance body(s) responsible for fisheries management in the area(s) where the UoA operates (the “managed area” for short). **!!**

SA3.13.5.1 The team shall use all available information (e.g., bioregional information) to determine the range and distribution of the habitat under consideration and whether this distribution is entirely within the “managed area” or extends beyond the “managed area”.

SA3.13.5.2 In cases where a habitat's range falls within the “managed area”, the team shall consider the habitat's range inside the “managed area”.

SA3.13.5.3 In cases where a habitat's range overlaps the “managed area”, the team shall consider the habitat's range both inside and outside the “managed area”.

SA3.13.6 The team shall interpret the terms “unlikely”, “highly unlikely” and “evidence” in SG60, SG80 and SG100 as in [Table SA9](#).

⁶ Throughout the requirements and guidance, the term “VME” also includes “potential VME” to cover situations when a governance body uses a precautionary approach (e.g., where there is doubt over whether a habitat is a VME or not) and when a habitat is being treated as a potential VME.

⁷ Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, 2009. *International guidelines for the management of deep-sea fisheries in the high seas*. FAO, Rome.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.14 Habitats management strategy PI (PI 2.4.2) 

Table SA20: PI 2.4.2 Habitats management strategy PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Habitats	<p>Management strategy</p> <p>2.4.2</p> <p>There is a strategy in place that is designed to ensure the UoA does not pose a risk of serious or irreversible harm to the habitats.</p>	(a) Management strategy in place 	There are measures in place, if necessary, that are expected to achieve the Habitat Outcome 80 level of performance.	There is a partial strategy in place, if necessary, that is expected to achieve the Habitat Outcome 80 level of performance or above.	There is a strategy in place for managing the impact of all MSC UoAs/non-MSC fisheries on habitats.
		(b) Management strategy evaluation	The measures are considered likely to work, based on plausible argument (e.g. general experience, theory or comparison with similar UoAs/habitats).	There is some objective basis for confidence that the measures/partial strategy will work, based on information directly about the UoA and/or habitats involved.	Testing supports high confidence that the partial strategy/strategy will work, based on information directly about the UoA and/or habitats involved.
		(c) Management strategy implementation		There is some quantitative evidence that the measures/partial strategy is being implemented successfully.	There is clear quantitative evidence that the partial strategy/strategy is being implemented successfully and is achieving its objective, as outlined in scoring issue (a).
		(d) Compliance with management requirements and other MSC UoAs'/non-MSC fisheries' measures to protect VMEs	There is qualitative evidence that the UoA complies with its management requirements to protect VMEs.	There is some quantitative evidence that the UoA complies with both its management requirements and with protection measures	There is clear quantitative evidence that the UoA complies with both its management requirements and with protection measures

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
				afforded to VMEs by other MSC UoAs/ non-MSC fisheries, where relevant.	afforded to VMEs by other MSC UoAs/ non-MSC fisheries, where relevant.

SA3.14.1 The team shall score this PI even if the UoA has no impact on this component. ■

SA3.14.2 The team shall consider the differences between measures, partial strategy, and strategy as they apply to habitat management. !!

SA3.14.2.1 In scoring issue (a) at the SG100 level, the “strategy” for a UoA that encounters VMEs shall include a comprehensive management plan that is supported by a comprehensive impact assessment that determines that all fishing activities will not cause serious or irreversible harm to VMEs. ■

SA3.14.2.2 In scoring issue (a) at the SG80 level, the “partial strategy” for a UoA that encounters VMEs shall include, at least, the following points: !!

- a. Requirements to comply with management measures to protect VMEs (e.g., designation of closed areas).
- b. Implementation by the UoA of precautionary measures to avoid encounters with VMEs, such as scientifically based, gear- and habitat-specific move-on rules or local area closures to avoid potential serious or irreversible harm on VMEs.

SA3.14.2.3 In scoring issue (a) at the SG60 level, “measures” for a UoA that encounters VMEs shall include, at least, the following points: ■

- a. Requirements to comply with management measures to protect VMEs (e.g., designation of closed areas);
- b. Implementation by the UoA of precautionary measures to avoid encounters with VMEs, based on commonly accepted move-on rules.

SA3.14.3 The team shall score scoring issue (d) if the UoA impacts a VME and/or if another MSC UoA or non-MSC fishery, where relevant, impacts a VME within the UoA’s “managed area” (as defined in [SA3.13.5](#)). ■

SA3.14.3.1 To avoid the possibility that the cumulative impact of MSC UoAs could cause serious or irreversible harm to VMEs, for scoring issue (d), the team shall assess the extent to which the UoA:

- a. Takes into account and implements, where relevant, precautionary protection measures implemented by other MSC UoAs (such as closed areas arising from move-on rules);
- b. Takes into account information from non-MSC fisheries, where available and where relevant.

SA3.14.3.2 A determination of “where relevant” shall include: ■

- a. Consideration only of areas where closure is clearly aimed (i.e., based on scientific rationale and best practice) at precautionary protection of VMEs and not closures that are designed for other purposes;
- b. Avoidance of closed areas arising from move-on rules and

Fisheries Certification Requirements

consideration of other measures implemented by all MSC UoAs;

- c. Avoidance of any relevant move-on areas implemented by non-MSF fisheries if the area coordinates are available (e.g., made publicly available by the non-MSF fisheries' management entity).

SA3.14.4 When assessing scoring issue (d), the team shall interpret the different levels of "evidence" in relation to the availability of electronic or other verified data consistent with the scale and intensity of the UoA, which enables the UoA to implement the requirements effectively with respect to VMEs. ■

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.15 Habitats information PI (PI 2.4.3) 

Table SA21: PI 2.4.3 Habitats information PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Habitats	<p>Information / monitoring</p> <p>2.4.3</p> <p>Information is adequate to determine the risk posed to the habitat by the UoA and the effectiveness of the strategy to manage impacts on the habitat.</p>	(a) Information quality	<p>The types and distribution of the main habitats are broadly understood.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If CSA is used to score PI 2.4.1 for the UoA: Qualitative information is adequate to estimate the types and distribution of the main habitats.</p>	<p>The nature, distribution and vulnerability of the main habitats in the UoA area are known at a level of detail relevant to the scale and intensity of the UoA.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If CSA is used to score PI 2.4.1 for the UoA: Some quantitative information is available and is adequate to estimate the types and distribution of the main habitats.</p>	The distribution of all habitats is known over their range, with particular attention to the occurrence of vulnerable habitats.
		(b) Information adequacy for assessment of impacts	<p>Information is adequate to broadly understand the nature of the main impacts of gear use on the main habitats, including spatial overlap of habitat with fishing gear.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If CSA is used to score PI 2.4.1 for the UoA: Qualitative information is adequate to</p>	<p>Information is adequate to allow for identification of the main impacts of the UoA on the main habitats, and there is reliable information on the spatial extent of interaction and on the timing and location of use of the fishing gear.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If CSA is used to score PI 2.4.1 for the UoA: Some quantitative information is available and is adequate to estimate the consequence and</p>	The physical impacts of the gear on all habitats have been quantified fully.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
			estimate the consequence and spatial attributes of the main habitats.	spatial attributes of the main habitats	
		(c) Monitoring !!		Adequate information continues to be collected to detect any increase in risk to the main habitats.	Changes in all habitat distributions over time are measured.

SA3.15.1 The team shall score this PI even if the UoA has no impact on this component.

SA3.15.2 The team shall determine and justify which habitats are considered “main” and which are not. [SA3.13.3.1](#) and [SA3.13.3.2](#) apply here. ■

SA3.15.3 For any data-deficient scoring elements that have been scored using the CSA, the team shall use the second part of the scoring issues (a) and (b) for the SG60 and SG80 levels. !!

SA3.15.4 The team shall interpret “vulnerability” for the SG80 and SG100 levels to mean the combination of:

SA3.15.4.1 The likelihood that the gear would encounter the habitat, and

SA3.15.4.2 The likelihood that the habitat would be altered if an encounter between the gear and the habitat did occur.

SA3.15.5 The SG100 level does not include the qualifier “main”, and the team shall consider all habitats in the assessment.

SA3.15.6 For UoAs encountering VMEs, scoring issue (b) at the SG80 level should, at least, include the following information:

- a. Maps and specific position information relating to the UoA’s footprint.
- b. Position of closed areas to protect VMEs.
- c. Position of closed areas that were established by the UoA, other MSC UoAs, and non-MSC fisheries fishing in the area as a precautionary measure, subject to the provisions of [SA3.14.3.2](#).
- d. Catch and catch rates of VME-indicator organisms and information to support the scientific definition of precautionary trigger levels, where these are used.

SA3.15.6.1 The level of detail required by SA3.15.6 shall be judged against the requirements of the partial strategy or strategy and against the scale and size of the UoA.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.16 Ecosystem outcome PI (PI 2.5.1)

Table SA22: PI 2.5.1 Ecosystem outcome PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Ecosystem	<p>Outcome Status</p> <p>2.5.1</p> <p>The UoA does not cause serious or irreversible harm to the key elements of ecosystem structure and function.</p>	(a) Ecosystem status	The UoA is unlikely to disrupt the key elements underlying ecosystem structure and function to a point where there would be a serious or irreversible harm.	The UoA is highly unlikely to disrupt the key elements underlying ecosystem structure and function to a point where there would be a serious or irreversible harm.	There is evidence that the UoA is highly unlikely to disrupt the key elements underlying ecosystem structure and function to a point where there would be a serious or irreversible harm.

- SA3.16.1 The team shall score the other components of the assessment (i.e., P1 target species, primary species, secondary species, ETP species and habitats) separately to this PI, which considers the wider ecosystem structure and function.
- SA3.16.2 The team shall interpret serious or irreversible harm to structure and function as outlined in [Table SA8](#).
- SA3.16.3 The team should note that “key” ecosystem elements are the features of an ecosystem considered as being most crucial to giving the ecosystem its characteristic nature and dynamics, and are considered relative to the scale and intensity of the UoA. They are features most crucial to maintaining the integrity of its structure and functions and the key determinants of the ecosystem resilience and productivity.
- SA3.16.4 The team shall interpret the terms “unlikely”, “highly unlikely” and “evidence for” in SG60, SG80 and SG100 as in [Table SA9](#).
- SA3.16.5 The team should make sure that:
- SA3.16.5.1 Where the team uses qualitative analysis and/or expert judgements in scoring a UoA at the SG60 and SG80 SGs this should be approximately equivalent to the quantitative probability interpretation given in [Table SA9](#).
 - a. The justification for equivalence shall be provided.
 - b. A range of informed viewpoints or alternative hypotheses may be used to make qualitative judgements about the probability interpretation of the SG.
 - c. The team may consider using the SICA to assess this PI as a means of obtaining the range of viewpoints and constructing the probability interpretation of the SG.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.17 Ecosystem management strategy PI (PI 2.5.2) 

Table SA23: PI 2.5.2 Ecosystem management strategy PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Ecosystem	<p>Management strategy</p> <p>2.5.2</p> <p>There are measures in place to ensure the UoA does not pose a risk of serious or irreversible harm to ecosystem structure and function.</p>	(a) Management strategy in place	There are measures in place, if necessary which take into account the potential impacts of the UoA on key elements of the ecosystem.	There is a partial strategy in place, if necessary, which takes into account available information and is expected to restrain impacts of the UoA on the ecosystem so as to achieve the Ecosystem Outcome 80 level of performance.	There is a strategy that consists of a plan , in place which contains measures to address all main impacts of the UoA on the ecosystem, and at least some of these measures are in place.
		(b) Management strategy evaluation	The measures are considered likely to work, based on plausible argument (e.g., general experience, theory or comparison with similar UoAs/ ecosystems).	There is some objective basis for confidence that the measures/ partial strategy will work, based on some information directly about the UoA and/or the ecosystem involved	Testing supports high confidence that the partial strategy/ strategy will work, based on information directly about the UoA and/or ecosystem involved
		(c) Management strategy implementation		There is some evidence that the measures/parti al strategy is being implemented successfully .	There is clear evidence that the partial strategy/strategy is being implemented successfully and is achieving its objective as set out in scoring issue (a) .

SA3.17.1 The team shall note that the measures required by SG60 may exist primarily to manage the impact on target species or other components, but have the capacity

Fisheries Certification Requirements

to achieve ecosystem outcomes.

- SA3.17.2 The team shall note that the plan and measures in place at SG100 should be based on well-understood functional relationships between the UoA and the components and elements of the ecosystem.
- SA3.17.2.1 The plan should provide for the development of a full strategy that restrains impacts on the ecosystem to ensure the UoA does not cause serious or irreversible harm.
- SA3.17.3 The team shall note that for SG80 and SG100, partial strategies and strategies respectively may also contain measures designed and implemented to address impacts on components that have been evaluated elsewhere in this framework.
- SA3.17.3.1 If the measures address specific ecosystem impacts effectively enough to meet the appropriate standard, then it is not necessary to have special “ecosystem measures” to address the same impacts.
- SA3.17.3.2 It may not be necessary to have a specific “ecosystem strategy” other than that which comprises the individual strategies for the other components under P1 and P2.
- SA3.17.3.3 If there are ecosystem impacts that may not be addressed effectively by existing measures, it may be necessary to add new measures or strengthen existing ones to address those impacts.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA3.18 Ecosystem information PI (PI 2.5.3)

Table SA24: PI 2.5.3 Ecosystem information PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Ecosystem	<p>Information / monitoring</p> <p>2.5.3</p> <p>There is adequate knowledge of the impacts of the UoA on the ecosystem.</p>	(a) Information quality	Information is adequate to identify the key elements of the ecosystem	Information is adequate to broadly understand the key elements of the ecosystem.	
		(b) Investigation of UoA impacts	Main impacts of the UoA on these key ecosystem elements can be inferred from existing information, but have not been investigated in detail.	Main impacts of the UoA on these key ecosystem elements can be inferred from existing information, and some have been investigated in detail.	Main interactions between the UoA and these ecosystem elements can be inferred from existing information, and have been investigated in detail.
		(c) Understanding of component functions		The main functions of the components (i.e., P1 target species, primary, secondary and ETP species and Habitats) in the ecosystem are known.	The impacts of the UoA on P1 target species, primary, secondary and ETP species and Habitats are identified and the main functions of these components in the ecosystem are understood.
		(d) Information relevance		Adequate information is available on the impacts of the UoA on these components to allow some of the main consequences for the ecosystem to be inferred.	Adequate information is available on the impacts of the UoA on the components and elements to allow the main consequences for the ecosystem to be inferred.
		(e) Monitoring		Adequate data continue to be collected to detect any increase in risk	Information is adequate to support the development of strategies to

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
				level.	manage ecosystem impacts.

SA3.18.1 In scoring issue (b), the team shall: ■

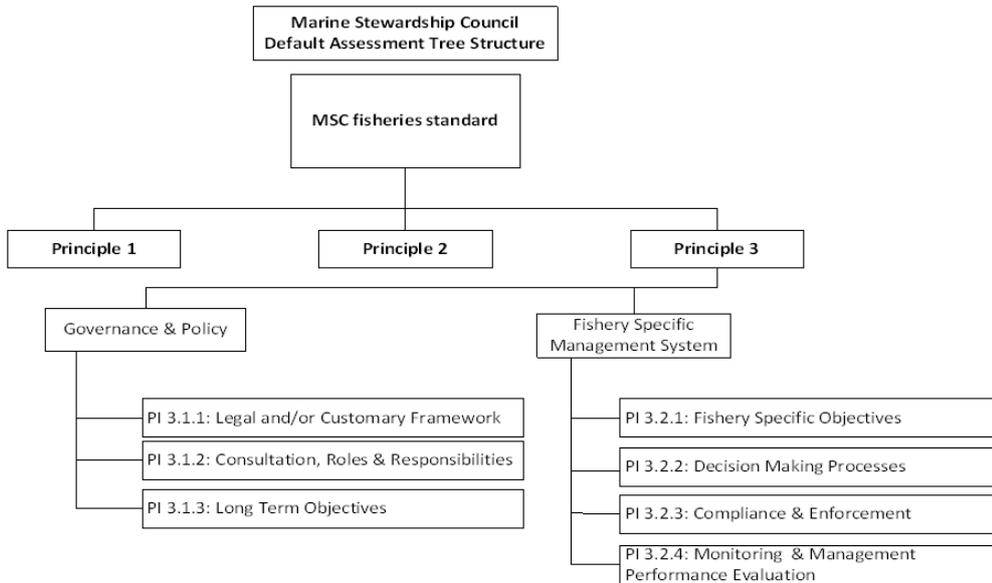
SA3.18.1.1 Require some information of “the main impacts of the UoA on these key ecosystem elements” at the SG80 level.

SA3.18.1.2 Focus on the “main interactions between the UoA and these ecosystem elements” at the SG100 level. At this level:

- d. UoAs should be capable of adapting management to environmental changes as well as managing the effect of the UoA on the ecosystem.
- e. Monitoring the effects of environmental change on the natural productivity of the UoAs should be considered best practice and should include recognition of the increasing importance of climate change.

SA4 Principle 3

Figure SA3: Principle 3 default tree structure



SA4.1 General requirements for Principle 3

- SA4.1.1 Teams shall determine and state which jurisdictional category or combination of jurisdictional categories apply to the management system of the UoA, including consideration of formal, informal and/or traditional management systems when assessing performance of UoAs under Principle 3, including: !!
- Single jurisdiction;
 - Single jurisdiction with indigenous component;
 - Shared stocks;
 - Straddling stocks;
 - Stocks of highly migratory species (HMS);
 - Stocks of discrete high seas non-HMS.
- SA4.1.2 UoAs subject to international cooperation to manage stocks as well as UoAs not subject to international cooperation to manage stocks shall be subject to evaluation under P3 Performance Indicators.
- SA4.1.3 The performance of other fisheries' management bodies where they are also subject to international cooperation to manage the stock shall not be individually assessed, except where they impact directly on P1 and P2 outcomes and/or P3 implementation. !!
- SA4.1.4 When scores are based on the consideration of informal or traditional management systems, the team shall provide, in the rationale, evidence

Fisheries Certification Requirements

demonstrating the validity and robustness of the conclusions by: ■

- a. Using different methods to collect information.
- b. Cross checking opinions and views from different segments of the stakeholder community.

SA4.1.5 Teams shall consider the scale and intensity of the UoA in determining the appropriateness of the management system.

SA4.2 Principle 3 Terminology

SA4.2.1 The term “explicit” as used in the Principle 3 scoring guideposts is not applicable solely to formally codified or documented management measures and mechanisms.

SA4.2.2 The term “explicit” shall also refer to informal management measures and mechanisms that are well established and effective.

SA4.2.3 In scoring management performance in the continuum from implicit to explicit, the team shall consider:

SA4.2.3.1 The extent to which such management measures, whether formal or informal, are established in the UoA,

SA4.2.3.2 How well they are understood and applied by users within the UoA, and

SA4.2.3.3 The extent to which such measures are considered durable and unambiguous.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA4.3 Legal and/or customary framework PI (PI 3.1.1)

Table SA25: PI 3.1.1 Legal and/or customary framework PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Governance and policy	<p>Legal and/or customary framework</p> <p>3.1.1</p> <p>The management system exists within an appropriate and effective legal and/or customary framework which ensures that it:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Is capable of delivering sustainability in the UoA(s) - Observes the legal rights created explicitly or established by custom of people dependent on fishing for food or livelihood; and 	<p>(a)</p> <p>Compatibility of laws or standards with effective management </p>	<p>There is an effective national legal system and a framework for cooperation with other parties, where necessary, to deliver management outcomes consistent with MSC Principles 1 and 2.</p>	<p>There is an effective national legal system and organised and effective cooperation with other parties, where necessary, to deliver management outcomes consistent with MSC Principles 1 and 2.</p>	<p>There is an effective national legal system and binding procedures governing cooperation with other parties which delivers management outcomes consistent with MSC Principles 1 and 2.</p>
		<p>(b)</p> <p>Resolution of disputes </p>	<p>The management system incorporates or is subject by law to a mechanism for the resolution of legal disputes arising within the system.</p>	<p>The management system incorporates or is subject by law to a transparent mechanism for the resolution of legal disputes which is considered to be effective in dealing with most issues and that is appropriate to the context of the UoA.</p>	<p>The management system incorporates or is subject by law to a transparent mechanism for the resolution of legal disputes that is appropriate to the context of the fishery and has been tested and proven to be effective.</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
	- Incorporates an appropriate dispute resolution framework.	(c) Respect for rights	The management system has a mechanism to generally respect the legal rights created explicitly or established by custom of people dependent on fishing for food or livelihood in a manner consistent with the objectives of MSC Principles 1 and 2.	The management system has a mechanism to observe the legal rights created explicitly or established by custom of people dependent on fishing for food or livelihood in a manner consistent with the objectives of MSC Principles 1 and 2.	The management system has a mechanism to formally commit to the legal rights created explicitly or established by custom on people dependent on fishing for food and livelihood in a manner consistent with the objectives of MSC Principles 1 and 2.

- SA4.3.1 The team shall focus scoring on whether or not there is an appropriate and effective legal and/or customary framework that is capable of delivering sustainability in the UoA(s) in accordance with P1 and P 2.
- SA4.3.2 At the SG60 level for scoring issue (a), teams shall interpret compatibility with laws and standards as follows:
- SA4.3.2.1 For a UoA not subject to international cooperation for management of the stock this means:
- a. The existence of national laws, agreements and policies governing the actions of all the authorities and actors involved in managing the UoA, and
 - b. That these laws, agreements and/or policies provide a framework for cooperation between national entities (e.g. between regional and national management, state and federal management, indigenous and other groups) on national management issues, as appropriate for the context, size, scale or intensity of the UoA.
- SA4.3.2.2 For a UoA subject to international cooperation for management of the stock (e.g.: shared, straddling, HMS, high seas non-HMS) this means the existence of:
- a. National and international laws, arrangements, agreements and policies governing the actions of the authorities and actors involved in managing the UoA, and
 - b. A framework for cooperation with other territories, sub-regional or regional fisheries management organisations, or
 - c. Other bilateral/multilateral arrangements that create the cooperation required to deliver sustainable management under the obligations of UNCLOS Articles 63(2), 64, 118, 119, and UNFSA Article 8.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA4.3.2.3 Cooperation shall at least deliver the intent of UNFSA Article 10 paragraphs relating to: 

- a. The collection and sharing of scientific data,
- b. The scientific assessment of stock status, and
- c. Development of scientific advice.

SA4.3.2.4 The flag state of participants in the UoA shall have at least cooperating non-member status within a relevant sub-regional or regional fisheries management organisation or other bilateral/ multilateral arrangement, if such exists.

SA4.3.3 At the SG80 level for scoring issue (a), teams shall interpret consistency with laws and standards as follows:

SA4.3.3.1 For a UoA not subject to international cooperation for management of the stock, this means:

- a. The existence of national laws, agreements and policy governing the actions of all the authorities and actors involved in managing the UoA, and
- b. That these laws, agreements and/or policies also provide for organised cooperation between national entities (e.g. between regional and national management, state and federal management, indigenous and other groups) on national management issues.

SA4.3.3.2 For a UoA subject to international cooperation for management of the stock this means: 

- a. The existence of national and international laws, agreements and policies governing the actions of the authorities and actors involved in managing the UoA,
- b. That effective regional and/or international cooperation creates a comprehensive cooperation under the obligations of UNCLOS Articles 63(2), 64, 118, 119, and UNFSA Article 8,
- c. That cooperation shall at least deliver the intent of UNFSA Article 10 paragraphs relating to the collection, sharing and dissemination of scientific data, the scientific assessment of stock status and development of management advice, the agreement and delivery of management actions consistent with this sustainable management advice, and on monitoring and control, and
- d. That the flag state of fishery participants in the UoA shall be members of the relevant organisation or participants in the arrangement, or agree to apply the conservation and management measures established by the organisation or arrangement if such organisation or arrangement exists.

SA4.3.4 At the SG100 level for scoring issue (a), teams shall interpret consistent with laws and standards as follows:

SA4.3.4.1 For a UoA not subject to international cooperation for management of the stock, this means:

- a. The existence of national laws, agreements and policies governing the actions of all the authorities and actors involved in managing the UoA; and
- b. That these laws, agreements and/or policies also provide for a formal

Fisheries Certification Requirements

system for the cooperation between national entities (e.g. between regional and national management, state and federal management, indigenous and other groups) on national management issues. A coherent, logical set of practices or procedures.

SA4.3.4.2 For a UoA subject to international cooperation for management of the stock, this means:

- a. The existence of national laws, agreements and policies governing the actions of the authorities and actors involved in managing the UoA,
- b. That binding legislation exists governing comprehensive international cooperation under the obligations of UNCLOS Articles 63(2), 64, 118, 119, and UNFSA Articles 8 and 10, and
- c. That cooperation under the RFMO/arrangement, and the actions of the RFMO, shall demonstrably and effectively deliver UNFSA Article 10.

SA4.3.4.3 The team shall interpret across SGs 60, 80 and 100 that “effective national legal system” means that the client can provide objective evidence that most of the essential features and elements needed to deliver sustainable fisheries are present in:

- a. A coherent, logical set of practices or procedures, or
- b. Within a coherent, logical supporting ‘rule-making’ structure.

SA4.3.5 For scoring issue (c), the team shall not make their own judgements or unilateral decisions about whether or not custom or national treaties relating to aboriginal or indigenous people have conferred rights upon any particular group or individual.

SA4.3.5.1 The use of the term “treaties”, in relation to scoring issue (c), shall not include international treaties or treaties between states or nations, and is limited, in this context to national treaties relating specifically to aboriginal or indigenous people. ▣

SA4.3.6 The team shall interpret “generally respect” in scoring issue (c) at SG60 to mean that there is some evidence that the legal rights created explicitly or established by custom of people dependent on fishing for food or livelihood, and their long term interests, are considered within the legal and/or customary framework for managing fisheries. ▣

SA4.3.7 The team shall interpret “observe” in scoring issue (c) at SG80 to mean that:

SA4.3.7.1 There are more formal arrangements such as bylaws or regulation that make explicit the requirement to consider the legal rights created explicitly or by custom of people dependent on fishing for food or livelihood; and

SA4.3.7.2 Those peoples’ long-term interests are taken into account within the legal and/or customary framework for managing fisheries.

SA4.3.8 The team shall interpret “formally commit” in scoring issue (c) at SG100 to mean that the client can demonstrate a mandated legal basis where rights are fully codified within the fishery management system and/or its policies and procedures for managing fisheries under a legal framework.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA4.4 Consultation, roles and responsibilities PI (PI 3.1.2)

Table SA26: PI 3.1.2 Consultation, roles and responsibilities PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Governance and policy	<p>Consultation, roles and responsibilities</p> <p>3.1.2</p> <p>The management system has effective consultation processes that are open to interested and affected parties.</p> <p>The roles and responsibilities of organisations and individuals who are involved in the management process are clear and understood by all relevant parties.</p>	(a) Roles and responsibilities 	Organisations and individuals involved in the management process have been identified. Functions, roles and responsibilities are generally understood .	Organisations and individuals involved in the management process have been identified. Functions, roles and responsibilities are explicitly defined and well understood for key areas of responsibility and interaction.	Organisations and individuals involved in the management process have been identified. Functions, roles and responsibilities are explicitly defined and well understood for all areas of responsibility and interaction.
		(b) Consultation processes 	The management system includes consultation processes that obtain relevant information from the main affected parties, including local knowledge, to inform the management system.	The management system includes consultation processes that regularly seek and accept relevant information, including local knowledge. The management system demonstrates consideration of the information obtained.	The management system includes consultation processes that regularly seek and accept relevant information, including local knowledge. The management system demonstrates consideration of the information and explains how it is used or not used .

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		(c) Participation		The consultation process provides opportunity for all interested and affected parties to be involved.	The consultation process provides opportunity and encouragement for all interested and affected parties to be involved, and facilitates their effective engagement.

- SA4.4.1 Teams shall focus scoring on the effectiveness and transparency of the consultation processes implemented by fishery managers to obtain and consider information from a wide range of sources, including local knowledge, for input into a broad range of decisions, policies and practices within the management system. 
- SA4.4.2 Teams shall not focus scoring under this PI on the type of information obtained, or on mandating for what or how it must be used.
- SA4.4.3 Teams shall verify that consultation processes within the management system include consideration of consultation processes at the management system level as well as fishery-specific management systems that occur within it. 
- SA4.4.4 Consultation processes that exist at a multinational level and a national level shall be included and considered, subject to SA4.1.3. 
- SA4.4.5 Teams shall interpret “local knowledge” to mean: qualitative, and/or anecdotal, and/or quantitative information, and/or data that come from individuals or groups local to the fisheries managed under the UoAs’ management system. 

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA4.5 Long term objectives PI (PI 3.1.3)

Table SA27: PI 3.1.3 Long term objective PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Governance and policy	<p>Long term objectives</p> <p>3.1.3</p> <p>The management policy has clear long-term objectives to guide decision-making that are consistent with MSC fisheries standard, and incorporates the precautionary approach.</p>	<p>(a)</p> <p>Objectives</p> <p>!!</p>	<p>Long term objectives to guide decision-making, consistent with MSC fisheries standard and the precautionary approach, are implicit within management policy.</p>	<p>Clear long term objectives that guide decision-making, consistent with MSC fisheries standard and the precautionary approach, are explicit within management policy.</p>	<p>Clear long term objectives that guide decision-making, consistent with MSC fisheries standard and the precautionary approach, are explicit within and required by management policy</p>

SA4.5.1 The team shall interpret management policy to mean outside the specific UoA (i.e., at a higher level or within a broader context than the fishery-specific management system).

SA4.5.2 The team shall interpret the precautionary approach for the purposes of scoring this PI to mean being cautious when information is uncertain, unreliable or inadequate and that the absence of adequate scientific information shall not be used as a reason for postponing or failing to take conservation and management measures.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA4.6 Fishery-specific management system PIs

SA4.6.1 The team shall ensure that all aspects of the fishery-specific management system are appropriate to the scale, intensity and cultural context of the fishery.

SA4.7 Fishery-specific objectives PI (PI 3.2.1)

Table SA28: PI 3.2.1 Fishery specific objectives PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Fishery-specific management system	<p>Fishery-specific objectives</p> <p>3.2.1</p> <p>The fishery-specific management system has clear, specific objectives designed to achieve the outcomes expressed by MSC's Principles 1 and 2.</p>	<p>(a)</p> <p>Objectives</p> <p></p>	<p>Objectives, which are broadly consistent with achieving the outcomes expressed by MSC's Principles 1 and 2, are implicit within the fishery-specific management system.</p>	<p>Short and long term objectives, which are consistent with achieving the outcomes expressed by MSC's Principles 1 and 2, are explicit within the fishery-specific management system.</p>	<p>Well defined and measurable short and long term objectives, which are demonstrably consistent with achieving the outcomes expressed by MSC's Principles 1 and 2, are explicit within the fishery-specific management system.</p>

SA4.7.1 The team shall verify that the individual harvest or management strategies that are scored in PIs under P1 and P2 are consistent with the fishery-specific objectives being scored under P3.

SA4.7.1.1 The objectives shall be assessed under this PI and the strategies that implement the objectives shall be assessed under P1 and P2.

SA4.7.2 The team shall interpret "measurable" at SG100 to mean that in addition to setting fishery-specific objectives that make broad statements objectives are operationally defined in such a way that the performance against the objective can be measured. 

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA4.8 Decision-making processes PI (PI 3.2.2)

Table SA29: PI 3.2.2 Decision making processes PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Fishery-specific management system	<p>Decision-making processes</p> <p>3.2.2</p> <p>The fishery-specific management system includes effective decision-making processes that result in measures and strategies to achieve the objectives and has an appropriate approach to actual disputes in the fishery.</p>	(a) Decision-making processes !!	There are some decision-making processes in place that result in measures and strategies to achieve the fishery-specific objectives.	There are established decision-making processes that result in measures and strategies to achieve the fishery-specific objectives.	
		(b) Responsive-ness of decision-making processes	Decision-making processes respond to serious issues identified in relevant research, monitoring, evaluation and consultation, in a transparent, timely and adaptive manner and take some account of the wider implications of decisions.	Decision-making processes respond to serious and other important issues identified in relevant research, monitoring, evaluation and consultation, in a transparent, timely and adaptive manner and take account of the wider implications of decisions.	Decision-making processes respond to all issues identified in relevant research, monitoring, evaluation and consultation, in a transparent, timely and adaptive manner and take account of the wider implications of decisions.
		(c) Use of precautionary approach		Decision-making processes use the precautionary approach and are based on best available information.	
		(d) Accountability and transparency of management system and decision	Some information on the fishery's performance and management action is generally	Information on the fishery's performance and management action is available on	Formal reporting to all interested stakeholders provides comprehensive information on the fishery's performance and

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		making process !!	available on request to stakeholders	request , and explanations are provided for any actions or lack of action associated with findings and relevant recommendations emerging from research, monitoring evaluation and review activity.	management actions and describes how the management system responded to findings and relevant recommendations emerging from research, monitoring, evaluation and review activity.
		(e) Approach to disputes !!	Although the management authority or fishery may be subject to continuing court challenges, it is not indicating a disrespect or defiance of the law by repeatedly violating the same law or regulation necessary for the sustainability for the fishery	The management system or fishery is attempting to comply in a timely fashion with judicial decisions arising from any legal challenges.	The management system or fishery acts proactively to avoid legal disputes or rapidly implements judicial decisions arising from legal challenges.

SA4.8.1 The team shall verify that the absence of adequate scientific information is not used as a reason for postponing or failing to take conservation and management measures.

SA4.8.2 The team shall interpret that at SG80 and SG100 the precautionary approach in this PI to mean that decision-making processes use caution when information is uncertain, unreliable or inadequate.

SA4.8.3 The team shall verify that at SG100 resulting measures and strategies from decision-making processes should involve comprehensive, integrated measures or holistic strategies, rather than individual or single measures.

SA4.8.4 In assessing the performance and management actions of the fishery in scoring issue (d) "Accountability and transparency of management system and decision making process", the team should consider the extent to which transparency and accountability is embedded within the management system.

SA4.8.4.1 Teams should consider public access to information on the fishery's performance and fisheries data.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- SA4.8.4.2 The team should consider availability of information to stakeholders on actions taken by management that have implications for sustainable use of fisheries resources.
- SA4.8.4.3 The team should consider the transparency of the decision making process, so that it is clear to all stakeholders that decisions were arrived at based on available evidence and due process.
- SA4.8.5 At the SG60 level, at least a general summary of information on subsidies, allocation, compliance and fisheries management decisions should be available to stakeholders on request.
- SA4.8.6 At the SG80 level, in addition to the information provided at the SG60 level, information on decisions, fisheries data supporting decisions, and the reasons for decisions, should be made available to all stakeholders on request.
- SA4.8.7 At the SG100 level, the information listed in the SG60 and SG80 levels should be comprehensive and available openly, publicly and regularly to all stakeholders.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA4.9 Compliance and enforcement PI (PI 3.2.3) ■

Table SA30: PI 3.2.3 Compliance and enforcement PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Fishery-specific management system	<p>Compliance and enforcement</p> <p>3.2.3</p> <p>Monitoring, control and surveillance mechanisms ensure the management measures in the fishery are enforced and complied with.</p>	(a) MCS implementation	Monitoring, control and surveillance mechanisms exist, and are implemented in the fishery and there is a reasonable expectation that they are effective.	A monitoring, control and surveillance system has been implemented in the fishery and has demonstrated an ability to enforce relevant management measures, strategies and/or rules.	A comprehensive monitoring, control and surveillance system has been implemented in the fishery and has demonstrated a consistent ability to enforce relevant management measures, strategies and/or rules.
		(b) Sanctions ■	Sanctions to deal with non-compliance exist and there is some evidence that they are applied.	Sanctions to deal with non-compliance exist, are consistently applied and thought to provide effective deterrence.	Sanctions to deal with non-compliance exist, are consistently applied and demonstrably provide effective deterrence.
		(c) Compliance ■	Fishers are generally thought to comply with the management system under assessment, including, when required, providing information of importance to the effective management of the fishery.	Some evidence exists to demonstrate fishers comply with the management system under assessment, including, when required, providing information of importance to the effective management of the fishery.	There is a high degree of confidence that fishers comply with the management system under assessment, including, providing information of importance to the effective management of the fishery.
		(d) Systematic non-compliance		There is no evidence of systematic non-compliance.	

SA4.9.1 In scoring issue (c) the team should consider whether “fishers cooperate, where

Fisheries Certification Requirements

necessary, with management authorities in the collection of catch, discard and other information that is of importance to the effective management of the resources and the fishery” as one of the elements that should influence scoring.



- SA4.9.2 The team’s judgement on this PI shall be informed, to the extent possible, by independent and credible information from relevant compliance and enforcement agencies or individuals and/or stakeholders.
- SA4.9.3 The team shall, at SG100 for scoring issue (a), consider if the monitoring, control and surveillance systems are comprehensive in relation to their coverage, the independence of the systems and the internal checks and balances.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SA4.10 Monitoring and management performance evaluation PI (PI 3.2.4) 

Table SA31: PI 3.2.4 Monitoring and management performance evaluation PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Fishery-specific management system	Monitoring and management performance evaluation 3.2.4 There is a system for monitoring and evaluating the performance of the fishery-specific management system against its objectives. There is effective and timely review of the fishery-specific management system.	(a) Evaluation coverage	There are mechanisms in place to evaluate some parts of the fishery-specific management system.	There are mechanisms in place to evaluate key parts of the fishery-specific management system.	There are mechanisms in place to evaluate all parts of the fishery-specific management system.
		(b) Internal and/or external review	The fishery-specific management system is subject to occasional internal review.	The fishery-specific management system is subject to regular internal and occasional external review.	The fishery-specific management system is subject to regular internal and external review.

SA4.10.1 Teams shall interpret “external review” at SG80 and 100 to mean external to the fishery specific management system, but not necessarily international. 

SA4.10.2 Teams should interpret “occasional” and “regular” relative to the intensity of the UoA.

End of Annex SA

Annex SB Modifications to the Default Tree for Enhanced Bivalve Fisheries – Normative

Modifications to the default tree structure to be used in enhanced bivalve fishery assessments.

SB1 General

SB1.1 Modifications to the default tree

- SB1.1.1 Teams shall apply Annex SB as a supplement to Annex SA in all enhanced bivalve fishery assessments.
- SB1.1.2 Only additions or modifications to the default assessment tree and requirements in Annex SA are included in this Annex.
 - SB1.1.2.1 Unless specifically noted, all other Annex SA PISGs and requirements apply.

SB2 Principle 1

SB2.1 General requirements for Principle 1

- SB2.1.1 Teams shall clearly define in the “MSC Notification Report Form” (FCR 7.8.7.1) which type of enhanced bivalve fishery will be assessed.
- SB2.1.2 Teams shall make an initial evaluation of whether there is evidence that an enhanced catch-and-grow (CAG) bivalve fishery negatively impacts the parent stock. 
- SB2.1.3 Teams shall assume that CAG fisheries that involve translocations may impact the parent stock. 
- SB2.1.4 If an enhanced CAG bivalve fishery does not involve translocations, and there is no evidence that it negatively impacts the parent stock, teams may choose not to score Principle 1.
 - SB2.1.4.1 The team shall include a rationale for this decision in the MSC notification report form, and full assessment reports.
 - SB2.1.4.2 If Principle 1 is not to be scored, Row 1 in Table PC3 is not applicable.
- SB2.1.5 If there are translocations within an enhanced CAG bivalve fishery, Principle 1 PIs shall be scored in accordance with the RBF requirements.
 - SB2.1.5.1 The assessment shall be conducted on all sources of seed stock used in the fishery.
 - SB2.1.5.2 Enhanced CAG bivalve fisheries that involve translocations shall also be scored against the Genetic outcome PI 1.1.3.
- SB2.1.6 Bivalve fisheries involving hatchery enhancement assessed as hatch-and-catch (HAC) fisheries shall be scored against Principle 1 PIs in accordance with the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

default assessment tree or the RBF requirements specified in [Annex SA](#) or Annex PF, respectively.

SB2.1.6.1 Enhanced HAC bivalve fisheries shall also be scored against the Genetics PIs 1.1.3, 1.2.5, and 1.2.6.

SB2.2 Genetics

Table SB1: PI 1.1.3 Genetics component

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Genetics	Genetic Outcome 1.1.3 The fishery has negligible discernible impact on the genetic structure of the population.	(a) Genetic impact of enhancement activity	The fishery is unlikely to impact genetic structure of wild populations to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.	The fishery is highly unlikely to impact genetic structure of wild populations to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.	An independent peer-reviewed scientific assessment confirms with a high degree of certainty that there are no risks to the genetic structure of the wild population associated with the enhancement activity.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table SB2: PI 1.2.5 Genetics component

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Genetics	<p>Genetic Management</p> <p>1.2.5</p> <p>There is a strategy in place for managing the hatchery enhancement activity such that it does not pose a risk of serious or irreversible harm to the genetic diversity of the wild population.</p>	(a) Genetic management strategy in place	There are measures in place, if necessary, which are expected to maintain the genetic structure of the population at levels compatible with the SG80 Genetic outcome level of performance (PI 1.1.3).	There is a partial strategy in place, if necessary, which is expected to maintain the genetic structure of the population at levels compatible with the SG80 Genetic outcome level of performance (PI 1.1.3).	There is a strategy in place to maintain the genetic structure of the population at levels compatible with the SG80 Genetic outcome level of performance (PI 1.1.3).
		(b) Genetic management strategy evaluation	The measures are considered likely to work based on plausible argument (e.g. general experience, theory, or comparison with similar fisheries/ species).	There is some objective basis for confidence that the partial strategy will work based on information directly relevant to the population(s) involved.	The strategy is based on in-depth knowledge of the genetic structure of the population, and testing supports high confidence that the strategy will work.
		(c) Genetic management strategy implementation		There is some evidence that the partial strategy is being implemented successfully, if necessary.	There is clear evidence that the strategy is being implemented successfully . There is some evidence that the strategy is achieving its overall objective .

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table SB3: PI 1.2.6 Genetics component

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Genetics	<p>Genetic Information</p> <p>1.2.6</p> <p>Information on the genetic structure of the population is adequate to determine the risk posed by the enhancement activity and the effectiveness of the management of genetic diversity.</p>	(a) Information quality	<p>Qualitative or inferential information is available on the genetic structure of the population. Information is adequate to broadly understand the likely impact of hatchery enhancement.</p>	<p>Qualitative or inferential information and some quantitative information are available on the genetic structure of the population. Information is sufficient to estimate the likely impact of hatchery enhancement.</p>	<p>The genetic structure of the population is understood in detail. Information is sufficient to estimate the impact of hatchery enhancement with a high degree of certainty.</p>
		(b) Information adequacy for genetic management strategy	<p>Information is adequate to support measures to manage main genetic impacts of the enhancement activity on the stock, if necessary.</p>	<p>Information is adequate to support a partial strategy to manage the main genetic impacts of the enhancement activity on the stock, if necessary.</p>	<p>Information is adequate to support a comprehensive strategy to manage the genetic impacts of the enhancement activity on the stock and evaluate with a high degree of certainty whether the strategy is achieving its objective.</p>

SB3 Principle 2

SB3.1 General requirements for Principle 2

SB3.1.1 Enhanced CAG bivalve fisheries based solely on spat collection shall not be scored for the primary or secondary species PIs.

SB3.1.1.1 Enhanced CAG bivalve fisheries involving dredging for seed shall be scored against the primary or secondary species PIs as per the requirements found in Annex SA.

SB3.1.2 For enhanced CAG bivalve fisheries, PIs for ETP species shall be scored as per the requirements found in Annex SA.

SB3.1.3 For enhanced CAG bivalve fisheries, PIs for habitats and ecosystems shall be scored as per the requirements found in Annex SA with assessment teams taking into account the specific habitat and ecosystem impacts associated with enhanced CAG bivalve fisheries.

SB3.1.3.1 For suspended culture systems, scoring shall consider the habitat impacts of bio-deposition and benthic organic enrichment and the ecosystem and carrying capacity impacts of localized phytoplankton depletion from bivalve filtration.

SB3.1.4 If an enhanced CAG bivalve fishery in assessment involves the translocation of seed or adult shellfish, the assessment team shall score the fishery against the Translocation PISGs 2.6.1, 2.6.2, and 2.6.3.

SB3.1.5 Principle 2 PIs from the default tree shall be scored for all sources of seed stock for CAG bivalve fisheries involving translocations.

SB3.2 Translocations

Table SB4: PI 2.6.1 Translocation component

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Translocation	Translocation Outcome 2.6.1 The translocation activity has negligible discernible impact on the surrounding ecosystem.	(a) Impact of translocation activity	The translocation activity is unlikely to introduce diseases, pests, pathogens, or non-native species (species not already established in the ecosystem) into the surrounding ecosystem.	The translocation activity is highly unlikely to introduce diseases, pests, pathogens, or non-native species into the surrounding ecosystem.	There is evidence that the translocation activity is highly unlikely to introduce diseases, pests, pathogens, or non-native species into the surrounding ecosystem.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table SB5: PI 2.6.2 translocation component

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Translocation	<p>Translocation Management</p> <p>2.6.2</p> <p>There is a strategy in place for managing translocations such that the fishery does not pose a risk of serious or irreversible harm to the surrounding ecosystem.</p>	(a) Translocation management strategy in place	There are measures in place which are expected to protect the surrounding ecosystem from the translocation activity at levels compatible with the SG80 Translocation outcome level of performance (PI 2.6.1).	There is a partial strategy in place, if necessary, that is expected to protect the surrounding ecosystem from the translocation activity at levels compatible with the SG80 Translocation outcome level of performance (PI 2.6.1).	There is a strategy in place for managing the impacts of translocation on the surrounding ecosystem.
		(b) Translocation management strategy evaluation	The measures are considered likely to work based on plausible argument (e.g. general experience, theory, or comparison with similar fisheries/species).	A valid documented risk assessment or equivalent environmental impact assessment demonstrates that the translocation activity is highly unlikely to introduce diseases, pests, pathogens, or non-native species into the surrounding ecosystem.	An independent peer-reviewed scientific assessment confirms with a high degree of certainty that there are no risks to the surrounding ecosystem associated with the translocation activity.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		(c) Translocation contingency measures		Contingency measures have been agreed in the case of an accidental introduction of diseases, pests, pathogens, or non-native species due to the translocation.	A formalised contingency plan in the case of an accidental introduction of diseases, pests, pathogens, or non-native species due to the translocation is documented and available.

Table SB6: PI 2.6.3 Translocation component

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Translocation	Translocation Information 2.6.3 Information on the impact of the translocation activity on the environment is adequate to determine the risk posed by the fishery.	(a) Information quality	Information is available on the presence or absence of diseases, pests, pathogens, and non-native species at the source and destination of the translocated stock to guide the management strategy and reduce the risks associated with the translocation.	Information is sufficient to adequately inform the risk and impact assessments required in the SG80 Translocation management level of performance (PI 2.6.2).	Information from frequent and comprehensive monitoring demonstrates no impact from introduced diseases, pests, and non-native species with a high degree of certainty .

SB4 Principle 3

SB4.1 General requirements for Principle 3

- SB4.1.1 With the exception of CAG fisheries where P1 is not scored, enhanced bivalve fisheries shall be scored against Principle 3 PIs as per the requirements found in [Annex SA](#).
- SB4.1.2 In cases where P1 is not scored, assessment teams shall focus P3 scoring on whether or not the appropriate and effective legal and/or customary framework is capable of delivering sustainable fisheries in accordance with P2 PISGs.

End of Annex SB

Annex SC: Modifications to the Default Assessment Tree for Salmon Fisheries – Normative

Modifications to the default tree structure, including the PISGs for each of the three MSC Principles to be used in salmon fishery assessments. 

SC1 General

SC1.1 General requirements

SC1.1.1 CABs shall apply Annex SC as a supplement to [Annex SA](#) in all salmon fishery assessments. 

SC1.1.1.1 Only additions or modifications in relevant sections of the default assessment tree and requirements are included herein.

SC1.1.2 Salmon fisheries shall be scored against all scoring issues and PIs presented in Annex SC. 

SC1.1.3 The team shall interpret key words or phrases as used in Annex SC as shown in [Table SC1](#). 

Table SC1: Terms and Definitions

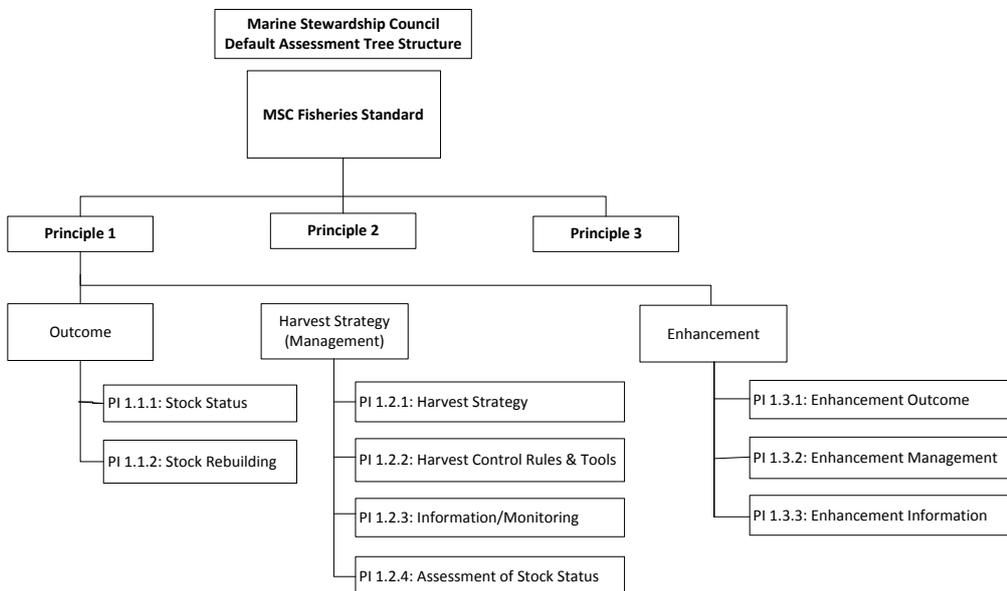
Term	Definition
Artificial Production	The artificial propagation of fish that are released into the natural environment. Artificial production is commonly used to increase the number of fish available to be caught or to rebuild depleted populations. It includes hatchery operations.
Artificially produced fish	Those fish whose parents spawned in a hatchery or artificial habitat as described above.
Diversity (of salmon)	The genetic variation and adaptations to different environments that have accumulated between populations of salmon.
Enhancement	Artificial intervention in the natural life cycle of salmon. This may include artificial production as defined above or other measures such as spawning channels, and lake fertilization.
Population	A component of an SMU. Population refers to the wild production components which may occupy different locations at different times. A population could be a group of interbreeding salmon that is relatively isolated (i.e., relatively demographically uncoupled from other such groups and is likely adapted to the local habitat).
Production (of salmon)	Recruits per spawner x total spawners. i.e., total production of the population.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
Productivity (of salmon)	The number of recruits per spawner. The term productivity is used in Annex SA to mean productivity at the stock, not individual level. Assessment teams should consider this when assessing salmon fisheries.
Productivity (related to the ecological community or the ecosystem)	The rate of biomass production per unit area per time.
Stock Management Unit (SMU)	A group of one or more salmon populations. Generally, fishery management goals have been established by the management agency at this aggregate level. SMU is a broad management concept; not every population with a defined goal need be an individual SMU, but may be part of an SMU. For salmon fishery assessments 'stock' in Annex SA of MSC's Certification Requirements refers to the SMU level.
Wild fish	Fish whose parents spawned in the wild, regardless of parental lineage (F1 generation); also referred to as natural-origin fish.

SC2 Principle 1

Figure SC1: Principle 1 Modified Default Tree Structure for salmon fisheries



Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC2.1 General requirements for Principle 1

- SC2.1.1 The team shall consider the unique population structure of salmon in its assessment of Principle 1. !!
- SC2.1.2 For salmon assessments Stock Management Units (SMUs) shall be regarded as equivalent to single stocks in other contexts.
- SC2.1.3 Where [Annex SA](#) default requirements apply, it is specifically noted in that section for Principle 1.

SC2.2 Stock status PI (PI 1.1.1)

Table SC2: PI 1.1.1 Stock status PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Outcome	Stock status 1.1.1 The stock management unit (SMU) is at a level which maintains high production and has a low probability of falling below its limit reference point (LRP).	(a) Stock status	It is likely that the SMU is above the limit reference point (LRP).	It is highly likely that the SMU is above the LRP.	There is a high degree of certainty that the SMU is above the LRP.
		(b) Stock status in relation to the target reference point (TRP) e.g. target escapement goal or target harvest rate)		The SMU is at or fluctuating around its TRP.	There is a high degree of certainty that the SMU has been fluctuating around its TRP, or has been above its target reference point, over recent years.
		(c) Status of component populations			The majority of component populations in the SMU are within the range of expected variability.

Scoring stock status !!

- SC2.2.1 In scoring PI 1.1.1 for salmon fisheries the level of the limit and target reference points shall be consistent with the intent in SA PI 1.1.1 for the outcome PIs. ■
- SC2.2.1.1 The limit reference point (LRP) shall be a level at which the SMU has a high probability of persistence in the presence of directed fishing and of recovery to high production in the absence of directed fishing.
- SC2.2.1.2 The target reference point (TRP, generally expressed as a target escapement goal or target harvest rate), shall be a level at which the SMU

Fisheries Certification Requirements

maintains high production (such as BEGs or S_{MSY}).

- SC2.2.2 In an enhanced fishery, the team shall assess status based solely on the wild salmon in the SMU. ☑
- SC2.2.2.1 Artificially-produced fish shall not be counted toward meeting spawning escapement goals, or other surrogate reference points. ☑
- SC2.2.2.2 Where no distinction is made between wild fish and artificially produced fish in estimates of spawning escapements or other surrogate reference points, stock status shall be scored lower than in cases where wild fish are enumerated separately. ☑
- SC2.2.3 In scoring PI 1.1.1 for salmon and reflecting the periodic recruitment patterns of these species the assessment team shall consider the following: !!
- SC2.2.3.1 Stock status: Taking into consideration the specific dynamics of salmon stocks, a fishery shall meet the SG60 requirement in PI 1.1.1 scoring issue (a) if the average SMU spawning stock size is above the limit reference point (LRP). The terms “likely”, “highly likely” and “high degree of certainty” are used to allow for qualitative and quantitative evaluation. Where time series data are available:
- “Likely” shall be interpreted to mean at $\geq 60\%$ of the 15 most recent years, i.e., 9 of the 15 years.
 - “Highly likely” shall be interpreted to mean $\geq 80\%$ of the 15 most recent years, i.e., 12 of the 15 years.
 - “High degree of certainty” shall be interpreted to mean $>90\%$ of the 15 most recent years.
- SC2.2.3.2 Stock status in relation to Target Reference Points: In scoring issue (b) of PI 1.1.1, where time series data are available:
- “Fluctuating around” at the SG80 level means an SMU meeting its target reference point in $\geq 50\%$ of the 15 most recent years.
 - A “high degree of certainty” at the SG100 level shall be interpreted to mean that the SMU has met its target reference point $\geq 80\%$ of the last 15 years.
- SC2.2.3.3 Status of component populations: Scoring issue (c), ‘majority of component populations in the SMU’ allows for qualitative and/or quantitative analysis. Where population specific reference points are neither defined, nor individual populations monitored, assessment teams may make a reasoned argument based on expert judgement and qualitative information to score this scoring issue. Fishing should allow for the persistence of component populations, recognizing that at any point in time there is likely to be some populations at low and high productivity in the absence of fishing.
- SC2.2.4 [SA2.2.2](#) – [SA2.2.7](#) shall also apply.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC2.3 Stock rebuilding PI (PI 1.1.2) !!

Table SC3: PI 1.1.2 Stock rebuilding PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Outcome	<p>Stock Rebuilding</p> <p>1.1.2</p> <p>Where the stock management unit (SMU) is reduced, there is evidence of stock rebuilding within a specified timeframe.</p>	(a) Rebuilding timeframes	A rebuilding timeframe is specified for the SMU that is the shorter of 20 years or 2 times its generation time . For cases where 2 generations is less than 5 years, the rebuilding timeframe is up to 5 years.		The shortest practicable rebuilding timeframe is specified which does not exceed one generation time for the SMU.
		(b) Rebuilding evaluation	Monitoring is in place to determine whether the fishery – based rebuilding strategies are effective in rebuilding the SMU within the specified timeframe.	There is evidence that the fishery-based rebuilding strategies are being implemented effectively, or it is likely based on simulation modelling, exploitation rates or previous performance that they will be able to rebuild the SMU within the specified timeframe .	There is strong evidence that the rebuilding strategies are being implemented effectively, or it is highly likely based on simulation modelling, exploitation rates or previous performance that they will be able to rebuild the SMU within the specified timeframe .
		(c) Use of enhancement in stock rebuilding !!	Enhancement activities are not routinely used as a stock rebuilding strategy but may be temporarily in place as a conservation measure to preserve or	Enhancement activities are very seldom used as a stock rebuilding strategy.	Enhancement activities are not used as a stock rebuilding strategy.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
			restore wild diversity threatened by human or natural impacts.		

- SC2.3.1 Teams shall only score this PI when stock status does not meet the SG80 level in PI 1.1.1 due to low stock levels, such that the SMU needs rebuilding. !!
- SC2.3.2 The team shall assess and verify that no fisheries are targeting or otherwise excessively harvesting populations that are below biologically based limits during the SMU rebuilding period. !!
- SC2.3.3 In scoring issue (c):
- a. 'Routinely' shall be interpreted as built into a long-term management strategy or utilized in lieu of wild salmon population management;
 - b. 'Very seldom' shall be interpreted as used only for short term emergency cases, and not forming part of a long term management or rebuilding strategy.
- SC2.3.4 Annex [SA2.3.2](#)–[SA2.3.5](#) shall also apply.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC2.4 Harvest strategy PI (PI 1.2.1)

Table SC4: PI 1.2.1 Harvest strategy PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Harvest strategy (management)	1.2.1 There is a robust and precautionary harvest strategy in place.	(a) Harvest strategy design	The harvest strategy is expected to achieve SMU management objectives reflected in PI 1.1.1 SG80 including measures that address component population status issues.	The harvest strategy is responsive to the state of the SMU and the elements of the harvest strategy work together towards achieving SMU management objectives reflected in PI 1.1.1 SG80 including measures that address component population status issues.	The harvest strategy is responsive to the state of the SMU and is designed to achieve SMU management objectives reflected in PI 1.1.1 SG80 including measures that address component population status issues.
		(b) Harvest strategy evaluation	The harvest strategy is likely to work based on prior experience or plausible argument.	The harvest strategy may not have been fully tested but evidence exists that it is achieving its objectives.	The performance of the harvest strategy has been fully evaluated and evidence exists to show that it is achieving its objectives including being clearly able to maintain SMUs at target levels.
		(c) Harvest strategy monitoring	Monitoring is in place that is expected to determine whether the harvest strategy is working.		
		(d) Harvest strategy review			The harvest strategy is periodically reviewed and improved as necessary.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		(e) Shark finning	It is likely that shark finning is not taking place.	It is highly likely that shark finning is not taking place.	There is a high degree of certainty that shark finning is not taking place.
		(f) Review of alternative measures	There has been a review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of the target stock.	There is a regular review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of the target stock and they are implemented as appropriate.	There is a biannual review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch of the target stock, and they are implemented, as appropriate.

- SC2.4.1 In scoring issue (a), the assessment team shall evaluate whether fishery managers attempt to minimize harvest of any weak component population(s) within the SMU through differential harvest (e.g., managers alter time, location and effort of the fishery). 
- SC2.4.2 In scoring issue (a), assessment teams shall consider whether the harvest strategy of a salmon fishery with artificial production is designed to control exploitation rates on wild stocks in order to allow for self-sustaining, locally adapted wild populations. 
- SC2.4.3 Annex [SA2.4.1](#)–[SA2.4.8](#) shall also apply.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC2.5 Harvest control rules and tools PI (PI 1.2.2) !!

Table SC5: PI 1.2.2 Harvest control rules and tools PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Harvest strategy	Harvest control rules and tools 1.2.2 There are well defined and effective harvest control rules (HCRs) in place.	(a) HCRs design and application	Generally understood HCRs are in place or available which are expected to reduce the exploitation rate as the SMU LRP is approached.	Well defined HCRs are in place that ensure that the exploitation rate is reduced as the LRP is approached, and are expected to keep the SMU fluctuating around a target level consistent with MSY.	The HCRs are expected to keep the SMU fluctuating at or above a target level consistent with MSY, or another more appropriate level taking into account the ecological role of the stock, most of the time.
		(b) HCRs robustness to uncertainty		The HCRs are likely to be robust to the main uncertainties.	The HCRs take account of a wide range of uncertainties including the ecological role of the SMU, and there is evidence that the HCRs are robust to the main uncertainties.
		(c) HCRs evaluation	There is some evidence that tools used or available to implement HCRs are appropriate and effective in controlling exploitation.	Available evidence indicates that the tools in use are appropriate and effective in achieving the exploitation levels required under the HCRs.	Evidence clearly shows that the tools in use are effective in achieving the exploitation levels required under the HCRs.
		(d) Maintenance of wild component populations	It is likely that the HCRs and tools are consistent with maintaining the diversity and productivity of the wild component	It is highly likely , that the HCRs and tools are consistent with maintaining the diversity and productivity of the wild	There is a high degree of certainty that the HCRs and tools are consistent with maintaining the diversity and productivity of the wild component populations.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
			populations.	component populations.	

- SC2.5.1 In scoring issue (a), the team shall consider whether the HCRs and tools are capable of maintaining the SMU at an abundance consistent with high production.
- SC2.5.2 In scoring issue (d) the team shall consider empirical and/or analytical evidence (such as field evidence and/or simulations of multiple population complexes) that supports the likelihood that the established set of HCRs and tools will result in the abundance and spatial/temporal distribution of component populations consistent with maintaining their diversity and productivity. ❗
- SC2.5.3 Annex [SA2.5.2–SA2.5.7](#) shall also apply.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC2.6 Information and monitoring PI (PI 1.2.3) 

Table SC6: PI 1.2.3 information and monitoring PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Harvest strategy	Information / monitoring 1.2.3 Relevant information is collected to support the harvest strategy.	(a) Range of information	Some relevant information related to SMU structure, SMU production and fleet composition is available to support the harvest strategy. Indirect or direct information is available on some component populations.	Sufficient relevant information related to SMU structure, SMU production, fleet composition and other data are available to support the harvest strategy, including harvests and spawning escapements for a representative range of wild component populations.	A comprehensive range of information (on SMU structure, SMU production, fleet composition, SMU abundance, UoA removals and other information such as environmental information), including some that may not be relevant to the current harvest strategy, is available, including estimates of the impacts of fishery harvests on the SMU and the majority of wild component populations.
		(b) Monitoring	SMU wild abundance and UoA removals are monitored and at least one indicator is available and monitored with sufficient frequency to support the harvest control rule.	SMU wild abundance and UoA removals are regularly monitored at a level of accuracy and coverage consistent with the harvest control rule, and one or more indicators are available and monitored with sufficient frequency to support the harvest control rule.	All information required by the harvest control rule is monitored with high frequency and a high degree of certainty, and there is a good understanding of the inherent uncertainties in the information [data] and the robustness of assessment and management to this uncertainty.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		(c) Comprehensiveness of information		There is good information on all other fishery removals from the SMU .	

SC2.6.1 For scoring issue (a), at SG80 level 'sufficient relevant information' should include direct evidence and/or analysis and risk assessments. ■

SC2.6.2 Annex [SA2.6.1–SA2.6.4](#) shall also be applied.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC2.7 Assessment of stock status PI (PI 1.2.4) 

Table SC7: PI 1.2.4 Assessment of stock status PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Harvest strategy	Assessment of stock status 1.2.4 There is an adequate assessment of the stock status of the SMU.	(a) Appropriateness of assessment to stock under consideration		The assessment is appropriate for the SMU and for the harvest control rule.	The assessment takes into account the major features relevant to the biology of the species and the nature of the UoA.
		(b) Assessment approach 	The assessment estimates stock status relative to generic reference points appropriate to salmon.	The assessment estimates stock status relative to reference points that are appropriate to the SMU and can be estimated.	The assessment estimates with a high level of confidence both stock status and reference points that are appropriate to the SMU and its wild component populations.
		(c) Uncertainty in the assessment	The assessment identifies major sources of uncertainty.	The assessment takes uncertainty into account.	The assessment takes into account uncertainty and is evaluating stock status relative to reference points in a probabilistic way.
		(d) Evaluation of assessment			The assessment has been tested and shown to be robust. Alternative hypotheses and assessment approaches have been rigorously explored.
		(e) Peer review of assessment			The assessment of SMU status, including the choice of indicator populations and methods for evaluating wild salmon in enhanced fisheries is subject to peer review.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		(f) Representativeness of indicator stocks	Where indicator stocks are used as the primary source of information for making management decisions on SMUs, there is some scientific basis for the indicators selection.	Where indicator stocks are used as the primary source of information for making management decisions on SMUs, there is some evidence of coherence between the status of the indicator streams and the status of the other populations they represent within the management unit, including selection of indicator stocks with low productivity (i.e., those with a higher conservation risk) to match those of the representative SMU where applicable.	Where indicator stocks are used as the primary source of information for making management decisions on SMUs, the status of the indicator streams are well correlated with other populations they represent within the management unit, including stocks with lower productivity (i.e., those with a higher conservation risk).
		(g) Definition of Stock Management Units (SMUs) 	The majority of SMUs are defined with a clear rationale for conservation, fishery management and stock assessment requirements.	The SMUs are well-defined and include definitions of the major populations with a clear rationale for conservation, fishery management and stock assessment requirements.	There is an unambiguous description of each SMU that may include the geographic location, run timing, migration patterns, and/or genetics of component populations with a clear rationale for conservation, fishery management and stock assessment requirements.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- SC2.7.1 In scoring issue (b), the team shall assess whether reference points will maintain the spawner abundance consistent with MSY (S_{MSY}) or similarly abundant levels. !!
- SC2.7.1.1 In enhanced salmon fisheries, the team shall consider whether the reference points are based only on wild fish. !!
- SC2.7.2 In scoring PI 1.2.4 (f), indicator populations, the assessment team shall evaluate factors such as number, spatial distribution, and migration timing of the indicator stocks relative to the stock management unit. !!
- SC2.7.3 In scoring PI 1.2.4 (g), the definition of SMUs shall reflect an understanding of the population structure, including information on the component populations. !!
- SC2.7.3.1 The team shall assess whether wild and artificially influenced components are clearly distinguished in defining SMUs. !!

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC2.8 General requirements for enhancement PIs

SC2.8.1 All salmon fisheries shall be scored against the enhancement PIs.

SC2.8.1.1 Where there are no enhancement activities associated with the UoA, the default score for these enhancement PIs should be 100.

SC2.8.2 The team shall interpret key words or phrases used in the enhancement PIs in Annex SC as shown in [Table SC8](#).

Table SC8: Enhancement Terms and Definitions

Term	Definition
Habitat enhancement	Any modification to habitat that raises the production (with the intent of increasing fishery production) beyond the normative processes of the habitat should be considered artificial production. [Habitat modification intended to return habitat to its normative state may be considered restoration, and need not be considered under the enhancement PIs]
Hatchery enhancement	Hatchery operations, seeding of a lake with fish released after being raised in a hatchery etc.
'Integrated' hatchery production	Where a hatchery population is associated with a wild population and the hatchery program is managed (intentionally or in practice) in such a way that gene flow from the wild to the hatchery population is non-negligible.
pHOS	The proportion of Hatchery-Origin fish contributing to the natural Spawning population. For the purpose of assessment the simple 4-yr arithmetic mean should be used.
pNOB	The proportion of Natural-Origin (wild) fish contributing to the hatchery Broodstock . For the purpose of assessment the simple 4-yr arithmetic mean should be used.
'Segregated' hatchery production	Where hatchery populations are maintained as isolated reproductive groups and hatchery fish do not stray into and spawn with wild populations, or only to a very limited extent.
Stray rate	The proportion of fish that do not home accurately and return to some other location.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC2.9 Enhancement outcomes PI (PI 1.3.1) !!

Table SC9: PI 1.3.1 Enhancement outcomes PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Fishery enhancement	<p>Enhancement outcomes</p> <p>1.3.1</p> <p>Enhancement activities do not negatively impact the wild stock(s)</p>	(a) Enhancement impacts ☐	It is likely that the enhancement activities do not have significant negative impacts on the local adaptation, reproductive performance or productivity and diversity of wild stocks.	It is highly likely that the enhancement activities do not have significant negative impacts on the local adaptation, reproductive performance or productivity and diversity of wild stocks.	There is a high degree of certainty that the enhancement activities do not have significant negative impacts on the local adaptation, reproductive performance or productivity and diversity of wild stocks.

SC2.9.1 The method used by the assessment team to score this PI shall depend on the level of available information.

SC2.9.1.1 Where relevant studies on enhancement outcomes are available, assessment teams shall use them to score this PI. ☐

SC2.9.1.2 Where no relevant studies on enhancement outcomes are available, but pHOS and pNOB values are estimated, these shall be used to score this PI in relation to default values appropriate to the species and type of enhancement. ☐

SC2.9.1.3 Where neither relevant studies nor estimates of pHOS nor pNOB exist, the assessment team shall use expert judgement to score this PI using a precautionary approach. !!

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC2.10 Enhancement management PI (PI 1.3.2) ❗

Table SC10: PI 1.3.2 Enhancement management PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Fishery enhancement	Enhancement Management 1.3.2 Effective enhancement and fishery strategies are in place to address effects of enhancement activities on wild stock(s).	(a) Management strategy in place ❗	Practices and protocols are in place to protect wild stocks from significant negative impacts of enhancement.	There is a partial strategy in place to protect wild stocks from significant negative impacts of enhancement.	There is a comprehensive strategy in place to protect wild stocks from significant negative impacts of enhancement.
		(b) Management strategy evaluation	The practices and protocols in place are considered likely to be effective based on plausible argument.	There is some objective basis for confidence that the strategy is effective, based on evidence that the strategy is achieving the outcome metrics used to define the minimum detrimental impacts.	There is clear evidence that the comprehensive strategy is successfully protecting wild stocks from significant detrimental impacts of enhancement.

SC2.10.1 The team shall assess whether management seeks to minimize the number and proportion of hatchery fish interbreeding with wild fish in natural spawning areas.



Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC2.11 Enhancement information PI (PI 1.3.3)

Table SC11: PI 1.3.3 Enhancement information PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Fishery enhancement	Enhancement Information 1.3.3 Relevant information is collected and assessments are adequate to determine the effect of enhancement activities on wild stock(s).	(a) Information adequacy 	Some relevant information is available on the contribution of enhanced fish to the fishery harvest, total escapement (wild plus enhanced), and hatchery broodstock.	Sufficient relevant qualitative and quantitative information is available on the contribution of enhanced fish to the fishery harvest, total escapement (wild plus enhanced) and hatchery broodstock.	A comprehensive range of relevant quantitative information is available on the contribution of enhanced fish to the fishery harvest, total escapement (wild plus enhanced) and hatchery broodstock.
		(b) Use of information in assessment	The effect of enhancement activities on wild stock status, productivity and diversity are taken into account qualitatively.	A moderate-level analysis of relevant information is conducted and used by decision makers to quantitatively estimate the impact of enhancement activities on wild-stock status, productivity, and diversity.	A comprehensive analysis of relevant information is conducted and routinely used by decision makers to determine, with a high degree of certainty, the quantitative impact of enhancement activities on wild-stock status, productivity, and diversity.

SC2.11.1 In scoring issue (a), 'information' shall include the marking and monitoring of artificially produced fish. 

SC2.11.1.1 The assessment team shall consider the methods of artificial production in their assessment. 

SC3 Principle 2

SC3.1 General requirements for Principle 2

- SC3.1.1 Only additions and modifications are included herein, in Principle 2 all default Annex SA requirements apply. ❗
- SC3.1.2 All salmon fisheries shall score all elements of all PIs, whether or not there are enhancement activities. ❗

SC3.2–3.9 No modifications to Annex SA

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC3.10 ETP species outcome PI (PI 2.3.1)

Table SC12: PI 2.3.1 ETP species outcome PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
ETP species	<p>Outcome Status</p> <p>2.3.1</p> <p>The UoA meets national and international requirements for protection of ETP species.</p> <p>The UoA and associated enhancement activities do not hinder recovery of ETP species.</p>	(a) Effects of the UoA on population/stocks within national or international limits, where applicable	Where national and/or international requirements set limits for ETP species, the effects of the UoA and associated enhancement activities on the population/stock are known and likely to be within these limits.	Where national and/or international requirements set limits for ETP species, the combined effects of the MSC UoAs and associated enhancement activities on the population/stock are known and highly likely to be within these limits.	Where national and/or international requirements set limits for ETP species, there is a high degree of certainty that the combined effects of the MSC UoAs and associated enhancement activities are within these limits.
		(b) Direct effects	Known direct effects of the UoA including enhancement activities are likely to not hinder recovery of ETP species.	Direct effects of the UoA including enhancement activities are highly likely to not hinder recovery of ETP species.	There is a high degree of confidence that there are no significant detrimental direct effects of the UoA including enhancement activities on ETP species.
		(c) Indirect effects		Indirect effects have been considered for the UoA including enhancement activities and are thought to be highly unlikely to create unacceptable impacts.	There is a high degree of confidence that there are no significant detrimental indirect effects of the UoA including enhancement activities on ETP species.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC3.11 ETP species management strategy PI (PI 2.3.2)

Table SC13: PI 2.3.2 ETP species management strategy PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
ETP species	<p>Management strategy</p> <p>2.3.2</p> <p>The UoA and associated enhancement activities have in place precautionary management strategies designed to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - meet national and international requirements and - ensure the UoA does not hinder recovery of ETP species. Also, the UoA regularly reviews and implements measures as appropriate to minimise mortality of ETP species. 	(a) Management strategy in place (national and international requirements)	There are measures in place that minimise the UoA related mortality of ETP species due to the UoA including enhancement activities, and are expected to be highly likely to achieve national and international requirements for the protection of ETP species.	There is a strategy in place for managing the UoA and enhancement activities' impact on ETP species, including measures to minimise mortality, which is designed to be highly likely to achieve national and international requirements for the protection of ETP species.	There is a comprehensive strategy in place for managing the UoA and enhancement activities' impact on ETP species, including measures to minimise mortality, which is designed to achieve above national and international requirements for the protection of ETP species.
		(b) Management strategy in place (alternative)	There are measures in place that are expected to ensure the UoA including enhancement activities do not hinder the recovery of ETP species.	There is a strategy in place that is expected to ensure the UoA including enhancement activities do not hinder the recovery of ETP species.	There is a comprehensive strategy in place for managing ETP species, to ensure the UoA including enhancement activities do not hinder the recovery of ETP species.
		(c) Management strategy evaluation	The measures are considered likely to work, based on plausible argument (e.g. general experience, theory or comparison with similar UoA/species).	There is an objective basis for confidence that the measures/strategy will work, based on information directly about the UoA and/or the species involved.	The strategy/ comprehensive strategy is mainly based on information directly about the UoA and/or species involved, and a quantitative analysis supports high confidence that the strategy will work.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		(d) Management strategy implementation		There is some evidence that the measures/strategy is being implemented successfully.	There is clear evidence that the strategy/comprehensive strategy is being implemented successfully and is achieving its objective as set out in scoring issue (a) or (b) .
		(e) Review of alternative measures to minimise mortality of ETP species	There is a review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA related mortality of ETP species.	There is a regular review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA and enhancement related mortality of ETP species and they are implemented as appropriate.	There is a biannual review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise UoA and enhancement related mortality of ETP species, and they are implemented, as appropriate.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC3.12 ETP Species information PI (PI 2.3.3)

Table SC14: PI 2.3.3 ETP species information PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
ETP species	<p>Information / monitoring</p> <p>2.3.3</p> <p>Relevant information is collected to support the management of the UoA and enhancement activities impacts on ETP species, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - information for the development of the management strategy; - information to assess the effectiveness of the management strategy; and - information to determine the outcome status of ETP species. 	(a) Information adequacy for assessment of impacts	<p>Qualitative information is adequate to estimate the UoA and associated enhancement related mortality on ETP species.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If RBF is used to score PI 2.3.1 for the UoA:</p> <p>Qualitative information is adequate to estimate productivity and susceptibility attributes for ETP species.</p>	<p>Some quantitative information is adequate to assess the UoA related mortality and impact and to determine whether the UoA and associated enhancement may be a threat to protection and recovery of the ETP species.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If RBF is used to score PI 2.3.1 for the UoA:</p> <p>Some quantitative information is adequate to assess productivity and susceptibility attributes for ETP species.</p>	Quantitative information is available to assess with a high degree of certainty the magnitude of UoA and associated enhancement related impacts, mortalities and injuries and the consequences for the status of ETP species.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		(b) Information adequacy for management strategy	Information is adequate to support measures to manage the impacts on ETP species	Information is adequate to measure trends and support a strategy to manage impacts on ETP species	Information is adequate to support a comprehensive strategy to manage impacts, minimize mortality and injury of ETP species, and evaluate with a high degree of certainty whether a strategy is achieving its objectives.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC3.13 Habitats outcome PI (PI 2.4.1) 

Table SC15: PI 2.4.1 Habitats outcome PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Habitats	<p>Outcome Status</p> <p>2.4.1</p> <p>The UoA and its associated enhancement activities do not cause serious or irreversible harm to habitat structure and function, considered on the basis of the area(s) covered by the governance body(s) responsible for fisheries management .</p>	(a) Commonly encountered habitat status	The UoA is unlikely to reduce structure and function of the commonly encountered habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.	The UoA is highly unlikely to reduce structure and function of the commonly encountered habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.	There is evidence that the UoA is highly unlikely to reduce structure and function of the commonly encountered habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.
		(b) VME habitat status	The UoA is unlikely to reduce structure and function of the VME habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.	The UoA is highly unlikely to reduce structure and function of the VME habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.	There is evidence that the UoA is highly unlikely to reduce structure and function of the VME habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.
		(c) Minor habitat status			There is evidence that the UoA is highly unlikely to reduce structure and function of the minor habitats to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		(d) Impacts due to enhancement activities within the UoA !!	The enhancement activities are unlikely to have adverse impacts on habitat.	The enhancement activities are highly unlikely to have adverse impacts on habitat.	There is a high degree of certainty that the enhancement activities do not have adverse impacts on habitat.

SC3.13.1 In this PI, assessment teams shall interpret 'habitat' to include, but not be limited to:

- a. Water quality,
- b. Access of wild fish to spawning habitat, and
- c. Quality of stream habitat (such as physical features, spawning and rearing flows and water temperatures).

SC3.13.2 The impacts of enhancement-related habitat modifications shall be assessed to the standard that they have minimal adverse impacts on the surrounding habitats (i.e., impacts resulting from the physical operation of the culture facility and not evaluated necessarily in the context of some broader regional resource consequence). !!

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC3.14 Habitats management strategy PI (PI 2.4.2) **!!**

Table SC16: PI 2.4.2 Habitats management strategy PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Habitats	<p>Management strategy</p> <p>2.4.2</p> <p>There is a strategy in place that is designed to ensure the UoA and associated enhancement activities do not pose a risk of serious or irreversible harm to the habitats.</p>	(a) Management strategy in place	There are measures in place, if necessary, that are expected to achieve the Habitat Outcome 80 level of performance.	There is a partial strategy in place, if necessary that is expected to achieve the Habitat Outcome 80 level of performance or above.	There is a strategy in place for managing the impact of all MSC UoAs/non-MSC fisheries UoA and associated enhancement activities on habitats.
		(b) Management strategy evaluation	The measures are considered likely to work, based on plausible argument (e.g. general experience, theory or comparison with similar UoA/enhancement activities/habitats).	There is some objective basis for confidence that the measures/partial strategy will work, based on information directly about the UoA, enhancement activities and/or habitats involved.	Testing supports high confidence that the partial strategy/strategy will work, based on information directly about the UoA, enhancement activities, and/or habitats involved.
		(c) Management strategy implementation		There is some quantitative evidence that the measures/partial strategy is being implemented successfully.	There is clear quantitative evidence that the partial strategy/strategy is being implemented successfully and is achieving its objective, as outlined in scoring issue (a).
		(d) Compliance with management requirements and other MSC UoAs'/non-MSC	There is qualitative evidence that the UoA complies with its management requirements to protect	There is some quantitative evidence that the UoA and associated enhancement activities comply with both its	There is clear quantitative evidence that the UoA and associated enhancement activities comply with both its

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		fisheries' measures to protect VMEs	VMEs.	management requirements and with protection measures afforded to VMEs by other MSC UoAs/non-MSC fisheries, where relevant.	management requirements and with protection measures afforded to VMEs by other MSC UoAs/non-MSC fisheries, where relevant.

SC3.14.1 Assessment teams shall consider whether management strategies for enhancement activities are in place to reduce impact on water quality, access of natural origin fish to spawning habitat, and quality of stream habitat (such as physical features, spawning and rearing flows and water temperatures). **!!**

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC3.15 Habitats information PI (PI 2.4.3)

Table SC17: PI 2.4.3 Habitats information PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Habitats	<p>Information / monitoring</p> <p>2.4.3</p> <p>Information is adequate to determine the risk posed to the habitat by the UoA and associated enhancement activities and the effectiveness of the strategy to manage impacts on the habitat.</p>	(a) Information quality	<p>The types and distribution of the main habitats are broadly understood.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If CSA is used to score PI 2.4.1 for the UoA: Qualitative information is adequate to estimate the types and distribution of the main habitats</p>	<p>The nature, distribution and vulnerability of the main habitats in the UoA area are known at a level of detail relevant to the scale and intensity of the UoA.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If CSA is used to score PI 2.4.1 for the UoA: Some quantitative information is available and is adequate to estimate the types and distribution of the main habitats.</p>	<p>The distribution of all habitats is known over their range, with particular attention to the occurrence of vulnerable habitats.</p>
		(b) Information adequacy for assessment of impacts	<p>Information is adequate to broadly understand the nature of the main impacts of gear use and enhancement activities used on the main habitats, including spatial overlap of habitat with fishing gear.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If CSA is used to score PI 2.4.1 for</p>	<p>Information is adequate to allow for identification of the main impacts of the UoA and enhancement activities on the main habitats and there is reliable information on the spatial extent of interaction and on the timing and location of use of the fishing gear.</p>	<p>The physical impacts of the gear and enhancement activities on all habitats have been quantified fully.</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
			the UoA: Qualitative information is adequate to estimate the consequence and spatial attributes of the main habitats.	OR If CSA is used to score PI 2.4.1 for the UoA: Some quantitative information is available and is adequate to estimate the consequence and spatial attributes of the main habitats.	
		(c) Monitoring		Adequate information continues to be collected to detect any increase in risk to the main habitats.	Changes in all habitat distributions over time are measured.

SC3.15.1 Teams shall consider whether information on enhancement facilities and activities are collected to support the outcome in PI 2.4.1. 

SC3.15.2 In meeting SG 60 the team should verify that any information legally required by operating permits relevant to these habitat issues is being collected.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC3.16 Ecosystem outcome PI (PI 2.5.1)

Table SC18: PI 2.5.1 Ecosystem outcome PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Ecosystem	Outcome Status 2.5.1 The UoA and associated enhancement activities do not cause serious or irreversible harm to the key elements of ecosystem structure and function.	(a) Ecosystem status	The UoA is unlikely to disrupt the key elements underlying ecosystem structure and function to a point where there would be a serious or irreversible harm.	The UoA is highly unlikely to disrupt the key elements underlying ecosystem structure and function to a point where there would be a serious or irreversible harm.	There is evidence that the UoA is highly unlikely to disrupt the key elements underlying ecosystem structure and function to a point where there would be a serious or irreversible harm.
		(b) Impacts due to enhancement 	Enhancement activities are unlikely to disrupt the key elements underlying ecosystem structure and function to a point where there would be a serious or irreversible harm.	Enhancement activities are highly unlikely to disrupt the key elements underlying ecosystem structure and function to a point where there would be a serious or irreversible harm.	There is evidence that the enhancement activities are highly unlikely to disrupt the key elements underlying ecosystem structure and function to a point where there would be a serious or irreversible harm.

SC3.16.1 In scoring issue (b), assessments teams shall consider 'key elements underlying ecosystem structure and function' to include the ecological productivity and abundance of wild salmon and other components of the aquatic ecosystem as a result of predation, competition for resources, and disease transmission. **!!**

SC3.16.2 The team should organize its assessment of ecological interaction risks from enhancement programs into the following two categories: disease transmission and predation/competition. **!!**

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC3.17 Ecosystem management PI (PI 2.5.2) !!

Table SC19: PI 2.5.2 Ecosystem management PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Ecosystem	<p>Management strategy</p> <p>2.5.2</p> <p>There are measures in place to ensure the UoA and enhancement activities do not pose a risk of serious or irreversible harm to ecosystem structure and function.</p>	(a) Management strategy in place	There are measures in place, if necessary which take into account the potential impacts of the UoA on key elements of the ecosystem.	There is a partial strategy in place, if necessary which takes into account available information and is expected to restrain impacts of the UoA on the ecosystem so as to achieve the Ecosystem Outcome 80 level of performance.	There is a strategy that consists of a plan in place, which contains measures to address all main impacts of the UoA on the ecosystem, and at least some of these measures are in place.
		(b) Management strategy evaluation	The measures are considered likely to work, based on plausible argument (e.g., general experience, theory or comparison with similar UoA/ ecosystems).	There is some objective basis for confidence that the measures/ partial strategy will work, based on some information directly about the UoA and/or the ecosystem involved.	Testing supports high confidence that the partial strategy/ strategy will work, based on information directly about the UoA and/or ecosystem involved.
		(c) Management strategy implementation		There is some evidence that the measures/parti al strategy is being implemented successfully .	There is clear evidence that the partial strategy/strategy is being implemented successfully and is achieving its objective as set out in scoring issue (a) .

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		(d) Management of enhancement activities !!	There is an established artificial production strategy in place that is expected to achieve the Ecosystem Outcome 60 level of performance.	There is a tested and evaluated artificial production strategy with sufficient monitoring in place and evidence is available to reasonably ensure with high likelihood that the strategy is effective in achieving the Ecosystem Outcome 80 level of performance.	There is a comprehensive and fully evaluated artificial production strategy to verify with certainty that the Ecosystem Outcome 100 level of performance.

SC3.17.1 In scoring issue (d), assessment teams shall consider whether management measures are in place that decrease ecological risk of enhancement activities, in particular management of disease and competition/predation. !!

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC3.18 Ecosystem information PI (PI 2.5.3)

Table SC20: PI 2.5.3 Ecosystem information PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Ecosystem	<p>Information / monitoring</p> <p>2.5.3</p> <p>There is adequate knowledge of the impacts of the UoA and associated enhancement activities on the ecosystem.</p>	(a) Information quality	Information is adequate to identify the key elements of the ecosystem.	Information is adequate to broadly understand the key elements of the ecosystem.	
		(b) Investigation of the UoA impacts	Main impacts of the UoA and associated enhancement activities on these key ecosystem elements can be inferred from existing information, but have not been investigated in detail.	Main impacts of the UoA and associated enhancement activities on these key ecosystem elements can be inferred from existing information, and some have been investigated in detail.	Main interactions between the UoA and associated enhancement activities and these ecosystem elements can be inferred from existing information, and have been investigated in detail.
		(c) Understanding of component functions		The main functions of the components (i.e., P1 target species, primary, secondary, and ETP species and Habitats) in the ecosystem are known.	The impacts of the UoA and associated enhancement activities on P1 target, primary, secondary, and ETP species and Habitats are identified and the main functions of these components in the ecosystem are understood.
		(d) Information relevance		Adequate information is available on the impacts of the UoA and associated enhancement activities on these components to allow some of the main consequences	Adequate information is available on the impacts of the UoA and associated enhancement activities on the components and elements to allow the main consequences for the ecosystem to

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
				for the ecosystem to be inferred.	be inferred.
		(e) Monitoring		Adequate data continue to be collected to detect any increase in risk level.	Information is adequate to support the development of strategies to manage ecosystem impacts.

SC3.18.1 The team shall assess whether relevant information is collected to understand the impacts of enhancement activities on the receiving ecosystem. 

SC4 Principle 3

SC4.1 General requirements for Principle 3

SC4.1.1 Only additions and modifications are included herein, in Principle 3 all default Annex SA requirements apply. 🟩

SC4.1.2 The assessment team shall explicitly consider enhancement activities that are associated with the fishery. 🟩

SC4.2–4.3 No modifications to Annex SA

SC4.4 Consultation, roles and responsibilities PI (PI 3.1.2)

SC4.4.1 In scoring this PI, assessment teams shall consider whether the consultation process covers both the fishery and enhancement activities. 🟡

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC4.5 Long term objectives PI (PI 3.1.3)

Table SC21: PI 3.1.3 Long term objective PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Governance and policy	<p>Long term objectives</p> <p>3.1.3</p> <p>The management policy for the SMU and associated enhancement activities has clear long-term objectives to guide decision-making that are consistent with MSC fisheries standard, and incorporates the precautionary approach.</p>	(a) Objectives	Long term objectives to guide decision-making, consistent with MSC fisheries standard and the precautionary approach, are implicit within management policy.	Clear long term objectives that guide decision-making, consistent with MSC fisheries standard and the precautionary approach, are explicit within management policy.	Clear long term objectives that guide decision-making, consistent with MSC fisheries standard and the precautionary approach, are explicit within and required by management policy

SC4.5.1 The team shall assess whether the fishery’s enhancement activities have explicit long-term objectives and a guiding policy context that is consistent with managing for sustainable Principle 1 and Principle 2 outcomes for wild salmon, and that shapes short-term objectives and decision making processes. 

SC4.6 Fishery-specific management system PIs

SC4.6.1 No modifications to [SA4.6](#).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC4.7 Fishery-specific objectives PI (PI 3.2.1)

Table SC22: PI 3.2.1 Fishery specific objectives PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Fishery-specific management system	<p>Fishery- specific objectives</p> <p>3.2.1</p> <p>The fishery-specific and associated enhancement management system(s) have clear, specific objectives designed to achieve the outcomes expressed by MSC's Principles 1 and 2.</p>	(a) Objectives	Objectives , which are broadly consistent with achieving the outcomes expressed by MSC's Principles 1 and 2, are implicit within the fishery and associated enhancement management system(s).	Short and long term objectives , which are consistent with achieving the outcomes expressed by MSC's Principles 1 and 2, are explicit within the fishery and associated enhancement management system(s).	Well defined and measurable short and long term objectives , which are demonstrably consistent with achieving the outcomes expressed by MSC's Principles 1 and 2, are explicit within the fishery and associated enhancement management system(s).

SC4.7.1 The team shall evaluate whether **clear objectives** exist for the fishery's enhancement activities that are consistent with achieving specific, related outcomes in Principles 1 and 2. ■

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC4.8 Decision-making processes PI (PI 3.2.2)

Table SC23: PI 3.2.2 Decision making processes PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Fishery-specific management system	<p>Decision-making processes</p> <p>3.2.2</p> <p>The fishery-specific and associated enhancement management system includes effective decision-making processes that result in measures and strategies to achieve the objectives and has an appropriate approach to actual disputes in the fishery.</p>	(a) Decision-making processes	There are some decision-making processes in place that result in measures and strategies to achieve the fishery-specific and enhancement objectives.	There are established decision-making processes that result in measures and strategies to achieve the fishery-specific and enhancement objectives.	
		(b) Responsiveness of decision-making processes	Decision-making processes respond to serious issues identified in relevant research, monitoring, evaluation and consultation, in a transparent, timely and adaptive manner and take some account of the wider implications of decisions.	Decision-making processes respond to serious and other important issues identified in relevant research, monitoring, evaluation and consultation, in a transparent, timely and adaptive manner and take account of the wider implications of decisions.	Decision-making processes respond to all issues identified in relevant research, monitoring, evaluation and consultation, in a transparent, timely and adaptive manner and take account of the wider implications of decisions.
		(c) Use of precautionary approach		Decision-making processes use the precautionary approach and are based on best available information.	

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
		(d) Accountability and transparency of management system and decision making process	Some information on performance and management action is generally available on request to stakeholders	Information on fishery performance and management action is available on request , and explanations are provided for any actions or lack of action associated with findings and relevant recommendations emerging from research, monitoring, evaluation and review activity.	Formal reporting to all interested stakeholders provides comprehensive information on fishery performance and management actions and describes how the management system responded to findings and relevant recommendations emerging from research, monitoring, evaluation and review activity.
		(e) Approach to disputes	Although the management authority or fishery may be subject to continuing court challenges, it is not indicating a disrespect or defiance of the law by repeatedly violating the same law or regulation necessary for the sustainability for the fishery.	The management system or fishery is attempting to comply in a timely fashion with judicial decisions arising from any legal challenges.	The management system or fishery acts proactively to avoid legal disputes or rapidly implements judicial decisions arising from legal challenges.

SC4.8.1 The team shall assess whether the decision making processes surrounding enhancement activities, including determination of production levels and strategies, result in measures and strategies that are consistent with meeting specific objectives for ensuring Principles 1 and 2 outcomes. !!

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC4.9 Compliance and enforcement PI (PI 3.2.3)

Table SC24: PI 3.2.3 Compliance and enforcement PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Fishery-specific management system	<p>Compliance and enforcement</p> <p>3.2.3</p> <p>Monitoring, control and surveillance mechanisms ensure the management measures in the fishery and associated enhancement activities are enforced and complied with.</p>	(a) MCS implementation	Monitoring, control and surveillance mechanisms exist, and are implemented in the fishery and associated enhancement activities and there is a reasonable expectation that they are effective.	A monitoring, control and surveillance system has been implemented in the fishery and associated enhancement activities and has demonstrated an ability to enforce relevant management measures, strategies and/or rules.	A comprehensive monitoring, control and surveillance system has been implemented in the fishery and associated enhancement activities and has demonstrated a consistent ability to enforce relevant management measures, strategies and/or rules.
		(b) Sanctions	Sanctions to deal with non-compliance exist and there is some evidence that they are applied.	Sanctions to deal with non-compliance exist, are consistently applied and thought to provide effective deterrence.	Sanctions to deal with non-compliance exist, are consistently applied and demonstrably provide effective deterrence.
		(c) Compliance	Fishers and hatchery operators are generally thought to comply with the management system for the fishery and associated enhancement activities under assessment, including, when required, providing information of importance to	Some evidence exists to demonstrate fishers and hatchery operators comply with the management system under assessment, including, when required, providing information of importance to the effective management	There is a high degree of confidence that fishers and hatchery operators comply with the management system under assessment, including, providing information of importance to the effective management of the fishery and associated enhancement

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
			the effective management of the fishery.	of the fishery and associated enhancement activities.	activities.
		(d) Systematic non-compliance		There is no evidence of systematic non-compliance.	

SC4.9.1 The team shall consider whether private hatchery operators cooperate with management authorities in collection and sharing of information important to ensure that artificial production activities are complying with legal and management system objectives and requirements.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

SC4.10 Monitoring and management performance evaluation PI (PI 3.2.4)

Table SC25: PI 3.2.4 Monitoring and management performance evaluation PISGs

Component	PI	Scoring issues	SG60	SG80	SG100
Fishery-specific management system	<p>Monitoring and management performance evaluation</p> <p>3.2.4</p> <p>There is a system for monitoring and evaluating the performance of the fishery-specific and enhancement management system(s) against its objectives.</p> <p>There is effective and timely review of the fishery-specific and associated enhancement program(s) management system.</p>	(a) Evaluation coverage	The fishery and associated enhancement program(s) has in place mechanisms to evaluate some parts of the management system.	The fishery and associated enhancement program(s) has in place mechanisms to evaluate key parts of the management system.	The fishery and associated enhancement program(s) has in place mechanisms to evaluate all parts of the management system.
		(b) Internal and/or external review !!	The fishery-specific and associated enhancement program(s) management system is subject to occasional internal review.	The fishery-specific and associated enhancement program(s) management system is subject to regular internal and occasional external review.	The fishery-specific and associated enhancement program(s) management system is subject to regular internal and external review.

SC4.10.1 The team shall evaluate whether hatchery operational plans include well-designed and supported provisions for monitoring the fishery's enhancement activities that are consistent with achieving specific, related outcomes and objectives in Principles 1 and 2, with particular attention to evaluating the impacts of enhancement activities on natural production components and ecosystem function.

SC5 Weighting to be Applied in Enhanced Salmon Fisheries

- SC5.1 The team shall use the revised weighting contained in [Scoring Worksheet for Salmon Fisheries](#), when scoring salmon fisheries.

SC6 Allowances for Inseparable or Practicably Inseparable (IPI) Catches in Salmon Fisheries

SC6.1 IPI catches in salmon fisheries

- SC6.1.1 In considering whether there are catches of non-target salmon stock(s) that are to be treated as 'inseparable or practicably inseparable' (IPI) from target salmon stock(s), under FCR 7.4.13, CABs shall note in the case of salmon fisheries that stocks shall only be considered IPI if they are not certified separately and are either: ■

- a. Non-target species (scored in P2, not P1); or
- b. Non-local stocks of species targeted in the fishery (i.e., stocks that are caught in the fishery but do not breed within the UoA and are not therefore normally scored as part of the SMU).

- SC6.1.1.1 Where the proposed IPI stock is a different salmon species to the target species (SC6.1.1.a), it shall: ■

- a. Only be considered not commercially feasible to separate the species when the total catches from the IPI stock(s) do not exceed 5% by weight of the total combined catches of target and IPI stock(s) within the unit of assessment; and
- b. Be assessed under P2 in accordance with the requirements in Annex PA.

- SC6.1.1.2 Where the proposed IPI stocks are non-local stocks of the same species as the P1 target stock within the UoA (SC6.1.1.b): !!

- a. The total catches from the IPI stock(s) shall not exceed 5% by weight of the total combined catches of target and IPI stock(s) within the UoA; and
- b. FCR 7.4.13.1.d shall not apply to these stocks, but, if outside biologically based limits, the team shall demonstrate that the fishery
 - i. Does not catch a significant proportion of the total catch of the stock; and
 - ii. Is highly likely not to significantly hinder its recovery, and practical measures have been implemented to reduce impacts on the stock.

- SC6.1.2 In considering whether candidate IPI stocks meet the defined 5% upper catch limits (under SC6.1.2 and SC6.1.3 above), CABs shall take into account catch data from the most recent two or more years prior to the date on which the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

eligibility is decided, as necessary to allow for the normal age at spawning of each of the species under consideration. ❗

- SC6.1.3 If IPI stocks are identified and are below the level of 5% specified in SC6.1.3.a, the CAB shall, as early as practicable in the assessment process, submit a variation request to the MSC to allow fish or fish products to be considered as coming from IPI stocks to enter further into chains of custody. 📌

End of Annex SC

Annex SD: Introduced Species Based Fisheries (ISBF) – Normative

SD1 General

- SD1.1.1 If the fishery is based upon an introduced species, the CAB shall apply Annex SD.
- SD1.1.2 CABs shall note that the requirements for ISBF are a pilot program and Annex SD may be subject to change.

SD2 Initial Requirements on Assessment Issues

- SD2.1.1 The CAB shall consider the ecological role of the introduced species.
- SD2.1.1.1 The CAB shall assess the ISBF against default PISGs in Principle 1. 
- SD2.1.1.2 The CAB shall make modifications to the scoring issues at PI 1.1.1 for fisheries that include setting target reference points at levels which may be lower than MSY as a deliberate measure to allow for reduced biodiversity impact.
- a. The CAB shall not accept limit reference points set at levels below which there is an appreciable risk of impairing reproductive capacity.
- SD2.1.1.3 CABs shall address measures in place in the fishery to prevent further ecosystem impacts that may have occurred as a result of the introduction of the species to the new location under the Ecosystem component of Principle 2.
- a. When relevant CAB's shall define and include an additional scoring issue and corresponding guideposts at 60, 80 and 100 levels to the Ecosystem Management PI 2.5.2 which evaluates measures in the fishery to prevent progression of further ecosystem impacts from occurring due to the presence of the introduced species.
- b. CABs shall include mechanisms against this additional scoring issue to be:
- i. Setting target reference points at levels that allow for recovery of species impacted by the introduction,
- ii. Containment measures such as fishing down at the boundaries of the stock to prevent further spread,
- iii. Protection and/or creation of faunal refugia,
- iv. Provisions in legislation to prohibit further introductions of any other alien species.
- v. Other relevant mechanisms.
- SD2.1.1.4 The CAB shall provide a rationale to justify why no measures to prevent further impact on biodiversity are considered necessary in that particular fishery if there are no measures in place.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- SD2.1.1.5 CABs should define a corresponding Ecosystem Information scoring issue that addresses the collection of information important to understanding and preventing further progression of impact of the introduced species on biodiversity.

SD3 Introduced Species as Non-target Species

- SD3.1.1 The CAB shall determine if the introduced species is not the target species in the fishery being considered for certification, but is a primary or secondary species that is impacted in some way by fishing activity on the target species.
- SD3.1.1.1 Consideration of how such species are treated in an assessment shall depend on the status accorded that species by management.
- a. If the primary/secondary, non-native species is being managed for high productivity because it is a target species in another managed fishery, then in a similar way to any mainstream MSC assessment, the CAB shall evaluate the fishery to determine that it is not having an unacceptable impact on the non-native, primary/secondary species.
 - b. If the non-native primary/secondary species is subject to a formal or informal eradication policy because it is considered to have a “nuisance” status the CAB shall not take the impact of the fishery on the introduced species into consideration in the assessment.

SD4 Implementation of this Annex

- SD4.1.1 CABs shall note that this Annex is in effect during a pilot phase which commenced 19 January 2011.
- SD4.1.2 CABs that wish to assess an ISBF during this pilot phase shall consult with the MSC on proposed modifications to the default tree.
- SD4.1.2.1 CABs should note that the MSC may advise on further considerations to the modification.
- SD4.1.2.2 CABs shall submit final trees to be used for ISBF's to the MSC by following the procedure for modified assessment trees in FCR 7.8.5.
- SD4.1.3 During the pilot phase CABs shall be required to submit a copy of the Draft Report to the MSC 15 days prior to release of the Public Comment Draft Report.
- SD4.1.4 CABs shall advise their clients of the pilot nature of this Annex.
- SD4.1.4.1 CABs shall make potential fishery clients aware of the possibility of further changes to requirements in the course of the assessment of the fishery.

End of Annex SD

Marine Stewardship Council

**MSC Guidance for the
Fisheries Certification Requirements**



V2.0, 1st October 2014

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table of Contents

Guidance to Implementation Timeframes ▲	234
G1 Scope ▲	236
G2 Normative Documents ▲	236
G3 Terms and Definitions ▲	236
G4 General Requirements ▲	236
G7 Process Requirements ▲	239
MSC-MSCI Vocabulary – Normative	515
1 Purpose and Scope	515
2 Introduction	515
3 Vocabulary	516

Figures

Figure G1: Pre-Assessment Process	242
Figure G2: Full Assessment Decision tree	248
Figure G3: IPI stock decision flow	260
Figure G4: Gathering Information - Informative	262

Tables

Table G1: Example Report	245
Table G2: Level of assessment expected and considerations for metapopulations	255
Table G3: Default weighting to be applied in using the default assessment tree	265
Table G5: Example scoring rationale 1	270
Table G6: Example scoring rationale 2	270
Table G7: Example scoring rationale 3	271
Table G8: Example overall scoring rationale	271
Table G9: Example of conditions for Principle 1	273
Table G10: Example of conditions for Principle 2	275
Table G11: Example of conditions for Principle 3	276
Table G12: Rationale for outcome of gap analysis	285
Table G13: All possible combinations of surveillance levels	286
Table G14: Assessment of information for determination of appropriate surveillance	288

Boxes

Box G1: MSC's advice on allocating costs of certificate sharing	258
---	-----

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Guidance to Implementation Timeframes ▲

Fisheries that announce their first full assessment after the effective date.

Shall apply FCR v2.0 for both the process and standard requirements.

Fisheries that announce their first full assessment before the effective date.

- Should continue to apply CR v1.3 in the assessment, unless they experience a 4 month pause between announcement and site visit, or a 9 month pause between site visit and PCDR publication; in which case FCR v2.0 (process and standard) shall be applied (see FCR sections [7.3.3-4](#)).
- Shall apply the process requirements of FCR v2.0 in their next surveillance scheduled after 1st April 2015, while continuing to apply the standard requirements of CR v1.3.
- Shall apply the standard requirements of FCR v2.0 in their first reassessment announced after 1st October 2017.
- Notwithstanding the normative requirements, may at their discretion apply FCR v2.0 (process and standard) for any fishery assessment that is announced before the effective date.

Certified fisheries and fisheries that are in assessment on 1 April 2015

- Shall apply the process requirements of FCR v2.0 in their next surveillance that commences (is announced) after 1st April 2015, while continuing to apply the standard requirements of CR v1.3.
- Shall apply the standard requirements of FCR v2.0 in their first reassessment announced after 1st October 2017.

Such fisheries will not have to apply the standard requirements of FCR v2.0 until three years after its release and may thus become recertified before such time using the CR v1.3 standard. For instance, a fishery announcing reassessment in September 2017 can still use the CR v1.3 standard, or could voluntarily apply FCR v2.0. But all reassessments announced after 1st October 2017 must use Annex SA from FCR v2.0.

Extension of Scope

For expedited assessments (scope extensions, Annex PE) of components of existing fisheries, CABs shall apply the version of the standard (assessment tree) that was used for the assessment of the originally certified fishery.

Where the scope of a fishery is changed following a scope extension (expedited assessment), the fishery shall be considered a new fishery at reassessment and shall be required to use CR v2.0.

CABs will normally use the same versions of the process and standard requirements from the start to the end of each assessment and surveillance process, except under the conditions specified in [7.3.3-4](#).

Over the life of a certificate, individual surveillance audits may use different FCR versions (i.e., different process requirements). A specific surveillance process shall not change versions while only partly completed. For example, new process requirements would not be used for reporting a surveillance audit that has had a site visit but not yet produced a report.

Reassessment and the RBF

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The RBF includes both process aspects and standard aspects. The v2.0 RBF has for example been developed to include 'cumulative' aspects consistent with the P2 developments of the v2.0 standard.

Although the RBF is included in the FCR as Annex PF, its use with fisheries using the v1.3 standard (i.e., the v1.3 assessment tree) is not mandatory. Fisheries certified against v1.3 and undertaking surveillance using v2.0 processes therefore do not need to apply the RBF annex of FCR v2.0. Nevertheless, a fishery that starts reassessment after April 2015 but before October 2017 may use the v1.3 tree alongside the v2.0 RBF (unless voluntarily adopting the v2.0 tree earlier than required). In this case, CABs should contact MSC to request a variation confirming which aspects of the v2.0 RBF will be used, and what adjustments will be made to ensure consistency with the v1.3 default tree.

Surveillance

Surveillance requirements appear in the FCR v2.0 process section and must therefore be applied after 1st April 2015. Fisheries certified against v1.3 should apply these requirements in surveillance audits that start after 1st April 2015 (or voluntarily earlier if the CAB is ready to adopt FCR v2.0 from that time) and with the exception of requirements to apply the RBF, see above). From this point, the CAB can revise the audit programme detailed in the PCDR in line with the new requirements, e.g. giving increased flexibility in the timing of audits without needing variation requests. Such changes to the future schedule should be clearly described in the surveillance report (see 7.23.10).

Moving from CR v1.3 to FCR v2.0 in a fishery in assessment

As explained above, there are some circumstances (e.g. a delay in the assessment process) where it is necessary to migrate to FCR v2.0 during an assessment. CABs may also at their discretion choose to migrate to FCR v2.0 even if not required by normative process.

For procedural guidance in these cases, see section [G7.3.3](#).

Harmonisation

A fishery being assessed against v2.0 of the MSC fisheries standard would not be expected to harmonise with fisheries certified against CR v1.3 where PIs are significantly different. When comparing FCR changes the following should be considered:

If a minor wording change has been made to a PI, but the SG80 language for a particular scoring issue is still effectively the same, it may be appropriate that harmonisation is considered for any condition raised against that issue. The change tracking spreadsheet released with the FCR will qualify where changes to intent have occurred. This can be used in judging where changes are significant.

MSC Cumulative P2 approach

Parts of Principle 2 of the new MSC fisheries standard (v2.0) are assessed for all MSC Units of Assessments (UoAs) rather than just the impact of the UoA included in the current assessment process.

Although fisheries certified against CR v1.3 are not yet subject to the 'MSC-cumulative' approach, fisheries being assessed against CR v2.0 are required to take the impacts of these existing MSC fisheries into account where applicable (e.g. where there are overlapping, main primary species). Guidance is provided on this topic under harmonisation in Annex GPB and Annex GSA.

Provision for certificate extensions to apply the new MSC fisheries standard

The MSC Board of Trustees agreed to allow fisheries certified against older versions of the MSC fisheries standard to extend their certificates to allow them to implement the new FCR

Fisheries Certification Requirements

v2.0 standard and process requirements rather than be reassessed against the default tree in CR v1.3. This was to encourage fisheries to use the newest version of the standard, including the many clarifications given in the guidance; and to gain access to the speed and cost benefits in the v2.0 process. As the release has now been delayed this policy has been extended to allow these fisheries until 1st December 2014 to make a decision to either proceed with the new FCR v2.0, or to begin reassessment against v1.3.

The provision for continued surveillance during the period of extension applies and CABs should discuss their intention to apply this policy with the relevant MSC FAM.

G1 **Scope** ▲

The purposes of the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements are to:

- Establish consistent fisheries certification requirements for all CABs.
- Provide transparency for credibility with stakeholders including governments, fishery managers, CABs, suppliers of fish and fish products, non-governmental organisations and the public.
- Specify requirements of the certification scheme that ensures the MSC ecolabel on fish or fish products is a credible assurance that the fish comes from a fishery conforming to MSC's Fisheries Standard.

G2 **Normative Documents** ▲

Note that the normative references provided are additional to those found MSC's General Requirements for CABs. All MSC forms and templates can be found at:

<http://www.msc.org/documents/scheme-documents/fisheries-certification-scheme-documents>

G3 **Terms and Definitions** ▲

All terms used in the scheme documents are defined in the MSC & MSC-International (MSCI) Vocabulary.

The word assessment is used for the initial evaluation and 5 yearly evaluations for re-certification, and the word audit is used for annual surveillance audits and expedited audits.

G4 **General Requirements** ▲

G4.2 **Consultation requirements** ▲

Stakeholder engagement is a critical component of the MSC fisheries assessment process:

- A robust stakeholder consultation process is fundamental to conducting a quality assessment.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- It provides important information to CABs.
- It contributes significantly to the credibility and outcome of the assessment process.

Section 4.2 of the FCR is designed to improve the quality and consistency of stakeholder consultation in the fishery assessment process without adding significant time or cost ensuring:

- Early identification of relevant stakeholders, each of whom are given adequate opportunity to provide their views during relevant stages of the assessment;
- Issues raised by stakeholders are acknowledged and reported as early in the assessment process as possible to provide maximum opportunity for resolution outside of the objections process;
- Comments from stakeholders are targeted and relevant to each assessment, and
- Explicit responses from certifiers are presented such that it is easy to see how, where, and why the comments have (or have not) been considered.

Further guidance on stakeholder consultation is provided in Annex GPX.

G4.2.2 MSC Template for Stakeholder Input into Fishery Assessments ▲

The MSC Template for Stakeholder Input into Fishery Assessments can be found on the MSC website at:
http://www.msc.org/documents/get-certified/stakeholders/template_for_stakeholder_input

G4.2.6 Consultation closing time ▲

This requirement relates to stakeholder consultations on fishery assessment stages, modified tree consultation (FCR 7.8), and assessment reports (PCDR, Final Report, Surveillance Report). The 5pm UK consultation closing time is consistent with the release of such consultation documents by the MSC UK office at the end of the working day in the UK office.

G4.3 Use of confidential information in fishery assessments ▲

The intent of this section is to:

- Clarify management of the use of confidential information provided during a fisheries assessment to ensure that stakeholders reviewing reports are not placed at a disadvantage;
- Set limits as to the type of information that can be withheld with a focus on protection of commercially sensitive information.

The MSC Full Assessment Reporting Template requires that “*Each indicator shall contain... a reference to the source of the information used to make a judgement about that indicator.*” If the source is confidential this could create difficulties for stakeholders wishing to review the information.

Stakeholders play an important role in reviewing the results of assessments through their review of assessment reports. This process allows stakeholders to review the scores

Fisheries Certification Requirements

determined for assessing the performance of the fishery, and the rationale supporting those scores. Access to the information upon which a fishery's performance has been assessed is crucial in ensuring stakeholders are able to properly review assessment reports.

The need to ensure that transparency is afforded to all aspects of the assessment process is essential to ensuring that the benefits of stakeholder engagement in the process are delivered.

The MSC recognises that there may be specific concerns relating to the confidentiality of information used in the assessment. Sections 4.2, 4.3 and 4.4 of the FCR provides direction on how to treat and manage the use of confidential information provided during a fisheries assessment to ensure that stakeholders reviewing assessment reports are able to properly review assessment findings.

G4.4 Access to information ▲

Information available to a CAB may include un-published reports.

To facilitate stakeholder access to those reports to ensure appropriateness or relevance of information, section 4.4 in the FCR contains requirements for CABs to ensure that information used in the assessment is made available.

The CABs do not have to make the information available itself, but they must ensure that it is available to stakeholders.

G7 Process Requirements ▲

This section includes guidance on the following:

G7.1 Pre-Assessment	241
G7.1.1	241
G7.1.2 Pre-assessment objectives	242
G7.1.4 ISO 17065	243
G7.1.7 Inform the client	243
G7.1.9 Information about MSC pre-assessments	243
G7.3 Assessment timelines	246
G7.3.3 Transition to FCR v2.0	246
G7.4 Confirmation of scope	247
G7.4.1 Confirming that the fishery is within the scope of the MSC Standard	248
G7.4.2 Disputes in fisheries	249
G7.4.3 Categories of enhanced fisheries	249
G7.4.7 – G7.4.9 Defining the Unit of Certification and Unit of Assessment	251
G7.4.9 Definition of UoA at time of fishing	256
G7.4.10 Changes to UoC/ UoA	256
G7.4.11 Review of traceability factors	257
G7.4.12 Other eligible fishers and entities and certificate sharing	257
G7.4.13 Inseparable or practicably inseparable stocks	259
G7.6 Determination of target and actual eligibility date	261
G7.6.1 Target eligibility date	261
G7.7 Preparing for Announcement	261
G7.7.2 Fishery that has Failed or withdrawn from assessment	262
G7.7.4 Fishery with enhanced stocks	262
G7.7.6 Use of the risk based methods for a data-deficient fishery	264
G7.7.7 Weighting	264
G7.8 Announcement of Fishery Assessment	266
G7.8.3	266
G7.8.5 Modifications to the default tree	267
G7.8.8	267
G7.9 Site visit: Assessment visits, stakeholder consultation and information collection	268
G7.10 Scoring the fishery	268
G7.10.3	268
G.7.10.7 Terms used	272

Fisheries Certification Requirements

G7.11 Setting Conditions	272
G7.11.1	279
G7.11.2	279
G7.12 Determination of the traceability systems, and point(s) at which fish and fish products enter further Chains of Custody	279
G7.12.1 Traceability record keeping	279
G7.12.4	281
G7.14 Peer review and Peer Review Draft Report	281
G7.14.4	281
G7.16 Determination	282
G7.18 Objections procedure	283
G7.20 Certification decision and certificate issue	283
G7.21.3	283
G7.22 Extension of scope of fishery certificate (Expedited Assessment)	284
G7.22.1.2 Confirming the fisheries' eligibility for extension	284
G7.22.1.3 Meaning of close geographical proximity	284
G7.22.3 Gap analysis	284
G7.22.2.1 Adding new 'other eligible fishers'	285
G7.22.7 Changes in the client group	286
G7.23 Surveillance	286
G7.23.2	286
G7.23.4	288
G7.23.8 Surveillance programme	292
G7.24 Re-assessment	111
G7.24.5 Reporting	293

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Background ▲

Certification to the MSC's Fisheries Standard is a multi-step process. The certification process includes four major steps:

1. **Pre-assessment:** A confidential report from a CAB tells a fishery if it is likely to achieve certification. The report may also be used by the client as a guide to preparing for full assessment. Requirements for the pre-assessment are found in [section 7.1](#) of the FCR.
1. **Preparation:** In this step the client prepares for a full assessment in response to pre-assessment findings and other relevant information. No requirements for the preparation step are presented in the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements (FCR).
2. **Full assessment:** This is a multi-step process to determine whether or not the fishery conforms to the MSC standard. The process is led by an appointed CAB and its expert team. It involves consulting with stakeholders, reviewing PIs, scoring the fishery, identifying areas where the fishery should strengthen its performance (if needed), peer review and making a determination and then a final decision about whether or not the fishery meets the MSC standard. This is an intensive process that calls for a high level of information to be provided by the fishery client and other stakeholders. Requirements for the full assessment phase are presented in sections [7.3](#) to [7.21](#) of the FCR.
3. **Post-assessment:** Surveillance audits are conducted by the appointed CAB. Fisheries are encouraged to make the most of certification using the MSC Chain of Custody standard for seafood traceability (See Chain of Custody Certification Requirements). Requirements for post-assessment are presented in sections [7.22](#) to [7.24](#) of the FCR.

G7.1 Pre-Assessment ▲

Background

A pre-assessment can identify potential issues, the likelihood of the fishery in question meeting the MSC Fisheries Standard, and/or highlight major barriers to achieving certification. It can also assist the CAB with its planning for a full assessment.

Pre-assessments have been used by fisheries to assist with the decision on whether to move forward to full assessment (see [Figure G1](#) below)– they have in some cases prevented fisheries from moving forward and incurring significant expenditure on a full assessment where there was little or no likelihood of success. The majority of fisheries that have moved forward to full assessment, after undertaking a pre-assessment, have been successfully certified.

The MSC recommends that fisheries use a CAB for conducting a pre-assessment since CABs have been trained in the MSC certification requirements whereas evaluations carried out by non-CAB trained consultants are from unknown quality. Ultimately, the onus is on the client to make their decision to enter Full Assessment, whether the recommendation is provided from an outside consultant or from a CAB.

G7.1.1 Pre-assessment not mandatory ▲

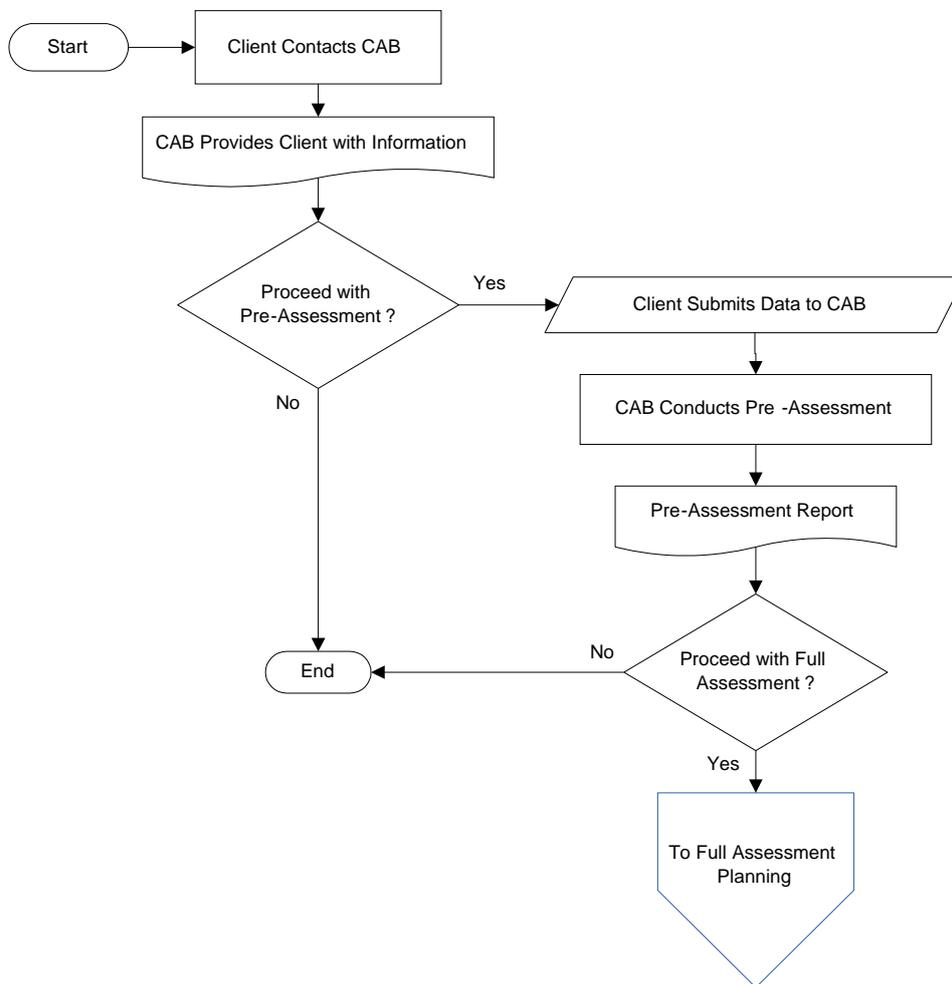
Pre-assessments are not mandatory. However, pre-assessments are recommended by the MSC.

G7.1.2 Pre-assessment objectives ▲

A pre-assessment should:

- Clarify to the client the philosophy and expectations of the MSC as expressed in its scheme documents;
- Identify the strengths and weaknesses of the fishery;
- Result in early identification of problems that may preclude certification, for example use of destructive fishing methods and operation under controversial unilateral declarations.

Figure G1: Pre-Assessment Process



G7.1.4 Conformity with ISO 17065 ▲

This requirement is strongly linked to the GCR and associated guidance which emphasises the importance of ensuring that the CAB's impartiality procedures are robust where the CAB has undertaken both the MSC fishery pre-assessment and full assessment of the same fishery. It is particularly important to ensure that there are no conflicts of interest between the personnel involved in the pre and full assessments in line with the requirements of ISO 17065.

G7.1.6.2 Pre-Assessment Template ▲

The 'Pre-Assessment Reporting Template' from version 2.0 onwards contains certain sections that are mandatory to complete ('shall' statements) and others that are optional to complete ('may' statements).

G7.1.7 Communication CAB-client ▲

MSC became aware in the early 2010s that some fisheries that were ill-prepared to enter full assessment were nevertheless doing so. This has in turn led to extended assessment timelines and increased costs for clients. While the decision to enter full assessment is the client's alone (MSC does not endorse or prohibit any client applying for assessment), MSC seeks to ensure that the client and CABs are mutually prepared in advance. MSC timelines are now more prescriptive, requiring completion of assessments within 18 months. Clients should be made aware that their failure to prepare properly - if the relevant information proves is not available, or if critical issues have not been addressed – might mean that the fishery could fail assessment. This could then lead to the client incurring additional costs, such as those associated with the need to revise the assessment against new Fisheries Certification Requirements if the PCDR is not published within 9 months of announcement.

G7.1.7.3 Client Document Checklist ▲

In order to proceed to announcement, MSC now requires that the CAB must be in possession of a completed Client Document Checklist. The intent of this checklist is that the client and the CAB are sure that all the information needed for an assessment is currently available, and that the fishery is fully prepared to proceed to full assessment. To that end, the checklist will identify the type and extent of data and information that will be made available for a full assessment, and any actions that have been taken by the fishery to address critical issues raised in a pre-assessment.

■ CABs should review and consider the information submitted by clients prior to going onsite.

G7.1.9 Information collection related to MSC pre-assessments ▲

The requirement for CABs to submit annual summary information on MSC pre-assessments was approved by the MSC Technical Advisory Board (TAB) in December 2010. Official MSC pre-assessment reports prepared by CABs are still submitted to MSC at time of entry to full assessment, not at the time of annual reporting of summary information.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The information provided may be aggregated and publicly reported on the MSC website to show regional pre-assessment activities without revealing either the CAB or client identities or other specific fishery details.

This reporting allows the MSC to monitor the numbers of fisheries that are engaging with the MSC process in different regions of the world and assess the proportions of those fisheries that subsequently enter (as opposed to those who do not enter) full assessment. The example [\(Table G1\)](#) report provides information from the same CAB for a later year and includes a status update for one of the previously reported pre-assessments. Submissions by CABs in years 2012 and onwards would be expected to follow the format of the [Table G1](#) below.

Table G1: Example Report (for years after the first submission, including updates for previous years where the status is now known or revised)

Certification Body (name)		ABC Certification Ltd							
Reporting period (year ending 31 March)	Fishery					Fishery evaluation at time of pre-assessment		Actions since pre-assessment	
	Species	Stock (location)	Gear type(s)	Client (organisation name)	Fishery scale	Status (1, 2 or 3)	Rationale for assigned status	Status (1, 2, 3, 4 or 5)	Notes
2012	Brown trout (<i>Salmo trutta</i>)	Deep Lake, Scotland	Gill net	BT Fishing Ltd	Small scale	3		1	Now in preparation for submission of announcement documents
2012	Herring (<i>Clupea harengus</i>)	Irish Sea	Gill net	New Fishing Ltd	Semi-industrial	2	Expected fail in P3 due to lack of written research plan and other issues	3	Working on research plan, expect to enter full assessment when complete
Include rows below to update information on fisheries included in previous annual reports where the status was 'not known' at the time of first reporting, or where the status has since changed									
2011	Lobster (<i>Homarus gammarus</i>)	Isle of Skye, UK	Pot	DEF Fishing Ltd	Small scale	1	Expected fail on P1 due to lack of existing harvest control rules.	2	Entered assessment with CAB XYZ Ltd. Announced September 2011.

G7.3 Assessment timelines ▲

Background

The MSC Speed and Cost Review undertaken during 2012–2014 aimed to reduce the duration of the overall fishery assessment process while maintaining high standards of assessment.

This section outlines requirements that:

- Ensure all stakeholders are kept up-to-date on the timelines of the assessment process.
- Ensure assessments are announced at a point in the process where the CAB is properly prepared to undertake the initial assessment steps.
- Limit the duration of the assessment between the data gathering stage and the drafting of the Public Comment Draft Report in order to maintain the quality and consistency of information used in the assessment.
- Recognise that there will be exceptional circumstances within the assessment process that need to be accounted for.

G7.3.3 Transition to FCR v2.0 ▲

CABs should note that the most recent version of the MSC Certification Requirements requires that the new FCR v2.0 MSC Fisheries Standard is adopted where the period from the full assessment announcement to the first on-site assessment visit exceeds 4 months. Transition to the v2.0 standard part way through an assessment may have significant impact on the costs associated with and the ultimate outcome of an assessment. Significant differences in the assessment trees that would need to be addressed can be found in the summary of changes spreadsheet on the MSC website.

Moving from CR v1.3 to FCR v2.0 including the new standard requirements before the site visit would only require re-announcing the tree to stakeholders.

Moving from CR v1.3 to FCR v2.0 including the new standard requirements after scoring has taken place would require re-announcing the tree and then the assessment team meeting to review the differences between the standard and re-scoring, seeking stakeholder input where appropriate.

Voluntary transitions to the new v2.0 tree and process mid-assessment should be managed by variation.

CABs should also note that if such a transition is made, the new timelines requirements would apply. This means that the period from announcement of the fishery to the publishing of the final report should not exceed 18 months.

G7.4 Confirmation of scope ▲

Background

This section contains a series of actions required to be undertaken prior to the CAB confirming the scope of the assessment (see [Figure G2](#) below). These actions include:

- Ensuring that the fishery is within scope of the MSC standard, (i.e., it does not operate under a controversial unilateral exemption to an international agreement, use destructive fishing practices, target amphibians, birds, reptiles or mammals and is not overwhelmed by dispute.);
- Reviewing pre-assessment reports and other information;
- Confirming the proposed units of assessment and certification;
- Determining if the fishery has failed an assessment within the last 2 years;
- Determining if the certificate may be shared with fishers not initially part of the client group;
- Determining if IPI stocks are caught;
- Determining if the fishery is enhanced;
- Determining if the fishery overlaps with another MSC certified or applicant fishery;
- Determining if the fishery is based on an introduced species;
- Ensuring that the fishery does not include an entity that has been successfully prosecuted for violations against forced labour laws:

The ILO definition of forced labour comprises two key elements:

- Work or service is exacted under the menace of a penalty, which can imply monetary sanctions, physical punishment, or the loss of rights and privileges or restriction of movement (e.g., refusing to allow free access to identity documents);
- Work is not voluntary.

Other unethical practices considered by the ILO to fall under the category of forced labour include debt bondage, human trafficking and other forms of modern slavery.

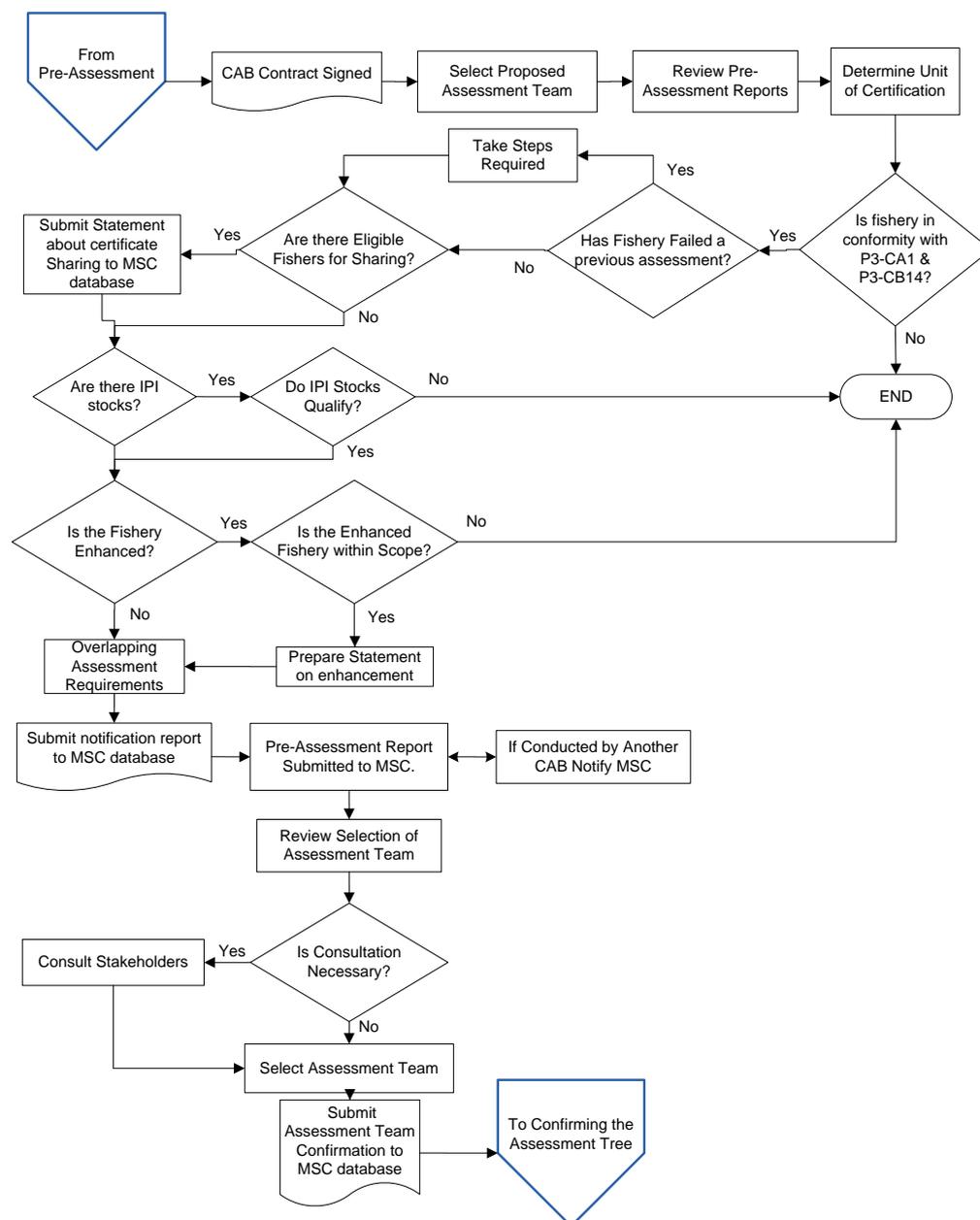
In order to ensure that a certified entity does not fall out of scope on account of forced labour violations, companies, fishery client group members and their subcontracted parties should ensure compliance with national and international laws on forced labour and follow relevant guidance where available.

Once this process is completed based on the above criteria the scope of the assessment is thereby confirmed.

Actions associated with this analysis are generally focused on information gathering and preparatory steps required before the team can be formed, the assessment tree can be confirmed and the assessment and scoring of the fishery can be undertaken. It is designed to provide robust and consistent assessments and maintain the integrity of the MSC certification programme.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Figure G2: Full Assessment Decision tree



G7.4.1 Confirming that the fishery is within the scope of the MSC Standard ▲

Evaluation of whether a fishery falls within the scope of the MSC Standard is conducted initially at the start of an assessment, and as outlined in this section. If circumstances change at a later date, a re-examination of the scope criteria outlined in [section 7.4](#) may also

Fisheries Certification Requirements

be triggered at any point during the assessment and certification periods of a fishery. In these cases, the fishery certificate would be suspended.

The scope of the MSC standard is currently described as follows

The Standard is available to all operations engaged in the wild capture of marine or freshwater organisms with the following exceptions:

- a. Operations targeting (as Principle 1) amphibians, reptiles, birds and mammals.
- d. Operations using explosives or poison as their fishing method.
- e. Operations that are conducted under controversial unilateral exemptions from international agreements, or under conditions of unresolved dispute, if the exemption or dispute creates a situation where effective management of the resource cannot be delivered.
- f. Farmed aquaculture operations, except where these can be described as enhanced fisheries as defined in 7.4.3 onwards
- g. Introduced species, except where these can be described as historical and irreversible as defined in Table 2.

G7.4.2 Controversy – disputes ▲

As part of Principle 3, the fishery is required to incorporate an appropriate mechanism for the resolution of disputes arising within the system. It is worth noting that outstanding disputes of substantial magnitude involving a significant number of interests will normally disqualify a fishery from certification. However, the existence of controversies or disputes are of themselves not enough to stop a fishery from being eligible for certification. The existence of lawsuits are not considered a barrier to certification, otherwise parties opposed to certification could simply lodge lawsuits to prevent an outcome they did not support. The judgement should be whether a dispute compromises the ability of the management system to provide sustainable management.

The existence of lawsuits are not considered a barrier to certification, otherwise parties opposed to certification could simply lodge lawsuits to prevent an outcome they did not support.

Note that a fishery could pass the three points in paragraph 7.4.2.1 with stakeholders having used the mechanism for resolving disputes but remaining unsatisfied with the outcome.

Enhanced fisheries ▲

The MSC's primary focus is on ensuring the long-term viability of global fish populations and the health of the aquatic ecosystems upon which they depend. The MSC has always included some types of fishery enhancement within its programme, but has specifically excluded aquaculture. The MSC's intent is to enable certain defined types of enhanced fisheries to be eligible for certification against the MSC standard while maintaining this focus.

Given the wide range of types of enhanced fishery that may seek to enter the MSC programme, it is recognised that existing certification requirements and guidance may require modification for the assessment of enhanced fisheries, through the development of additional (or modification of existing) Performance Indicators Scoring Guideposts.

The MSC has developed a range of documents to provide guidance on specific types of enhanced fisheries. Requirements for enhanced bivalve fisheries can be found in Annex SB

Fisheries Certification Requirements

of the FCR and in Annex GSB of the GFCR, while requirements for salmon fisheries can be found in Annex SC of the FCR and Annex GSC of the GFCR.

G7.4.3 Categories of enhanced fisheries ▲

Table 1 in the FCR defines the criteria by which enhanced fisheries may be identified as being within the scope of the MSC programme. The categories of potential within-scope enhanced fisheries are as follows:

- **Hatch and catch (HAC):** This production system may be considered within scope in certain circumstances, reflecting the established case history and precedent set by the hatchery-stocked salmon fisheries. For these types of fisheries, more intensive culture activities may be allowed as long as they only apply to a brief period within the species' life cycle.
- **Catch and grow (CAG):** This production system's grow-out and holding systems may be considered within scope under certain conditions. CAG has some features of intensive aquaculture – requiring routine and intensive inputs, such as feed, chemical or medicinal treatments or control and manipulation of the brood stock – that are outside of scope. The wild-harvest phase, whether it involved the collection of seed stock, larvae, juveniles or adults, would fall within scope of the MSC Standard up to the point of landing. CAG systems that only require limited enhancement (e.g. rope culture of bivalves or the extensive farming of wild shrimp) may be considered within scope for the entirety of their operation.
- **Habitat modified:** This production system involves the modification to habitat, such as salmon fry farms located next to river systems.

A single fishery may display several of the features of CAG, HAC or habitat-modified fisheries. In the application of MSC requirements, it is intended that any overlap between categories should not become complicating factors in determining whether a given fishery is within or outside scope. Distinctions are drawn in some cases between applications of the criteria to these different categories.

The MSC requirements allow for those enhanced fisheries that interested in initiating an MSC assessment to commence the process prior to the completion of further MSC requirements and guidance since:

- Some enhanced fisheries may be able to proceed with assessment against the existing default tree.
- Other enhanced fisheries may be considered in scope but require additional guidance and/or PISGs to be scored.
- The performance assessment issues that would be expected to be covered by these modifications for each category of enhanced fishery are outlined below and in section 7.4.3 of the FCR.

Scope criteria A: Linkages to and maintenance of a wild stock

Given the MSC focus on the sustainability of global wild fish stocks, the concept of 'wildness' plays a central role in scoping enhanced fisheries.

The fishery should incorporate some element of harvest of a wild population and should be managed so that the natural productivity and genetic biodiversity of that population is not undermined with respect to any impacts on long-term sustainability.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Linkages to wild stocks may exist either in HAC systems where marine species are raised to a larval or juvenile stage in captivity and then released into and harvested from a wild stock or CAG systems where species are harvested as juveniles or young adults from the wild and then raised in captivity until they are sold on to the market.

Scope criteria B: Feeding and husbandry

The criteria included in this group emphasise the main focus of the MSC on harvest of wild species. Production systems that show characteristics more consistent with closed and/or intensive aquaculture are out of scope.

Feeding is a fundamental requirement in most intensive aquaculture systems and thus provides a clear means for distinguishing between wild- and farmed-production systems. The framing of the scope criteria distinguishes between the use of feeding for a short initial period in HAC fisheries (e.g. stocked salmon fisheries) and the intent to exclude those CAG fisheries where feed inputs are used to achieve the greater part of the weight gain of the fish over their life cycle. Other CAG operations that rely on natural sources of feed (e.g. mussels and other bivalves) are thus considered potentially within scope against this criterion.

Criterion Bi allows for the certification of fish that are fed in captivity only for the purpose of maintaining condition once caught, as commonly practiced in holding facilities for crustaceans prior to sale.

The application of criterion Bii specifically to CAG operations recognises that disease prevention and other measures to maximise survival may be routinely used in some HAC fisheries. Such practices are allowed within these systems to reflect the limitations on potential environmental impacts imposed by the short duration of the captive-growth phase. Such impacts shall however be included in the P2 assessment in this type of fishery.

Scope criteria C: Habitat and ecosystem impacts

Habitat modifications in enhanced fisheries can include both physical changes to the sea bed or river course and the use of a range of man-made structures associated with the rearing or capture of fish that are not strictly 'fishing gear'. In the first case, modifications can range from the construction of simple ponds in intertidal areas or river floodplains through to watercourse management measures aimed at improving spawning habitats. Examples of the second case are fish attracting devices, lobster casitas and mussel culture ropes (in CAG systems). Such artificial habitat modifications either enhance the productivity of the fishery or facilitate the capture or production of commercial marine species.

G7.4.7 – G7.4.9 Defining the Unit of Certification and Unit of Assessment ▲

MSC certification is specific to the fishery holding the certificate, defined as the Unit of Certification (UoC). CABs may choose to assess a wider unit, as the Unit of Assessment (UoA), to which the certificate may be extended under some circumstances. Both the UoC and UoA need to be defined.

MSC allows parts of fishing fleets to be certified, even if the rest of the fleet is not certified. By defining the UoC this way the MSC seeks to reward good practice and encourage any set of fishers to improve and demonstrate their sustainability irrespective of the activity of other fishers, which may not be using best practice.

Principle 1 (see introduction to the Certification Requirements) applies to the whole of the fish stock(s) exploited by the fishery seeking certification, and this may include fleets fishing on that stock which are outside the Unit of Assessment.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Under **Principle 2**, the fishery is normally only held to account for its own interactions with the non-target catch, habitat and ecosystem. While other fisheries and human uses may impact the marine ecosystem and may ultimately cause impacts that prevent MSC certification of all related fisheries, interpretation of the MSC standard is focussed on the fishery seeking certification. In some circumstances the actions of other certified fisheries need to be considered, to avoid the problem of MSC fisheries generating cumulative impacts on P2. This incentivises adoption of best practice by certified fisheries without requiring that they influence the entire fishery.

Principle 3 applies to the fishery (a combination of stock(s)/gear/practice) seeking certification, except where elements of Principle 3 are required to achieve Principles 1 and 2.

Defining the UoC

The **Unit of Certification (UoC)** (i.e., the unit entitled to receive an MSC certificate) is defined as follows:

“The target stock or stocks (= biologically distinct unit/s) combined with the fishing method/gear and practice (including vessel type/s) pursuing that stock and any fleets, groups of vessels, or individual vessels of other fishing operators.”

At its simplest, a single vessel could be the unit of certification, although it is more likely that a number of vessels within the same fishery would form the UoC.

The **unit of assessment (UoA)** defines the full scope of what is being assessed and is therefore equal to or larger than the UoC. If it is larger this means it will include “other eligible fishers”. Such fishers exist in cases where a client enters into assessment with the aim of initially certifying only part of a fishery, but also wishes to have the possibility of expanding the UoC at a later date by the mechanism of certificate sharing.

If the number of fishers within the UoA is greater than the number within the UoC then there are other eligible fishers. Any difference between the UoC and UoA must be clearly communicated by the CAB to the MSC and other stakeholders.

There may be other fisheries (i.e., combinations of stock(s)/gear/practice) in operation that may catch the stock or impact the same ecosystem as the fishery seeking certification. Sufficient information should thus be provided to fully define the scope of the fishery that is to be assessed. In some fisheries, for example, further information may be given on the specific fishing seasons and/or areas that are included. Details could also be provided on which fishing ‘fleets’ are covered, or license categories, as used in the management of the fishery. ‘Groups’ of vessels could also be identified that are not full fleets, but still have some special characteristics, such as membership of an association of some sort, or a binding commitment to a special code of conduct. In cases where an assessment is intended to cover all fishing activities on a stock within the national waters of a state, there may be no need individually specify all of the different fleets or varieties of vessels that are covered (although the diversity of such vessels and gears should then be taken into account in scoring). In some cases, individual vessels, or groups of vessels owned by a particular client may also be named, if the scope of the assessment is limited to only these vessels.

In the context of defining a UoC/UoA, stocks could be different species, or different ‘more or less isolated and self-sustaining’ groups within a species. UoAs/UoCs are usually defined for single species (or stocks) and gear types. Clients may in some cases prefer to have more than one species, stock or gear type included in a broader UoA/UoC, that is assessed using the ‘scoring elements’ approach of FCR section 7.10.7. The advantages of joint scoring in these cases (e.g., cost savings, simpler tracking in the chain of custody, etc.) may outweigh

Deleted: Unit

Fisheries Certification Requirements

the possible risk that the failure of one element could result in the failure of the whole UoA. Special arrangements for scoring multi-stock fisheries have also been developed for the high geographic diversity inherent in salmon fisheries.

Identifying the UoAs/UoCs for multiple gears

CABs should normally identify separate UoAs (and associated UoCs) for each discrete gear type or fishing method that is to be assessed.

Where there are discrete variations in the type of gear used (such as two different mesh sizes used in a standard type of trawl gear), CABs may include these within a single UoA. In this case, the impacts of each gear variant should be fully assessed and reported using a 'scoring elements' approach consistent with that applied to the P2 species components. Where two or more clearly different gears are used, with differences in both impact areas and management arrangements, such gears should normally be assessed as separate UoAs.

Where a fishing gear is only very occasionally used in a fishery as an alternative to the main gear, it may be included as a part of the main UoA so long as it is clearly described and considered in the scoring (and any conditions included as normal for <80 scores, etc.). Such a flexible approach is allowed to minimise the complexity of assessment reports as far as possible while still ensuring that all fishing practices are fully assessed. As an example, such scoring could be appropriate in a mussel fishery where spat are mainly collected by dredge, but fishers also occasionally engage in some hand raking at low tide to maintain supplies, e.g. during the most extreme spring tides.

Clients and CABs should note that when two gear types are scored together the lower score will determine the result for both gear types. Decisions on the UoA should thus reflect the benefits of joint scoring against the risk of an individual analysis on one gear resulting in a fail for all the others in the UoA.

In cases where the UoA includes some variations of a gear type, CABs should monitor the use of such gears in the fishery, if certified, to ensure that the effort applied to each is not changing to the extent that fishery impacts may be affected.

Trading of catch quota between vessels

In cases where catch quota for certified fish stocks are traded between vessels, fleets or nations, such catches should be regarded as being included within the UoA/UoC only in cases where the recipient of the quota is already explicitly included within the UoA/UoC and/or recognised as a member of the client group or is itself certified and catches that fish in conformance with its own UoA/UoC.

Such trading of catch quota does not automatically carry with it the right to enter catches into MSC-certified chains of custody, although this may be possible in the above circumstances.

Assessment teams should assess the impacts of the fishing by any quota recipients consistent with the normal requirement that the P1 assessment covers all impacts on the stock. Any changes in such access arrangements in an existing certified fishery should be considered during surveillance audits.

Assessment of Metapopulations within the UoC

MSC requires that fishing activity on Principle 1 species is assessed at a level that is sustainable for the stock. However, the application of the “stock” concept may vary depending on the knowledge available and complexity in management⁸.

Generally speaking, from the fisheries management point of view, a unit stock can be defined as a group of fish that can be treated as a stock and managed as an independent unit, as long as the results of the assessment and the impact of management measures do not differ significantly from what they would be in the case of a truly independent stock.⁹

In some cases, stocks may be structured as “metapopulations” – “systems in which local populations (= sub-populations) inhabit discrete habitat patches and inter-patch dispersal is neither so low as to negate significant demographic connectivity, nor so high as to eliminate any independence of local population (LP) dynamics.”¹⁰

In these cases, the assessment team should consider the connectivity between components of the metapopulation that defines the underlying source-sink dynamics and thereby clearly define the actual unit stock that is to be assessed against Principle 1.

Connectivity patterns range from a well-mixed larval pool (maximal connectivity) at one extreme to a collection of closed self-sustaining populations (minimal connectivity) at the other. However, most situations are intermediate to these two extremes. Connectivity is rarely symmetrical, and larval flows between two subpopulations will nearly always be stronger in one direction with maximum asymmetry found in non-reproductive pseudo-populations (absolute sinks). Source-sink models describe a situation where larvae or adults from source locations sustain in less productive sink areas. In a sink location, reproduction is insufficient to balance local mortality, and the LP therefore persists only because it receives immigration from more productive sources. Source locations are considered net exporters of individuals whereas sinks are net importers of individuals.

The degree of self-recruitment and connectivity among sub-populations dictates the specific management required to achieve a sustainable harvest. Where management recognises a metapopulation, it may need to ensure that fishing effort and catches consider the abundance or biomass at each local population.

In cases where fisheries are targeting a mixture of LPs that cannot be clearly separated, a practical management approach may be to consider the whole metapopulation as the unit stock. In this case, more precautionary reference points or other adjustments to the harvest strategy may be needed to allow for uncertainties in the stock structure. However, where appropriate and justified, one or more LPs can also be designated as the unit stock(s) on which the outcome and harvest strategy components are to be assessed.

Assessment teams should therefore be alert to the special issues of metapopulation in assessing a fishery. At the time of reporting on the fishery assessment, teams should include detailed information in section 3.1 (UoC and scope of certification) of the assessment reports, clarifying whether the unit stock is based on one or more LPs or on a metapopulation as a whole. Details should be provided on the appropriateness of the level of assessment and management chosen, explaining:

⁸ Maguire, J.-J.; Sissenwine, M.; Csirke, J.; Grainger, R.; Garcia, S. The state of world highly migratory, straddling and other high seas fishery resources and associated species. *FAO Fisheries Technical Paper*. No. 495. Rome: FAO. 2006. 84p.

⁹ Gulland, J.A. 1983. *Fish stock assessment. A manual of basic methods*. Chichester, John Wiley and Sons, FAO/Wiley series on food and agriculture. Vol. 1: 223 pp

¹⁰ Sale PF, Hanski I, Kritzer JP (2006) The merging of metapopulation theory and marine ecology: establishing the historical context. In: Kritzer JP, Sale PF (Eds) *Marine Metapopulations*. Chapter 1. Elsevier, Amsterdam: 3-28

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- In the case that management is based on the whole metapopulation, how it is expected to avoid local depletion.
- If based on one or more local populations, whether these are believed to be sources or sinks, the relationship among subpopulations and how management avoids over exploitation within both the selected local populations and more broadly in the whole metapopulation.

Table G2 describes the level of assessment expected and considerations for scoring the stock outcome and harvest strategy components of a unit stock for a normal 'single population' stock (case A), and for three different forms of metapopulations (cases B, C and D). Teams should note that 'harmonisation' between Principle 1 assessments would normally be expected only in cases where two fisheries are fully overlapping in their definition of the unit stock. Fisheries on two separate LPs within a wider metapopulation, for example, need not have harmonised outcomes.

Table G2: Level of assessment expected and considerations when scoring the stock outcome and harvest strategy components of a unit stock for different forms of metapopulations

Stock structure	Description (degree of connectivity and self-recruitment)	Implications for management of the Stock (assessment of Outcome and Harvest Strategy)
A. Single population	Completely isolated. Self-contained with no emigration or immigration of individuals from or to the stock. Occupies a well-defined spatial range and is independent of other stocks of the same species.	Whole population. Fishing on the population has no effect on the dynamics of neighbouring populations. Normal expectations may apply for reference points. The fishery must manage the stock above the point of recruitment impairment (PRI) to ensure recruitment is sustained.
B. Local population with partial isolation	Partially isolated and minimal connectivity. Self-sustaining. The degree of connectivity with other LPs in the metapopulation is so weak that, for management purposes, it can be considered a self-sustaining population. This may be true even if occasional larval exchanges between LPs are enough to maintain a certain degree of genetic flow and homogeneity.	Local population. Fishing on the local population appears to have no effect on the dynamics of neighbouring populations. Normal expectations may apply for reference points. The fishery must manage its own local unit stock above a point of recruitment impairment (PRI) to ensure recruitment is sustained. Requires information on the biology of the species, larval dispersal, source-sink dynamics, and oceanographic conditions supporting management at a local level. Information and uncertainties related to stock structure need to be scored in PIs 1.2.2, 1.2.3 and 1.2.4
C. Local population (s) with moderate connectivity within the meta-population	Moderate connectivity. The degree of connectivity between LPs is enough to maintain genetic flow and some degree of homogeneity. Source-sink dynamics with variable degree of self-recruitment. Sources of recruits act as core areas in the species range where the	Local populations(s). Fishing on local populations affects the dynamics of neighbouring populations. Fishing and the management decision affecting upstream populations will have impacts on the components downstream. Local populations are not entirely in control of their productivity. The fishery must manage its own local unit stock above a PRI to ensure recruitment is sustained, but reference points also need to take into account

Fisheries Certification Requirements

	<p>species occurs in all years and where the typical age composition exhibits regular recruitment patterns with multiple age classes present.</p> <p>There may be sinks where occasional individuals or low densities usually occur and where populations typically consist of only one or a few age groups, often of old individuals.</p>	<p>connections with and dependences on neighbouring local populations.</p> <p>Per recruit reference points (e.g. percentage spawners per recruit) may confirm the good management of the fishery to contribute to the wider surrounding populations.</p> <p>Separate monitoring of absolute reference points (either of incoming recruitment or of local population levels) may also be needed to confirm that the inputs of external recruitment are being sustained.</p> <p>Requires information on the biology of the species, larval dispersal, source-sink dynamics, and oceanographic conditions supporting management at local level.</p> <p>Information and uncertainties related to stock structure need to be scored in PIs 1.2.2, 1.2.3 and 1.2.4.</p>
D Local populations with maximum connectivity within the metapopulation	<p>Maximum connectivity.</p> <p>Metapopulation is panmictic (mating is random within the entire metapopulation).</p> <p>Subpopulations are arbitrary.</p> <p>Well-mixed larval pool.</p>	<p>Whole metapopulation.</p> <p>Fishing on local populations affects the dynamics of neighbouring populations.</p> <p>The fishery must manage the whole metapopulation (unit stock) above a PRI to ensure that recruitment is sustained. Special attention may be needed in setting reference points to ensure that the LP structure is not impacted by fishing.</p> <p>Scored against the whole metapopulation.</p> <p>Information and uncertainties related to stock structure need to be scored in PIs 1.2.2, 1.2.3 and 1.2.4.</p>

G7.4.9 Definition of UoA at time of fishing ▲

The UoA must be defined based on the gears and practices that are used. It is not possible to define a UoA based on the species caught as observed at the time of landing. All of the potential impacts of the UoA from all hauls or landings that are defined as having been taken by the gear type and in the area defined in the UoA must be included in the assessment. In some circumstances it may not be possible to determine the gear type or area fished until the gear has been hauled, and this requirement allows for this post-haul definition. However, what should be avoided is defining the UoA based on, for instance, a subset of hauls that are defined as “targeting” a P1 species and for which a calculation of the proportion of the catch that includes that P1 species is required.

G7.4.10 Changes to UoC/UoA ▲

CABs are required to define the target species that will be covered by the UoA when announcing that a fishery is entering into certification. In other words, the client nominates the fish species on which they seek to put the MSC ecolabel, as well as the fishery for which they seek certification.

MSC acknowledges that most fisheries catch more than one species of commercial value with the same gear type, in the same location and at the same time, unavoidably or where separation is not commercially feasible without significant additional effort.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

In such cases, a client may want to propose multiple species for consideration under Principle 1, but the CAB may not have sufficient information to confirm whether that species is best assessed under Principle 1 or Principle 2 until after the site visit. Therefore, new requirements allow a CAB to announce a wide range of confirmation of the species to be assessed under P1 to occur after the site visit and be formally confirmed within the PCDR (see 7.10.2).

Any species that was proposed in the UoA but is not assessed there in the PCDR must be assessed under Principle 2. Species confirmed as assessed under P1 may each be the subject of a separate UoA or may each be scoring elements within one single UoA.

G7.4.11 Review of traceability factors ▲

This section considers the systems of tracking and tracing within the fishery, and acts as an initial review for the CAB to determine if there are substantial substitution risks that will need to be managed (for example, in cases where the UoC covers only specific gears or vessels). The intent is to help ensure that the client has adequate time to understand the traceability requirements needed for MSC and put systems in place before the fishery is certified. Risk factors to be considered at this stage include the possibility of vessels using non-certified gears, fishing outside the geographical region included in the UoC, or the chance of other non-certified fisheries fishing the same stock. Any other risks of substitution that may occur between point of harvest and point of sale, such as transshipment, sale via auctions, etc. should also be documented in this section.

G7.4.11.2 Notification of obligation to meet traceability requirements ▲

Fisheries may have systems in place to manage traceability, but may not be fully aware of MSC traceability requirements until later in the assessment process, particularly if the UoC does not cover the entire fishery. The intention of this requirement is to enable clear communication with client group so that they are aware of the traceability requirements early in the assessment process. Key traceability risks can be documented and the client will have more time to implement traceability solutions during the remainder of the assessment process.

G7.4.12 Other eligible fishers and entities and certificate sharing ▲

The MSC's policy goal is to develop its requirements to maximise the amount of MSC labelled product widely available in the marketplace from fisheries that have been certified as being sustainable and well managed. This goal is an essential element of meeting MSC's mission to provide for consumer demand for sustainably sourced fish products, reward sustainable fisheries for their investments and increase incentive for unsustainable fisheries to improve their performance.

The MSC has the following intent regarding its certificate programme and certificate sharing:

- To minimise the number of overlapping assessments requiring harmonisation.
- To encourage the largest proportion of fishers to enter at the start of the full assessment process, but when only a select group of fishers within a fishery wants to undertake MSC assessment, to allow them to proceed so as not to delay certification.
- To ensure that the process is clear and transparent to interested parties.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

This arrangement defines which other eligible fishers may gain access to the fishery certificate, if and when the fishery is certified.

Certificate sharing mechanisms developed in existing MSC fisheries include a number of arrangements, such as the provision of unrestricted access to the certificate, providing that certification and surveillance costs:

- Are shared fairly and equitably with all participants;
- Are met through the payment of a landing levy or some other approach agreed within the client group; and/or
- That all product is initially sold to the certificate holder.

The MSC recognises the role of individual fishery clients in devising mechanisms that are appropriate to their particular circumstances. There are no formal, mandatory arrangements for the development of certificate sharing mechanisms.

Guidance is provided below, not as firm 'direction', but rather as suggestions to clients and their potential partners for their use and/or inclusion in any certificate sharing mechanisms. CABs may wish to provide the advice in [Box G1](#) to fisheries:

Box G1: MSC's advice on allocating costs of certificate sharing

The MSC provides this non-binding advice to certificate holders on the sharing of certificate costs. CABs may wish to provide this information to those involved in certificate sharing.

When a client allows access to a certificate and seeks proportional reimbursement of the initial costs paid either as a one-off payment or as an ongoing cost-sharing mechanism, this guidance is offered as to how these costs could be calculated. Costs may include the following:

- Direct costs paid to a CAB
- Direct costs incurred by the client in managing or facilitating the assessment
- Cost of the client's time spent managing/facilitating the assessment process
- Risk premium, a maximum of 20% of the other assessment costs

If costs additional to those identified above are included in the proposed certificate-sharing mechanism, they must be documented and justified in any and all communication regarding the proposed sharing mechanism.

Allowable costs would not be expected to include any grant or subsidy made to the client to cover the costs incurred during the assessment, except where a proportion of such grants or subsidies are subsequently repaid.

The direct costs and the time costs incurred by the client in managing or facilitating the assessment may either be costed directly from the client's accounts or estimated as a simple overhead rate.

Where the direct and time costs are to be estimated from the client's accounts, full details will be made available to other fishers seeking to gain entry to the certificate via the CAB. If audited accounts detailing these costs are required, the other eligible fishers will pay the costs incurred in conducting such audits. The cost of the client's time will be based on the earnings records for the individuals involved and time inputs recorded and substantiated by the client.

Where the client's direct and time costs are to be estimated according to an overhead rate, this rate should not exceed 30% of the fees paid to the CAB. In this case, the following

Fisheries Certification Requirements

formula is suggested for calculating the overall cost to be shared:

$$(\text{Costs} \times \text{Overhead}) \times \text{Risk Premium}$$

Where the rates for the overhead and risk premium are set at the proposed upper limits of 30% and 20%, respectively, the overall cost would be calculated from the following formula:

$$((\text{Direct cost paid to CAB less any cost paid for a consultant}) \times 1.3) \times 1.2$$

Costs (both for entry and maintenance to the certificate, including the fulfilment of conditions) would be apportioned to the new entrant(s) seeking certification in accordance to the mechanism. Examples could include, but are not limited to, a pro rata sharing of costs based on:

- The number of vessels (or operators) or processing or marketing entities seeking entry as a proportion of those documented as originally included in the UoC;
- The quota held by the new vessel(s) (or operators) or processing or marketing entities seeking entry, as a proportion of those documented as originally included in the UoC; or
- The increase in fishing power of new vessel(s) (or operators) or processing or marketing capacity seeking entry pro rata to those documented as originally included in the UoC.

In the event that additional fishers or processing or marketing entities seek to join the certificate after an initial and successful certificate-sharing negotiation, a rebate may be due to those that joined the certificate previously. Alternatively, potential costs may be apportioned between all of the fishers that are potentially eligible to share the certificate, and payments made by sub-sets of fishers only in proportion to their share of the overall costs (thus avoiding the need for rebates if other fishers join later). Such cost-sharing mechanisms will be detailed to stakeholders when an assessment is undertaken.

G7.4.13 Inseparable or practicably inseparable stocks ▲

The intent of these requirements is to create incentives to promote the improved management of non-target stocks and to potentially allow a defined and limited proportion of catches of IPI stock(s) to enter into further certified Chains of Custody and to use the MSC ecolabel. IPI stocks may be sold as certified.

Requirements about inseparable or practicably inseparable (IPI) stocks are designed to improve consistency in the application of the MSC ecolabel when:

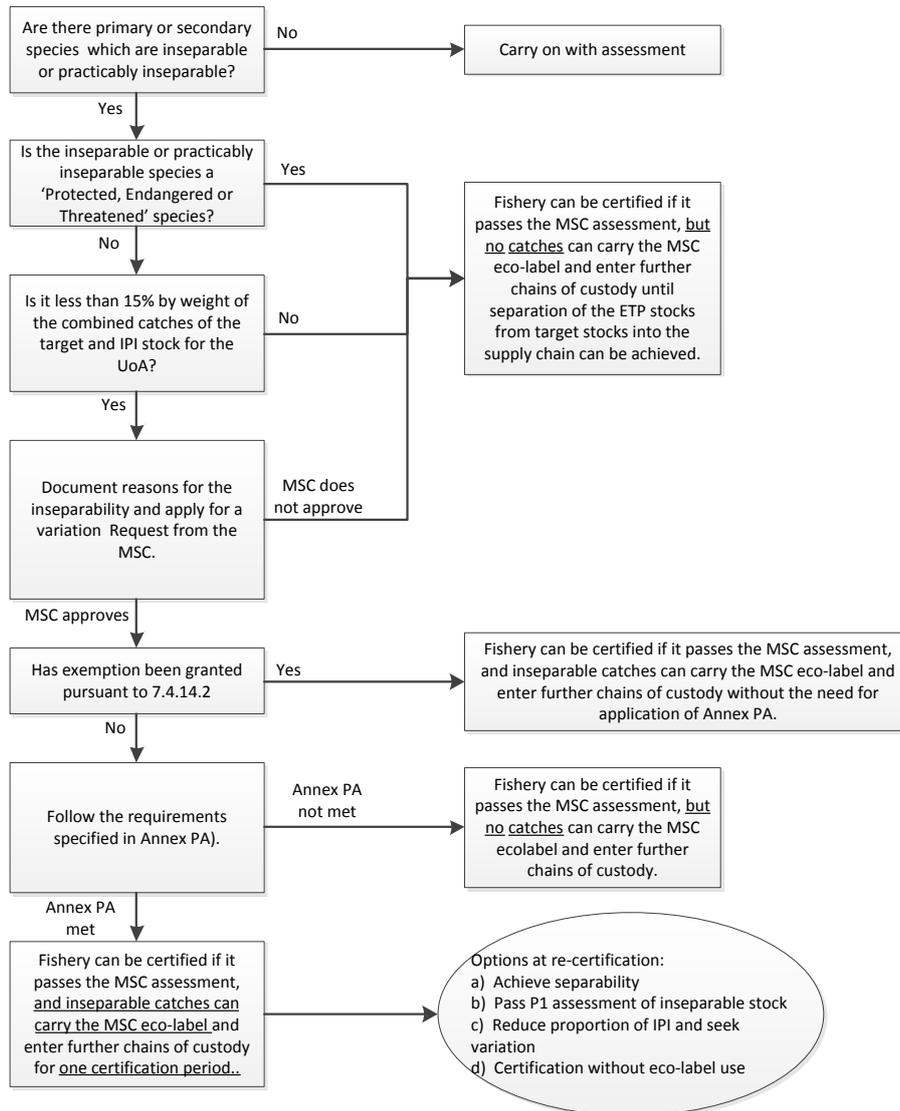
- Catches of stocks that are assessed under Principle 2 are IPI from catches of stocks assessed under Principle 1;
- There is no separate certification of the IPI stocks.
- If the proportion of IPI catches to total target + IPI catches is less than or equal to 2%, the CAB must make an assessment that the UoA does not create a significant impact on the IPI stock, but is not required to apply Annex PA and is not required to make a further determination of status under P2. Even though this is the case, effectively the IPI stock is held to the same requirement as P2, in that the fishery should not be creating a significant impact on the IPI stock.
- If the proportion is greater than 2% and less than 15%, Annex PA must be applied in its entirety, which includes an assessment against P2 Primary or Secondary species performance indicators, and considering the impact of all fishing activity.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Note that the MSC restrict the granting of the variation to limit the application of the requirements for IPI stocks to a fishery certification to one certification period. At reassessment either IPI stocks should be separated from target stocks, or the proportion of IPI should be reduced to 2%; the only alternative is to assess IPI stocks against P1.

Figure G3 is designed to assist with interpretation of the requirements and decision flow associated with IPI stocks.

Figure G3: IPI stock decision flow



Fisheries Certification Requirements

Requirements for IPI stocks are considered as additive to the direction on the UoC and are only applicable when the inseparability of primary and secondary catches from the target catch occurs as in section 7.4.13 of the FCR.

G7.6 Determination of eligibility date ▲

Background

The MSC developed its requirements on eligibility dates to clarify the date of eligibility for the use of ecolabel on fishery products caught before the eventual fishery certificate date and to promote consistency of approach across fisheries in this regard.

- The intent of a flexible eligibility date is to:
- Outline the situations under which fishery products caught before the date of certification of a fishery may be considered to have come from a sustainable fishery and be eligible for use of the ecolabel;
- Allow fisheries to use the MSC ecolabel and make claims for fish products that are sold after the fishery certificate is awarded, but that are caught before this date; and
- Ensure that MSC's Chain of Custody is maintained and ensure that only products from certified fisheries use the MSC ecolabel.

G7.6.1 Target eligibility date ▲

The Eligibility date is the date from which the CAB determines that product from the certified fishery will be eligible to enter the supply chain. The Eligibility date is confirmed in the PCDR.

The Eligibility date may be set as either the PCDR publication date, or the certification date.

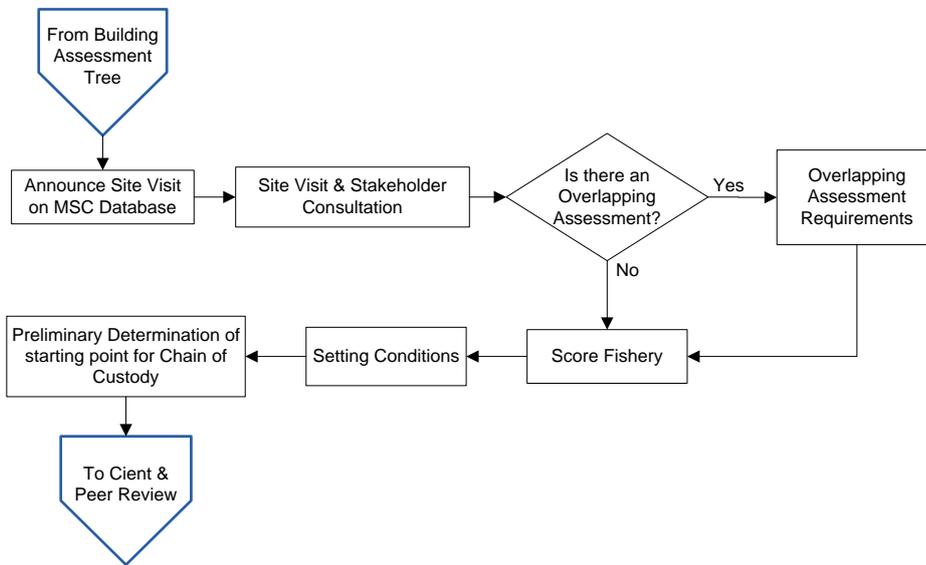
In cases where the UoC could potentially change (e.g. due to some regions or fishing gears being omitted at a late stage), or where there could be further delays to the assessment process, the CAB may want to set the eligibility date as the certification date, rather than the PCDR date.

In cases where the eligibility date is set before the certification date, the CAB will need to consider any potential traceability impacts – and for example, the risk of product from outside the UoC being incorrectly identified as 'under-assessment' product. Therefore it is very important that traceability and identification systems have been verified before the eligibility date comes into effect.

Fisheries handling under-assessment product should be aware of relevant requirements in the Chain of Custody standard, which relate to identification and traceability of under-assessment product.

G7.7 Preparing for announcement ▲

Figure G4: Gathering Information - Informative



G7.7.1.4 Structure of the default assessment tree ▲

The default assessment tree is comprised of the following parts:

- Principles
- Components
- Performance indicators (PIs) – the lowest level of the tree; where scoring is conducted
- Scoring guideposts (SGs) – describe the main thresholds in the scoring system

If the default tree is not appropriate, the team must develop an ‘assessment tree’ based on the default tree in Annex SA, including a set of components, PIs and SGs specific to the fishery being evaluated. See [G7.8.5](#) for more information.

G7.7.2 Fishery that has failed or withdrawn from assessment ▲

See section [7.21](#) for more information.

G7.7.4 Fishery with enhanced stocks ▲

Background

The intent is that management systems exist to control exploitation rates on wild stocks in order to allow for self-sustaining, locally adapted wild stocks (i.e., adequate wild stock levels that can perpetuate themselves at harvestable levels on a continuing basis – consistent with P1). The management of enhancement activities related to the fishery should not prevent the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

ability of wild stocks to sustain themselves at their optimum levels, according to their natural habitat related and biologically based productive capacities.

G7.7.4.1.b Extent of translocations ▲

For the purpose of these requirements, translocation does not include the transfer of species to a production area from outside the distribution of their natural range. The latter should be considered as an introduction of a species, to be considered under Annex SD.

The extent of translocation must be considered to ensure that the fishery enhancement programmes predominantly utilise stocks or populations that are native to the natural production area from which the fishery's catch originates.

The means of confirming that fish are 'native' to a fishery production area (i.e., from within the 'natural range') may not be simple except in cases where no movement occurs.

PIs may need to be developed to determine the extent of movement within a range that can be considered to have acceptably low risks. Related performance assessment will require the identification of the 'natural production area' or genetic range of a stock.

Translocation of fish in enhanced fisheries should ensure that fisheries maintain the diversity, structure and function of the ecosystem on which they depend while minimising any adverse effects that are caused. Inadequately managed translocations of fish between different areas may have both genetic and other impacts that need to be assessed (e.g. the spread of diseases between areas, accidental species introductions, etc.).

G7.7.4.1.c Feed augmentation ▲

The issues of feed augmentation and the use of medicines or other chemical compounds are not currently covered by the MSC standard or the default tree.

Where feeding or disease prevention are used in HAC systems, or where other interventions are used in CAG systems (e.g. fertilisation to enhance natural food availability, removal of predators or competitors, either to maximise capture or minimise post-capture mortality), assessments must confirm that these activities do not have serious negative impacts on other species or the wild environment. Such assessment would be included in the P2 scoring for the fishery.

G7.7.4.1.d Habitat modification ▲

Consideration is required as to the cumulative impacts of multiple production operations, areas, facilities, systems etc. within a geographical region.

For example, one small mussel rope facility may have minimal impact on the natural ecosystem's structure and function while filling a whole bay with such structures may have much greater impacts.

Consideration is needed for those situations where an individual operation is the subject of an assessment under the MSC programme but is only one of several similar operations in a finite space. The assessment should consider whether the cumulative impacts of a particular production system are likely to cause serious or irreversible harm to the natural ecosystem's structure and function.

G7.7.6 Use of the risk based methods for a data-deficient fishery ▲

The RBF should not be used to score a PI unless the answer to any of the questions in [Table 3](#) is no. Where it is not yet clear whether a scoring element under in either P1 or P2 meets the criteria in [Table 3](#), the use of the RBF should be announced to stakeholders and the site visit planned assuming that an RBF assessment will be needed. See also guidance for GPF 2.1.

G7.7.6.3 Data-deficient scoring elements ▲

A list of scoring elements within the fishery should be available when making the decision on whether a Performance Indicator is data-deficient or not. A full list of scoring elements may not be known and/or may change following the site visit. This should be considered when making the decision as to whether the PI is data-deficient or not.

For Principle 1, there will normally only be one scoring element, the target species under assessment. For Principle 2, scoring elements are the different species or different habitat types being impacted by the fishery.

See Annex PF for more guidance on the use of the RBF.

G7.7.6.4 ▲

In [Table 3](#) analytical stock assessments are based on mathematical models which use defined theoretical biological underpinnings to develop reference points.

Empirical approaches use indicator data and make logical inferences about more technical reference points without drawing on mathematical model based techniques.

Stock uncertainties are scored instead in the information or stock assessment PIs (1.2.3 or 1.2.4).

G7.7.7 Weighting ▲

[Table G3](#) below shows the default weighting when using the default tree.

Note: this information can be found in the MSC Fishery Assessment Default Scoring Worksheet on the MSC [website](#).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table G3: Default weighting to be applied in using the default assessment tree

Principle Weight	Component Weight	PI		Weight within component and principle			
One	1	Outcome 0.333	1.1.1	Stock Status	EITHER 1 0.333 OR 0.5 0.167		
			1.1.2	Stock Rebuilding	EITHER 0 0 OR 0.5 0.167		
	Management 0.667	1.2.1	Harvest Strategy	0.25	0.167		
		1.2.2	Harvest Control Rules & Tools	0.25	0.167		
		1.2.3	Information & Monitoring	0.25	0.167		
		1.2.4	Assessment of Stock Status	0.25	0.167		
	Two	2	Primary species 0.2	2.1.1	Outcome	0.333	0.067
				2.1.2	Management	0.333	0.067
2.1.3				Information	0.333	0.067	
Secondary species 0.2		2.2.1	Outcome	0.333	0.067		
		2.2.2	Management	0.333	0.067		
		2.2.3	Information	0.333	0.067		
ETP species 0.2		2.3.1	Outcome	0.333	0.067		
		2.3.2	Management	0.333	0.067		
		2.3.3	Information	0.333	0.067		
Habitats species 0.2		2.4.1	Outcome	0.333	0.067		
		2.4.2	Management	0.333	0.067		
		2.4.3	Information	0.333	0.067		
Ecosystem 0.2		2.5.1	Outcome	0.333	0.067		
		2.5.2	Management	0.333	0.067		
		2.5.3	Information	0.333	0.067		
Three		3	Governance and Policy 0.5	3.1.1	Legal/Customary Framework	0.333	0.167
				3.1.2	Consultation, Roles & Responsibilities	0.333	0.167
				3.1.3	Long Term Objectives	0.333	0.167
	Fishery-specific management system 0.5	3.2.1	Fishery Specific Objectives	0.25	0.125		
		3.2.2	Decision Making processes	0.25	0.125		
		3.2.3	Compliance & Enforcement	0.25	0.125		
		3.2.4	Management Performance Evaluation	0.25	0.125		

G7.8 Announcement of fishery assessment ▲

Background

Growth in the MSC programme, with a wide range of fisheries in assessment and an increasing number of CABs undertaking fishery assessments has led to differences in the format and type of information provided as part of the notification and announcement processes. In order to ensure all information required at the outset of an assessment is provided and to promote consistency across the programme, the MSC has developed a template and guidance for the provision of information at the outset of a fishery assessment.

The intent of these requirements is to:

- Ensure completeness of information provided at the start of an assessment;
- Ensure consistency in the interpretation of information, and
- Facilitate smooth fishery assessments by identifying potential assessment issues at the start of an assessment.

G7.8.3 Fishery announcement template ▲

CABs need to notify the MSC in writing of each application for fishery certification.

All of the information specified under 7.8.3 of the FCR needs to be reported when using the fishery announcement template and submitted at the same time when announcing the fishery.

All of the information provided as part of the Fishery Announcement needs to be submitted together, at the same time. The steps listed prior to this step should have taken place before the announcement, such as data collection, planning the site visit and interactions with the client.

G7.8.3.5 Assessment tree to be used ▲

The assessment tree to be used can be the default assessment tree, default assessment tree with RBF, etc.

It is possible for a fishery to change the assessment tree used for its assessment to a more recent tree. To do this, CABs should apply for a variation to the implementation requirements. This will be granted where CABs can assure the MSC the new Standard and requirements will be fully met. This process will of course be easier the earlier in the assessment the transition is made.

Examples:

Moving from CR v1.3 to FCR v2.0 including the new MSC Fisheries Standard before site visit would only require re-announcing the tree to stakeholders.

Moving from CR v1.3 to FCR v2.0 including the new MSC Fisheries Standard after scoring has taken place would require re-announcing the tree and then the assessment team meeting to review the differences between the Standard and re-scoring, seeking stakeholder input where appropriate.

G7.8.4.1 Timelines for announcement ▲

The intent of the 30 days period is to give stakeholders time to mobilise and organise their attendance at the site visit, or to submit information.

Stakeholders should be contacted prior to the full assessment being announced to co-ordinate a date that ensures the highest level of attendance. There may be some instances where stakeholders cannot be engaged ahead of announcing the full assessment, and in such instances, CABs may elect to postpone the announcement of the date until stakeholders have been engaged in the process.

G7.8.5 Modifications to the default tree ▲

The default trees published by MSC are contained in [Annexes SA, SB, SC](#) and [SD](#) therefore it should be only in rare instances that a CAB needs to develop a new tree; such an instance could arise with an entirely different type of fishery that has not been assessed before and for which the default trees are not suitable, or where an assessment tree needs to be harmonised with a similar fishery that uses a novel tree.

If changes to the default trees are required, the CAB proposes those changes (“draft tree”) and requests MSC approval for them. The CAB then puts the proposed changes out for public consultation, altering the draft tree as a consequence of comments as and if required. The result is the “final tree” used in the assessment.

In making changes to the default tree, teams should consider writing PIs in a way that can result in an appropriate time-bounded condition being easily prepared. Quantitative PIs could be used, where appropriate.

For example:

- Potential biological removals (PBR) of marine mammals – where fishing activity does not impede the recovery rate of populations.
- Maximum sustainable yield (MSY) – the fishery is at or above MSY or B_{MSY} or some other variation of an appropriate fisheries management reference point.

G7.8.8 ▲

The MSC will maintain confidentiality of pre-assessment reports. The client may require that the MSC sign a confidentiality agreement.

G7.9 Site visit: Assessment visits, stakeholder consultation and information collection ▲

This is the stage at which formal assessment occurs. Guiding principles are based on that the premise that there should be:

- Objective, science-based fishery assessments;
- Transparency and consistency of assessment processes;
- External review and scrutiny.

G7.9.1 Additional site visits ▲

The team may require further site visits by one or more team members where information is not available or assembled by the client or stakeholders in time for the first assessment visit in order to adequately assess and analyse the evidence.

G7.10 Scoring the fishery ▲

Background

This is the stage at which evaluation of the information gathered in the formal assessment occurs and scores are assigned and justified.

Note: Guidance for scoring the fishery using the RBF is covered under Guidance for Annex PF.

G7.10.1 Scoring decision ▲

MSC's intent with section 7.10.1 is that the scoring of a UoA is agreed by the full team appointed by the CAB. Although individual team members may lead on the scoring of a principle (P1, P2 or P3), their conclusions should be agreed in discussion with the team as a whole. Discussions on scoring may begin at the site visit but may often not be completed until after the team has dispersed, when virtual interactions may be needed (e.g. by teleconference and exchange of emails).

G7.10.3 Scoring intervals ▲

Scores are assigned at intervals of five points to avoid the implication of spurious accuracy within this system.

G7.10.3.1 Smaller scoring intervals ▲

Scores may need to be assigned in intervals smaller than five when considering complexity generated by multiple scoring issues and scoring elements (see below).

G7.10.5.2 Terms used ▲

In considering the scoring of individual PIs based on the performance of different scoring elements, the terms below should be used:

- **Few:** Most of the scoring issues should be taken to indicate 'minority:majority' or 'less than half:greater than half' (e.g. if there were 3 or 4 scoring issues, the ratios '1:2' and '1:3' would be represented by the terms 'few:most').
- **Some:** 'Some' should be taken to indicate a roughly equal split of scoring issues.

G7.10.6.1 Scoring rationale ▲

Rationale for all scores is required to be explicitly documented in the report's text.

For an example, see below:

Example: Rationale for a score of 75 in Principle 2 (Primary species, Management PI 2.1.2)

The rationale for a score of 75 for PI 2.1.2 might read as follows:

There are five primary species.

- For three of them, catch by weight of that species is less than 5% of the UoA's total catch so they would not be considered 'main'. For these species, there is a management strategy in place, which is primarily designed for the fisheries which target these three species and which recognises limit reference points that are based on sensible assumptions about the stock. Although there is evidence that this strategy works in similar fisheries, it has not been fully tested in this UoA, nor is there evidence yet that the UoA is achieving its objective to maintain these species at or around B_{MSY} . None of the species is a shark so the shark finning scoring issue is not scored. All three species are landed and sold so the unwanted scoring issue is not triggered. As none of the species are 'main', they all meet the SG80 requirements and they meet the SG100 requirements for strategy but not the two scoring issues on management strategy evaluation and implementation. These three species would each score 85.
- A fourth species (hake) is a major target species of high value to another fishery and is assessed and managed rigorously. This species makes up 20% of the UoA catch, and quotas are applied to the UoA as well as to its major target fishery and are effectively monitored and enforced. It is landed and sold so the unwanted scoring issue is not triggered. This species meets the SG100 requirements.
- The fifth species is a deepwater species that is managed using reference points and robust harvest control rules and is well above its point of recruitment impairment. The species is not utilised, and most of the catch is thrown back with a high mortality rate. It is not a shark species. The UoA has reviewed current measures to minimise capture of this species as well as other measures. One cost-effective and practical measure was identified, but it has not yet been implemented. This species meets all of the SG60 requirements and all but one of the SG80 requirements so would score 75.

Based on the SGs, in the above scenario, three of the species achieve a score of 85, one achieves a score of 100 and one achieves a score of 75. According to [Table G7](#), all

Fisheries Certification Requirements

of the scoring elements meet the SG60 level, and most achieve higher performance at or exceeding the SG80 level. Only one does not achieve the SG80 level so using this table the appropriate overall PI score would be 75. This is because as stated in [FCR 7.10.8.1](#) If any single scoring element fails to meet the SG80 level the overall score for that element shall be less than 80 so that a condition is raised, regardless of the situation with regard to other elements, some of which may be at the SG100 level.

The rationale for this scoring result is shown in tabular form below.

Table G4: Example scoring rationale 1

Species	Scoring issue	SG level	Met?	Overall score
Minor 1	60	A	n/a	85
Minor 2		B	n/a	
Minor 3		C	n/a	
		D	n/a	
		E	n/a	
	80	A	n/a	
		B	n/a	
		C	n/a	
		D	n/a	
		E	n/a	
	100	A	Y	
		B	N	
		C	N	
		D	n/a	
		E	n/a	

Table G5: Example scoring rationale 2

Species	Scoring issue	SG level	Met?	Overall score
Hake	60	A	Y	100
		B	Y	
		C	Y	
		D	n/a	
		E	n/a	
	80	A	Y	
		B	Y	
		C	Y	
		D	n/a	

Fisheries Certification Requirements

		E	n/a	
	100	A	Y	
		B	Y	
		C	Y	
		D	n/a	
		E	n/a	

Table G6: Example scoring rationale 3

Species	Scoring issue	SG level	Met?	Overall score
Deepwater	60	A	Y	75
		B	Y	
		C	Y	
		D	n/a	
		E	n/a	
	80	A	Y	
		B	Y	
		C	Y	
		D	n/a	
		E	N	
	100	A	Y	
		B	Y	
		C	Y	
		D	n/a	
		E	N	

Table G7: Example overall scoring rationale

Species	Score
Minor 1	85
Minor 2	85
Minor 3	85
Hake	100
Deepwater	75
OVERALL PI	75

G7.10.7 Terms used ▲

In considering the scoring of individual PIs based on the performance of different scoring elements, the terms below should be used:

- **Few:** Most of the scoring elements should be taken to indicate 'minority:majority' or 'less than half:greater than half' (e.g. if there were 6 scoring elements, the ratios '1:5' and '2:4' would both be represented by the terms 'few:most').
- **Some:** 'Some' should be taken to indicate a roughly equal split of scoring elements.

Examples: scoring elements

- In the situation where most elements did not meet the SG80 level, indicating an overall score of 65, but generally scored high intermediate scores, a higher overall score would be appropriate (e.g. 70); but if the elements score only low intermediate scores, then a score of 65 or below would remain appropriate.
- In the situation where only a few elements failed to achieve the SG80 level, suggesting an overall score of 75, but achieved low intermediate scores, a lower score (e.g. 70) would be appropriate.
- In the situation where some elements met the SG100 level but some only met the SG60 level, suggesting a score of 70, it may be appropriate to reflect the very high performance of some of the elements with an upwards adjustment to 75.

Scoring of 'minor' species and habitats ▲

For 'minor' species and habitats, scoring guideposts only exist at the SG100 level in some PIs (2.1.1-2.2.3; 2.4.1; 2.4.3). When scoring such minor species or habitats as scoring elements, the team should assume that the SG80 level is met by default, such that the scores are simply based on how many of the scoring issues that apply to minor (or all) species/habitats are met at the SG100 level.

G7.10.7.5 ▲

This requirement only applies if some scoring elements have been scored using the RBF and some using the default PISGs.

G7.11 Setting conditions ▲

Background

Conditions provide for agreed further improvement in the UoA and provide one of the bases for subsequent audit. They are intended to improve performance against the MSC's Principles (target species status; maintenance of ecological function; and management system performance).

This is the stage at which evaluation of the information gathered in the formal assessment continues, and if scores of less than 80 are awarded measurable, outcome-oriented and time-bounded conditions of certification are prepared.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

When it comes to setting conditions, the MSC Technical Advisory Board has confirmed that conditions can be about:

- Reducing uncertainty;
- Improving processes and/or implementation;
- Reducing risk;
- Improving outcomes.

These elements can be hierarchical and may ultimately be linked together in pursuing a longer-term outcome and potential continuous improvement.

Table G10 have examples of conditions for PI components under Principles 1, 2 and 3. Rationale are provided for illustrative and contextual purposes only and do not reflect actual fisheries in the MSC programme, and this section is not intended to supplement or replace the scoring procedure in the MSC's requirements.

Note: Specific guidance for setting conditions if the RBF is used and using the PSA to set conditions are covered under Guidance for Annex PF.

Specific parts of the client action plan may cover more than one PI even though each PI must have its own condition. However the action plan should make reference to these specific conditions and their milestones.

Table G8: Example of conditions for Principle 1

Example of conditions for Principle 1	
Outcome	PI 1.1.1
PI	The stock is at a level which maintains high productivity and has a low probability of recruitment overfishing.
SG60	It is likely that the stock is above the point where recruitment would be impaired (PRI).
SG80	It is highly likely that the stock is above the PRI. The stock is at or fluctuating around a level consistent with MSY.
SG100	There is a high degree of certainty that the stock is above the PRI. There is a high degree of certainty that the stock has been fluctuating around a level consistent with MSY or has been above this level over recent years.
Scoring	70
Rationale	Recent stock assessments of <i>Mustelus canis</i> (ICES 2009) indicate that it is likely that the stock is above the point where recruitment would be impaired, which meets SG60. There is currently a 75% probability that the true status of the stock is higher than the point at which there is an appreciable risk of recruitment being impaired (Elasmobranch Working Group 2010) so the team does not believe that it is 'highly likely' (i.e., at least 80% probability) that the stock is above the point where recruitment would be impaired. The first scoring issue for SG80 is not met. The stock is at its target reference point (ICES 2009), which

Fisheries Certification Requirements

	<p>meets the second scoring issue for SG80.</p> <p>Since the first scoring issue for SG80 is met and the second scoring issue is not met, the team concludes that a score of 70 is appropriate for this PI.</p>
Condition	By the second surveillance audit, evidence must be presented by the fishery client that shows that it is highly likely (specifically at least 80% probability) that the stock is above the point where recruitment would be impaired.
Client action plan	<p>In order to demonstrate by the second surveillance audit that it is highly likely that the stock is above the point where recruitment would be impaired; the fishery client will support the ongoing national government research programme to conduct more rigorous stock assessment analyses for this species. Actions undertaken and to be implemented for this year will include hosting researchers as observers on client vessels, providing fishery-dependent data, and providing the use of client vessels for monthly research trips to collect data required to undertake the stock assessment.</p> <p>At the second surveillance audit, the fishery client will present more rigorous stock assessment analyses, observer reports, fishery-dependent data that was provided to the national government research programme, and trip reports from the national government research programme undertaken on client vessels.</p>
Consultation on condition	The relevant researchers and government officials have been consulted by telephone and in-person meetings and agree that these actions will reduce uncertainty in stock assessment data and are achievable and realistic to complete by the second surveillance audit. They have committed to assist the fishery in undertaking the actions specified in the action plan.

Harvest strategy	PI 1.2.1
PI	There is a robust and precautionary harvest strategy in place.
SG60	<p>The harvest strategy is expected to achieve stock management objectives reflected PI 1.1.1 SG80.</p> <p>The harvest strategy is likely to work based on prior experience or plausible argument.</p> <p>Monitoring is in place that is expected to determine whether the harvest strategy is working.</p>
SG80	<p>The harvest strategy is responsive to the state of the stock and the elements of the harvest strategy work together towards achieving management objectives reflected in PI 1.1.1 SG80.</p> <p>The harvest strategy may not have been fully tested but evidence exists that it is achieving its objectives.</p>
SG100	<p>The harvest strategy is responsive to the state of the stock and is designed to achieve stock management objectives reflected in PI 1.1.1 SG80.</p> <p>The performance of the harvest strategy has been fully evaluated and evidence exists to show that it is achieving its objectives including being clearly able to maintain stocks at target levels.</p> <p>The harvest strategy is periodically reviewed and improved as</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

	necessary.
Scoring	70
Rationale	<p>The harvest strategy for this fishery is responsive to the state of the stock (PFMC 2009), and it is evident that the elements of the harvest strategy work together towards achieving management objectives reflected in the target and limit reference points (PFMC 2009). Consequently, this fishery meets the first scoring issue of SG80.</p> <p>The harvest strategy has not been fully tested, and there is currently no evidence that the harvest strategy is achieving its objectives. As a result, the second scoring issue of SG80 is not fully met; the team decided that a score of 70 for this PI is appropriate.</p>
Condition	By the third surveillance audit, evidence must be presented that shows that the harvest strategy for this fishery is achieving its objectives.
Client action plan	The fishery client commits to presenting evidence to the CAB that demonstrates that the harvest strategy for this fishery is achieving its objectives. An appropriately qualified consultant will be contracted to independently compile reports on an annual basis to first establish a baseline and analyse whether the TAC is set consistent with scientific advice as well as detail on whether landings are exceeding the TAC set for that year. These reports will be presented to the CAB during the first, second and third surveillance audits in order for the outcomes to be assessed.
Consultation on condition	Not required for this condition as no external parties are involved.

Table G9: Example of conditions for Principle 2

Example of conditions for Principle 2

Outcome	PI 2.2.1
PI	The UoA aims to maintain secondary species above a biological based limit and does not hinder recovery of secondary species if they are below a biological based limit.
SG60	<p>Main secondary species are likely to be above biologically based limits.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If below biologically based limits, there are measures in place expected to ensure that the UoA does not hinder recovery and rebuilding.</p>
SG80	<p>Main secondary species are highly likely to be above biologically based limits.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>If below biologically based limits, there is either evidence of recovery or a demonstrably effective partial strategy in place such that the UoA does not hinder recovery and rebuilding.</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

	<p>AND</p> <p>Where catches of a main secondary species outside of biological limits are considerable, there is either evidence of recovery or a demonstrably effective strategy in place between those MSC UoAs that also have considerable catches of the depleted species to ensure that they collectively do not hinder recovery and rebuilding.</p>
SG100	<p>There is a high degree of certainty that main secondary species are above biologically based limits.</p> <p>For minor species that are below the biologically based limits, there is evidence that the UoA does not hinder the recovery and rebuilding of secondary species.</p>
Scoring	60
Rationale	<p>The two main secondary species for this UoA, <i>Carcharodon carcharias</i> and <i>Hemipristis elongata</i>, are currently not above biologically based limits according to recent fisheries-independent research (Smith et al. 2009; Jenkins et al. 2010). There are mitigation measures in place, such as gear restrictions including the mandatory use of magnetic hooks and area closures, which are expected to ensure that the UoA does not hinder recovery and rebuilding for these depleted secondary species (CFM 2009).</p> <p>Both scoring issues for SG60 are met; however since the mitigation measures have been recently implemented, there is not yet evidence for recovery, and they cannot yet be shown to be demonstrably effective so the scoring issue for SG80 is not met. The catch of both species is <10% by weight of the UoA catch so they do not need to consider catches of these species in other MSC-certified fisheries.</p>
Condition	<p>By the third surveillance audit, main secondary species must be highly likely to be within biologically based limits, or if outside such limits, there must be either evidence of recovery or demonstrably effective partial strategy in place such that the UoA does not hinder recovery and rebuilding.</p>
Client action plan	<p>The client fishery will conduct ongoing monitoring of current measures to show that they are demonstrably effective such that the fishery does not hinder recovery and rebuilding of <i>Carcharodon carcharias</i> and <i>Hemipristis elongata</i> populations. This will be undertaken through 100% on-board observer coverage on client fishery vessels and analysis of logbook data to illustrate trends in data for these species. This strategy will be implemented immediately, and reports will be provided to the team as evidence at the first, second and third surveillance audit. The final analysis demonstrating effectiveness will be completed and assessed at the third surveillance audit.</p>
Consultation on condition	Not required for this condition as no external parties are involved.

Table G10: Example of conditions for Principle 3

Example of conditions for Principle 3

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Fishery specific management system	PI 3.2.3
PI	Monitoring, control and surveillance mechanisms ensure the management measures in the UoA are enforced and complied with.
SG60	<p>Monitoring, control and surveillance mechanisms exist and are implemented in the fishery and there is a reasonable expectation that they are effective.</p> <p>Sanctions to deal with non-compliance exist and there is some evidence that they are applied.</p> <p>Fishers are generally thought to comply with the management system under assessment, including, when required, providing information of importance to the effective management of the fishery.</p>
SG80	<p>A monitoring, control and surveillance system has been implemented in the fishery and has demonstrated an ability to enforce relevant management measures, strategies and/or rules.</p> <p>Sanctions to deal with non-compliance exist, are consistently applied and thought to provide effective deterrence.</p> <p>Some evidence exists to demonstrate fishers comply with the management system under assessment, including, when required, providing information of importance to the effective management of the fishery.</p> <p>There is no evidence of systematic non-compliance.</p>
SG100	<p>A comprehensive monitoring, control and surveillance system has been implemented for the fishery and has demonstrated a consistent ability to enforce relevant management measures, strategies and/or rules.</p> <p>Sanctions to deal with non-compliance exist, are consistently applied and demonstrably provide effective deterrence.</p> <p>There is a high degree of confidence that fishers comply with the management system under assessment, including providing information of importance to the effective management of the fishery.</p>
Scoring	60
Rationale	<p>Monitoring, control and surveillance mechanisms exist in this fishery, including VMS and logbook reporting, and these mechanisms were implemented in 2009 (RFA 2009). There is a reasonable expectation that they are effective since similar systems implemented in other ray fisheries in the region have been shown to ensure that management measures are enforced and complied with (ERFA 2004; ERFA 2006).</p> <p>Sanctions to deal with non-compliance exist as outlined in RFA 2009, and there is some evidence, in the form of records of fines levied, that they are applied.</p> <p>Fishers are generally thought to comply with the management system under assessment (Fisheries Enforcement Officer, pers. comm.) including, when required, providing information of importance to the effective management of the fishery (RFA 2009).</p> <p>Since the fishery meets these three issues, SG60 is met.</p> <p>However, since these monitoring, control and surveillance mechanisms were only implemented in 2009, there is currently no</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

	<p>demonstrated ability to enforce relevant management measure, strategies and/or rules. Similarly, the fishery is not able to demonstrate that sanctions to deal with non-compliance are consistently applied or to provide evidence to demonstrate that fishers comply with the management system. Finally, there is insufficient evidence at this point to conclude that there is no systematic non-compliance. Consequently, the fishery does not meet any of the issues under SG80 and scores no higher than 60.</p>
Condition	<p>By the second surveillance audit, the fishery must provide evidence that the monitoring, control and surveillance mechanisms work together to form part of a system and demonstrate an ability to enforce relevant management measures, strategies and/or rules.</p> <p>By the second surveillance audit, the fishery must also demonstrate that sanctions are consistently applied and thought to provide effective deterrence.</p> <p>By the third surveillance audit, the fishery must provide evidence that demonstrates that fishers comply with the management system under assessment, including, when required, providing information of importance to the effective management of the fishery.</p> <p>The fishery must also demonstrate by the third surveillance audit that there is no evidence of systematic non-compliance.</p>
Client action plan	<p>In order to improve compliance and enforcement, the fishery client commits to implementing a system for monitoring, control and surveillance that can demonstrate an ability to enforce relevant management measures, strategies, and/or rules by the second surveillance audit. This will be carried out through the integration of the logbook reporting and VMS mechanisms into an integrated system involving other components for comprehensive monitoring, control and surveillance.</p> <p>Through regular contact and communication with Fisheries Enforcement Officials, by the second surveillance audit, the fishery client will provide evidence in the form of written statements and records of sanctions to demonstrate that they are consistently applied and thought to provide effective deterrence.</p> <p>The client fishery will provide evidence by the third surveillance audit that demonstrates that fishers comply with the management system, including the provision of information required for the effective management of the fishery. Monitoring to demonstrate fisher compliance is already implemented in this fishery through a structured framework of interaction between fisheries managers and Fishery Enforcement Officers but has not been ongoing for sufficient time yet to demonstrate compliance. Fisheries managers and Fisheries Enforcement Officers meet on a yearly basis to evaluate compliance and produce reports on the outcomes of these meetings. These reports will be presented to the team at the third surveillance audit. This action will also serve to demonstrate that there is no systematic non-compliance.</p>
Consultation on condition	<p>Fisheries Enforcement Officials have been consulted on their involvement in this Client Action Plan and agree to provide copies of sanction documentation for the next 5 years and to provide written statements on their evaluation of deterrence before the second surveillance audit.</p>

G7.11.1 Condition setting ▲

UoAs that receive individual PI scores between 60 and 79 are required to fulfil conditions during the course of the validity of their certificate, with the objective of eventually achieving performance at the SG80 level for all PIs. This is considered particularly important for ensuring the transparency and credibility of the MSC programme.

G7.11.1.3.a Exceptional circumstances ▲

Examples: exceptional circumstances

Examples of “exceptional circumstances” are the time taken for:

- natural ecological functions and response times;
- time required for relevant research to be funded, undertaken and published;
- determination of the point(s) at which fish and fish products enter further Chains of Custody.

G7.11.2 ▲

CABs should not be prescriptive about the means of meeting conditions. The fishery client may develop their own corrective actions and deal with a condition in their own way. The important points for the CAB are that the client must demonstrate to the CAB's satisfaction that a condition can be met and how the outcome or result will be (or has been) achieved.

G7.12 Determination of the traceability systems and point(s) at which fish and fish products enter further Chains of Custody ▲

Background

Fisheries often have robust systems in place to manage traceability, through regulatory or voluntary controls. However, these systems may not be sufficient for differentiating between certified and non-certified products, especially if the UoC only covers specific vessels or gear types. The intention of this section is to enable clearer documentation of the traceability systems in place for a certified fishery and to make it clear how substitution risks are adequately controlled by the fishery.

G7.12.1 Traceability record keeping ▲

Traceability systems shall need to be sufficient to allow the fishery to trace MSC-certified sales back to the UoC, for example in the event of a product traceback carried out by the MSC or an investigation into an MSC supply chain.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

It is recommended that records demonstrating traceability back to the UoC should be kept for at least 2 years where practicable to allow a product from the supply chain to be traced back to the UoC.

Traceability records can be maintained by fishers, the fishery client group, auctions or other entities, depending on the management of the fishery and point at which subsequent Chain of Custody begins.

G7.12.1.2–G7.12.1.4 Traceability ▲

The intent of this section is to ensure that all fishery reports clearly identify risks of substitution or mislabelling of certified products and explain how these risks are mitigated by the traceability systems and controls in place.

Mitigation measures can include existing regulatory and traceability controls, such as logbooks, but should consider whether these systems are sufficient to ensure traceability back to the UoC. If not, additional systems or controls may need to be implemented.

Several possible risk factors exist:

- **The possibility that non-certified gears are used within the UoA.**
This relates to cases where vessels within the UoA may use gear types that are not included in the UoC. In some cases, this can happen on the same trip where certified gears are used or can happen on different trips. This can lead to a greater risk of mixing between certified and non-certified product on vessels or at points of landing, and the UoA needs adequate systems in place to segregate and identify the certified catch from non-certified catch.
- **The possibility of vessels from the UoC fishing outside the UoC or in different geographical areas (on the same trips or different trips).**
This factor concerns the potential for vessels to fish in non-certified geographical regions (which may also be affected by fishing-season or temporal restrictions). This can lead to a greater risk of mixing between certified and non-certified product on vessels or at points of landing. The UoA will need to demonstrate how traceability and control systems (such as VMS or logbooks) help to ensure that only product caught within the UoC will be identified and sold as MSC-certified.
- **The possibility of vessels from outside the UoC or client group fishing the same stock.**
This factor relates to the likelihood that other, non-certified fishers may catch the same stock, which could produce higher risks of substitution or mislabelling at the point of landing or sale (for example, where certified and non-certified catches are sold at the same auction).
- **Any other risks of substitution between fish from the UoC and fish from outside this unit.**
This refers to any other points at harvest, on the vessel, during transshipment, or at points of landing or sale where there is the potential risk of substitution between non-certified and certified products. This includes also the presence of other nearby fisheries activities or other fisheries which may land or tranship non-certified product alongside certified catches. This assessment should consider the presence of these risks and specifically how they are addressed by the traceability systems in place.

G7.12.1.5 Where does CoC start? ▲

Clear information on the UoC must be available to stakeholders and particularly any party purchasing certified product from the fishery client. The change of ownership relates to the first point of sale. Any specific conditions related to eligibility of product from the UoC to bear the ecolabel should be clearly stated in this section (for example, if roe is not considered within the UoC).

Where the UoC involves the activities of entities such as agents at markets or auctions, or unloaders/offloaders at the point of landing, the report should state whether this activity is covered by the fishery certificate. In these cases, Chain of Custody could be required to start from the point of sale by the agent or offloader/unloader, rather than from the first sale by the fishery. However, if activities of agents or offloaders/unloaders are covered by the fishery certificate, the traceability systems used by these operators need to be assessed and documented in the report. The report should also list the specific operators covered, the eligibility criteria, or where to find this information.

G7.12.4 Chain of Custody ▲

This section provides consistency with the requirements for Chain of Custody certificate holders. Fisheries have a responsibility to ensure that any non-eligible (non-conforming) product that enters the supply chain is identified, and downstream supply chain companies are appropriately notified. For example, if product from outside the UoC is accidentally labelled or sold as MSC-certified, the UoA would need to take action in line with this procedure.

G7.13.2.3 Report viewed by the client ▲

A period of up to 30 days is available for the client to consider the report and respond to it, but if the client response is received before the end of the 30-day period, the CAB can move on to FCR 7.13.3 without waiting for the full 30 days to elapse.

G7.14 Peer review and Peer Review Draft Report ▲

The MSC has set up a Peer Review College in order to fulfil the following objectives:

- Increase the independence of peer reviews of fishery assessments.
- Increase the quality and consistency of peer reviews, and the reliability of their use by CABs, stakeholders and independent adjudicators.
- Not to increase, and if possible reduce, the cost of peer reviewers to fishery clients undergoing assessment.

CABs will need to request peer reviewers from the college according to the requirements set out in 7.14. The operations of the college are described separately to this Guidance. Peer reviewers will have similar competencies to auditors.

G7.14.4 Peer Review College ▲

Following the site visit, the College will ensure that all registered stakeholders are proactively invited to comment on the potential conflicts of interest of the proposed peer

Fisheries Certification Requirements

reviewers for a period of 10 days. The College will review any conflicts of interest highlighted by stakeholders, in accordance with the procedures outlined above.

If stakeholders do not agree with the College's determination on Conflict of Interest, they have the right to appeal to the College who shall inform MSC within 10 working days. MSC will appoint a third party to conduct a review of the decision. The outcome of the review will be communicated to the College by the MSC Executive with instructions on how the College should proceed.

Once the consultation and appeals process is complete and the College has acted as directed by the third party, the CAB and stakeholders will be informed of the decision that no COI exists for the peer reviewers appointed to conduct the peer review.

G7.14.5 Provision of Preliminary Draft Report ▲

The provision of the Preliminary Draft Report for client review to the Peer Review College will help to guide the College in determining the key competencies perceived to be the most important in determining the assessment outcome.

G7.14.8.1 ▲

The Peer Review College will agree with the CAB on the final number of peer reviewers that should be contracted from an original pool of 5 reviewers, using information in the Preliminary Draft Report for client review to assist this process and noting that the peer reviewer College's decision on the choice of peer reviewers is final.

G7.14.8.3 ▲

CABs can express a preference for individual reviewers to be contracted from a shortlist drawn up by the College but the college will make the final decision.

G7.14.11.1 ▲

"Explicitly addressing all the issues raised" by peer reviewers means that the team should provide clear explanations with evidence in the CAB response column of the Peer Reviewer Template to support the team's conclusion on whether they accept or reject each of the issues raised by the peer reviewer. The team should note that reviewers will have the right of reply to the team's conclusion during the PCDR stakeholder consultation in common with other peer reviewer processes such as those used by scientific journals. The reviewer's reply would state whether they agreed or disagreed with the team's response as this could provide assistance to the Independent Adjudicator (IA) if the assessment went to Objection in determining whether the CAB came to a decision that any reasonable CAB would have done based on the evidence available. CABs would be able to include a response to any peer reviewer comments made on the PCDR in the Public Certification Report.

G7.16 Determination ▲

CABs should also refer to section 4.6 of the General Certification Requirements and ISO 17065 clause 7.6.

The determination is a recommendation by the team to the CAB's decision-making entity.

G7.18 Objections procedure ▲

Background

The MSC Objections Procedure is a key component of the fishery assessment process. It is intended to provide a robust dispute resolution mechanism and produce an outcome that all parties in a fishery certification would consider fair and impartial. The two objectives of the process are:

- To provide for an independent review of CAB decisions to make sure that the decisions are not arbitrary or unreasonable and that the assessment followed a fair process.
- To provide an orderly, structured procedure in which parties' concerns about certification decisions can be transparently addressed and resolved.

In line with the MSC's commitment to continue review and improvement of policy, reviews leading to changes to the Objections Procedure were carried out in 2011 and 2014.

For objections that begin prior to the deadline of implementation (i.e., 01 April 2016), the CAB may determine whether CR v1.3 or FCR v2.0 of Annex PD is used.

Use of material

The use of the term 'material' in Annex PD is different than its use elsewhere in this document i.e., harmonisation, IUU fishing and re-assessment.

G7.20 Certification decision and certificate issue ▲

CABs should also refer to section 4.6 of the MSC General Certification Requirements and ISO 17065 clause 7.6.

A fishery certificate is the formal document that is issued to a fishery client as evidence that a fishery is certified against the MSC standard. It is issued after the Public Certification Report for the fishery under assessment has been accepted and published on the MSC website.

The MSC website provides all the information contained on a fishery certificate. This allows for interested parties to obtain information about each fishery's scope of certification quickly and efficiently. It is also a requirement for CABs responsible for certifying the first link in the supply chain, to obtain information about which operators/businesses and/or points in the fishery are covered by the fishery certificate.

G7.21.3 Reporting ▲

The Preliminary Draft Report, Peer Review Draft Report, Public Comment Draft Report, Final Report and Public Certification Report must be provided in full and shall not report only on elements revised between the initial and subsequent assessment of the fishery.

G7.22 Extension of scope of fishery certificate (Expedited Assessment) ▲

Background

This section provides for limited extensions to the scope of a fishery, as requested by the original fishery client, to include other fishing operations in the same area or an adjacent area. Such extensions may, for example, bring in a gear type or fleet of vessels that also targets the main P1 species but was not included in the original assessment. The process also allows for the movement of a target species from P2 to P1, so that it can be included in the logo's catch from the fishery. Due to the assessment already undertaken, this option does not include some of the steps of a normal full assessment. It is provided as an alternative, cost effective assessment option for fishery clients in cases where a whole new assessment is not needed. Some form of certificate sharing will often be involved between the original and new fishery clients in these situations.

G7.22.1.2 Confirming the fisheries' eligibility for extension ▲

The MSC default assessment tree identifies nine assessment 'components', as listed below:

- P1 – Target species outcome (status); target species management;
- P2 – Primary species; secondary species; Endangered Threatened and Protected species; habitats; ecosystems;
- P3 – Governance and policy; fishery specific management.

The Unit of Assessment (UoA) defines which species will be assessed against these components in P1, which gears will be assessed in P2, and which management areas and arrangements are assessed in P3. FCR section 7.22.1.2 allows that new UoAs would be eligible for extensions under this procedure in cases where there is some overlap with the species, gears, or areas in the original UoA. In this case, the assessment and scoring for one or more of the nine assessment components listed above would be identical between the original and the new assessment.

G7.22.1.3 Meaning of close geographical proximity ▲

This clause requires that the fishing operation proposed for extension should be conducted in either an overlapping or adjacent fishing area.

G7.22.4 Gap analysis ▲

The CAB may use the following table to provide rationale for the outcome of the gap analysis to determine the assessment components that are held in common.

Example

By way of example, the fishery may have the same target species, management system and gear but be fishing in a separate geographical area and be taking a different mix of ETP species, in which case ETP would have to be re-scored in the expedited audit.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table G11: Rationale for outcome of gap analysis

Component	Unit of Assessment – Fishery 1 (identify the unit that is assessed for each component)	Unit of Assessment – Fishery 2 (provide rationale to confirm if the unit proposed for extension is the same as the unit that was assessed in the certified fishery)
Principle 1– Outcome	Target species stock + Management of target species stock	
Principle 1 – Harvest strategy	Target species stock + Management of target species stock	
Principle 2 – Primary species	Species normally retained by client gear type in client geographical area	
Principle 2 – Secondary species	Unintended bycatch of client gear type in client geographical area	
Principle 2 – ETP	ETP of client gear type in client geographical area	
Principle 2 – Habitat	Habitat of client gear type in client geographical area	
Principle 2 – Ecosystem	Broad ecological community and ecosystem in which the fishery operates	
Principle 3 – Governance and policy	Overarching management framework Multi- jurisdictional management framework (as appropriate)	
Principle 3 – Fishery Specific management system	Local management framework + Client specific management	

G7.22.4.1 Adding new ‘other eligible fishers’ ▲

This clause recognises that fishery clients sometimes fail to identify all of the possible ‘other eligible fishers’ that are included in an assessment even though their impacts have been considered. In this case, the CAB may belatedly extend the certificate to such fishers as long as the team confirms that the impacts were originally included. In cases where the original assessment did not include some other fishers (e.g. it was restricted to only a few of the members of the fishing fleet), this option does not apply, and the expedited audit process of Annex PE should be followed to consider the additional impacts in P2.

G7.22.6 Reassessments following certificate extensions ▲

This clause ensures that where a fishery certificate has been extended through a scope extension, the subsequent reassessment of the entire expanded fishery at the end of the five year certificate period shall be conducted against the latest version of the assessment tree.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

CABs and clients should note that this requirement to conduct reassessments with the new version of the assessment tree applies to both the extended units and the original fishery, and that the normal allowance for clients to have 3 years before being subject to the new tree could hereby be lost in cases where certificate extensions are conducted. This arrangement prevents the certificate extension mechanism being used to allow new fisheries to avoid the v2.0 assessment tree requirements beyond a reasonable period.

G7.22.9 Changes in the client group ▲

In cases where a series of changes are expected in the membership of the client group, it is possible for the certificate issued to the fishery to make reference to the initial statement lodged under section 7.20.3 and any updated statements lodged under 7.23.2. In such cases, the certificate need not be changed every time that the membership of the client group changes, but the website statements should ensure that it is still possible for stakeholders (such as fish traders) to determine which companies are currently covered by the certificate as client group members.

G7.23 Surveillance ▲

Background

This step of the process provides for the surveillance and enforcement of the conditions of certification and the opportunity for any changes in the fishery to be evaluated for continued consistency with the MSC Fisheries Standard.

G7.23.2 Surveillance levels ▲

Table G12: All possible combinations of surveillance levels

Surveillance Level	Years after certification or recertification				No of auditors	
	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	First assessment	Re-assessment
Level 6 Default Surveillance	On-site surveillance audit	On-site surveillance audit	On-site surveillance audit	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
Level 5 (3 on-site, 1 off-site)	On-site surveillance audit	<i>Off-site surveillance audit</i>	On-site surveillance audit	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
	<i>Off-site surveillance audit</i>	On-site surveillance audit	On-site surveillance audit	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
	On-site surveillance audit	On-site surveillance audit	<i>Off-site surveillance audit</i>	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
Level 4	<i>Off-site surveillance</i>	On-site surveillance	<i>Off-site surveillance</i>	On-site surveillance	2	1 or 2

Fisheries Certification Requirements

(2 on-site, 2 off-site)	<i>audit</i>	audit	<i>audit</i>	audit & re-certification		
	On-site surveillance audit	<i>Off-site surveillance audit</i>	<i>Off-site surveillance audit</i>	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
	<i>Off-site surveillance audit</i>	<i>Off-site surveillance audit</i>	On-site surveillance audit	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
Level 3 (3 on-site, 1 off-site)	<i>Off-site</i>	<i>Off-site</i>	<i>Off-site</i>	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
Level 2 1 Review of information	On-site / Off-site	On-site / Off-site	<i>Review of information</i>	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
	<i>On-site / Off-site</i>	<i>Review of information</i>	<i>On-site / Off-site</i>	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
	Review of information	<i>On-site / Off-site</i>	<i>On-site / Off-site</i>	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
Level 1 Minimum Surveillance 2 Review of information	<i>On-site / Off-site</i>	<i>Review of information</i>	<i>Review of information</i>	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
	<i>Review of information</i>	<i>Review of information</i>	<i>On-site / Off-site</i>	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2
	<i>Review of information</i>	<i>On-site / Off-site</i>	<i>Review of information</i>	On-site surveillance audit & re-certification	2	1 or 2

G7.23.3.1 and G7.23.3.2 Location of audits ▲

An on-site audit can be an audit at the location where fishery takes place but it can also be where the fishery client is based. Either location is sufficient as long as the necessary information can be collected through face-to-face meetings with stakeholders and those responsible for science and management of the fishery.

An off-site audit can be carried out from a remote location and does not require travel to the site where the client, vessels or stakeholders are located. The remote auditors assess the fishery based on information that is publically available or provided by the client and stakeholders. This is a desktop exercise. This does require auditors to actively engage with the client and stakeholders but through technological means rather than face-to-face.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

G7.23.4 Verification of information ▲

To assess fisheries against the verification of information criteria CABs can create a list of information, information resources and aspects of the fishery that need to be reviewed in the annual audit. For each item CABs can use [Table G13](#) below to determine the likelihood that they will be able to access the required information remotely and that they can confirm veracity of the information.

In determining how fisheries meet the criteria on verification of information, CABs may consider the type, nature and complexity of the fishery. Different fisheries will be at different points on the spectrum from a very limited capacity to verify information remotely to a highly advanced ability to verify information remotely. CABs should use their expert judgement and knowledge of the fishery to determine a surveillance level that is commensurate with the fishery's ability to provide the information remotely.

Table G13: Assessment of information available to enable the determination of appropriate surveillance

	Ability to verify remotely is low (low)	Ability to verify remotely is high (higher)	CAB evaluation (high)
Client and stakeholder input	Electronic forms of communication and other mechanisms to engage with clients and stakeholders (such as video conferencing, phone conferencing, email, phone) are absent, limited or inefficient and ineffective in providing the information required for an audit in the particular circumstances of the fishery.	There are ample opportunities and mechanisms to engage with clients and stakeholders including electronic forms of communication, such as videoconferencing phone conferencing, email, phone. The mechanisms are effective in the particular circumstances of the fishery.	
Fishery reports, government documents, stock assessment reports and/or other relevant reports	Fishery reports and other types of reports required for the surveillance, and to demonstrate fishery performance in relation to any relevant conditions and on-going performance against the MSC's standard are not available publicly and cannot be transmitted electronically. There is no remote access to the information and there are none, or very limited other sources available to triangulate and confirm status of the fishery with respect to the MSC standard	Fishery reports and other documented evidence that can be used to demonstrate progress against conditions and other issue relevant to the MSC Principles and criteria can be easily and transparently checked remotely, due to such information being available publically, such as being available on a website or having been widely distributed and made publically available to several stakeholders. The reports can be transmitted electronically and veracity easily confirmed.	
Information appropriate to determination of Principle 1 and 2 information requirements (see	Information from electronic monitoring of position, observer data, logbooks, fisher interviews, dockside monitoring etc. is required for audits but cannot be easily transmitted to a remote auditor in a form that can be	Where Information from electronic monitoring of position, observer data, logbooks, fisher interviews, dockside monitoring etc. is required to verify performance against MSC standard, this information is available to be transmitted	

Fisheries Certification Requirements

GSA.3.6.4.1)	easily interpreted.	electronically to auditors in a form that can be easily interpreted.	
Transparency of the management system	Level of transparency of information by management is low such that information about performance of the fishery is generally not easily and widely available.	There is a high level of transparency in management, such that information on the fishery is widely and publically available or known to the wider group of stakeholders. Any information provided on the fishery can be easily verified.	
Vessels, gear or other physical aspect of the fishery	There are milestones and conditions that require inspection of vessels or other physical aspects of the fishery during the audit and there are no reliable mechanisms for verifying these aspects of the fishery from a remote location.	There are no milestones that require investigation of physical aspects of the fishery or if there are, there are reliable mechanisms to enable verification of developments with respect to that milestone from a remote location.	

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Example of how to determine surveillance levels

In this example a fishery has conditions on the following PIs: 1.1.1, 1.2.4, 2.2.2, 2.2.3 and 3.2.3.

Condition	Action plan & milestones	Client commitment and CAB evaluation
<p>1.2.1</p> <p>By the fourth annual surveillance audit, the client shall provide information to demonstrate that there is a robust and precautionary harvest strategy in place and evidence exists that it is achieving its objectives for all significant fisheries that target this stock</p>	<p>1. At each annual surveillance audit provide updates on progress by the fishery management agency towards developing a robust and precautionary harvest strategy for the stock.</p> <p>2. By the 4th annual surveillance audit client will provide evidence of the robust and precautionary harvest strategy in place for the fishery.</p>	<p>1. CABs shall be provided with meeting minutes, research papers to assess the developments.</p> <p>2. Adoption of harvest strategy could be checked by documents (agreements, research plans, fishery management plans), letters from stakeholders, as well as impact assessment of harvest strategy.</p>
<p>1.2.3</p> <p>Develop & implement a sampling programme of full catch recording across a suitable sample of the fleet.</p>	<p>Year 1</p> <p>1. Request scientific institute to help set up self-sampling programme consistent with condition requirement.</p> <p>2. The skippers and crew of vessels will be trained in how to preform self-sampling</p> <p>3. Results of self-sampling protocol will be presented annually in a report</p>	<p>Year 1</p> <p>1. Present CAB with report by scientific institute as well as the self-sampling programme protocol and results.</p> <p>2. Provide evidence that crew has been trained – record of training material, attendance list to training. Also (raw) records of self-sampling (from a sample of vessels)</p> <p>3. Analysis of results documents sent to CAB</p>
<p>2.2.2</p> <p>Develop a strategy to reduce impacts of fishery Secondary species and provide evidence to CAB at that strategy has been implemented successfully</p>	<p>Year 3</p> <p>Develop a management plan for Secondary species that outlines management strategies and measures for Secondary species that ensure that the fishery does not hinder recovery of the species.</p>	<p>Year 3</p> <p>CABs shall be provided with the full management plan in Year 3</p>
<p>2.2.3</p> <p>Establish a scientifically defensible monitoring and reporting system for Secondary species.</p>	<p>Year 1 to Year 3</p> <p>The processing company affiliated with the fishery will keep records of any by-catch that arrives at the dock. Records will detail species, species count, tonnage and date delivered. The national fisheries department will receive a copy of this report weekly. Vessel logs will also contain any by-catch therefore monitoring by-catch not only at delivery but on the fishing</p>	<p>Year 1 to Year 3</p> <p>At every surveillance audit until year 3 CABs shall be provided with secondary species monitoring data from processing company and vessel logs.</p> <p>Year 3</p> <p>Updated fisheries management plan will be sent to the CAB</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

	ground. Year 3 The monitoring protocol will be adopted in the fisheries management plan	
3.2.3 A MCS system has been implemented however, sanctions for non-compliance exist, but they are not necessarily consistently applied. This view is supported by the lack of regular data collection on infringements by vessels.	Year 1 The coastguard will review MCS procedures, provide a plan to ensure effective enforcement and identify required resources; records will also be collated on infringements and sanctions prior to the first audit Year 2 The updated MCS procedures will be implemented in the second year. Records on infringements and sanctions will be maintained and analysed to determine the effectiveness of the plan. Year 3 and 4 Records on infringements and sanctions will continue to be maintained and analysed in subsequent years to monitor and refine the MCS plan.	Year 1 CABs shall be provided with minutes of meeting between the client and the coast guard as well as a detailed plan of how MCS procedures will be tightened as well as an overview increased monitoring of infringements Year 2 Evidence of roll out of update MCS procedures is provided to the CAB. CAB will also be presented with effectiveness analysis. Year 3 and 4 CAB will also be presented with effectiveness analysis.

The above assessment demonstrates that all required information can be provided remotely. Consequently the CAB would present a detailed rationale for each surveillance activity and the number of auditors that will carry out the surveillance as outlined in the following table:

Year	Surveillance activity	Number of auditors	Rationale
1	Off-site audit	2 auditors	Information needed to verify progress towards conditions 1.2.1, 1.2.3, 2.2.3 and 3.2.3 can be provided remotely in year 1.
2	Off-site audit	2 auditors	Information needed to verify progress towards conditions 1.2.1, 2.2.3 and 3.2.3 can be provided remotely in year 2.
3	On-site audit	1 auditor on-site with remote support	Information needed to verify progress towards conditions 1.2.1, 2.2.3 and 3.2.3 can be provided remotely in year 3. Considering that milestones indicate that most conditions will be closed out in year 3, the CAB proposes to have an on-site audit with 1 auditor on-site with remote support – this to ensure that all information is collected and because the information can be provide remotely.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

4	On-site audit	2 auditors	Information needed to verify progress towards conditions 1.2.1 and 3.2.3 can be provided remotely in year 4. It is assumed that this site visit will be combined with the site visit for the re-assessment so the assessment team for re-assessment can carry out the surveillance at the same time.
---	---------------	------------	---

G7.23.8 Surveillance programme ▲

The timescales provided allow the team to set surveillance schedules that align with key dates in the fishery management cycle and the expected delivery of conditions according to the Client Action Plan. They may also be set to allow coordination of site visits with the surveillance audits of other nearby MSC fisheries, thereby minimising the inputs required from management agencies and stakeholders.

G7.23.13.1 Evaluate progress against meeting conditions ▲

When evaluating if a condition is on target, CABs need to review the actions, outcomes, expected results or milestones with the corresponding timeframes specified when setting the condition. If those fall behind the timeframes specified when setting the condition, then the condition will be evaluated as behind target.

If progress against a condition is behind target, remedial action is required, which can include the setting of new milestones and targets so long as they are still expected to achieve the condition within or close to the timeframes envisaged at the time of setting them. If the fishery is not back 'on target' (i.e., not meeting the original milestones or targets, or milestones are revised as described in the previous sentence) within 12 months of falling behind, the fishery is suspended.

A fishery which has failed to achieve a condition by its defined deadline (including any allowed extension period) would normally be suspended by the CAB (see FCR 7.23.13.2). The suspension would not normally be lifted until the issues relating to the suspension are resolved, such as by the condition being belatedly achieved (GCR 7.4.8-9). Consistent with these procedures, if a fishery has failed to achieve a condition at the end of a certificate, a CAB should not allow the client to enter the same fishery into re-assessment under some alternative name or alias where the effective intent is to extend the duration of the condition into a new certification period.

G7.23.22.1 New information ▲

Examples of "significant new information" are:

- Major changes in management;
- New information describing a major impact of the fishery.

However, as the FCR states in 7.23.21.1b, there must be good reason to think that these are actual material changes, and not a likely temporary change in indicated status that might arise, for instance, from the introduction of a new, not yet validated, stock assessment model.

G7.24 Reassessment

G7.24.2.2 Conditions at reassessment ▲

Adequate progress on conditions is determined with respect to the milestones or timelines specified when setting the condition. MSC expects that conditions will be closed out within 1 year of the milestone date, and by re-assessment unless there are exceptional circumstances. If progress against milestones is inadequate, the fishery should not be recertified, unless there are special circumstances, described below and in the CR.

MSC recognises that the assessment trees change from time to time. In most cases the requirements of older performance indicators and conditions to meet them are appropriate to more recently released performance indicators, but sometimes they are not. Where the tree has changed so that existing conditions no longer match to the re-assessment tree, or where old conditions cannot be expected to achieve SG80 in the reassessment tree even if they are completed, CABs may redraft and re-set the conditions. The timelines on completion of any new conditions should be shorter than one certification period (i.e., 5 years), and they should contain appropriate milestones.

Where the completion of an existing condition should have met a re-assessment tree PI requirement (i.e., where the condition was adequate even though the PI changed) there should be no need to change the condition, and a CAB should expect that the existing condition should be closed out within the published timeframe.

Some fisheries may have been certified with conditions that, if completed, would meet the requirements of SG 100. If at the time of the re-assessment, the situation is such that the fishery achieves the outcome required at SG 80 of the reassessment tree even without completing the condition, or in any other way that the condition is now irrelevant, the condition should be considered closed.

Under some circumstances fisheries will still have conditions open at the time of re-assessment, particularly as re-assessment often begins before the expiry of the existing certificate. These cases may occur when conditions were raised in previous surveillance audits (e.g. 3rd surveillance audit), where the condition is due to be closed out in the 5th year of the certificate, or under exceptional circumstances, where it was recognised that achieving a performance level of 80 may take longer than the period of certification. In these cases CABs should verify that conditions are on target and should assess the achievement of the condition in the year the condition is expected to be closed.

G7.24.5 Reporting ▲

The Full Assessment Reporting Template contains sections that are applicable at re-assessment only, including Section 4.2 'Previous Assessments' and Table 4.2, where CABs are required to provide a summary of the previous assessment conditions and whether they were closed or not. The intention behind this requirement is that there are no surprises (to the CAB, the fishery client or stakeholders) at the end of the certification period because progress to meeting the conditions and achieving the intended outcomes of SG80 has been transparently reported by certification bodies.

Text from previous assessments may be re-used in other sections of the Full Assessment Reporting Template. This is appropriate in situations where no substantial changes have occurred in the fishery with respect to the background, P1, P2 and P3 sections of the report and there are no new requirements added to these sections. If changes to the text used in

Fisheries Certification Requirements

previous sections need to be made, the CAB should make it clear to stakeholders where these updates have been made, e.g. by using different coloured font.

G7.24.8.b Peer reviewer ▲

Exceptional circumstances refer to situations where 1 peer reviewer does not have the competencies to review the conditions and other issues raised in the assessment report.

End of FCR Guidance

Annex GPA Inseparable or practicably inseparable (IPI) Fisheries – Guidance

GPA4.1.1 and GPA6.1 ▲

The MSC restrict the granting of the variation to limit the application of the requirements for IPI stocks to a fishery certification to one certification period. At reassessment either IPI stocks should be separated from target stocks, or the proportion of IPI should be reduced to 2%; the only alternative is to assess IPI stocks against P1.

See guidance G7.4.13 in the GFCR.

End of Annex GPA Guidance

Annex GPB Harmonised fisheries – Guidance

This Annex includes guidance on the following:

GPB1 Scope	296
GPB2.1 Harmonisation of trees	297
GPB3 Harmonisation of assessment outcomes and conditions	297

GPB1 Scope ▲

Background

At its November 2006 meeting, the TAB re-emphasised MSC's policy intent to encourage 'certificate sharing' amongst fishery participants in the same fishery as widely as possible.

The TAB underscored that the existence of 'free riders' in the system and the exclusion of potential new participants, who are willing to pay a reasonable share of the costs of original assessment and ongoing requirements of certification, are both undesirable outcomes.

Previous TAB direction had sought to promote, at the beginning of the assessment process, the establishment of clear and fair arrangements that would provide for new entrants to join a certified fishery. The intent was to remove one of the many possible motivations that could otherwise drive different client groups to initiate separate assessments on overlapping fisheries.

The MSC wishes to discourage overlapping assessments to avoid potential financial, consistency and credibility costs, including:

- Fisheries managers, scientists and stakeholders receiving duplicate requests for information;
- Duplication of costs for a fishery's certification, including that expense incurred by fishery management agencies pre- and post-certification; and
- The possibility of different assessments placing different conditions upon the same fisheries managers and upon different fishery clients.

In July 2007 the TAB released requirements and guidance on the processes that CABs were to undertake in the case of overlapping assessments. The requirements and guidance specifically addressed harmonisation between two fisheries starting the assessment process at about the same time. The TAB has since reviewed and revised this to provide guidance for harmonisation where a fishery in assessment overlaps with an already certified fishery and to cover the expectations at surveillance.

The MSC expects that the outcome of any given assessment, particularly the overall result that is achieved (whether a pass or a fail) and the setting of conditions, will be consistent between overlapping fisheries in assessment and certified fisheries.

GPB2 Harmonisation of Trees ▲

MSC requires fisheries to implement the latest version of the certification requirements on reassessment, subject to the timelines defined by the Board. Fisheries using default trees do not therefore have to harmonise their trees with those used in earlier fisheries, even those that are overlapping. Fisheries determining their own trees (non-default assessment trees), however, still have to harmonise trees with previous fisheries.

GPB3 Harmonisation of Assessment Outcomes and Conditions ▲

The purpose of this guidance is to assist CABs in the harmonisation of assessment outcomes and conditions in overlapping fisheries. The general principle in Annex PB is that any new assessment or audit within a harmonised group of overlapping fisheries should take into consideration the conclusions of any previous assessment or audit such that harmonisation is maintained over time.

The aim of harmonisation is to avoid the perversity that two essentially similar fisheries receive materially different scores (materially in the number, and text, of conditions, or in the overall outcome, whether a pass or a fail). Fisheries that are identical should receive identical scores. Any other result undermines the credibility of the MSC.

There may be occasions when different conditions are justified, but they will be rare, and based only on three things:

- Differences in requirement from different versions of the default trees.
- Changes to management or status that have occurred since the original assessment.
- Differences in actual performance of the fisheries.

Although [PB3.1.3.3](#) allows some differences in scores to be possible, teams should engage in harmonisation discussions until consensus is reached about whether the fisheries should receive a condition or not on a certain PI, and about whether the harmonised fisheries should pass or fail overall. Such discussions should make allowance for developments in the fisheries over time.

Harmonisation should always be conducted for overlapping fisheries in the scoring of Principle 1, due to the requirement for the assessment to focus on the full extent of the stock and all fishery impacts upon it. Harmonisation may also sometimes be required in Principle 2 and in Principle 3.

In cases where there are two UoCs from the same UoA, harmonisation should be expected to result in largely identical scores and conditions etc unless there is a very clear explanation of the different practices adopted by the two UoCs that justifies their different scores. If one P2 species was classified as 'main' in the first assessment it should continue to be classified as main in subsequent harmonised fisheries and subject to the UoA cumulative assessment as appropriate.

MSC's intent here is that a part of a UoA that simply decides for commercial or other reasons to have a separate certificate should not be allowed to have different scoring from other members of the same fleet. The MSC is specific in wanting to avoid the situation, particularly in P2, where a fishery in receipt of conditions is able to split itself into several

Fisheries Certification Requirements

small fisheries and avoid conditions, or avoiding the requirements to deal with cumulative P2 issues, simply because the impacts of the UoAs are much smaller.

In the case of Principle 3, harmonisation could be necessary for the PIs in the Fisheries Specific Management System Component (3.2.1-3.2.4). This may be the case, for example, where two UoAs include different vessels, but both groups operate in the same fleet, under the same national management. For the Governance and Policy component (PIs 3.1.1-3.1.3), MSC accepts that it may be impractical to attempt full harmonisation, due to the large number of fisheries that may be managed under the relevant policy framework, and the differences in application between them.

Harmonisation of condition timelines

As a condition is outcome based, not process based, two clients may propose different methods for achieving the same condition outcome. However, in some cases harmonisation of timelines may be possible and desirable.

When deciding on harmonisation of conditions and condition timelines, CABs should consider the time difference involved between two clients' certifications and whether the deliverables can be achieved during the same timeframe.

The team should provide a rationale and justification in cases where condition timelines are not harmonised.

Harmonisation of scores and conditions when evaluating cumulative impacts of MSC UoAs in PI 2.1.1, PI 2.2.1 and PI 2.4.2

In 2014, MSC introduced a number of requirements for assessing the cumulative impacts of certified fisheries

When two or more UoAs enter assessment at the same time, the regular rules of harmonization apply and outcomes and conditions need to be accounted for in terms of cumulative impacts and elsewhere.

When an under-assessment-UoA overlaps with a certified fishery, the assessment team should consider the cumulative impact of all MSC UoAs during the assessment process of that UoA, if the UoA and the certified fisheries all meet the trigger requirement for cumulative impacts (e.g. they all classify primary species A as "main").

Certified fisheries do not need to consider the cumulative impact of any newly certified UoA until the first surveillance audit following the certification of the additional UoA.

When taking into account the cumulative impacts of several MSC UoAs, it could be the case that a currently certified fishery would have its P2 scores changed if a newly certified fishery increases the cumulative impact on a depleted stock.

The MSC does not intend that the rather undesirable outcome of a failure in a currently certified fishery should result from the new requirements on cumulative impact assessment. Therefore, if this change in scores could lead to a fail for the already certified fishery as determined during the surveillance audit, CABs should submit a variation request arguing that the already certified fishery should not be suspended but instead should receive a new condition with appropriate milestones to address the rebuilding of the depleted stock.

On the other hand, because cumulative impacts for VME habitats are dealt with under management requirements rather than under outcome requirements, MSC would expect that cumulative precautionary avoidance of impact should be implemented rapidly. For instance, it could be the case that a newly certified fishery has designated and closed new VMEs.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

These VMEs should also be considered by the already certified fishery at its next surveillance audit.

The terms of an existing condition for currently certified fisheries might also change with the arrival of newly certified fisheries triggering the cumulative impact requirements, particularly for VMEs. This would likely be the case when the cumulative impact has increased and when differing partial strategies have not aligned. In such cases, the harmonisation of milestones to achieve a demonstrably effective strategy at SG80 (for PI 2.1.1) or to provide evidence that VMEs are being protected by all MSC UoAs at SG80 (for PI 2.4.2) might then also be altered.

In this case, teams should allow increased flexibility in terms of setting the milestones of the harmonised condition, thereby ensuring that already certified fisheries working on achieving their milestones would not fail to meet them during the certificate lifetime due to the arrival of the newly certified fisheries and the higher impact.

Example

An example of such flexibility could be adopting the milestones and timelines of the newly certified fisheries at the surveillance audit, thereby effectively extending the time by which the condition needs to be closed for already certified fisheries.

In some cases, fisheries might have to undergo re-assessment with an existing condition, and this could fall in the category of exceptional circumstances as outlined in CR 7.11.8.

End of Annex GPB Guidance

Annex GPC: Fishery Team Leader, Team Member, Team And Peer Reviewer Qualifications And Competencies – Guidance

GPC3 Fishery Team Qualifications and Competence Criteria

GPC3.1.1 Guidance to Table PC3 ▲

Fish Stock Assessment (Row 1)

Where 5 years or more experience is stated, the 5 years refers to an individual team member needing to have 5 years' experience. The experience cannot be the accumulated experience of different team members e.g. 1+4 years, 2+3 etc.

Fish Stock Biology / Ecology (Row 2)

For a team member to comply with this requirement, 'similar biology' in this context means that where the target species is:

- A demersal fish species, experience with other demersal fish species qualifies;
- A pelagic fish species, experience with other pelagic fish species qualifies;
- A crustacean species, experience with other crustacean species qualifies;
- A mollusc species, experience with other mollusc species qualifies;
- Similarly for any other taxon.

Current knowledge of the country, language and local fishery context (Row 5)

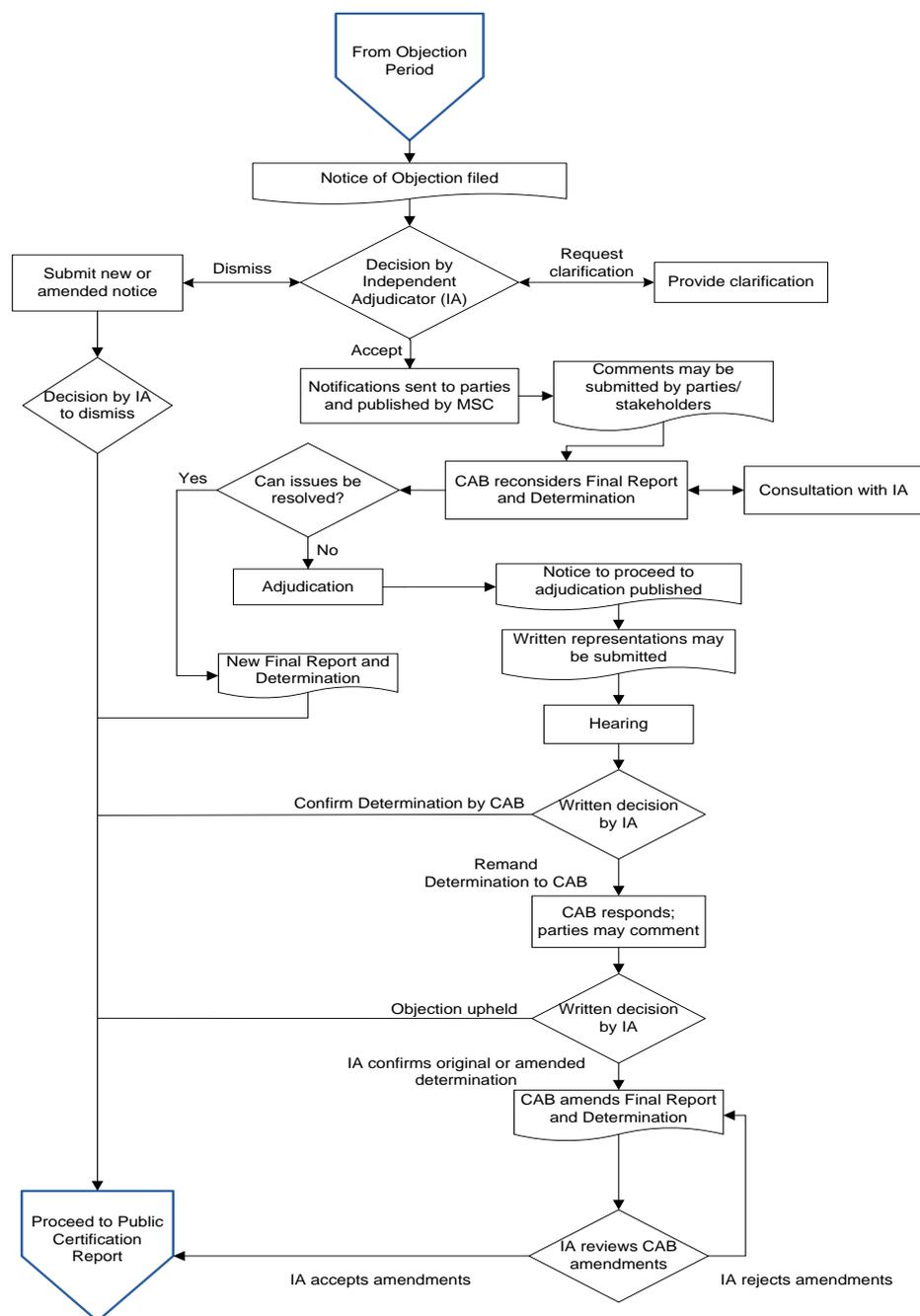
Common language means knowledge of a language that is spoken by clients and stakeholders. The intent of the requirement is to ensure that information can be clearly exchanged between the team, client and stakeholders and understood by most parties. For example, the common language in Indonesia could be Bahasa, in African countries it could be English, French or Portuguese.

A 'relevant fishery' in this context means one where the scale of the fishery and the stock assessment techniques and management approaches are similar to those in the fishery under assessment. For example, if the fishery under assessment is a small-scale operation with limited quantitative information and informal management systems, then 'relevant fisheries' would have these characteristics as well. Similarly, if the fishery under assessment is large scale or industrial with fully quantitative stock assessment approaches and related management systems (such as harvest control rules related to input/output measures) then 'relevant fisheries' would also have these characteristics.

End of Annex GPC Guidance

Annex GPD: Objections Procedure ▲

Figure GPD1: Objections Procedure Process Flow Chart



Annex GPE: Expedited assessment for extension of scope



Background

Annex PE outlines the minimum assessment requirements necessary for an expedited assessment to extend the scope of an already certified fishery to another fishery. There may be instances where additional assessment steps or evaluations are necessary to ensure that the entire assessment of the fishery across all three Principles continues to be accurate when additional stocks are added to Principle 1.

The requirements given for the expedited assessment in [Annex PE](#) are the minimum requirements. If CABs determine in their review of the fishery that additional assessment steps or Performance Indicator rescoring is necessary, such steps should be undertaken in addition to those outlined in [Annex PE](#).

GPE2 Assessment Process

GPE2.1.1 Gap analysis ▲

CABs may use Table G12 in section GFCR G7.22 to describe the outcome of the gap analysis.

GPE2.2.3 Considerations for rescoring of P2 species ▲

In cases where there are a number of stocks identified as 'main primary' in a certified fishery, assessing one or more of these against Principle 1 instead will mean that they are removed as 'scoring elements' from Principle 2 'primary species'.

The remaining scoring elements in Principle 2 'primary species' should then be rescored according to FCR 7.10.7.4. This does not require a P2 expert.

In the unlikely event that the new P2 score causes a failure of the fishery due to the reallocation of P2 species to P1, the CAB may elect to discontinue the expedited P1 assessment process for one or more stocks.

End of Annex GPE Guidance

Annex GPF: Risk-Based Framework – Guidance

This Annex contains guidance on the following:

GPF1 Introduction to the Risk-Based Framework (RBF)	304
GPF1.1 Applying the RBF in scoring different PIs	305
GPF2 Stakeholder involvement in RBF	308
GPF2.1 Announcing the RBF	308
GPF2.2 Information gathering	308
GPF2.3 Stakeholder consultation	309
GPF3 Conducting a Consequence Analysis (CA)	311
GPF3.1 Preparation	311
GPF3.2 Stakeholder involvement within CA	313
GPF3.3 Determine the CA score	313
GPF4 Conducting a Productivity-Susceptibility Analysis (PSA)	316
GPF4.3 PSA Step 1: Score the productivity attributes	320
GPF4.4 PSA Step 2: Score the susceptibility attributes	321
GPF4.5 PSA Step 3: Determine the PSA score and equivalent MSC score	327
GPF5 Scoring the Fishery using the RBF for Species Performance Indicators (PIs 1.1.1, 2.1.1, 2.2.1 and 2.3.1)	
GPF6 Setting conditions using the RBF for species Performance Indicators (PIs 1.1.1, 2.1.1, 2.2.1 & 2.3.1)	328
GPF7 Conducting the Consequence Spatial Analysis (CSA)	330
GPF7.1 Preparation	331
GPF7.2 Stakeholder involvement within the CSA	331
GPF7.3 CSA Step 1: Define the habitat(s)	331
GPF7.4 CSA Step 2: Score the consequence attributes	332
GPF7.5 CSA Step 3: Score the spatial attributes	333
GPF7.6 CSA Step 4: Determine the CSA score and equivalent MSC score	335
GPF7.7 Setting conditions using the CSA	336
GPF8 Conducting a Scale Intensity Consequence Analysis (SICA)	336
GPF8.1 Preparation	336
GPF8.2 Stakeholder involvement within SICA	336
GPF8.4 SICA Step 2: Score spatial scale of fishing activity potentially causing an impact to the ecosystem	336
GPF8.5 SICA Step 3: Score temporal scale of fishing activity potentially causing an impact to the ecosystem	337
GPF8.6 SICA Step 4: Score the intensity of the relevant activity	337
GPF8.7 SICA Step 5: Identify the most vulnerable subcomponent of the ecosystem, and score the consequence of the activity on the subcomponent	338

GPF1 Introduction to the Risk-Based Framework (RBF) ▲

The FAO Guidelines on Ecolabelling for Fisheries and Fisheries Products from Marine Capture Fisheries provided the conceptual basis for the adoption of a risk-based approach to the evaluation of fisheries against certain PIs in circumstances where information is inadequate to evaluate those PIs conventionally.

In paragraph 32, the FAO guidelines state:

“...the use of less elaborate methods for assessment of stocks should not preclude fisheries from possible certification for ecolabelling”. It goes on to note “...to the extent that the application of such methods results in greater uncertainty about the state of the ‘stock under consideration’, more precautionary approaches to managing such resources will be required which may necessitate lower levels of utilisation of the resource”.

The inference is that in the absence of detailed scientific information on fishery impacts and providing the existence of tools which provide a qualitative or semi-quantitative indication of the risk inherent in a fishery, it should be possible to assess such a fishery for certification based on the extent to which fishing activity is demonstrably “precautionary” or of “less risk”.

The MSC adopted an approach which considers a combination of risk-based indicators in order to arrive at a risk score which translates to a parallel MSC score. The risk-based indicators used in this process, include qualitative and semi-quantitative proxies which assess the impact of fishing activity or correspond with the level of utilisation of the resource. In addition, the approach requires the team to adopt the worst case scenario approach to scoring the risk indicators in the absence of credible evidence, information or logical reasoning to the contrary.

In the event of the RBF being used for a particular PI, the likelihood of being scored high risk and of receiving a low MSC scores on the specified indicator increases with increasing scale and intensity of utilisation of resources in the fishery. While the RBF allows the use of more qualitative information obtained under an extensive stakeholder consultation process, increased uncertainty around the information or evidence used, or the lack of consensus on particular information obtained in the process will result in the most cautious (worst plausible) score being applied, furthering the likelihood of lower MSC scores.

The MSC's intention in allowing the use of a risk-based approach is to ensure that its assessment process is accessible to data-deficient fisheries that are readily demonstrated as operating in a precautionary manner.

Implicit in the approach is a recognition that fisheries which are operating at relatively high levels of utilisation pose a greater risk to the ecological components with which they interact and that the assessment and management of such risks must be underpinned by comprehensive scientific information.

MSC is aware of the existence of other risk-based analysis tools, as well as the fact that the development of these tools is a continuous process. MSC has not calibrated any alternative risk-based approaches against the default assessment tree, but would encourage interested parties to consider calibration of such equivalent risk-based approaches against the SGs in the default assessment tree. Future versions of the MSC RBF will reflect the continuing evolution and refinement of these tools and methods.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The precaution built into the RBF methods creates an incentive to use the conventional process when data are available. Precautionary levels can be defined as the probability that the resulting RBF score is greater than the score obtained if using the default assessment tree (DAT). RBF parameters have been calibrated so that when scoring data-deficient scoring elements it is expected that:

- For PI 1.1.1, the probability of the RBF score is greater than the DAT is <0.01
- For PI 2.1.1, the probability of the RBF score is greater than the DAT is <0.05
- For PI 2.2.1, the probability of the RBF score is greater than the DAT is <0.2, or resulting scores are on average less than 10 scoring points above PI 2.1.1
- For PI 2.3.1, the probability of the RBF score is greater than the DAT is <0.05
- For PI 2.4.1, the probability of the RBF score is greater than the DAT is <0.5
- For PI 2.5.1, the precautionary level of the RBF has not been calculated.

GPF1.1 Applying the RBF in scoring different PIs ▲

Background

The RBF is designed for use in association with the default tree for Principles 1 and 2. The RBF was adopted by MSC to enable scoring of fisheries in data-deficient situations, particularly for the “outcome” PIs associated with Principles 1 and 2.

The RBF may be applied to the whole PI if all scoring elements are determined to be data-deficient. However, there may be occasions where quantitative information is available for some scoring elements within outcome PIs (i.e. species under PI 2.1.1) and not others. In such cases, the decision on the use of the RBF should be taken at a scoring element level.

For Principle 1 PIs, there is typically only one scoring element being considered (target species of the fishery), but under Principle 2, the full range of primary and secondary species, habitats, or ecosystems could be assessed.

There can be cases where there are both data-deficient and non-data-deficient scoring elements (e.g. different primary species). Scoring elements not scored using the RBF should be scored using the default tree, taking account of any accompanying guidance specific to that PI.

Scoring elements not scored using the RBF should be scored using the default tree, taking account of any accompanying guidance specific to that PI.

GPF1.1.1 RBF Methodologies ▲

The RBF includes a set of methods for assessing the risk to each of the ecological components from activities associated with the fishery in assessment. The methods range in complexity and data requirements from a system based on expert judgment, to a semi-quantitative analysis to assess potential risk. Each of the methods provides a risk-based estimate of the impact of the fishery on a data-deficient scoring element being scored within outcome PI. These risk estimates are in turn related to the specific SGs used to assess the performance of the fishery against the PI for a particular component.

To achieve a good result, it is necessary to plan the stakeholder consultation strategy leading for each of the methodologies in such a way as to ensure effective participation from a range of stakeholders.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The robustness of these methodologies relies heavily on the inputs of a suitably broad stakeholder group with a good balance of knowledge about the fishery and the ecological components on which it impacts. [Table GPF1](#) below provides a description of the four methodologies within the RBF.

Table GPF1: Description of methodologies within the RBF

Methodology	Description
Consequence Analysis (CA)	The CA is a semi-quantitative analysis that assesses the consequence of fishing activity on a particular species subcomponent. The CA is partly based on the structured collection of qualitative information from a diverse group of stakeholders, as well as using information on proxies that can be used to estimate changes to the relevant subcomponent in a fishery.
Productivity Susceptibility Analysis (PSA)	The PSA requires information about the productivity and susceptibility of each species in a given PI, and uses this information to individually score a set of attributes using pre-established PSA tables. Any attribute for which there is insufficient data is automatically assigned the highest risk score: at least some of information is thus needed to demonstrate low risk in the fishery.
Consequence Spatial Analysis (CSA)	The CSA requires information about the consequence of fishing activities and spatial distribution of habitat types and uses this information to individually score a set of attributes using pre-established CSA tables. Any attribute for which there are insufficient data is automatically assigned the highest risk score: at least some level of information is needed to demonstrate low risk in the fishery.
Scale Intensity Consequence Analysis (SICA)	The SICA is a qualitative analysis which aims to identify which activities lead to a significant impact on any ecosystem. A SICA is partly based on the structured collection of qualitative information pertaining to the PI in question from a diverse group of stakeholders.

GPF1.1.2 PIs scored using the RBF ▲

[Table GPF2](#) defines which PIs within the default tree may be scored using RBF methodologies. PIs for which the RBF may directly be used are indicated in bold. PIs for which special guidance applies when the RBF is used are indicated in italics.

Table GPF2: RBF methodologies available for scoring PIs and implications for non-RBF PIs

PI	RBF applicability
1.1.1 Stock status	Both CA and PSA applicable.
1.1.2 Stock rebuilding	The RBF is designed for use in cases where direct measures of stock status, such as estimates of biomass, are not available. There is no direct measure to determine whether the stock is actually depleted and would need to consider rebuilding measures under PI 1.1.2. What is known after scoring PI 1.1.1 using the RBF is the risk of the stock being fished such that recruitment would be impaired. Rather than requiring a fishery which scores less than 80 on PI 1.1.1 to use the RBF to score PI 1.1.2, section PF6 shall apply.
1.2.1 Harvest strategy	RBF not applicable.
1.2.2 Harvest control tools and rules	RBF not applicable.
1.2.3 Information / monitoring	RBF not applicable.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

1.2.4	Assessment of stock status	<i>If RBF is used to score PI 1.1.1, a default score of 80 shall be awarded to this PI. For data-limited fisheries the application of the RBF may be the only "assessment of stock status" available.</i>
2.1.1	Primary species outcome	Only PSA applicable.
2.1.2	Primary species management strategy	RBF not applicable.
2.1.3	Primary species information	<i>RBF not applicable, but there is an RBF specific scoring issue, which has to be scored. This additional scoring issue has been included since the information required to meet default scoring issues would not be expected to be available in data-limited situations applicable to the RBF. If the RBF is used to score PI 2.1.1, it is recognised that the information is not sufficient to estimate outcome status with respect to biologically based limits. For this reason the alternative scoring issue (a) is scored instead of the default assessment tree scoring issue (a).</i>
2.2.1	Secondary species outcome	Only PSA applicable.
2.2.2	Secondary species management strategy	RBF not applicable.
2.2.3	Secondary species information	<i>RBF not applicable, but there is an RBF specific scoring issue, which has to be scored. This additional scoring issue has been included since the information required to meet default scoring issues would not be expected to be available in data-limited situations applicable to the RBF. If the RBF is used to score 2.2.1 it is recognised that the information is not sufficient to estimate outcome status with respect to biologically based limits. For this reason the alternative scoring issue (a) is scored instead of the default assessment tree scoring issue (a).</i>
2.3.1	ETP Species outcome	Only PSA applicable.
2.3.2	ETP Species management strategy	RBF not applicable.
2.3.3	ETP Species information	<i>RBF not applicable, but there is an RBF specific scoring issue, which has to be scored. This additional scoring issue has been included since the information required to meet default scoring issues would not be expected to be available in data-limited situations applicable to the RBF. If the RBF is used to score 2.3.1 it is recognised that the information is not sufficient to estimate outcome status with respect to biologically based limits. For this reason the alternative scoring issue (a) is scored instead of the default assessment tree scoring issue (a).</i>
2.4.1	Habitats outcome	Only CSA applicable.
2.4.2	Habitats management strategy	RBF not applicable.
2.4.3	Habitats information	<i>RBF not applicable, but there are RBF specific scoring issues, which have to be scored. These additional scoring issues has been included since the information required to meet default scoring issues would not be expected to be available in data-limited situations applicable to the</i>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

	<i>RBF. If the RBF is used to score 2.4.1 it is recognised that the information is not sufficient to identify habitats encountered by the fishery or to determine the impact of the fishery on habitats encountered. For this reason alternative scoring issues a and b are scored instead of the default assessment tree scoring issue (a) and (b).</i>
2.5.1 Ecosystem outcome	Only SICA applicable.
2.5.2 Ecosystem management strategy	RBF not applicable.
2.5.3 Ecosystem information	RBF not applicable.
Principle 3	The RBF is designed to allow CABs to determine the risk that a fishery is posing undue harm to a species, habitat, or ecosystem. The RBF does not apply to Principle 3.

GPF2 Stakeholder Involvement in RBF

GPF2.1 Announcing the RBF ▲

Background

The use of the RBF needs to be communicated before the site visit to ensure stakeholders can effectively engage in the RBF process for all scoring elements being assessed.

The announcement of the use of the RBF should be done when the fishery assessment is first announced. The CAB may decide to trigger the RBF for a scoring element after the fishery announcement; however, this will require additional communication to stakeholders prior to the site visit. Moreover, if the RBF is triggered during or after the site visit this will require an additional site visit to be scheduled. Therefore, where it is not yet clear whether a scoring element meets criteria in Table 3 in the FCR, CABs are encouraged to announce the possibility of using RBF at the fishery announcement stage. In this case, and in order to improve efficiency of the assessment process, CABs should announce use of the RBF at fishery announcement and plan the site visit as if it was an RBF assessment as set out in [PF2.1](#), [PF2.2](#).and [PF2.3](#). If information is found at the site visit that means that the RBF is not after all necessary, the fishery may proceed with a non-RBF assessment for this scoring element.

GPF2.2 Information gathering ▲

Background

Identification of target species, primary species, secondary species, habitats and ecosystems potentially impacted by the fishery is part of this process, and is often possible through existing data and reports.

Expert judgement and anecdotal evidence is also used to compile these preliminary lists. Stakeholders are then consulted, individually and at fishery management meetings, on the preliminary list with additions and deletions made, and rationale recorded for the particular decisions.

GPF2.2.1 Information gathering ▲

The information gathering and preparation stage involves compiling preliminary background information needed to score the fishery.

GPF2.2.1.a Management arrangements ▲

For instance information of management arrangements, such as quotas, limited entry, gear restrictions, spatial closures, depth limits, etc.

GPF2.2.1.f Information about UoA/habitats ▲

The information gathering and preparation stages involve compiling preliminary background information needed to score the UoA. Where there is limited information available about habitat(s) encountered by the UoA, local knowledge and/or participatory methods may be used to define the habitat(s).

Example

For example, where there is no detailed understanding of a habitat's substratum, geomorphology, and (characteristic) biota (SGB), other sources of local information, such as data collected by local dive operators, may be used to support the determination of habitats. Furthermore, RBF stakeholder workshops can be used to determine, for example, biome classification or depth ranges of habitats using participatory methods to gather stakeholder knowledge.

GPF2.3 Stakeholder consultation

GPF2.3.2 Text to inform stakeholders ▲

The purpose of the recommended text is to encourage a broad range of stakeholders to attend site visits and to provide some advance notice on the nature of the RBF approach.

GPF2.3.3 Planning ▲

The stakeholder engagement process needs to be planned prior to the site visit to ensure effective participation of stakeholders. Background work should be undertaken to ensure that time with stakeholders can focus on new issues that are made known by stakeholders.

GPF2.3.3.1 Stakeholders ▲

Stakeholder consultation with a suitably broad stakeholder group with a good balance of knowledge about the fishery is critical in a risk assessment, particularly at the qualitative (CA/SICA) level of an assessment. Stakeholders provide expert judgement, local knowledge, hands-on experience, fishery-specific and ecological knowledge and raise issues that may not be covered in material provided to the team.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The group should include at least fishers, scientists, conservationists, indigenous representatives, managers, local residents, fish processors and others as necessary.

GPF2.3.3.2 Effective consultation ▲

Early identification of stakeholders is vital to ensuring effective consultation during the assessment process. Identification of stakeholders needs to occur both through contacts made known by the client, and also via active engagement methods. The choice of which method(s) to use depends on the circumstance of the fishery.

The CAB should consider using at least some of the following methods: newspapers, radio, e-mail, local organisations, etc.

GPF2.3.3.3 Location ▲

The location of the meetings is very important to ensure good participation of stakeholders. Factors that will affect the choice of meeting location could be:

- If stakeholders are spread over a wide area, it might be necessary to hold more than one set of meetings to allow for participation.
- The choice of venue needs to be considered depending on the number of stakeholders attending the meetings and the space needed for engagement.
- Meetings can be both formal and informal.
- Engagement can be effective in any location whether inside or outside as long as the team is prepared to run the workshop in that setting.

GPF2.3.3.4 Meetings ▲

Stakeholder meetings can be organised using a number of approaches: workshops, focus groups, separate meetings or a blended approach. The decision on how to structure the meetings depends on a number of considerations:

- The number of PIs that are being assessed using the RBF. It might be better to hold a separate RBF workshop with those who have information relevant to the PIs and with other stakeholders attending a different meeting(s).
- Stakeholder dynamics within the group will affect decision on whom to meet with together and whom separately.
- There may be conflicting opinions among group members. It might be useful to allow these opinions to be shared to help the team draw conclusions from the stakeholders.

GPF2.3.3.5 Cultural background ▲

Cultural sensitivity needs to be understood when planning meetings with different stakeholders.

GPF2.3.3.6 Language ▲

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Where different language levels exist amongst stakeholders, the CAB may consider holding separate meetings with different groups.

GPF2.3.3.7 Background information ▲

The objective of providing materials and background information is to ensure that stakeholders can be brought up to the same level of understanding ahead of the meeting.

GPF2.3.3.8 Participatory methods ▲

See Participatory Methods Toolkit for further guidance:

<http://www.msc.org/documents/get-certified/stakeholders/toolbox-for-stakeholder-participation-in-rbf-assessments/view?searchterm=participat>

GPF2.3.5 ▲

In situations where stakeholders do not reach consensus, the team should award the more precautionary score.

GPF3 Conducting a Consequence Analysis (CA)

GPF3.1 Preparation

GPF3.1.1 How to complete a CA template ▲

Each data-deficient species in Principle 1 will need its own CA. This may be done by defining each species as a separate UoA, or by scoring the species as separate scoring elements within a combined UoA (following the process in CR section 7.10.8).

GPF3.1.2.1 ▲

Where no indicator data is available for the target species it cannot be assessed against the MSC standard.

Table GPF3 shows an example of how to complete a CA template.

Table GPF3: Example of CA score and justification

Example of CA score and justification

PRINCIPLE ONE: Stock status outcome	Scoring element	Consequence subcomponents	Consequence score
XXX Scallop fishery	<i>Placopecten magellanicus</i>	Population size	60
		Reproductive capacity	
		Age/size/sex structure	
		Geographic range	
Rationale for most vulnerable subcomponent	Population size was considered the most vulnerable subcomponent based in the impact of exploitation patterns on biomass.		
Rationale for consequence score	<p>Information on fleet structure, fishing area and exploitation rates indicate that the stock is exploited at full exploitation rate. However trends in exploitation rates, biomass and recruitment indicate that fishing is not adversely damaging recruitment in the long term. As the fishery is defined as fully developed and operating at full capacity it cannot be concluded that its impact on population size is minimal or its impact on dynamics is none.</p> <p>Indicators used are:</p> <p>Fleet structure: There are three scallop fleets operating in the area: the AAA, BBB and CCC fleets. The AAA fleet, of which scallop fishing is the primary activity, has access to the whole area and is subject to quota limits and seasons. The BBB and CCC fleets have access to a portion of the area.</p> <p>Exploitation rates: Management aims for exploitation rates of 15%, considered as the exploitation rate that will not pose a risk on the productivity of the scallop population. Exploitation rates have been maintained generally at consistent levels with this management target.</p> <p>Fishing area and seasonality: Detailed distributional information of the AAA fleet's fishing effort is collected on a routine basis.</p> <p>Overall approach to scoring the AAA stock/biological unit: The scallop biological unit/stock was defined as area XXX. Therefore PI 1.1.1 was scored by considering scallops in the area XXX as a single stock. This approach was considered appropriate due to the biology of scallops.</p>		

GPF3.2 Stakeholder involvement within CA ▲

See guidance [GPF2.1](#), [GPF2.2](#) and [GPF2.3](#).

GPF3.3 Determine the CA score

GPF3.3.2 Examples of indicator (proxy) data to score consequence ▲

Table GPF4 provides some examples of indicator (proxy) trend data that may be used to score consequence.

It should be noted that the list is not exhaustive but seeks to give an indication of the types of indicator data needed to score the subcomponents. Where there is limited indicator information, the consequence score should be scored as high-risk.

The team may support the interpretation of indicator and trend data with other information known about the fishery and the expert judgment of the team.

Table GPF4: Examples of indicator (proxy) data to score consequence

Subcomponent	Indicator/Proxies
Population size	Catch, effort and CPUE time-series. Sex ratio in male only fisheries.
Reproductive capacity	Size class indexes. Catch composition time-series (sex ratio).
Age/size/sex structure	Catch length/age index or time-series. Catch composition (sex ratio) time-series.
Geographic range	Time-series species distribution.

Where judgements about risk are uncertain, the consequence category with the lowest score (highest risk) that is still regarded as plausible is chosen.

In the application of the Consequence Analysis, the risk that the fishery poses on stock status is determined without the use of reference points. Measures and trends of fishing effort, landings, exploitation rates, biomass and recruitment estimates and spawning events before recruiting to the fishery are examples of indicators that can be used to determine the risk associated to the fishing activity. The Consequence Analysis intends to be a measure of the risk that fishing poses to long-term recruitment dynamics.

Fisheries operating at full exploitation levels (the so-called large scale fisheries) will likely score below the 80 mark level and only in cases where available indicators provide evidence of recruitment not being adversely damaged will score the minimum pass mark of 60. On the other hand, fisheries operating at low exploitation levels in relation to the size of the stock and biology of the species are expected to obtain a higher score CA score, up to 100 in case that the impact of the fishing activity cannot be differentiated from the natural variability for this population.

The team should score 80 where available information shows changes in the population subcomponent that can be reasonably attributable to the fishing activity, but these are of such a low magnitude that the impact of the fishery is considered to be minimal on the population size and dynamics.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The team should score 60 where available information shows changes to the population subcomponent attributed to the fishing activity and these changes are of such magnitude that they cannot be considered as minimal.

Examples of consequence score rationales for each subcomponent are shown below:

Examples:

Population size rationale	CA score																						
Information on CPUE trends show stability over the last 20 years. Fishing mortality trends indicates that the fishery has occurred under low or very low exploitation rates relative to stock biomass. Recruitment indices showed no major changes in the last 10 years. It can be reasonably concluded that changes in the population due to fishing are of such low magnitude that cannot be detectable against the natural variability of the population.	100																						
Annual production is estimated to be higher than the removals by the fishery. Analysis of CPUE time-series suggests that the fishery over 23 years has not had a significant detrimental impact on the stock, which is estimated to be still near the virgin biomass level.	80																						
Trends in catches indicate that biomass removed has been kept below any levels that could have an effect on population dynamics. Exploitation rates are estimated not to pose a risk on population size or population dynamics. The stock is considered to be above the point where recruitment could be impaired. The current catches are lower than they were 10-20 years ago.	80																						
Information on landings and CPUE trends show stability over the last 10 years. <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin: 10px 0;"> <thead> <tr> <th>year</th> <th>2003</th> <th>2004</th> <th>2005</th> <th>2006</th> <th>2007</th> <th>2008</th> <th>2009</th> <th>2010</th> <th>2011</th> <th>2012</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CPUE</td> <td>978</td> <td>900</td> <td>950</td> <td>925</td> <td>1000</td> <td>1010</td> <td>975</td> <td>1023</td> <td>1099</td> <td>1050</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> Fishing mortality trends indicate that the fishery has occurred under low exploitation rates with catch and effort decreasing over the last 10 years (due to low prices and high fuel process). Recruitment indices showed no major changes in the period 2004–2012. The stock has recently increased. It cannot be concluded that changes in population due to fishing are not detectable against the natural variability of the population.	year	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	CPUE	978	900	950	925	1000	1010	975	1023	1099	1050	80
year	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012													
CPUE	978	900	950	925	1000	1010	975	1023	1099	1050													
Information on fleet structure, fishing area and exploitation rates indicate that the stock is exploited at full exploitation rate. However trends in exploitation rates, biomass and recruitment indicate that fishing is not adversely damaging recruitment in the long term. Surveys are used to estimate the abundance and distribution of commercial and pre-recruits. In addition to surveys, the status of the resource is evaluated from trends in catch per unit effort (CPUE) from logbook and observer data. As the fishery is defined as fully developed and operating at full capacity it cannot be concluded that its impact on population size is minimal or its impact on dynamics is none.	60																						
Information on landing, effort, and fishing mortality indicates that the crab fishing is a fully developed fishery likely to be occurring at full exploitation rates. CPUE on fully recruit crab indicates a decreasing trend in abundance. However CPUE for per recruit show that long term recruitment dynamics is not adversely damaged.	60																						
Stock indicators on biomass shows that biomass has decreased in recent years from peak levels reached in year 2005. Biomass level seems to be higher than the lowest level experienced at which recruitment was not impaired. Therefore it can be concluded that the fishery has not adversely damaged the long term recruitment	60																						

Fisheries Certification Requirements

dynamics.	
Available evidence indicates that recruitment dynamics are adversely affected. Therefore consequence is higher risk than 60. SSB has continuously declined since 2001. The 2013 SSB is the lowest observed in the time-series. The fishing mortality has shown a declining trend since the mid-1980s; it has been relatively stable in recent years, but still is considered to remain high given current SSB levels. Recent recruitments have been lower than earlier in the time-series, with the 2011 recruitment being the lowest.	fail

Reproductive capacity rationales	CA score
A slow-growing, long-lived species (more than 40 years of age). The estimated age at 50% selectivity (22 years) is well above the age at 50% maturity (5.3 years). Individuals should therefore have over 17 years of spawning before they enter the fishery, therefore ensuring the protection of a significant part of the adult population (survival of discards is assumed to be high). It can be concluded that the fishery is posing minimal impact on population size and none on dynamics.	80
The moderate to low exploitation rates, together with minimum landing size (MLS) that allows multiple spawning events indicates that the fishery has minimal impact on population dynamics. The status of the stock of crab in area, informed by stock indicators on biomass and fishing mortality, is considered good.	80
The cockle stock is intensively fished (33% of the estimated biomass). Available evidence suggests that there may be a detectable change in reproductive capacity as cockles are caught in their second year of growth. The Minimum Landing Size implemented for this fishery allow for catching individuals in their second year of growth. A retained cockle is defined as one that is retained by a gauge having a square opening of 20 mm measured across each side. Cockles of this length are in their second year of growth and will have spawned at least once before being caught. The harvest strategy ensures that long term recruitment dynamics is not adversely damaged by fishing	60

Age/size/sex structure rationales	CA score
Size frequency distribution of the species is available from a fully developed fishery, showing that recruitment is not being adversely damaged. However level of catch and fleet structure do not enable a qualitative assessment to determine that the impact of population dynamics is minimal.	60
In a crab fishery, available evidence indicates that there is a detectable change in size/sex structure. However information on abundance and recruitment indicates that the long-term recruitment dynamics has not been adversely damaged. There appears to be a reduced number of large males of sufficient size to mate with the largest females, and that has the potential effect of reducing the reproductive capacity of these largest females. Smaller male crabs may not be able to mate with large females. There is concern that reduced abundance of large male crabs may lead to sperm limitation and reduced levels of egg production if there are no males left in the population to mate with the larger females	60

Geographic range rationales	CA score
With only two or three boats fishing, fishing effort is very low, with exploitation rates	80

Fisheries Certification Requirements

of only 1 - 2% per year, and, in some years, considerably less. Since the fishery began in 1989, it has been calculated that 1,132 km² have been swept by the gear, with most of that in the period 1990–1998. This represents only 2% of the known stock distribution area (i.e. surveyed area). During the last five years fishing effort has been very low with an average annual swept area of only about 26 km², and there is no evidence of serial depletion of grounds.

GPF4 Conducting a Productivity-Susceptibility Analysis (PSA)

GPF4.1.4 Assessment of main ▲

Assessment of “main” species only considers species that are commonly encountered by the UoA. Please refer to guidance GSA3.4.2 (Designation of main species).

GPF4.1.5 Grouping species ▲

When evaluating PIs 2.1.1 or 2.2.1, the team may group species as an option for dealing with a high number of species (>15 species). The team may also wish to undertake a PSA on all species being considered in the assessment to allow for a score that is above 80 for a particular PI.

GPF4.1.5.1 Example of grouping by species ▲

The taxonomic level at which species may be grouped should be determined by the team and be based on the P2 species characteristics, and this grouping should be no higher than the taxonomic level ‘family’.

Table GPF1 below represents a list of P2 species in a fictional fishery. Before the site visit, the assessment team determined that there is one group (with seven species) and nine separate species needing to be scored using the RBF for PI 2.1.1.

Table GPF5: Example of Grouping by Species

Example: Grouping by Species

Species	Taxonomy (Order/Family)	Group
Yellowfin tuna (<i>Thunnus albacares</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Bigeye tuna (<i>Thunnus obesus</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Blackfin tuna (<i>Thunnus atlanticus</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Bluefin tuna (<i>Thunnus thynnus</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Cod (<i>Gadus Morhua</i>)	Gadiformes/Gadidae	n/a
European anchovy (<i>Engraulis encrasicolus</i>)	Clupeiformes/Engraulidae	n/a
Flying fish (<i>Exocoetus obtusirostris</i>)	Beloniformes/Excoetidae	n/a

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Flying halfbeak (<i>Euleptorhamphus velox</i>)	Beloniformes/Hemiramphidae	n/a
Grouper (<i>Epinephelus striatus</i>)	Perciformes/Serranidae	n/a
Porcupinefish (<i>Diodon hystrix</i>)	Tetraodontiformes/Diodontidae	n/a
Rainbow runner (<i>Elagatis bipinnulata</i>)	Perciformes/Carangidae	n/a
Remora (<i>Remora remora</i>)	Perciformes/Echeneidae	n/a
Atlantic mackerel (<i>Scomber scombrus</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Pacific sierra (<i>Scomberomorus sierra</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Wahoo (<i>Acanthocybium solandri</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
King mackerel (<i>Scomberomorus cavalla</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Longtail tuna (<i>Thunnus tonggol</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Slender tuna (<i>Allothunnus fallai</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Bullet tuna (<i>Auxis rochei</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Frigate tuna (<i>Auxis thazard</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Leaping bonito (<i>Cybiosarda elegans</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Butterfly kingfish (<i>Gasterochisma melampus</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1
Atlantic bonito (<i>Sarda sarda</i>)	Perciformes/Scrombridae	Group 1

Fisheries Certification Requirements

GPF4.1.5.2 Scoring groups ▲

The scores of these species will determine the score for all species within the group.

At least two species within each taxonomic group should be scored using the PSA.

There may be instances where the same species is the most vulnerable according to a high-risk productivity score and through a qualitative process with stakeholders.

Productivity attributes can be scored ahead of the stakeholder meetings using information sources such as Fishbase (www.fishbase.org).

The determination of which species is most at risk is made qualitatively based on knowledge about inherent species vulnerability, as well as frequency of interaction with the fishery, and level of damage done (e.g. released alive vs. always killed).

More than two species can be scored as appropriate.

GPF4.1.5.5 PSA results ▲

The PSA derived MSC score should be assigned equally to each of the species in the species group (Table GPF6).

The PSA spreadsheet in Table GPF7 shows the results of the above-mentioned example.

Where there are multiple scoring elements, these should be combined.

Table GPF6: Scoring most at risk species

Example: Scoring most at risk species

Species group	Representative species	PSA score	MSC score	Number of species in group	Final group score
Scrombridae	Bluefin tuna (<i>Thunnus thynnus</i>)	2.70	78.0	15	75
	Wahoo (<i>Acanthocybium solandri</i>)	2.89	71.7		

Table GPF7: Scoring Elements and Grouping Species into the RBF Spreadsheet

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	AA	AB	AC	AD	AE
1	Only main species scored?			No						Productivity Scores [1-3]								Susceptibility Scores [1-3]				Cumulative only									
2	Scoring element	First of each scoring element	Species Grouping only (At Risk) species with associate species group	Species Grouping Number of species in species group which this species represents (N/2)	Family name	Scientific name	Common name	Species type	Gear type	Average age at maturity	Average max age	Fecundity	Average max size	Average size at Maturity	Reproductive strategy	Trophic level	Density Dependence	Total Productivity (average)	Availability	Encounterability	Selectivity	Post-capture mortality	Total (multiplicative)	FSA Score	Catch (tons)	Weighting	Weighted Total	Weighted FSA Score	MSC PSA-derived score	Risk Category Name	MSC scoring guidepost
3	1	First	Species Group 1	7	Scombridae	Thunnus thynnus	Bluefin tuna	Non-invertebrate	Purse seine	2	3	1	2	2	1	3	2.14	3	3	3	1	1.65	2.70					78	Med	60-79	
4	2	First	Species Group 1	8	Scombridae	Acanthocybium solan	Wahoo	Non-invertebrate	Purse seine	1	2	1	2	2	1	3	1.71	3	3	2	2	2.33	2.89					72	Med	60-79	
5	3	First			Gadidae	Gadus Morhua	Cod	Non-invertebrate	Purse seine	1	2	1	2	2	1	3	1.71	3	3	2	2	1.88	2.54					83	Low	≥80	
6	4	First			Engraulidae	Engraulis encrasicolus	European anchovy	Non-invertebrate	Purse seine	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1.14	2	2	3	3	1.88	2.20					91	Low	≥80	
7	5	First			Exocoetidae	Exocoetus obtusirostr	Flying fish	Non-invertebrate	Purse seine	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1.14	1	1	3	3	1.20	1.68					99	Low	≥80	
8	6	First			Hemiramphidae	Euleptorhamphus vel	Flying halfbeak	Non-invertebrate	Purse seine	2	2	2	1	1	2	2	1.71	2	2	3	3	1.88	2.54					83	Low	≥80	
9	7	First			Serranidae	Epinephelus striatus	Grouper	Non-invertebrate	Purse seine	2	2	1	2	2	2	3	2.00	2	2	3	3	1.88	2.74					77	Med	60-79	
10	8	First			Diodontidae	Diodon hystrix	Porcupine fish	Non-invertebrate	Purse seine	1	2	1	1	1	1	3	1.43	2	2	2	3	1.58	2.13					93	Low	≥80	
11	9	First			Carangidae	Elagatis bipinnulata	Rainbow runner	Non-invertebrate	Purse seine	2	3	2	2	2	1	3	2.14	2	3	2	3	1.88	2.85					73	Med	60-79	
12	10	First			Echeneidae	Remora remora	Remora	Non-invertebrate	Purse seine	3	3	3	1	2	3	2	2.43	2	3	1	3	1.43	2.82					74	Med	60-79	
13																															
14																															

GPF4.1.5.6 ▲

Species grouping is optional, but also implies that the score will be capped at 80. In order to achieve a score of above 80, all of the species will need to be assessed using the PSA.

GPF4.3 PSA Step 1: Score the productivity attributes ▲

The level of fishing impact a species can sustain depends on the inherent productivity of the species. The productivity determines how rapidly a species can recover from depletion or impact due to fishing. The productivity of a species is determined by species attributes such as longevity, growth rate, fecundity, recruitment and natural mortality. Information about productivity attributes can be found in scientific literature and websites like FishBase (www.fishbase.org).

GPF4.3.1 ▲

The team should look at various sources of information to determine correct productivity characteristics for scoring elements being assessed under the PSA.

GPF4.3.2 ▲

Cut-off values for scoring the productivity attributes as low, medium and high were developed after considering the distribution of attribute values for a wide range of taxa from within Australia. In testing the approach in subsequent discussions around the world and validating the attributes against intrinsic rate of increase (r), we have improved our understanding to recognise that taxa-specific cut-offs, and geographic (tropical, vs. temperate, vs. deep sea) may be appropriate. This can be further improved by additional research, and MSC work is ongoing to progress this.

Guidance to Table PF4: Productivity attributes and scores – Density Dependence ▲

The PSA assessment of invertebrate fisheries might be improved if taking into account their particularities.

Depensatory effects (Allee effects) can arise from the reduced probability of fertilisation, and they should therefore be taken into consideration when scoring species productivity.

It is suggested that depensatory effects may have a profound effect on the resilience of marine invertebrates to fishing mortality, as shown in some crabs and lobsters, and often also sedentary bivalves.

The Density-dependent attribute should be scored as 3 (high risk, low productivity) in cases where the species slow down the rate of population growth at low densities (depensatory dynamics). On the other side, species showing compensatory dynamics at low densities should be scored as 1 (low risk, high productivity) because density dependence acts to stabilise the populations.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Lack of evidence should not be interpreted as evidence that depensatory dynamics are rare and unimportant. In absence of information on depensatory dynamics, or where no justification is provided supporting lower risk scores (1 or 2), the highest risk score (3, low productivity) should be used.

GPF4.4 PSA Step 2: Score the susceptibility attributes ▲

The level of fishing impact that a scoring species can sustain depends on its vulnerability or susceptibility to capture or damage by the fishery activities. The susceptibility of a species is determined by attributes such as the degree of overlap between the distribution of the fishery and the distribution of the species; and whether the species occurs at the same depth in the water column as the fishing gear.

GPF4.4.1 ▲

Susceptibility is estimated as the product of four independent aspects; Areal overlap (Availability), Encounterability, Selectivity and post-capture mortality (PCM).

If there are no other fisheries listed that impact the stock, only the susceptibility of the species to the UoA should be scored.

GPF4.4.3.1 ▲

Where a species is scored cumulatively as set out in requirements on [PF 4.3](#), the team should list all other fisheries or MSC UoAs impacting the stock. In the 'MSC RBF worksheet' the team should manually input data on catch per gear/ fishery impacting the stock (for 1.1.1 column W, for 2.1.1 & 2.2.1 column Y).

GPF4.4.3.2 ▲

Where catch percentages are unknown or too uncertain to make a determination on which species are main see guidance for GSA 3.4.2.

GPF4.4.4 ▲

"MSC UoAs" refers to those UoAs that are in assessment or certified at the time the UoA announces its assessment or re-assessment on the MSC website and that have "main" species in common.

GPF4.4.4.1.a ▲

This could be tonnage of total catch for each of the fisheries being considered.

GPF4.4.4.1.b ▲

The decision on assigned weightings needs to be made following consultation with stakeholders.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Example:

Catch data indicates that the UoA (longline fishery) catches approximately 1000t of the target species Atlantic cod. The catch data of the gillnet fishery that also retains Atlantic cod from the same stock cannot be estimated. During the RBF stakeholder workshop stakeholders agreed that the longline catch of 1000t comprises approximately 40% of the total catch while the gillnet fishery contribute about 10% of total catch. The weighting score of for the longline fishery will be 2 while the weighting score for the gillnet fishery will be 1.

GPF4.4.6 ▲

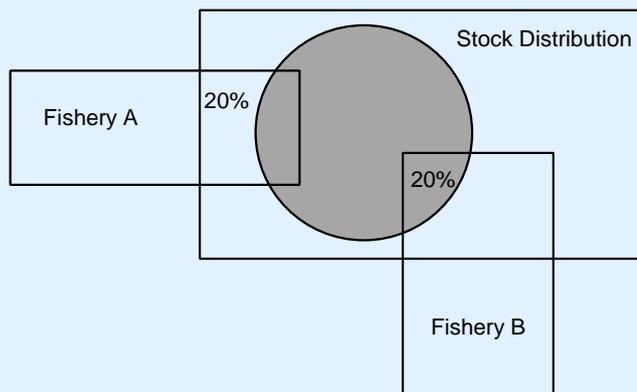
The areal overlap is the sum of the total percentage overlap of all fishery activity with the areal concentration of a stock. For example, if there are two fisheries both impacting 20% of the distribution of the species, the result would be 40% overlap, and a high-risk score awarded.

Estimation of overlap should take any uneven distribution or concentration of the stock into account, including consideration of core and marginal ranges.

Example: Areal overlap

A demersal species has a wide stock distribution. However, due to its preferred habitat, the species is found in the area shaded in grey for 95% of the time. Such behavioural patterns reduce the overlap between the species and the fishing activity (from 40% to ~20%) of fishery A and B (if considering the susceptibility cumulatively and this should be considered in scoring). If the species in the example showed migratory behaviour then this would present a different situation (Figure GPF1).

Figure GPF1: Scoring areal overlap



This introduces appropriate precaution in the case where neither qualitative nor quantitative data are available.

Where a fishery overlaps a large proportion of a stock distribution range the risk is high

Fisheries Certification Requirements

because the species has no refuge, and the potential for impact is high.

GPF4.4.6.4 ▲

Example:

For example, on the species that are known to school, and the gear interacts with the schools, a high-risk score should be awarded for this attribute.

GPF4.4.7 ▲

Low, medium and high should be interpreted based on the likelihood of a gear encountering a species.

Where a fishery overlaps a large proportion of a stock distribution range, the risk is high because the species has no refuge, and the potential for impact is high. [Table GPF8](#) below shows an example of how to score encounterability.

Encounterability should also be scored as the sum of the depth range of gear types, so if two gear types are deployed at depth ranges where more than 30% of the concentration of a species are likely to occur, this should be scored as high-risk.

Each fishery will have the same encounterability score as it is an aggregate of all gear types affecting the stock. It is assumed that encounterability would be scored as high-risk for a targeted species.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

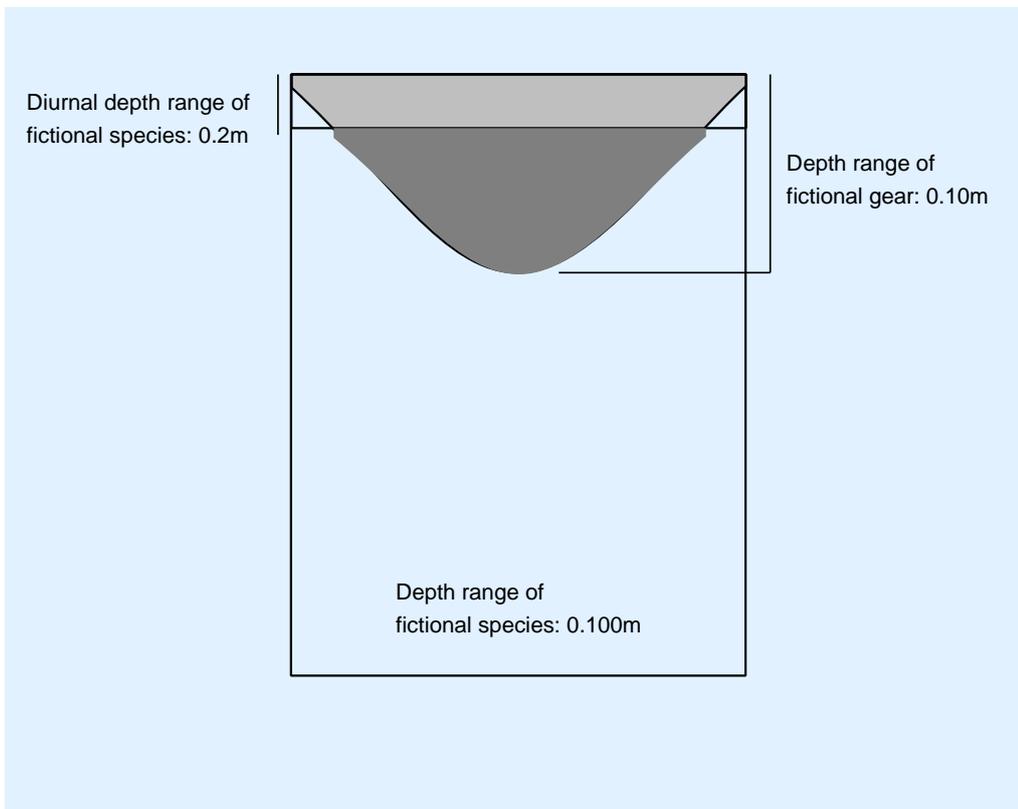
Example: Scoring encounterability

Table GPF8: Example of scoring encounterability

Scenario	Encounterability score
Pelagic species has a total depth range of 0-100m, and the depth range of the gear is 0-10m.	Low
Pelagic species has a total depth range of 0-100m, and the depth range of the gear is 0-10m. If the diurnal behavioural patterns are what is targeted by a fishery that operates at night this greatly increases the overlap of the gear with the species. See Figure GPF2.	High
The species that is known to migrate diurnally, and the gear interacts with the a high concentration of the species at a particular time of the day.	High
If the fishery uses a gillnet, the chances of encounter for lobsters living in crevices is low/	Low
If a pot fishery uses attractive bait, the chance of encounter for lobsters is high.	High
A species occurring principally near the bottom will have low encounterability from a gear fishing in mid-water.	Low
A pot fishery would have high encounterability even in a highly rugged environment if it uses bait as an attractant.	High
Target species	High
Pelagic species has a total depth range of 0–100m, and the depth range of the gear is 0–50m.	Medium
A benthopelagic species inhabit both on the sea floor and just above it (e.g. up to 50m from the sea bottom). The species has a total depth range of 200–400m. A mid-water gear with a depth range of 50–250m will have medium encounterability with this species.	Medium

Figure GPF2: Example of scoring encounterability

Fisheries Certification Requirements



GPF4.4.8 ▲

Selectivity provides an estimate of retention by the fishing gear and is scored based on the risk that the gear operation retains individuals smaller than the size of maturity [Table GPF9](#) explains the terms used to score selectivity.

The assessment of risk should be based on review of empirical or analogous catch profile data or should be considered unlikely (or improbable) based on information for the species, fishing gear and operation of the fishery.

GPF4.4.8.3 ▲

The team should score the selectivity of the gear type considering its potential to retain immature fish. Two elements have been defined in order to adequately assess the selectivity attribute.

When scoring the element (a), the team should determine the frequency of deployments in which immature fish is caught. The team should only consider the frequency and not the number or proportion of juveniles caught. For example:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- If juveniles are caught in 70% of gear deployments, susceptibility score for element (a) is 3 (high susceptibility).
- If juveniles are caught in 70% of gear deployments but the proportion of juveniles in each deployment is very low, susceptibility score is still 3 (high susceptibility).
- If juveniles are caught in only 1% of gear deployments, but when occurs the proportion of juveniles is very high (e.g. 80%), susceptibility score is still 1 (low susceptibility)

When scoring the element (b) the team should focus in determine the potential of the gear/fishing method to retain juveniles or, in other words the ability of the juveniles to escape or avoid that particular gear.

GPF4.4.9.1 ▲

In assessing the probability that if a species is captured it would be released in condition that would permit subsequent survival, the team may consider for example: biological factors that may limit the potential of a species to be captured alive; handling practices of the fishery(ies) being considered; the time taken to clear discards from the deck, etc.

Where possible, observer data should be verified in face-to-face observer meetings to make sure that the observer is qualified to identify the species concerned.

GPF4.4.10 ▲

Examples are provided in [Table GPF9](#) below to assist consideration of whether an adjustment to a risk score is warranted.

Table GPF9: Examples of adjustment to a risk score

Examples: Adjustment to a risk score	
Attribute	Justification for adjustment
Areal overlap	<p>The behavioural patterns of a species may increase their susceptibility to fishing. For instance, a species may have a large distribution but displays schooling behaviour that the fishery encounters, so the risk score should be adjusted up to ensure the risk is properly considered as part of the assessment.</p> <p>The information to score area overlap in the fishery region is quite coarse. Observer input may be used to adjust areal overlap scores for some species. If qualified observers report very low numbers of a species, say only one seen during 10 years' experience on the fishing vessels, then areal overlap may be changed to low. If the observer reports seeing the species between 33% and 66% of days spent on the fishing grounds, then areal overlap is rescored as medium. If the species is seen on more than 66% of days, then the areal overlap score cannot be reduced from "high". Unless there are independent field observations (non-fishers) during commercial operations, it is not appropriate to override areal overlap scores.</p>
Encounterability	<p>Encounterability is scored by estimating the overlap with the deployed fishing gear. The dominant habitat, and hence area occupied for reptiles and mammals is the very upper ocean (epipelagic zone). These air breathing species are vulnerable to drowning before the gear is recovered to the fishing vessel. As a</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

	<p>result, the default encounterability score for these air-breathing groups is “high”. In fisheries that have observer programmes, encounterability scores may be reduced from a “high” score. For example, if an observer sees sharks every day he/she observes fishing but the sharks never approach the gear or take fish off the hooks, then encounterability is rescored as “low”. For fisheries without independent field observations during commercial fishing (e.g. observer programmes), it is not appropriate to override encounterability scores.</p> <p>The behavioural patterns of a species that may increase its susceptibility to fishing. For instance, a species may have a high depth range because it migrates diurnally so a high concentration of the stock could be encountered by the fishing gear. In this example, the risk score should be adjusted up to ensure the risk is properly considered as part of the assessment.</p>
Selectivity	Selectivity overrides are not appropriate.
Post-capture mortality (PCM)	For all species retained in the fishery, post-capture mortality is high. PCM is scored as “high” unless there is information that indicates that animals are released alive. Observers can also provide independent verification of life status of released individuals. Where observers can verify that fishers regularly release >66% (>33%) of individuals of a given species alive during normal fishing operations and there is evidence of survivorship, then the scores is changed to low (med). For some fisheries, additional data on PCM may also be available from field experiments.

GPF4.5 PSA Step 3: Determine the PSA score and equivalent MSC score ▲

This is done automatically using the “MSC RBF worksheet” for RBF assessments.

PSA score is automatically rounded to two decimal points and MSC score per scoring element is rounded to the nearest whole number.

The relative position of the component on the plot will determine relative risk. The overall risk value for a component is the Euclidean distance from the origin of the graph (0,0) ([Box GPF1](#)).

Box GPF1: Calculation of the overall risk score

Calculation of Euclidean distance:

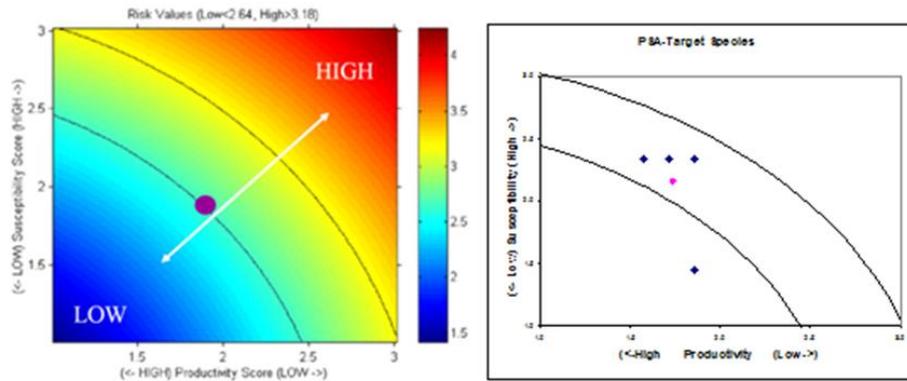
For each component unit (e.g. species) the attributes for productivity are scored [1 3] (high, medium, low productivity). These attribute scores are averaged to provide an overall productivity score in the interval [1 3]. Similarly for each unit the attributes within the four aspects of susceptibility are also scored [1 3] (low, medium, and high susceptibility). These aspects are multiplied and rescaled to the interval [1 3] to provide a susceptibility score.

These two scores are then plotted on the PSA diagnostic plot. A single risk score is calculated as the Euclidean distance from the nominal origin [0.5, 0.7], calculated as

$R = \sqrt{(P^2 + S^2)}$; where R is the risk score, P is the productivity score, and S the susceptibility score. This single risk score allows a ranking of all units considered.

The divisions between risk categories and hence scoring guideposts are based on dividing the area of the PSA plots into equal thirds, as shown in [Figure GPF3](#):

Figure GPF3: Examples of diagnostic charts for displaying PSA values for each species



Left Chart: Low risk species have high productivity and low susceptibility, while high risk species have low productivity and high susceptibility. The curved lines divide the potential risk scores into thirds on the basis of the Euclidean distance from the origin (0,0).

Right Chart: Example PSA plot for a set of target species. Note the curved lines that divide the risk space into equal thirds.

When assessing PIs 1.1.1, 2.1.1 and 2.3.1 using the RBF, the quadratic equation used for the PSA is:

$$\text{MSC Score} = -11.965(\text{PSA})^2 + 32.28(\text{PSA}) + 78.259$$

However, when scoring data-deficient scoring elements in PI 2.2.1, a different quadratic equation is used in order to reflect the precautionary levels expected for this PI, as outlined in section GPF1.

$$\text{MSC Score} = -5.8(\text{PSA})^2 + 6.9(\text{PSA}) + 105.0$$

There is a direct quadratic relationship ($R^2=1$) between overall PSA scores and MSC score equivalents. This has been derived by setting the lowest possible risk score (i.e. all attributes score low risk) as equivalent to an MSC score of 100 and setting the lower and upper bounds of the “medium risk” range as equivalent to MSC scores of 60 and 80, respectively. A curve through these points is described by the conversion equation above.

GPF5 Scoring the Fishery using the RBF for Species Performance Indicators (PIs 1.1.1, 2.1.1, 2.2.1 and 2.3.1)

GPF 5.1.1.1 ▲

In the MSC RBF worksheet the CA score can be manually inputted and this generates the MSC score for each PI 1.1.1 scoring element automatically using rules set out in [Table PF7](#).

GPF5.2.2 ▲

In the MSC RBF worksheet, where there are multiple scoring elements and they are all data-deficient the final PI score is automatically calculated in the 'automated scoring' tab

GPF5.3.1.1 ▲

The term 'additional information' should be interpreted as any other relevant information not specifically addressed in sections PF3.3 (determining the CA score), PF4.3 (scoring productivity attributes) or PF4.4 (Scoring susceptibility attributes). The use of additional information does not exempt the team from the requirement of assessing all required information in sections above and awarding the more precautionary score where the required information is limited.

GPF6 Setting Conditions Using the RBF for Species Performance Indicators (PIs 1.1.1, 2.1.1, 2.2.1 & 2.3.1)

GPF6.1.2 ▲

A CAB may elect to test if the proposed client action plan will have the desired effect at the time of agreeing corrective actions by re-running the PSA.

The team may use PSA results to assist with condition setting, by identifying the set of productivity and susceptibility attributes that have contributed to a high risk. The fishery could be then asked to reduce the risk by implementing changes in the identified attributes (i.e. by the setting of a condition related to reducing susceptibility).

Since productivity attributes are inherent to the species, these attributes cannot be changed through fisheries improvements. Where individual productivity attributes have been defaulted to "high risk" because of lack of information, these risk scores could be reduced if additional studies revealed the risk level was actually lower. For example, if the risk score for a particular secondary species was due to high encounterability and high PCM, then the corrective action might be to restrict fishing to night time or reduce the mortality when that species is captured. These actions can even be tested, by simulating changing the PSA attribute scores and observing if the risk category changes.

It would be important to ensure that any future RBF score with the corrective action proposed (e.g. alternative gear) did not identify a consequential problem for another, currently unaffected, species.

GPF6.1.3 ▲

Although the fishery does not have empirical or analytical reference points for that species at initial assessment, for target species, proxy data is needed to score the Consequence of the fishing activity on the target species. In the certificate lifetime the fishery is expected to develop empirical or analytical reference points by gathering more information on proxies and indicators. If the fishery develops empirical reference points for the species it can use the default assessment tree at consequent MSC assessments.

Example:

Fishery X assessed their target species using the RBF, the reason for this was that while they had 5 years of CPUE data had not used the indicator to develop reference points. Target species scored 80 with the CA on population size (using CPUE data) and 80 with the PSA, a MSC score of 80 was assigned. Once MSC certified, the fishery implemented a detailed on-board logbook system which allowed detailed data on length/age and catch composition to be collected which was then used to develop reference points for the stock. At re-assessment Fishery X had developed both outcome and trigger (empirical) reference points which allowed them to score PI 1.1.1 using the default assessment tree.

GPF7 Conducting the Consequence Spatial Analysis (CSA) ▲

Background

The CSA was structured around a set of attributes that describe gear impacts (consequence) and the habitat (spatial) for each habitat being affected by different fishing gears. The CSA methodology and attributes were based on the Ecological Risk Assessment for the Effects of Fishing methodology (Hobday et al., 2007¹¹, Williams et al., 2011¹²), which was derived from images, expert opinion, and scientific literature. Both the method and attributes were modified to enable their application to MSC assessments.

The CSA consists of the following steps:

- **CSA Step 1:** Define the habitat(s).
- **CSA Step 2:** Score the consequence attributes.
- **CSA Step 3:** Score the spatial attributes.
- **CSA Step 4:** Determine the CSA score and equivalent MSC score.

The CSA examines attributes of each habitat associated with the unit of assessment (UoA) in order to provide a relative measure of the risk on the scoring element (habitat) from fishing activities.

Transition from CRv1.3 to FCRv2.0

The RBF was modified in MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements v2.0, but the MSC would like to encourage its use for UoAs being assessed against v1.3. Therefore, CABs who wish to utilise this tool should contact the assessment's Fisheries Assessment Manager for guidance on how to adjust the CSA to work with v1.3. CABs would need to submit a variation request to 27.8.8.4 (v1.3) stating that, instead of using Annex CC (v1.3) for data-deficient habitats, Annex PF (v2.0) would be used.

¹¹ Hobday, A. J., Smith, A., Webb, H., Daley, R., Wayte, S., Bulman, C., Dowdney, J., Williams, A., Sporcic, M., Dambacher, J., Fuller, M. and Walker, T., 2007. *Ecological risk assessment for the effects of fishing: methodology*. Report R04/1072 for the Australian Fisheries Management Authority, Canberra.

¹² Williams, A., Dowdney, J., Smith, A.D.M., Hobday, A.J., and Fuller, M., 2011. Evaluating impacts of fishing on benthic habitats: A risk assessment framework applied to Australian fisheries. *Fisheries Research* 112(3):154-167.

GPF7.1 Preparation

GPF7.1.3 ▲

Refer to GSA3.13.1.1 for guidance on what constitutes an appropriate level of information to score the default assessment tree.

GPF7.1.5 ▲

Assessment of “main” habitats considers habitats that are commonly encountered by the UoA or vulnerable marine ecosystems (VMEs). Refer to SA3.13.4, the subclauses, and the associated guidance.

GPF7.1.7 ▲

In the absence of detailed scientific information, it should be possible to assess the UoA’s impacts based on the extent to which fishing activity is demonstrably “precautionary” or of “less risk”. The CSA requires the team to consider the worst-case scenario. For example, if fishing takes place on both the outer continental shelf and slope, the natural disturbance score should be 3 and not 2, reflecting the higher potential risk of impact on the slope. Another example is that the removability of biota score should be 2 if a Danish seine UoA impacts both low, robust biota and erect, medium biota.

The CSA also requires the team to consider UoA specifics in the absence of credible evidence, information, or logical reasoning to the contrary. For example, the addition of rockhoppers to trawl gear allows the UoA to contact previously inaccessible areas, which may contain more complex habitats. Impacts to these more complex habitats should be considered when scoring the attributes. Conversely, some modifications may lessen the gear’s impact on the habitat, which should also be considered.

GPF7.2 Stakeholder involvement within the CSA ▲

See section [PF2.3](#) for more information on stakeholder involvement within the RBF.

GPF7.3 CSA Step 1: Define the habitat(s)

GPF7.3.1 ▲

Refer to SA3.13.5, the subclauses, and the associated guidance for more details on how to interpret the “managed area”.

GPF7.3.3 ▲

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The examples of biomes, sub-biomes, and features and their associated depths in [Table PF9](#) are provided to emphasise the large differences that exist in the fauna and their life-history characteristics between depth zones and to provide a way to estimate the spatial extent of habitats (refer to the spatial overlap attribute below). For example, the extent of sediment plains on the outer shelf could be roughly estimated and differentiated from sediment plains on the slope.

GPF7.4 CSA Step 2: Score the consequence attributes ▲

The two habitat-productivity attributes' scores are multiplied by two to reflect the increased importance of these two attributes. The consequence score is then the average of all habitat-productivity and gear-habitat interaction attribute scores.

GPF7.4.1 ▲

Biotas have different intrinsic rates of growth, reproduction, and regeneration, which are also variable in different conditions of temperature, nutrients, and productivity (Williams et al., 2010¹³). Habitat depth is an appropriate proxy for regeneration of biota because rates of growth and reproduction will typically be slower in deeper water where temperature and nutrient availability are lower (Hobday et al., 2007). Further, the type of biota may be relevant since some (e.g., corals, crinoids, large sponges) grow at a very slow rate compared to others (e.g., encrusting species).

GPF7.4.2 ▲

Biotas subject to greater natural disturbances have a greater intrinsic ability to recover from impacts. Common natural disturbances result from wave action and tidal movements, but other factors, such as local currents, storm surge, flooding, temperature fluctuations, and predation, may also be relevant. Habitat depth is considered a suitable proxy for natural disturbance because deeper habitats typically experience fewer or no natural disturbances.

GPF7.4.4 ▲

Removability of biota is influenced by the size, height, robustness, flexibility, and structural complexity of the attached biota. Large, erect, inflexible, or delicate biota is more vulnerable to physical damage or removal than small, low, flexible, robust, or deep-burrowing biota. Rugosity refers to the ridged nature of the organism. In general, more rugose (i.e., complex) organisms are more vulnerable to the impacts of fishing.

The interactions between a high diversity of biota types and non-standardised fishing gear can make this attribute difficult to score. For example, demersal trawls can have a range of factors influencing removability, such as footrope weight, use of chains, roller or bobbin size, bridle configuration, and door weight. The full range of possible interactions should be considered.

GPF7.4.5 ▲

¹³ Williams, A., Schlacher, T.A., Rowden, A.A., Althaus, F., Clark, M.R., Bowden, D.A., Stewart, R., Bax, N.J., Consalvey, M. and Kloser, R.J., 2010. 'Seamount megabenthic assemblages fail to recover from trawling impacts'. *Marine Ecology* 31: 183-199.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

For example, intermediate-sized rock fragments (6 cm to 3 m) that form attachment sites for sessile fauna can be permanently removed. While soft sediment is less resistant to impact, it is generally more resilient because it accumulates relatively rapidly and is altered by burrowing fauna.

GPF7.4.6 ▲

The substratum hardness attribute considers whether or not the seabed will be degraded by contact with fishing gear. For example, hard rocky bottom is intrinsically more resistant to impact.

GPF7.4.7 ▲

Substratum ruggedness is scored based on the concept that the access of gear to the habitat is related to the ruggedness of the substratum. For example, large rocks and steep slopes make an area less accessible to mobile gear.

GPF7.4.8 ▲

For example, fishing impact can be greater on steep slopes because they are more prone to landslide damage.

GPF7.5 CSA Step 3: Score the spatial attributes ▲

The spatial score is the geometric mean of the spatial attributes.

GPF7.5.1 ▲

Gear footprint can be considered in terms of gear size, weight, and mobility. This attribute measures the level of impact by considering the frequency and intensity of gear disturbance on the habitat. The gear footprint scores are based on the number of encounters needed to impact structural biota in a unit area (Table GPF10).

If the UoA's gear does not fit into these encounter categories, the team should provide rationale for increasing or decreasing the default gear footprint score (Table PF16).

Table GPF10: Number of encounters needed to cause impact (modified from Williams et al., 2011)

Gear type	Many encounters needed to cause impact	Some encounters needed to cause impact	Single encounter needed to cause impact
Hand collection	✓		
Handline	✓		
Demersal longline		✓	
Bottom gill net or other entangling net		✓	
Danish seine		✓	

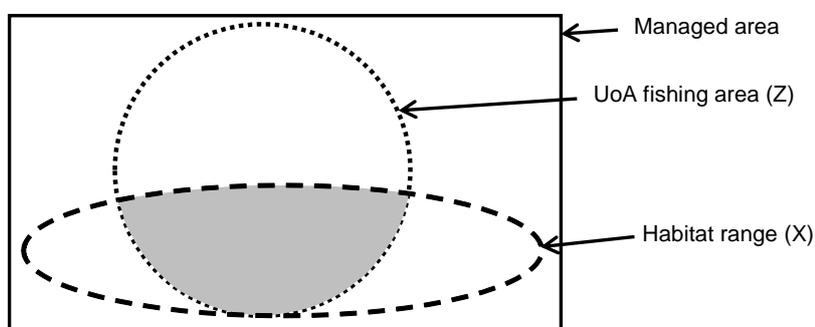
Fisheries Certification Requirements

Demersal trawl (including pair, otter twin-rig, and otter multi-rig)			✓
Dredge			✓

GPF7.5.2 ▲

The spatial overlap attribute is the overlap of a habitat's range in the "managed area" with the UoA's fishing area. It is calculated as the UoA's fishing area (Z) divided by the habitat's range within the "managed area" (X) (Figure GPF4). Refer to GPF7.3.3 and Table PF9 for details on estimating the spatial extent of habitats.

Figure GPF4: Visualising the spatial overlap attribute



Spatial overlap (S) = proportion of X overlapped by Z

GPF7.5.3 ▲

The encounterability attribute is a measure of how likely the UoA is to encounter the habitat within the "managed area".

Example:

For example, a UoA using semi-pelagic gear that rarely impacts a benthic habitat would likely have an encounterability score of 0.5 for that habitat. Similarly, a demersal trawl will have low encounterability with a habitat that is confined to heavy reef areas because the trawl cannot operate in such areas. Conversely, a UoA that uses a gear that targets a certain habitat will have high encounterability with that habitat.

Additional guidance on spatial overlap and encounterability

The spatial overlap and encounterability attributes should be estimated based on the most recent spatial distribution of fishing by the UoA. The assessed fishing area of the UoA should be modified according to the gear being used.

For instance, if longlines can be used only in part of the "managed area" (e.g., due to habitat characteristics that do not allow for longline usage throughout the entire area), this part is what should be assessed here.

GPF7.6 CSA Step 4: Determine the CSA score and equivalent MSC score ▲

Calculation of Euclidean distance

For each scoring element (i.e., habitat), the attributes for consequence are scored 1-3 (low, medium, and high). Both of the habitat-productivity attributes' scores are doubled, and then all habitat-productivity and gear-habitat interaction attribute scores are averaged to provide an overall consequence score in the interval. Similarly, the spatial attributes are also scored 1-3 (low, medium, and high) though half scores are possible. The spatial score is derived as a geometric mean of the three spatial scores. The consequence and spatial scores then produce a single risk score calculated as the Euclidean distance from the nominal origin [0,0]: $R = \sqrt{(C^2 + S^2)}$; where R is the risk score, C is the consequence score, and S the spatial score.

Conversion of the CSA score

The CSA score is converted to an MSC score by using the quadratic equation:

$$\text{MSC Score} = -9.1(\text{CSA})^2 + 22.4(\text{CSA}) + 86.8$$

There is a direct quadratic relationship ($R^2=1$) between overall CSA scores and MSC score equivalents. This has been derived setting the highest possible risk score (i.e., all attributes score high risk) as equivalent to an MSC score of 0; setting the lowest possible risk score (i.e., all attributes score low risk) as equivalent to an MSC score of 100; and setting the lower and upper bounds of the "medium risk" range as equivalent to MSC scores of 60 and 80, respectively.

GPF7.6.3.1 ▲

If additional information is available to justify modifying the final MSC score, the team should use it to adjust the score either upward or downward by a maximum of 10 points.

Such information not previously considered within the CSA may, for example, include gear footprint modifications that lessen the gear's impact by lessening the gear's size, weight, or mobility.

All MSC-score adjustments should be based on the attributes scored and on how the UoA varies from the scores provided within the scoring tables for each attribute. Examples of these score adjustments are as follows:

Examples:

- The UoA is fishing with a Danish seine that has been modified to be lighter and have less bottom contact. The weight of the gear is relevant to the gear footprint attribute, and the lessened bottom contact could be relevant to the removability of biota, removability of substratum, and/or encounterability attributes; therefore, it is likely appropriate to increase the final MSC score.
- A demersal trawl UoA with the addition of rockhoppers have an increased impact (given their increased ability to access previously untrawlable areas) when compared to trawls without such additions. It would likely be appropriate to adjust the final MSC score downward since this type of gear has increased impact on the removability of biota and removability of substratum attributes as well as increased spatial overlap

and/or encounterability attribute scores.

GPF7.7 Setting conditions using the CSA

GPF7.7.1 ▲

Since some of the CSA attributes are inherent to the habitat (i.e., consequence attributes), these attributes are not likely to be changed through UoA improvements. Where attributes have been defaulted to “high risk” because of a lack of information, these risk scores could be reduced if additional studies revealed the risk level was actually lower.

However, UoA improvements can lead to changes within the spatial attributes. For example, UoAs can implement gear modifications that lessen their habitat impacts, UoAs can change their spatial footprint by avoiding high-score scoring elements (e.g., corals), and/or UoAs can make other spatial changes that will result in lower-risk impacts.

A CAB may elect to test if the proposed client action plan will have the desired effect at the time of agreeing corrective actions by re-running the CSA. For instance, if the proposal was to decrease the removability of a biota by using a different type of gear, it would be important to ensure that any future CSA score with the alternative gear did not identify a consequential problem for another, currently unaffected habitat.

GPF8 Conducting a Scale Intensity Consequence Analysis (SICA)

GPF8.1 Preparation ▲

The five MSC SICA steps are summarised below:

- **SICA Step 1:** Prepare a SICA scoring template for each ecosystem.
- **SICA Step 2:** Score spatial scale of the fishing activity
- **SICA Step 3:** Score temporal scale of the fishing activity
- **SICA Step 4:** Score the intensity of the fishing activity
- **SICA Step 5:** Score the consequence resulting from the scale and intensity of the fishing activity for the most vulnerable subcomponent of the ecosystem.

GPF8.2 Stakeholder involvement within SICA ▲

Background work should have been undertaken to ensure that time with stakeholders can be focused on new issues.

GPF8.4 SICA Step 2: Score spatial scale of fishing activity potentially causing an impact to the ecosystem

GPF8.4.2 ▲

The scale score is not used to mathematically determine the consequence score. It is used in the process of making judgements about the level of intensity at SICA Step 4. Two different activities that scored the same for spatial scale might have quite different outcomes for the intensity score.

Example of use of Table PF19

If fishing activity (e.g. capture by longline) takes place within 20% of the overall distribution of the ecosystem, then the spatial scale is scored as 3. This needs to be the overlap of the fishing activity of the unit of assessment with the ecosystem distribution.

GPF8.5 SICA Step 3: Score temporal scale of fishing activity potentially causing an impact to the ecosystem

GPF8.5.2 ▲

Examples of scoring temporal scale:

- If the fishing activity occurs daily, the temporal scale is scored as 6.
- If fishing activity occurs once per year, then the temporal scale is scored as 3.
- It may be more logical for some activities to consider the aggregate number of days that an activity occurs. For example, if the activity “fishing” was undertaken by 10 boats during the same 150 days of the year, the score is 4. If the same 10 boats each spend 30 non-overlapping days fishing, the temporal scale of the activity is a sum of 300 days, indicating that a score of 6 is appropriate.
- In the case where the activity occurs over many days, but only every 10 years, the number of days divided by the number of years in the cycle is used to determine the score. For example, 100 days of an activity every 10 years averages to 10 days every year, so that a score of 3 is appropriate.

GPF8.6 SICA Step 4: Score the intensity of the relevant activity

GPF8.6.1 ▲

The intensity score should be consistent with the spatial and temporal scores.

Example of scoring intensity

For example, if spatial and temporal scales are scored as high-risk, the same would be expected when scoring intensity. The overall intensity of fishing activity depends upon the distribution and dynamics of the stock being exploited.

GPF8.6.1.2 ▲

The intensity score should be a reflection of the frequency and extent that the fishing activity is detected.

Scale scores are not used to mathematically determine the consequence score. It is used in the process of making judgements about level of intensity. Two different activities that scored the same for scale score might have quite different outcomes for the intensity score.

Examples of Intensity scores:

- Spatial scale score = low, and temporal scale score = low
Intensity score = low
Rationale: The spatial overlap between the fishing activity and the ecosystem distribution is extremely low and the fishing activity occurs very rarely. This combination of scale scores indicates that the intensity of this fishery is negligible.
- Spatial scale score = high, and temporal scale score = high
Intensity score = high
Rationale: The fishing activity covers almost half of the spatial distribution of the stock and the fishing activity occurs frequently. This combination of scale scores indicates that the intensity of this fishery is severe.
- Spatial scale score = low, and temporal scale score = high
Intensity score = high
Rationale: The spatial overlap between the fishing activity and the stock distribution is extremely low, and the fishing activity occurs frequently. This combination of scale scores indicates that the intensity of this fishery is severe as the fishing activity has frequent impacts on a small part of the stock.

GPF8.7 SICA Step 5: Identify the most vulnerable subcomponent of the ecosystem, and score the consequence of the activity on the subcomponent

GPF8.7.2 ▲

Subcomponents are indicators of health. Selecting the subcomponent to score should reflect which of the subcomponents have been the most affected by the fishing activity.

GPF8.7.4 ▲

If the scale and intensity are scored as medium or high risk, additional information would need to be used to rationalise a low or medium risk score for consequence.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Stakeholder perception should be combined with additional qualitative and quantitative information to support the consequence score. Without such information, the consequence score should be scored as high risk , and the fishery would fail in such instances.

GPF8.7.4.1 ▲

Where attributes have been defaulted to “high risk” because of a lack of information, these risk scores could be reduced if additional studies revealed the risk level was actually lower. For example, if the SICA results in a consequence score of 80 but additional information is available and presented that justifies raising this score, a final MSC score of 85 may be given.

End of Annex GPF Guidance

Fishery Process Annex GPX - Guidance to CABs on Stakeholder Consultation – Informative

Introduction

Stakeholder consultation in the context of a fishery assessment against the MSC fisheries standard is not a trivial procedural requirement, but a critical and substantive component of the overall assessment process. The MSC fishery assessment process depends on an effective engagement with stakeholders that can inform the assessment of a fishery's performance. Stakeholders, including government agencies, conservation organisations, and other fisheries and commercial interests, represent the most critical source of information regarding a fishery independent of the client.

Among other things, stakeholders can shed light on the diversity of perspectives on the fishery, and can highlight any areas of controversy. The stakeholder consultation process allows an assessment to determine the soundness of a range of perspectives, make an objective and balanced evaluation of the fishery against the MSC fisheries standard, and enhance the transparency of the assessment process and the durability of a certification decision. To ensure effective consultation with stakeholders, CAB must consider stakeholder views on all aspects of an assessment and the performance of a fishery.

Purpose of this document

This document is intended to provide CABs with consistent and specific guidelines regarding MSC expectations for meaningful stakeholder consultation in the assessment of fisheries interested in applying for MSC certification. The primary audience for the document is comprised of the accredited certification bodies who will be conducting MSC fishery assessments. Secondary audiences include clients and stakeholders who will benefit from understanding the role and expectations for stakeholder consultation in the assessment process.

Nature and scope of this document

This document complements the MSC Certification Requirements that set out the requirements of the fishery assessment process. Recognising that some CABs are not necessarily expert in or experienced with stakeholder consultation of the sort envisioned by the MSC, this document specifically focuses on the stakeholder consultation components of the overall process, providing conceptual and technical guidance for conducting a meaningful stakeholder consultation process.

This document should be used in conjunction with the MSC Certification Requirements and the associated Guidance. These collectively provide instruction and guidance on the overall process. This guidance document should provide certification bodies, clients, stakeholders and others with insights into the MSC's expectations regarding appropriate and high quality fishery assessments against the MSC Standard.

The scope of this document begins with the pre-assessment phase and covers the assessment process through full assessment and production of the draft and

Fisheries Certification Requirements

final report. While stakeholders may have continued involvement in the certification surveillance and/or objections processes, this document does not provide specific guidance for their involvement in those processes.

Approach of this document

The approach used in this document is to incorporate the key elements of best practice in stakeholder consultation into the MSC fishery assessment process. It is critical to recognise that the specifics of an appropriate stakeholder consultation process will and should vary according to the unique circumstances and context of each fishery being considered, requiring judgment on the part of the CAB regarding the nature, scope and specifics of the design and conduct of the consultation process. This makes it difficult to develop a checklist of minimum requirements that applies to every case. This document provides both conceptual guidance in the form of Guiding Principles, as well as technical guidance in the form of specific recommended steps that can and should be tailored to every case.

Who is a Stakeholder?

The MSC takes an inclusive approach when considering the definition of a stakeholder in the fisheries certification process. A stakeholder is any person, group or organisation who:

may affect, or be affected by, a certification decision; or

has expressed an interest in the fishery being considered for certification assessment and/or in other potentially affected resources; or

has information relevant to the assessment of the fishery for MSC certification.

Typical stakeholders may include:

- Government agencies (with direct fishery management or research responsibility or responsibility for related resources, research or other activities);
- Non-governmental conservation or other public interest organisations (these may be local, regional, national and/or international organisations);
- Academic researchers;
- Adjacent or potentially affected fisheries (other than the one being considered) or other potentially affected commercial interests, including the post-harvest sector; or
- Community or tribal entities or individuals.

Depending on the specific circumstances, any one of these or other stakeholders may support or be critical of the status of the fishery in question. Further, within these stakeholder categories there may be inconsistent perspectives. Hence, careful and early analysis of the full range of stakeholders and stakeholder perspectives is critical.

Purpose and Goals of Stakeholder Consultation

The importance of meaningful stakeholder consultation in MSC fishery assessments cannot be overstated. The primary goal is to collect the information needed to conduct a robust assessment of the fishery. A successful stakeholder consultation process will instil confidence in stakeholders that the assessment of a given fishery was well informed by a balanced, accessible and equitable process to which they were able to contribute meaningfully. It should not be a forum to debate issues, but to identify the full range of relevant information and issues and bring them to the attention of the team.

A well planned and conducted consultation process will serve the following specific and important purposes:

To ensure a well-informed certification assessment

Besides the client, stakeholders are the primary source of information needed by the certification bodies to conduct a meaningful assessment. Whether they are academic scientists, government managers, or conservation organisations, stakeholders are likely to be the richest and most substantive source of information either in support or critical of the practices and effects of the fishery as they relate to the MSC fisheries standard.

To optimise the durability of certification decisions

A thorough stakeholder consultation process will decrease the likelihood of both substantive and procedural objections to certification determinations, making them more durable. The process will reveal problems or conflicts related to the fishery, and provide advance notice of the nature of any potential objections to the certification.

This enables the CAB, the team and the client an opportunity to examine and address, as appropriate, any relevant critiques of the fishery and any related issues in dispute. In addition, a good stakeholder consultation process makes clear to stakeholders the process for participating, thereby minimising the likelihood of procedural objections. While this will not eliminate all objections or complaints, it can reduce them significantly.

To build and strengthen credibility

Credibility is at the core of the success or failure of the MSC certification and labelling scheme. Credibility is critical to acceptance of the fishery-specific certification decision, the reputation of the CAB, the reputations of the fishery itself and those who participate in it, and finally to consumer confidence in the MSC ecolabel in the marketplace. The extent to which all relevant information, perspectives, and concerns are revealed and considered is fundamental to building and maintaining credibility in all of these dimensions.

To strengthen overall stakeholder support for the MSC certification programme

A well-conceived and implemented stakeholder consultation process will nurture mutual respect and support among players – stakeholders, certification bodies, client fisheries and the MSC. A consultation process that is conducted without bias, considers diverse perspectives, concerns and substantive information, and is transparent in the way it

addresses conflicting input, will engender respect and lay the foundation for mutual support, even where differences may persist.

Guiding Principles for Conducting Stakeholder Consultation

GPX4.1

The following Guiding Principles are intended to provide a conceptual framework and point of reference for certification bodies as they consider their approach to and design of meaningful stakeholder consultation processes. These principles reflect widely accepted fundamentals of best practice for expert practitioners involved with the design and conduct of consultative or participatory processes with the objective of informed, broadly supported, and durable decision making.

Every case is different

The level of effort required for successful and meaningful stakeholder consultation in each case will vary depending on several interrelated dimensions. The most important of these factors are:

the scale, scope and complexity of the fishery and its effects – and therefore the number and range of potentially interested stakeholders;

the past or current level and nature of conflict, or the potential for controversy regarding the fishery; and

the ability and/or willingness of key stakeholders to engage constructively in the assessment process.

Consideration of these factors is critical in designing and planning for an appropriate stakeholder consultation plan – one that is tailored to the scale, scope, complexity, and potential for conflict associated with the fishery in question. The appropriate specific focus and level of effort required in the stakeholder consultation process for one fishery may be quite different from another one. There is no “one-size-fits-all”.

The earlier in the process stakeholders and their concerns are identified, the better

There is no doubt that the earlier information about stakeholder concerns and consultation needs is obtained, the better prepared the CAB and/or team will be to plan for and conduct a successful process. Reaching out to stakeholders early in the process sends a message that decisions are not being made prior to consultation, and that there is genuine interest in getting all relevant information into the system for consideration. In the case of an MSC certification, this is true both in terms of 1) analysis of and planning for stakeholder consultation needs in the pre-assessment phase, and 2) engaging stakeholders in meaningful consultation in the full assessment phase. Specifically:

In the pre-assessment stage:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- Early analysis of stakeholder consultation needs will provide critical awareness of conflicting perspectives and potential controversy, and therefore valuable insights into areas that will need attention and specific substantive expertise.
- Early analysis will provide critical information needed to inform 1) the design of an appropriate stakeholder consultation plan, and 2) the estimated costs associated with the full assessment

In the full assessment phase:

- Contacting and engaging stakeholders as early in the process as possible will reassure stakeholders that their information or concerns are included in the assessment early enough to receive real consideration and that stakeholder consultation is not being conducted as a procedural requirement after a decision has already been made.

The consultation process should be communicated clearly and early, and should be accessible and responsive

Information describing the process for stakeholder consultation should be communicated clearly and made readily available to stakeholders, and the process itself should be accessible and responsive. Every effort should be made to provide stakeholders with the substantive and procedural information they need to participate effectively. For the purposes of MSC certification, this should include, at a minimum:

- Information about the MSC describing the certification programme and an orientation to the MSC certification process overall; and
- A description of the proposed process planned for stakeholder consultation for the specific fishery in question.

Attempts to gather stakeholder input must be active, not passive

In order to achieve meaningful consultation, stakeholder input must be actively sought out, not merely invited. Simply providing an opportunity for input is insufficient (e.g. announcing an open meeting in a newspaper, newsletter or magazine; or publishing an announcement soliciting written comment). Identifying specific individuals who represent key stakeholder groups, organisations, or interests, and making direct personal contact to request and engage in a meeting or interview for the specific purpose of collecting their input is necessary. Further, being responsive to their questions and needs is critical, and may require making changes in the process plan (e.g., contact additional individuals or organisations, provide for additional time, adjust meeting times or locations, etc.).

In the case of MSC fishery assessments, where there is a genuine and often urgent need for quality stakeholder input, it is in the best interest of the CAB to seek it out in order to ensure fully informed and credible decisions regarding certification. The level of effort required to do this will vary immensely from case to case.

The stakeholder consultation process should be designed and carried out in way that is culturally and technically appropriate

Awareness of the cultural norms and expectations and the technological capabilities of those to be consulted will contribute to the design and implementation of an appropriate and successful consultation process.

Respect for the different cultural or social norms and protocols for approaching individuals (or governments, organisations, tribes, or community groups, etc.) to request their input is extremely important. For example, there may be specific acceptable channels through which to approach community or tribal leaders, or elected officials. Ignorance or insensitivity regarding these factors, even though unintended, may cause embarrassment, offence, or humiliation to the parties or the CAB, and seriously undermine efforts to obtain useful input.

Likewise, an understanding of the technical capacity of key individuals or organisations is very important, particularly with regard to communications mechanisms (e.g., telephones, electronic mail, facsimile, and internet capabilities). For instance, requiring written input may be inappropriate in some circumstances, as might be referring someone to a web site for information. In some situations, communication services may be unreliable, or fishermen may be at sea for extended periods and unable to communicate promptly.

Meaningful stakeholder consultation takes time

In planning the full assessment process overall and the stakeholder consultation process specifically, sufficient time for consultation must be provided for. Stakeholder consultation often takes more time than expected, resulting in cost over-runs and delays.

An unrealistic timeframe will invariably lead to frustrated and disenfranchised stakeholders, poorer stakeholder input, and erosion of the CAB's credibility, as well as the credibility of the process and the eventual outcome. It takes time to contact, arrange for appropriate consultation, then to conduct the consultation, and possibly follow-up (once or several times with some stakeholders, as needed) to meet CAB and stakeholder needs.

Additional key stakeholders may be identified as the process unfolds and will need to be consulted. Some stakeholder groups have limited resources and may not be able to respond quickly. In addition, representatives of specific interest groups or organisations will often require time to consult with their constituents, or their own experts before committing to substantive input.

A safe environment is needed for honest and open exchange of information, perspectives and concerns

Stakeholders should be given no reason for concern in participating openly and honestly in the consultation process. Stakeholders should be assured that any reference to or characterisation of the substance of their input by a CAB, either written or verbal, will be done without attribution, unless some other arrangement is specifically agreed to by the stakeholder. Interactions with all stakeholders should be respectful, unbiased and non-judgmental throughout the process in order to engender trust and credibility in the CAB, the team, and the MSC programme overall.

Transparency is your ally; communicate often and be accessible and responsive

There are simple steps that can be taken to avoid uncertainty and confusion in the minds of stakeholders, including:

- Communicate about what you are going to do, so people know what to expect.
- Communicate about what you are doing, so people know where you are in the process.
- Tell people what you are going to do with their input.
- Be receptive and responsive to requests for changes to the process, as appropriate.
- Communicate any changes to the process, so people are not caught off guard.
- Communicate about what you did – provide documentation (without attribution) of the issues and concerns raised and how they were handled in the decision-making process.

Roles and Responsibilities

There are five major players with roles and responsibilities in the stakeholder consultation aspect of MSC fishery assessment. They are:

- The CAB who has been approached by a client;
- The client;
- The stakeholders and their representatives;
- The MSC; and
- The team.

The CAB

The CAB is the legally constituted body that is accredited by an accreditation body to conduct fishery assessments against the MSC fisheries standard.

The CAB is responsible for ensuring that a thorough and credible stakeholder consultation process is designed and conducted consistent with the MSC Certification Requirements and associated guidance.

The specifics of this process are laid out in detail in section 4.3 of the FCR. A critical role for the CAB is to make sure that the team is as fully informed as possible. In addition, it is the responsibility of the CAB to provide stakeholders with advice so that they are informed of the process, and further, to keep stakeholders informed of the progress of the assessment

Fisheries Certification Requirements

process, and finally the stakeholders' roles and opportunities for them to participate at different points in that process.

GPX5.3 The Client

The primary role of the client in the stakeholder consultation process is to provide the CAB, in the both the pre-assessment phase and subsequent to it, with any information they have or know of regarding the groups who have demonstrated interest in the activities of the fishery being considered, both in support of and critical of the fishery.

Particular emphasis should be placed on identifying any groups who have played or are playing a role in any conflict or controversy related to the fishery and the particular issues of contention.

It is extremely important that the client is forthcoming, as this information will be critical to the CAB in conducting the pre-assessment, and to the team in the event of a full assessment. It will provide insight into the nature and extent of any controversy regarding the fishery and an indication of potential resistance to certification. This information will relate directly to the level of effort needed to conduct stakeholder consultation in the full assessment, and the key issues likely to be at the heart of the fishery assessment for stakeholders.

Full disclosure, early in the process, of any issues in conflict – be they historic, current or anticipated – will increase the likelihood of a thorough and accurate pre-assessment, and for the development of an appropriate stakeholder consultation process in the full assessment.

To the extent that the client can produce a list of the names of organisations, individuals (and their contact information if available), any articles or data published by the groups or in the media about their interest in the fishery, and any other information regarding the relationship between the fishery and its stakeholders, it is in their best interest to do so.

In addition, throughout the stakeholder consultation process, the client should be prepared to respond to questions from the CAB and the team regarding issues, concerns and information raised by stakeholders.

Role of Stakeholder

Once a fishery has entered full assessment, the role of stakeholders is to bring to the attention of the CAB and the team any issues and concerns they have regarding the fishery in question, that they believe relate to the performance or conduct of the fishery relevant to the MSC fisheries standard:

- Stakeholders should provide well-formed and substantive arguments for their positions, including reference to objective evidence that can assist the team in assessing the merit of the issues raised.
- Stakeholders should understand that there is no advantage to be gained by withholding concerns, data or knowledge from the team. Concerns, data or knowledge not presented for inclusion in the assessment cannot be used in determining the certification outcome. Nor can the concerns or information be used as the basis for an objection to a certification.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- Wherever possible, in addition to providing verbal input through interviews, stakeholders should submit their input in writing to make sure full consideration by the team and create a record of their input.
- Stakeholders will also be asked to provide recommendations to the CAB regarding team membership, although this is not mandatory for certification bodies. Stakeholders shall, however, be given the opportunity to comment upon perceived or actual conflicts of interest of any proposed peer reviewers towards the end of the assessment process.
- Stakeholders may be individuals or groups, and stakeholder groups may be organised and cohesive, or they may be informally organised and diverse in their opinions.
- Stakeholder groups are well advised to, and typically do, interact through a stakeholder representative.
- The role of a stakeholder group representative is a critically important one. It is the responsibility of the stakeholder representative to make sure that he or she is acting on behalf of his or her constituents, and is accurately representing their interests and positions.
- To the extent that this is not the case, a stakeholder representative should tell the team or CAB of the situation.
- Interest group representatives should be prepared to describe the mechanisms they have for communicating with their constituents.
- Stakeholders and stakeholder representatives should be prepared to provide the CAB and/or team with a meaningful estimate of the time they will need to consult with their colleagues, experts and/or constituents to participate in the assessment process.

Role of the CAB team

The CAB team's role is to assess the performance of the applicant fishery against the MSC standard. The role of the team in the stakeholder consultation process is to consider the information, issues and concerns raised by stakeholders, and provided by the client, as they relate to the MSC fisheries standard. They are tasked with bringing their collective knowledge, expertise, wisdom and judgment to bear in conducting the assessment of the fishery against the MSC standard.

Where there are questions or confusion regarding issues or information coming from stakeholders, or where there is inconsistent or conflicting information received from stakeholders and the client, the team should reach out to stakeholders to request more information, clarification or substantiation.

To the extent that team members may be aware of stakeholder interests that have not been brought to them in this process, they are advised to seek additional stakeholder input to make sure that all key issues are on the table for consideration, thereby minimising the likelihood that an issue will be raised as a problem late in the process.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Throughout the process, the team should be careful to document the issues brought to them by stakeholders. It is also advisable to keep some record of the determination the team makes regarding issues raised by stakeholders – particularly for controversial issues.

Role of the Marine Stewardship Council (MSC)

The role of the MSC with respect to the stakeholder consultation process for fishery certification assessments has several dimensions:

- On its website the MSC provides documents describing the certification process and other orientation materials aimed at a wide audience. The MSC will post notification of a fishery entering the full assessment process on its website as well as releasing press advisory notice. The MSC also notifies its general stakeholder contact database and the governing bodies of the MSC. This does not replace the CAB's responsibility to seek out and notify stakeholder interests.
- The MSC may be able to provide the CAB with a list of interested stakeholder groups who should be contacted in a consultation process, which could be especially useful if there has been little visible stakeholder interest to date and there is a need to seek it out. This does not relieve the obligation of the CAB to identify potential stakeholders.
- The MSC can respond to stakeholders' questions about the certification programme overall, and the assessment process if they do not feel they are getting the information they desire from the CAB or the team.
- The MSC will post the draft and final assessment reports on its website and will actively distribute an explanatory statement regarding the determination and the process to follow for those interested in the reports or wishing to lodge an objection (see Annex PD).
- As standard setter, the MSC has other responsibilities throughout the assessment process that are not germane to stakeholder consultation.

Steps for Conducting Stakeholder Consultation

This section describes the specific recommended steps for certification bodies to take in planning and conducting stakeholder consultation. Consistent with the overall guidelines for CABs, these are divided into three stages: the pre-assessment; planning and preparation for the full assessment; and the full assessment and draft and Final Report stages.

The pre-assessment

In the pre-assessment, the CAB, at the request of the client fishery, conducts a preliminary analysis of the fishery with regard to its potential certification against the MSC standard. The overall objective of the pre-assessment is to be able to provide the client with a preliminary indication of the likelihood of certification, the issues most likely to be the focus of a full assessment, and the cost of a full assessment, thus allowing the client to make an informed decision about whether or not to pursue full assessment. The CAB will need to collect the relevant information to determine the scale, scope and focus, and level of effort that would

Fisheries Certification Requirements

be involved in pursuing a full assessment, the areas of conflict or controversy, and to develop an informed estimate of the likely cost of full assessment.

Preliminary stakeholder and conflict analysis:

The CAB's objective in the pre-assessment phase is to conduct preliminary stakeholder and conflict analyses, not necessarily involving actual consultation with stakeholders.

Stakeholder analysis, wherein key stakeholders and their issues of concern are identified, should indicate the level of effort that will be required (and therefore the cost and length of time needed) to conduct the stakeholder consultation component of a Full assessment.

Conflict analysis should provide the CAB and client with:

- a. Evidence of the degree and substantive focus and character of any controversy likely to emerge in a full assessment; and
- b. Valuable insights into the specific substantive expertise that would be needed on a team for the fishery in question, should a decision be made to go forward with a full assessment.

Confidentiality:

The pre-assessment phase is confidential unless otherwise agreed between the client and the CAB.

Where confidentiality is desired, there should be no direct stakeholder consultation in this phase.

There may be cases in which the client does not feel the need for confidentiality. In these cases direct stakeholder contact may be appropriate, and can lead to a more fully informed pre-assessment which may decrease the level of effort, time and costs of a full assessment, should a decision be made to go forward.

There are numerous sources of information that the CAB can explore to inform this phase without relying on direct stakeholder contact.

A spectrum of scenarios is possible with regard to confidentiality, ranging from extreme sensitivity and the need for great discretion to little or no need for confidentiality. The choice belongs to the client, and the CAB must be sure to consult carefully on this point to make sure that the client's wishes are understood and respected, as this may have implications for how the preliminary stakeholder and conflict analysis is conducted in this pre-assessment phase.

In cases where there is little concern or need for confidentiality and the client is comfortable with the CAB consulting stakeholders directly, there may be significant advantages with respect to time savings both in the pre-assessment information collection and also in the full assessment consultation process, should a decision be made to pursue it.

In cases where there is a need or desire for complete confidentiality, the CAB should consider whether sensitivities are such that the very act of collecting information may alert stakeholders to the client's interest in exploring potential MSC certification. A number of factors may contribute to this possibility, including the CAB's reputation for conducting MSC fishery assessments, or inadvertent visibility in collecting information. If this is a concern, CABs may wish to hire an independent consultant to collect preliminary information in this phase, with the understanding of confidentiality and concurrence of the client.

Information collection:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

CABs should collect as much information as possible in the pre-assessment phase that can assist the client in determining whether or not to proceed to a full assessment, and enable the CAB to make a preliminary estimate of the level of effort, time and costs that would be associated with a full assessment. From the standpoint of a quality stakeholder and conflict analysis the most important information to collect is that which will answer the following key questions:

- a. Are there any existing, historical, or anticipated controversies or issues in dispute related to this fishery? If so, what is the substantive focus for each, and who are the main players?
- b. How wide a net will need to be cast to capture key stakeholder input? What is likely to be the appropriate scope of stakeholders to consult (local, regional, national, international) and in what categories of interest (industry, government, conservation groups, academia, community or tribal/indigenous interests, etc.)?
- c. Who (and how many) are the key stakeholder groups or individuals with interests or responsibilities related to the fishery in question?
- d. What, if any, cultural issues, sensitivities or protocols may be relevant to successfully approaching and engaging the stakeholders identified?
- e. What are the technological capacities of the stakeholders or stakeholder groups (particularly with regard to communications)?
- f. How internally cohesive are key stakeholder groups? How are they organised and what are their intra-organisational communication mechanisms or capabilities? (E.g. are there mechanisms in place for representatives to inform and consult with their constituents, and what kind of time do they need to do so?)

Sources of information:

Because the pre-assessment phase is presumed to be confidential and there should be no direct stakeholder consultation in this phase, the stakeholders themselves are not directly available to CAB. However, working within this constraint, there are many valuable sources of information for conducting a preliminary stakeholder and conflict analysis. At a minimum, the following sources should be explored:

- a. **The client.** The client will typically have a very good idea of the primary parties who have shown interest in the fishery at the local, regional, national and/or international levels. The client is also a good first source of information about any cultural or political issues or sensitivities that should be taken into account in planning a process for fuller and more direct stakeholder consultation in a full assessment.
- b. **The MSC.** The MSC may be able to provide information about national and international interest groups (particularly industry, conservation, government entities and technical experts) who have a history of interest in the fishery in question or a similar one, or in fisheries issues that are likely to emerge in the fishery under examination.
- c. **The public record.** In some places, the development of a management plan for fisheries is a matter of public record and may include opportunity for public comment. Documents pertaining to comments received by the authority responsible for developing the management plan may be publicly available. This can be a valuable source of information regarding the degree of stakeholder interest, their substantive concerns, and extent to which there may be outstanding issues.
- d. **Interest group publications.** Many interest groups issue regular publications in the form of scientific or industry journals, magazines, newsletters, and even films or videos. Internet search engines make it much easier to locate these sources than it has been in the past.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

e. **Media.** Newspapers, magazines and television outlets (local, national and international) intended for a general audience are a rich source of information particularly where a fishery has attracted conflict or controversy. These sources will often identify key players and issues, but may oversimplify the issues.

All of these sources should be explored so that findings from one can be compared to others. This will help to confirm who are the key players and issues that need further exploration, and where there are areas of conflicting perspectives relevant to the MSC criteria.

As a general rule the more controversy associated with a fishery (or a specific fishery issue) the easier it is to identify key stakeholders. Conversely, it may take more effort to identify interested or valuable stakeholders in a non-controversial fishery.

Report of pre-assessment stakeholder and conflict analysis findings:

A report of the findings of the pre-assessment stakeholder and conflict analysis should be included as part of the CAB's pre-assessment report to the client in order to assist the client in determining whether or not to pursue a full assessment. The report should include four key components:

Summary of the findings.

- A list of the key substantive issues, concerns, and controversies (past, current and likely to emerge) related to the fishery in question. This information will highlight the substantive areas that will need further exploration, indicate the potential for controversy that may be encountered related to potential MSC certification, and the likelihood and intensity of support or opposition to certification of the fishery in its current state. It will also provide an indication of the scale, scope and focus of potential changes in the fishery that may be required for successful certification.
- A preliminary list of key stakeholders or stakeholder groups and opinion leaders. This should include a list of the categories of stakeholders who need to be consulted and, to the extent possible, a preliminary list of the names of groups and/or individuals in each category. This will inform the scope of the consultative process needed for a full assessment, and provide a preliminary idea of the level of effort and costs associated with conducting it.
- An indication of the specific substantive expertise needed for a full assessment, including preliminary ideas regarding where to find it. Identifying the specific substantive areas of focus that will particularly need to be examined is critical to assembling a team that has the necessary expertise for a quality assessment.
- A sense of the most promising mechanisms (culturally, technologically, politically, and otherwise appropriate) for consulting with key stakeholders. This information is critical to enable the design of a meaningful stakeholder consultation – one that maximises the likelihood of receiving thoughtful, honest and constructive input to inform the assessment, and that does not offend or disenfranchise any stakeholders.
- Preliminary design of a full stakeholder consultation process.

The findings of the pre-assessment stakeholder and conflict analysis should enable the CAB to develop a preliminary design for a stakeholder consultation process that is appropriate to the specific fishery and the needs of the interested and affected stakeholders. A preliminary design is necessary to enable the development of a cost estimate, and will provide a starting point for preparing and conducting the full assessment should a decision be made to go ahead.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

In considering the proposed method for conducting the consultation, the CAB will not always have sufficient information at this stage to know what would work best for the group of targeted stakeholders. A full list of all relevant stakeholders may not emerge until the full assessment process has begun. CABs should make their clients aware that cost estimates are based upon the information available at the time of the stakeholder and conflict analysis during the pre-assessment. It may be necessary to revise cost estimates after the full assessment has begun based upon new information and a more detailed stakeholder consultation design.

Key components in the preliminary design to estimate costs include:

- The proposed method of consulting (nature of direct consultation; venues; who may conduct consultation; number of direct interactions);
- Specific steps to be carried out (contact and invitations to participate; development of questions and/or information; conducting interviews; follow ups)
- Proposed timeline for consultation;
- Cost estimate for stakeholder consultation component of full assessment.

Full assessment – planning and preparation of stakeholder consultation

Much of what would be considered planning for the full assessment might be accomplished in the preliminary design of the stakeholder consultation process and the associated cost estimate prepared to assist the client in making a decision regarding whether or not to pursue a full assessment.

In the event that a decision is in fact made to conduct a full assessment, some or all of the following steps should be taken in planning and preparing for stakeholder consultation.

Determine the proposed method of consulting.

The venue and format Options include one-on-one interviews, meetings with groups of like-minded stakeholders; visits or presentations at regularly scheduled meetings of community, tribal or other interest groups. Factors to consider here include:

- A location and format most convenient and comfortable for the stakeholder;
- The mechanism most likely to enable candid discussion;
- The venue that demonstrates sensitivity and respect for cultural norms and protocols.

The nature of the direct consultation Will interviews be conducted in-person, by phone, in writing (electronically or on paper)? It is almost always preferable to conduct in-person interviews as a way of demonstrating respect for and genuine interest in what the stakeholder has to offer. It further humanises the interaction and makes candid discussion of different perspectives more productive. However, in-person interviews may not be necessary or possible in some cases.

Who will conduct the consultation? At least two members of the team should conduct the consultation interviews. Options might include the team leader with one or more members of the team, a neutral stakeholder consultation expert, or some combination of these. The appropriate person or combination of people may vary from case to case; but at least one person should be consistent throughout. Where a highly specific or technical issue is likely to

Fisheries Certification Requirements

be a key focus of discussion, the appropriate expert from the team should be included as the second or third person. Where there is mistrust or wariness of the MSC or the CAB, it may be appropriate to have an independent neutral expert in stakeholder consultation conduct the interview (and possibly the whole consultation process). It may also be appropriate for the lead interviewer to be assisted by a note-taker, in which case that person's role should be clearly explained.

Number of direct interactions. How many times will individual stakeholders or their representatives be consulted? In designing a proposed process, some assumption should be made about the potential need for follow-up interviews with selected stakeholders. This is particularly likely where there is significant controversy over an issue or set of issues, or multiple perspectives on or interpretations of different sources of data that need to be reconciled or even differences regarding the relevance of an issue to the MSC fisheries standard.

It may be that different consultation mechanisms will be best for different stakeholders, based on their level of interest, availability, or other factors. Further, the CAB may identify different tiers of stakeholders, some with whom the CAB will definitely want to meet in person (perhaps more than once) and others for whom a telephone interview will suffice, and still others for whom a written response to interview questions may be appropriate.

Example of steps for a typical consultation process

The steps for conducting the proposed consultation process should be specifically spelled out. The following series of steps is an example for a "typical" process:

Step 1: Initial contact and invitation to participate

A formal introduction to the initial list of stakeholders in the form of a letter of introduction from the CAB, and including standard written MSC-provided orientation materials (describing the overall programme, the overall certification assessment and decision-making process, and the purpose and goals of stakeholder consultation), and a description of the CAB's proposed process for stakeholder consultation. This initial mailing should go to all stakeholders listed at the same time in order to avoid any perception of bias.

Step 2: Follow-up confirmation and assessment of interest in participating

As soon as possible following the likely date the introductory package was received, stakeholders should be contacted in a more personal fashion – preferably by phone or alternatively by email, as appropriate. The purpose of this step is to confirm receipt of initial introductory information.

Confirm that the individual is the most appropriate person in the organisation to be consulting.

- If not – request assistance in identifying the appropriate person, then using the new contact, go back to Step 1 above.
- If confirmed – continue to next step below.
 - Verbally review proposed consultation process.
 - Solicit and respond to any questions.
 - Assess interest, willingness and availability for initial interview

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- If yes - schedule interview (agree on desired venue and mechanism). Be sure the stakeholder is comfortable that they will have sufficient time to review materials and/or consult as needed to prepare for the interview.
- If no - explore reasons for not wanting to be involved and request recommendations of other individuals who can represent similar interests (or other process if the proposed process is what is objectionable).

Step 3: Follow-up to confirm interviews and provide interview questions

Once an interview has been scheduled, the stakeholder(s) should be sent written confirmation of the date, time and place of the interview. In addition, to enable the stakeholders to prepare for a productive interview, (including consulting with constituents or partners) it is helpful to provide interview questions to stakeholders at this time. This communication should also include contact information in case questions arise prior to the interview.

Step 4: Conduct Interviews

A basic interview protocol is provided as Appendix GPXA. It should be noted that the basic interview protocol should be augmented to include any questions aimed at issues specific to the fishery in question and tailored to the needs of the particular case and situation. Estimate a realistic amount of time for each interview and document this for your client. There may be cases in which one interview session is insufficient, and a second session is needed and mutually agreed to.

Determine the timeline for conducting the consultation.

Some general guidelines for developing a realistic timeframe include:

- No more than two weeks between initial contact (Step 1) and follow-up contact in Step 2; the shorter the better;
- Depending on stakeholder needs in preparing for interview, and on extent to which travel is required to conduct interviews, assume 1-6 weeks between scheduling an interview and conducting it;
- Timeframe in which stakeholders are available may vary widely. To conduct 10-30 interviews may require as much as a 4-8 week period;
- Assume that there will be additional stakeholders identified in the initial round of interviews. These will probably have similar time requirements;
- Account for time to review input from interviews and potential need for follow-up interviews for additional discussion to clarify or explore selected issues or concerns;
- Account for time to document and analyse input, and to prepare summary of stakeholder consultation.

Revise cost estimate for the stakeholder consultation component of a full assessment, if applicable.

Once a proposed process has been articulated, the cost of conducting the stakeholder consultation can be estimated and included in the overall cost estimate for the full assessment process. The cost of stakeholder involvement is often underestimated, leading to tension between the CAB and the client, and potentially disenfranchising the stakeholders themselves who may feel that they are getting short shrift. The cost estimate at this point is truly an estimate, subject to change. Once the actual consultation process begins,

Fisheries Certification Requirements

information gathered in the early stages may indicate the need for more or less effort than originally anticipated. The costs of the process may need to be changed accordingly.

The most important consideration in developing a realistic cost estimate for a stakeholder consultation process is how much time each of the steps of the process will take. The level of effort and amount of time required is almost always underestimated. To avoid underestimates, the following considerations may be helpful:

- Assume that the list of stakeholders to be consulted will grow at least 30% beyond the initial list emerging from the pre-assessment.
- Assume that at least 20% of those consulted will require follow-up in the form of a second or even third direct interaction.
- Do not assume that a less controversial or visible fishery means that a lower level of effort will be necessary. It is often (but not always) the case that the more controversy, the easier it is to identify and engage stakeholders, and the more likely they will have developed position statements with supporting data. Conversely, when considering a less controversial or visible fishery, it may take more time and effort to track down stakeholders and to engage them, and they may be less prepared (and therefore need more time and encouragement) to provide a position statement. It may be that these normally quiet, less visible stakeholders who have important contributions to make in expressing their support or opposition to a potential certification, which may have a significant impact upon public and political perception beyond their usual circle of influence.
- Some stakeholder groups, particularly conservation groups or other NGOs, may have limited resources that are stretched thin. This can have significant implications for their availability (even in if their interest is high) and ability to engage in a tight timeframe.

Prepare Interview Protocol

In preparation for conducting the full assessment, a consistent interview protocol should be developed, tailored to the needs of the stakeholder and the CAB and team.

A generic interview protocol is included as Appendix GPXA and can serve as a basis for developing a more customised version, as appropriate.

Compile names and contact information for initial stakeholder list

While the pre-assessment stakeholder and conflict analysis may have generated a good preliminary list of stakeholders or stakeholder groups, it may not have provided specific names and contact information. In preparing for the full assessment stakeholder consultation, it will be necessary to research specific names and associated contact information.

Establishing a database that can be used to direct future communications with all or a subset of the stakeholders will enable communications that are more efficient. Preparing such a database ahead of time can be enormously helpful.

The Full assessment, Draft and Final Reports

Conduct Direct Stakeholder Consultation

Following the process designed in the planning phase, and incorporating any changes along the way as needed, the team conducts the stakeholder consultation.

Review and Analyse Findings

Identification of any outstanding substantive questions and a process for getting them answered. e.g., go back to interviewee(s), seek additional expertise, or consider how to proceed in the event that the questions cannot be answered.

Note areas where stakeholders indicated support for a claim that the fishery meets the standard of the MSC fisheries standard.

Note and carefully assess stakeholder issues or concerns about, or objections to, certification for integration into the final tree developed for the fishery. For each concern raised in consultation with stakeholders, ask the question:

In the best judgment of the team, does the issue or concern have substantive standing and is it relevant to the MSC fisheries standard?

Options:

- **The concern is substantive but is not relevant to any MSC criteria.**

In this case, it will be important to articulate the rationale for declaring the concern “not relevant” to the MSC criteria in order to demonstrate to parties that their concern was heard and why it was “rejected”.

- **The concern is substantive and is relevant to MSC criteria.**

Identify to which criterion or criteria the concern applies, and address in the overall tree.

- **The concern does not have substantive standing, nor is it directly relevant to MSC criteria.**

It may be a function of past history, trust, relationships, dissatisfaction with process, politics, etc. This is a difficult and delicate judgment to make, and should be considered very carefully. The rationale should be clearly articulated in an objective manner in the draft and final reports and the team should work so as to avoid objections where feasible.

Documentation of the Stakeholder Consultation in the assessment reports

The importance of documenting both the process and substantive findings of the stakeholder consultation cannot be overemphasised. A summary of the stakeholder consultation process should be an integral part of all reports. At a minimum this summary should include:

- A list of the parties consulted;
- Steps taken to solicit input (noting particularly where there was any resistance to meaningful engagement by any stakeholder group and how it was handled);
- Summary of issues raised (both in support of and critical of the fishery and potential MSC certification) – in a neutral voice, without attribution to individuals or groups (unless otherwise agreed to);
- Explanation of how issues were considered by the team (particularly the rationale for “rejecting” a concern or objection to certification);

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- A list of specific items of objective evidence submitted for the assessment, in support of issues raised.

End of Annex GPX Guidance

Annex GPXA – Sample Generic Interview Protocol

General

Name of person(s) interviewed:

Organisation:

Stakeholder category: For example: conservation, government authority, academic, industry, community, other affected or interested party.

Mode of Interview: For example: in-person meeting, telephone, written (email, fax, mail).

Introduction

Introduce yourself/the organisation; confirm receipt of informational package; review proposed consultation process, including CAB role, purpose of consultation, what will be done with information provided, reminder of no attribution, etc.

Ask if there are any questions about the process.

Finally, point out that you will be taking notes and that they are for your own use and that of the team, but will not be made public.

Sample questions

- What is the nature of your (your organisation's) interest in the fishery (past, current, anticipated)?
- What, if any, specific substantive issues or concerns do you have regarding the fishery?

Key areas

Solicit without specific prompting.

Walk through each of the key areas of the MSC fisheries standard — specifically request any issues and concerns on each.

Sample questions

For each issue of concern noted, do you have recommendations for how they can be addressed?

If so, what are they?

If not, do you know of anyone else who does?

For each issue of concern – what or who is (are) the best source(s) of data or evidence to support your/your organisation's position? Explain the significance and weight given to peer-reviewed published information.

Are there other sources of information or data that you know of (consistent or not with your position, e.g. data others may be using to counter your position or to support a conflicting position)?

Who do you believe are the most credible experts?

Regarding this fishery.

Regarding the issues important to you.

What other individuals or organisations are actively interested in this fishery or the issues of concern to you related to the fishery?

Fisheries Certification Requirements

In support of your position?

Taking a different position?

What other individuals or organisations would you recommend that we consult in our efforts to get as much information as possible for an assessment of this fishery?

If timing is relevant and/or appropriate, do you have recommendations for potential members of the team?

- Would you like time to consult with others in your organisation, or other like-minded organisations in order to make sure that we have the full input of your organisation and its constituents or partners?
- If so, how much time do you think you need, and can we schedule a follow-up meeting or call to discuss any additional input you would like to provide?
- If not, note the timeline, mechanism and contact information for further input if something else comes up.

Summarising

Summarise the key points of the input received from this interview to check for accuracy and to demonstrate that you have been listening carefully.

Sample statement

Let me summarise the key points that I have understood you to make in this interview thus far.

Writing up Sample questions

It would be extremely useful if you or your organisation could put your concerns in writing for consideration by the team.

- Would you (your organisation) be willing to do this?
- If so: when can we expect to receive it (review the timeline and relevant milestones)?
- If not: do you feel confident that I have captured your input (based on the verbal summary above),
- If I type up my notes in summary fashion and send them to you, would you be willing to review them for completeness and accuracy?

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Attribution

Urge openness and transparency:

Sample question

As we document the input we receive from stakeholders, you may or may not wish to have us attribute issues or concerns to individual stakeholders or stakeholder groups. Do you have a preference one way or the other?

Ongoing process

Briefly highlight key points of opportunity for input and expected timing of the process.

Sample questions

Unless you prefer that we not do so, we will keep you informed of the ongoing process (and any changes in the assessment process) and provide you with a copy of the assessment report for comment. What is the best mechanism for providing you with this information (email? regular post? other?)?

Further questions

Review timeline and any deadlines:

Sample questions

Do you have any questions?

If any questions or additional concerns come to you after we have completed this interview, please contact us and let us know.

If we have additional questions as the assessment process proceeds, may I contact you again with specific questions?

End of Annex GPXA Guidance

Background to Annex GSA Guidance ▲

The fisheries standards contain the default assessment tree that ensures high quality, credible fishery assessments and certifications based upon an assessment methodology to be applied consistently across fisheries regardless of ecological, geographical, technological or other variations in characteristics.

The hierarchical structure and the prescribed default set of performance indicators and scoring guideposts (PISGs) are used in all assessments unless a team can show just cause for why a different tree should apply.

The specific objectives and benefits of the default tree are to:

- Improve the common understanding by CABs, clients and stakeholders of how fisheries will be assessed by use of a simple, transparent assessment structure;
- Ensure consistent interpretation and application of the MSC fisheries standard to ensure all fisheries are assessed in a similar and equitable manner;
- Increase future certainty about re-assessment for currently certified fisheries;
- Improve the robustness and credibility of fishery assessments by providing greater clarity on required performance;
- Improve the efficiency of the assessment process while maintaining the integrity of the MSC's third party certification approach.

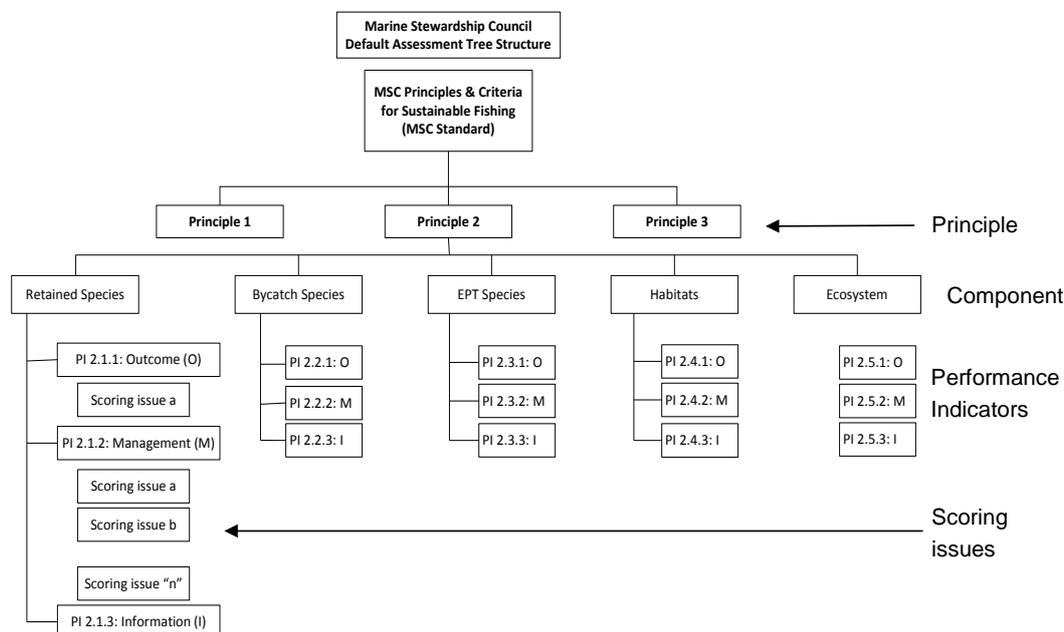
Structure of the Default Tree

The default tree structure is divided into four main levels for the purposes of scoring, as summarised below:

- Principle: The Principles represent the overarching basis for the assessment tree
- Component: A high level sub-division of the Principle
- Performance Indicator (PI): A further sub-division of the Principle
- Scoring Issue (SI): A sub-division of the PI into related but different topics. Each PI has one or more scoring issues against which the fishery is assessed at the SG 60, 80, and 100 levels.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Figure GSA1: Default Tree Levels relevant to scoring fisheries



For each scoring issue, scoring guideposts are defined at 60, 80 and 100 levels. In scoring a fishery, CABs, identify the level achieved by the fishery for each scoring issue, and the overall level achieved as a result for the PI. A fishery must achieve at least a 60 score for each PI, and at least an aggregate 80 score for each Principle in order to pass. Where a score less than 80 is achieved, a condition is assigned.

In some fisheries, multiple 'scoring elements' (such as multiple bycatch species or habitats) can also be scored within a given PI. For specific details on scoring, see FCR section 7.10, and the related guidance.

Default, draft and final trees

Annex SA is designed to be applicable to most standard types of fishery. Other default trees are available for some special fishery types such as enhanced bivalves and salmon. Other special trees can be developed by CABs where needed for other unusual fishery types, subject to approval by MSC (see FCR section 7.8.5). In these cases, the "default tree" becomes a "draft tree" while a variation request and stakeholder comment is being sought, then a "final tree" when it is ready for use, with or without changes, in the specific fishery assessment.

Relationship between the Default Tree and the MSC Principles and Criteria

Annex SA was developed to reflect the 1999 MSC Principles and Criteria as its foundation. Table GSA1 illustrates the relationship between topics in the P&Cs and their locations in the FCR v2.0 default tree (as changed from v1.3).

Taking Principle 1 as an example, the three P1 Criteria in the 1999 Principles and Criteria are assessed by the combination of PIs in the default tree, as:

- Each of the outcomes required by the three Criteria is covered by the single Outcome PI (1.1.1).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- The Harvest Strategy (Management) PIs assess a fishery's ability to manage the impact on target stocks to achieve those outcomes sought by the three Criteria.
- Criterion 3, with no specific Outcome PI, is covered by considering its impact on the formulation of the management strategy and the Harvest Control Rule (HCR) and tools.
- For example, the Point below which Recruitment could be Impaired (PRI), scored as a limit reference point in PI 1.1.1, should be set at a point where:
 - There is no danger that genetic changes in the stock would reduce reproductive productivity, and
 - If there is a risk that this may not be so, the limit reference point should be increased accordingly.

The problem might be addressed through changes to the component of the stock that is harvested, for instance by changing the distribution or selectivity of fishing.

Table GSA1: Comparison between the MSC's Principles and Criteria for Sustainable Fishing and the default tree structure (PIs shown in strikeout font and boxes shaded green indicate the changes between the trees in CR v1.3 and CR v2.0)

Criteria	Principle 1				Principle 2					Principle 3				Scope												
	1. Outcome	2. Harvest strategy			1. Retained species	2. Bycatch species		3. ETP species	4. Habitats	5. Ecosystem		1. Governance and policy	2. Fishery specific management													
Performance indicators	Stock status	Reference points	Recovery & Rebuilding	Performance of harvest strategy	Harvest control rules & tools	Information / monitoring	Assessment	Status	Management	Information	Status	Management	Information	Status	Management	Information	Legal and/or customary framework	Consultation roles and resps	Long term objectives	Incentives-for-equi-fishing	Fishery specific objectives	Decision making processes	Compliance and enforcement	Research-plan	Monitoring and evaluation	
	1	2	3	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	5	
Principle 1. Target species																										
1 High productivity	■																									
2 If depleted, recovery plan			■																							
3 Reproductive capacity	■																									
Principle 2. Ecosystem																										
1 Functional relationships								■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■										
2 Biodiversity and ETP spp								■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■										
3 If depleted, recovery plan								■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■										
Principle 3. Management system																										
A Management system criteria																										
A1 No controversial unilateral exemption																	■									■
A2 Clear long-term objectives, etc																	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
A3 Appropriate to cultural context and scale																	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
A4 Observe legal and customary rights																	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
A5 Dispute resolution mechanism																	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
A6 Incentives, no negative subsidies																	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
A7 Timely, adaptive, precautionary																	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
A8 Research plan																	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
A9 Stock assessments conducted																	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
A10 Mgmt measures and strategies																	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
A11 Compliance, MCS																	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
B Operational criteria																										
B12 Bycatch and discards																										
B13 Habitat impacts																										
B14 Destructive fishing practices																										
B15 Operational waste																										
B16 System, legal and admin requirements																										
B17 Collaboration in data collection																										

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Scope ▲

The standard is available to all operations engaged in the wild capture of marine or freshwater organisms with the following exceptions:

1. Operations targeting (as Principle 1) amphibians, reptiles, birds and mammals
2. Operations using explosives or poison as their fishing method
3. Operations that are conducted under controversial unilateral exemptions from international agreements, or under conditions of unresolved dispute, if the exemption or dispute creates a situation where effective management of the resource cannot be delivered (FCR 7.4.1)
4. Farmed aquaculture operations, except where these can be described as enhanced fisheries as defined in FCR 7.4.3 onwards
5. Introduced species, except where these can be described as historical and irreversible as defined in FCR Table 2.

GSA1.1 General requirements ▲

Box GSA1: Precautionary approach

The precautionary approach

International and customary law requires the use of the precautionary approach in fisheries management. The MSC uses as its baseline definition for the precautionary approach the definitions included in the FAO International Code of Conduct for Responsible Fisheries (1995) and the UN Fish Stocks Agreement (1995), Article 6 of which states:

The precautionary approach shall be interpreted to mean being cautious when information is uncertain, unreliable or inadequate and that the absence of adequate scientific information shall not be used as a reason for postponing or failing to take conservation and management measures (The UN Fish Stocks Agreement, 1995).

In the MSC standard the application of the precautionary approach in fisheries management systems is explicitly scored in PIs 3.1.3 and 3.2.2. However the MSC also intends the precautionary approach to be applied implicitly throughout the Certification Requirements. To capture this intent, the MSC system has been designed to give higher scores where there is more certainty about the outcome, or where management systems appropriately apply precaution under conditions of uncertainty. Where limited information is available, teams should be more precautionary in their assessment of information adequacy to support an Outcome PI score.

References

FAO *Code of Conduct for Responsible Fisheries*. Rome: FAO.1995

FAO *Technical Consultation on the Precautionary approach to capture fisheries*. Rome, FAO. 1996.

Rio Declaration on Environment and Development, 1992

The UN Fish Stocks Agreement, United Nations conference on straddling fish stocks and highly migratory fish stocks, Sixth session, New York, 24 July-4 August, 1995

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Box GSA2: IUU fishing

MSC's intent and understanding of the standard in relation to illegal, unreported and unregulated (IUU) fishing

The FAO definition of IUU fishing is as follows (FAO, 2002):

Illegal fishing refers to fishing activities:

- Conducted by national or foreign vessels in waters under the jurisdiction of a State, without the permission of that State, or in contravention of its laws and regulations;
- Conducted by vessels flying the flag of States that are parties to a relevant regional fisheries management organisation but operate in contravention of the conservation and management measures adopted by that organisation and by which the States are bound, or relevant provisions of the applicable international law; or
- In violation of national laws or international obligations, including those undertaken by cooperating States to a relevant regional fisheries management organisation.

Unreported fishing refers to fishing activities:

- Which have not been reported, or have been misreported, to the relevant national authority, in contravention of national laws and regulations; or
- Undertaken in the area of competence of a relevant regional fisheries management organisation which have not been reported or have been misreported, in contravention of the reporting procedures of that organisation.

Unregulated fishing refers to fishing activities:

- In the area of application of a relevant regional fisheries management organisation that are conducted by vessels without nationality, or by those flying the flag of a State not party to that organisation, or by a fishing entity, in a manner that is not consistent with or contravenes the conservation and management measures of that organisation; or
- In areas or for fish stocks in relation to which there are no applicable conservation or management measures and where such fishing activities are conducted in a manner inconsistent with State responsibilities for the conservation of living marine resources under international law.

These definitions of IUU fishing have been adopted and incorporated into Action Plans to deter and eliminate IUU fishing at both the national level (United States, New Zealand and Australia) and regional fisheries management organisations (RFMOs), such as ICCAT and CCAMLR, as well as economic entities (e.g. the European Union). RFMOs publish lists of vessels engaged in IUU fishing in their areas of responsibility.

IUU fishing can also apply at a state level, for example, where coastal nations or their sub-jurisdictions (e.g. internal states or provinces) have inadequate regulation to prevent illegal, unreported or unregulated catches.

In relation to IUU, the MSC intention is that UoAs be harvested legally and that IUU is non-existent, or where IUU does exist it is at a minimum level such that management measures, including assessments and harvest control rules and the estimation of IUU impacts on harvested species and the ecosystem, are capable of maintaining affected populations at sustainable levels.

Specifically:

- Unreported IUU fishing should be considered as "unobserved mortality".
- The unit of assessment (UoA) should be free from IUU catches of target (P1) species. This will be assessed in P1 and in P3 (compliance with national and international laws

Fisheries Certification Requirements

and monitoring, control and surveillance [MCS]; PIs 3.1.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.3).

- The stocks that are the source of P1 certified fish should have only minimal IUU fishing, which must be taken into account by management and must not have a material impact on the ability of the management system to deliver a sustainable fishery; this should be clearly considered by assessment teams in the PIs on harvest control rules, information, and assessment of stock status in P1 (e.g. 1.2.2, 1.2.3, 1.2.4), including in documentation of unobserved mortality.
- The requirement for compliance with national and international laws combined with the requirement that the UoA should not be causing serious and irreversible harm in P2 means that the UoA should also be free from IUU fishing for P2 species. While the impact of other IUU fishing on P2 components should be documented where known, unlike in P1, it need not be introduced into the assessment of the specific impact of the UoA (or cumulative UoAs).
- The MSC chain of custody standard requires that neither chain of custody certificate holders nor certified UoAs should use vessels that are listed on IUU blacklists to catch or transport fish.
- The MSC chain of custody standard is designed to ensure that MSC-labelled products cannot be mixed with products from a non-certified UoA, where there may be a risk of IUU fishing.

Specific guidance is provided in the GCR, which has evolved since FAM v1 (2008) to include guidance in relation to local and national laws, as well as international laws:

- PI 1.2.3: [GSA2.6.1](#) on information categories to consider for fishery removals.
- P2 general guidance: [GSA3.1.8](#) on considering observed and unobserved fishing mortality, including illegal fishing and/or unregulated catches.
- PI 3.2.3: [GSA4.1](#) on considering compliance and enforcement.

Evaluation of effectiveness of MCS in UoAs where a less formalised MCS system exists may consider the role and effectiveness of a range of factors in deterring illegal activity, which are described in [GSA4.9](#) on assessing informal and traditional approaches in PI 3.2.3. Additional guidance on P3 (PI 3.2.3.) is given in [GSA4.9](#).

References

FAO (2002) Implementation of the International Plan of Action to Prevent, Deter, and Eliminate Illegal, Unreported and Unregulated Fishing. FAO Technical Guidelines for Responsible Fisheries 9. Rome: Food and Agriculture Organization, FAO. Retrieved April 11, 2011: from FAO: <http://www.fao.org/docrep/005/y3536e/y3536e00.HTM>

MSC (2014) Guidance to the MSC Fisheries Certification Requirements V2.0

GSA2 Principle 1

GSA2.1 General requirements for Principle 1 ▲

There are two components in Principle 1: an outcome component with two PIs and a management component with four PIs.

Outcome Component

Background

The outcome component has two PIs. The stock status PI (1.1.1) is scored to reflect management behaviour that:

- increases the probability that exploited biomass fluctuates around the B_{MSY} target, or a higher target if this is warranted from a consideration of the trophic inter-dependencies of the target species (see Box SA1 below); and
- decreases the probability that exploited biomass will drop significantly towards the point where recruitment becomes impaired, either through recruitment overfishing or through genetic effects or imbalances in sex ratio.

The rebuilding PI (1.1.2) is triggered in cases where PI 1.1.1 does not achieve an 80 level, to ensure that stock rebuilding is expected. Stocks whose status is currently below the point at which recruitment is impaired (termed the PRI) would not achieve the necessary pass level in PI 1.1.1 even if there are recovery plans or programmes in place which are effectively increasing the status of the stock, until such time as the stock status again meets SG60.

The following outcomes would attract scores of 80 or higher:

- A higher likelihood of fluctuation around the target biomass level.
- Biomass levels in excess of target levels, which imply a lower probability of being below target levels.
- A higher probability of being above the point at which recruitment could be impaired, often used as a biomass limit reference point.
- In PI 1.1.2, a more rapid demonstrated rebuilding of stocks from the point where they attract only a 60 score to levels able to deliver MSY.

An explanation of MSC's intent and understanding in relation to MSY is provided in [Box GSA3](#).

Box GSA3: MSC intent on the achievement of MSY in P1

MSC intent on the achievement of MSY in P1

The MSC intention is that fisheries be harvested no more than is consistent with MSY (as required by UNCLOS), and that this is achieved through use of appropriate target and limit reference points and of harvest strategies (as required by UNFSA and CoCRF).

- A target reference point reflects a management objective to be achieved (e.g. performance consistent with MSY) while the limit reflects an undesirable state to be avoided with high probability (e.g. impaired recruitment).

The most basic definition of MSY is the largest long-term average annual catch that can be sustained over time. The FAO Glossary defines MSY as "*the largest average catch or yield that can continuously be taken from a stock under existing environmental conditions. For species with fluctuating recruitment, the maximum might be obtained by taking fewer fish in*

Fisheries Certification Requirements

some years than in others.” The constant fishing mortality that gives this MSY is F_{MSY} , and the average population size while MSY is provided is B_{MSY} .

- MSY was originally defined in terms of simple production models, but the concept is now equally applicable to any model of the stock and fishery (e.g. more complex production models, dynamic pool models, ‘per recruit models’, multi-stock/mixed stock models, ecosystem models and meta-population models).
- There are many ways to estimate MSY and related reference points. Many of them, and particularly the older methods which were common at the time UNCLOS and UNFSA were agreed, make substantial assumptions and so there can be considerable uncertainty about the accuracy of the estimates of MSY and related reference points.
- Because the productivity (e.g. recruitment) of many fish stocks is naturally highly variable through time the biomass can vary greatly around B_{MSY} (in some cases even with an appreciable chance of the stock being below the biomass limit reference point) when fished at the constant F_{MSY} . To an extent this variability in stock biomass can be mitigated by use of a harvest control rule that reduces the fishing mortality when stock biomass is low or a limit reference point is approached, as recommended by UNFSA and CoCRF. For some harvest control rules, including the constant escapement policies common in salmon and some low small pelagic fisheries, the fishing mortality is reduced to zero at a threshold stock biomass (e.g. Mace 2001).
- Reflecting the uncertainty usual in the estimation of MSY reference points and the variability of productivity usual in fish stocks the UNFSA guidelines and others (e.g. Mace 2001) recommend that F_{MSY} should be treated as a precautionary limit reference point, rather than a target reference point. This is appropriate in ‘common practice’ application of the MSY concepts, in which there is little explicit consideration of uncertainty and/or use of approximate methods for determining MSY reference points and/or use of surrogates for fishing mortality or stock biomass.
- The ‘best practice’ current view of MSY is that it is the largest long-term average catch that results from a constant F or variable F harvest control rule, while simultaneously giving a high chance of avoiding the biomass limit reference point, with MSY determined by simulation testing (e.g. Management Strategy Evaluation methods; Sainsbury *et al.* 2000, Butterworth and Punt 2003) that includes realistic representation of the major likely uncertainties (e.g. observation uncertainty, estimation uncertainty, recruitment variability, model structure uncertainty, implementation uncertainty). F_{MSY} determined this way could be an appropriate target reference point, because its method of calculation internalises uncertainty, variability and the biomass limit reference point.

MSY stock status

- The stock status consistent with MSY is fundamentally defined in terms F_{MSY} and B_{MSY} , and so the MSC standard provides default target and limit reference points for these. Approximations for F_{MSY} and B_{MSY} can be used where they are expected to achieve performance consistent with MSY (e.g. Witherall *et al.* 2000, Clarke 2002, Zhou *et al.* 2012).
- Directly measurable (empirical) proxies or surrogates for fishing mortality or biomass (eg. average length or length distribution, catch rate, recruitment, escapement etc.), and associated empirical harvest strategies, can be used where they are expected to achieve performance consistent with MSY or a similar highly productive level (Starr *et al.* 1997, Prince *et al.* 2011).

Multi-stock fisheries (containing biological interactions but stocks are separately assessable), mixed-stock fisheries (containing technical interactions but stocks are separately assessable) and stock-complex fisheries (where some or all of the stocks cannot

Fisheries Certification Requirements

be individually assessed so are managed as a group).

- Multi-stock fisheries and mixed-stock fisheries. The existence of biological and/or technical interactions means that fishing on one stock has an effect on others. So it is not possible to simultaneously obtain the maximum sustainable yield from each of the individual component stocks. A compromise is required to obtain what is considered the best yield from the combination of stocks. At two extremes, for example, it could be considered that the least productive stock will be harvested up to its MSY so that all other stocks are harvested at less than their individual MSYs or it could be considered that the most productive stock will be harvested up to its MSY so that all other species will be harvested beyond their individual MSYs (i.e., fishing mortality higher and biomass lower than the MSY levels). MSC recognises this as a management choice for the target reference point for each species (e.g. UNFSA Annex II para 2), but also currently requires that the single species (or single stock) limit reference points be maintained (cf the US approach that requires no species be reduced such that it triggers the threatened species listing).
- Stock-complex fisheries. MSY for the stock complex as a whole may be determined or indicator stocks may be used for assessment purposes (eg US National Standard), but MSC requires that there is a good basis for expecting that none of the component stocks are reduced below their limit reference point.
- The MSC requirements in Principle 1 do not currently take account of such interactions between stocks, being based on expectations applicable in a single species (or single stock) context. MSC is considering further developments in this area, and monitoring the development and application of such methods as 'best practice' in management agencies, globally. Further consideration of this will be given in the 2018 standard review. Prior to that point, CABs may propose the use of special assessment trees for the assessment of such fisheries (per FCR 7.8).
- In the statements above, the term 'stock' may refer to either a single species, or to a sub-stock of a species, consistent with the MSC definition given in the Glossary. A 'mixed-stock' fishery may for example be based on several different species, or on two or more sub-stocks of the same species, which have overlapping distributions in the area of capture. The distinctions made between multi-stock, mixed-stock and stock-complex fisheries here thus relate to the nature of their interactions and the practicalities of their management, and not to the levels of genetic differences between the stocks.
- Where fisheries are based on multiple sub-stocks of a single species, attention should also be given to the guidance on metapopulations (Section GFCR G7.4.7). In these cases, the recognition of specific 'source' and 'sink' populations may lead to different expectations for these individual stocks, but the metapopulation as a whole should still be maintained at productive levels (as required in SA2.2.6).
- Further consideration is also needed in the case of salmon fisheries, as outlined in the modified assessment tree in Annex SC. In this case, overall fishery production is assessed at the level of 'Stock Management Unit' (SMU), equivalent to the normal stock in a single species/stock fishery, but fisheries are also expected to manage the diversity and productivity of individual populations within the SMU.

References

Butterworth, D. S. and A. E. Punt (1999) Experiences in the evaluation and implementation of management procedures. *ICES Journal of Marine Science* 56: 985-998.

Clark, W.G. (2002) $F_{35\%}$ revisited ten years later. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 22(1): 251-257.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Mace, P.M. (2001) A new role for MSY in single-species and ecosystem approaches to fisheries stock assessment and management. *Fish and Fisheries* 2: 2-32.

Prince, J.D., N.A. Dowling, C. R. Davies , R. A. Campbell and D. S. Kolody (2011) A simple cost-effective and scale-less empirical approach to harvest strategies. *ICES Journal of Marine Science*. 68: 947–960.

Sainsbury, K.J., A. E. Punt, and A. D. M. Smith. (2000) Design of operational management strategies for achieving fishery ecosystem objectives. *ICES Journal of Marine Science* 57: 731-741.

Starr, P.J., P.A. Breen, R. Hilborn and T.H. Kendrick (1997) Evaluation of a management decision rule for a New Zealand rock lobster substock. *Marine and Freshwater Research* 48: 1093-1101.

Witherall, D., C. Pautzke and D. Fluharty (2000) An ecosystem-based approach for Alaska groundfish fisheries. *ICES Journal of Marine Science* 57:771-7.

Zhou, S., Y. Shaowu, J.T. Thorson, A.D.M.Smith and M. Fuller (2012) Linking fishing mortality reference points to life history traits: an empirical study. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science*. 69:1292-1301.

Prince, J.D., N.A. Dowling, C. R. Davies , R. A. Campbell and D. S. Kolody (2011) A simple cost-effective and scale-less empirical approach to harvest strategies. *ICES Journal of Marine Science*. 68: 947–960.

Harvest Strategy (Management) Component

Background

The harvest strategy (management) has four PIs. These PIs assess a fishery's ability to manage the impact on target stocks to achieve the outcomes sought by the MSC Principle 1. The overall harvest strategy and the specific management components in PIs 1.2.2-1.2.4 should in combination be capable of achieving the management objectives expressed in the target and limit reference points.

Subsidies in fishing

MSC does not name individual subsidy types as harmful or not harmful to fishing. Some subsidies may, however, contribute to overcapacity, which may compromise the ability of a management system to effectively control fishing effort.

When considering the effectiveness of a management strategy and its ability to meet P1 and P2 outcomes, CABs should take into account any problems that might be caused by fishing overcapacity, or other issues, that can result from subsidies.

If overcapacity exists as a result of subsidies, the management system should be robust enough to deal with this issue and still deliver a sustainable fishery in accordance with MSC Principle 1 & 2.

If the management system is not robust enough to deal with overcapacity caused by subsidies, a condition should be set in accordance with 7.11 against the relevant management PI.

Shared and straddling stocks and highly migratory stocks

When considering management PIs under P1 in fisheries that target shared stocks, straddling stocks or highly migratory stocks, CABs should consider all national and

Fisheries Certification Requirements

international management systems that apply to the stock and the capacity of these systems to deliver sustainable outcomes for P1.

International management systems may include Regional Fisheries Management Organisations (RFMOs), bilateral/multilateral arrangements and other international arrangements with similar intent.

GSA2.2 Stock Status PI (PI 1.1.1) ▲

GSA2.2.2 Scoring fluctuations around the target MSY level -scoring issue (b) ▲

Scoring issue (b) of PI 1.1.1 requires that the P1 stock (biomass) is fluctuating around a level, B_{MSY} , at which maximum sustainable yield may be achieved, or around a higher level where appropriate. Fluctuation in this context refers to the variability over time around a point, acknowledging that the magnitude of fluctuation will be influenced by the biology of the species, and that short-term trends may be apparent in such fluctuations.

In considering PI 1.1.1 scoring issue (b) and SA2.2.2, teams should provide a clear rationale by which it is argued that the SG80 or 100 levels are met, including the details of the time period over which this is assessed. Such rationale should take into account the specific biology of the species and the stock status in recent years.

Examples of situations that may be regarded as “fluctuating around a level consistent with MSY” and thus able to achieve at least an 80 score for PI 1.1.1 scoring issue (b) are given below. In considering these examples, teams should note that the $90\%B_{MSY}$ figure is given as a hypothetical level that may be appropriate for species types with average levels of fluctuations. Other values may be appropriate for other species types. These examples are thus provided as illustrations of different ways in which rationales may be constructed rather than explicit requirements. Teams should further keep in mind that the rationale should demonstrate fluctuation around a level ‘consistent with B_{SMY} ’, not a level consistent with $90\%B_{MSY}$.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Examples: 80 score

Examples of situations that may be regarded as “fluctuating around a level consistent with MSY” and thus able to achieve an **80 score** for PI 1.1.1 scoring issues (b) are given below:

- An instantaneous estimate of current stock status that is not less than $90\%B_{MSY}$.
- A recent series of estimates of stock size that has a median or mean value over the last one generation time that is not less than $90\%B_{MSY}$, and which has a trend that is consistent with an expectation that the future biomass will continue to fluctuate around B_{MSY} . (For definition of ‘generation time’, see guidance [GSA2.2.4](#))
- A consistent downward trend over recent years to levels below B_{MSY} would not be consistent with this expectation unless accompanied by projections or other information suggesting that the trend will soon be reversed (e.g. due to incoming strong recruitment or recent reductions in exploitation level). The time series may include estimates that are less than $90\%B_{MSY}$, so long as these are shown to be part of a long-term fluctuation around B_{MSY} .
- A series of estimates showing a steady increase in stock size that has recently returned to a level not less than $90\% B_{MSY}$, and is expected to continue building to above B_{MSY} , and thereafter to fluctuate around B_{MSY} .

Examples: 100 score

Examples of situations that may achieve the higher **100 score** on PI 1.1.1 scoring issue (b) are given below:

- A recent series of estimates of stock size that has a mean or median over the last two generation times that is not less than $90\% B_{MSY}$.
- A series of estimates of stock size that have been above B_{MSY} in all years of the last one generation time.

In reviewing fluctuations in stock size, teams should note that a model-derived estimate of stock size from the most recent year will often be more uncertain than earlier years. Teams should take this into account so as to avoid rapid changes in status of MSC certified stocks, which are possibly not indicative of actual material change in stock status, and so avoid unnecessary changes in certification status as specified in FCR paragraph 7.23.23.1.b A single estimate of stock status unsupported by an estimate of certainty either derived from a time series trend or from a statistical model, should only rarely be used to justify a material change in the score.

MSC has chosen not to define its requirements in relation to the commonly used definitions “overfished” and “overfishing”. Nevertheless, these terms are commonly used, and are referred to in some guidance as follows:

- Overfishing: fishing mortality higher than F_{MSY} , the fishing mortality level that results, in the long term in the stock being at maximum sustainable yield
- Overfished: biomass stock size lower than a limit defined in relation to MSY. The FAO Ecolabelling Guidelines define “overfished” as below a biomass limit reference point. The limit is often taken to be $50\% B_{MSY}$, which is the default assumption for the point below which recruitment may be impaired (PRI) as defined by the MSC. However, the term is not commonly used internationally to relate to the PRI, and hence its use in MSC guidance and CR language is limited.

GSA2.2.3 Determination of status with respect to PRI and B_{MSY} ▲

The wording of PI 1.1.1 requires scoring against the conceptual levels PRI and MSY. Such levels may or may not be used as explicit reference points in a fishery. There may be situations where well-managed stocks do not have target reference points or do not have limit reference points, or their values are not consistent with the conceptual levels of PRI or MSY. The stock will still need to be assessed in terms of the overall outcome objectives, i.e., for SG80 that the stock status is highly likely to be above the point at which there is an appreciable risk that recruitment is impaired, and will be at or around a level consistent with B_{MSY} .

All management systems should thus have reference points of some sort, as confirmed in PI 1.2.4 (scoring issue (b)). Where these are not stated explicitly they should be implicit within the decision rules or management procedures, and the fishery should be assessed using these implicit reference points.

An explicit use of only a target reference point should include some implicit consideration of a limit reference point, and likewise a management system that uses only a limit reference point will have some implicit acknowledgement of targets.

In requiring that fish stocks are 'likely above the PRI' (SG60 in PI 1.1.1), MSC recognises that fish stocks do not have an exact and constant level below which recruitment will always be impaired. In a Beverton-Holt type stock-recruit relationship, recruitment declines with any reduction in stock size from the unexploited level. The PRI should be interpreted as the point below which there is an increased risk that recruitment may be substantially impaired and fisheries should be managed such that the risk of stocks falling below this level is very low. Where historical estimates of stock size and resulting recruitment are available, the PRI may be identifiable as the point below which reduced recruitment has been observed in the past, and above which recruitment appears to be more related to environmental factors than to stock size. MSC default proxies for the PRI and MSY are given in the following sub-section.

GSA2.2.3.1 Use of proxy indicators and reference points for PRI and B_{MSY} ▲

In this section the term "reference point" is used in relation to determination of status, not in relation to harvest control rules (see additional guidance on this distinction in [GSA2.6](#)).

Writing the PISGs in terms of biomass and fishing rate metrics creates an appearance that the MSC fisheries standard is not well suited for other than large industrial fisheries with formalised stock assessments and biomass based reference points. This is not the intent.

[SA2.2.3](#) confirms that teams may allow the use of surrogate or proxy indicators and reference points in scoring both stock biomass and exploitation rate. The terms "likely", and "highly likely" are used to allow scoring by either qualitative or quantitative approaches.

- Examples of qualitative interpretation include analogy with similar situations, plausible argument, empirical observation of sustainability and qualitative risk assessment.
- Examples of quantitative interpretation include the use of measured data from the relevant fishery, statistical analysis, quantitative risk assessment and quantitative modelling.

Default values for the levels of the PRI and B_{MSY} , as used in scoring the stock status PI 1.1.1 are given below. They are often related to B_0 , the stock status that would be present in the absence of fishing.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- In the case where neither B_{MSY} nor the PRI are analytically determined, the following default reference points may be appropriate for measuring stock status depending on the species: $B_{MSY}=40\%B_0$; $PRI=20\%B_0=\frac{1}{2}B_{MSY}$.
- In the case where either B_{MSY} or the PRI are analytically determined, those values should be used as the reference points for measuring stock status unless additional precaution is sought.
- In the case where B_{MSY} is analytically determined to be greater than $40\%B_0$, and there is no analytical determination of the PRI, the default PRI should be $\frac{1}{2}B_{MSY}$. This case covers the situation of low productivity stocks, where higher default PRIs may be justified.
- In the case where B_{MSY} is analytically determined to be lower than $40\%B_0$ (as in some highly productive stocks), and there is no analytical determination of the PRI, the default PRI should be $20\%B_0$ unless $B_{MSY}<27\%B_0$, in which case the default PRI should be $75\%B_{MSY}$.
- For stocks with average productivity, where B_{MSY} is not analytically determined but assumed to be $40\%B_0$ and a management trigger reference point is set greater than $40\%B_0$ for precautionary reasons, the default PRI should still be set at $20\%B_0=\frac{1}{2}B_{MSY}$ unless it is analytically determined. This covers situations where the management authority has deliberately chosen a conservative target reference point, but where the default PRI is still appropriate.
- In cases where the PRI is set at $20\%B_0$, a default value for the B_{MSY} may be assumed to be $2xPRI$. In other cases, for instance where the PRI is set at the lowest historical biomass, it cannot be assumed that $B_{MSY} = 2xPRI$. Teams shall justify any reference point used as a proxy of B_{MSY} in terms of its consistency with B_{MSY} .

The default PRI values given above ($\frac{1}{2}B_{MSY}$ or $20\%B_0$) apply to stocks with average productivity. Such points are generally consistent with being above the point at which there is an appreciable risk that recruitment is impaired, though for some short-lived stocks the actual point at which there is an appreciable risk that recruitment is impaired may be lower than $20\%B_0$ and for some long-lived species it may be higher than this.

Where management has defined a target range for B_{MSY} rather than a single value, the team should score the stock status PI 1.1.1 against this range. The team should also consider if different reference points are required for different components of the stock in their assessment.

Where proxies are used that are not expressed as percentages of B_0 , teams should generally ensure that:

- Any reference point used as a proxy for scoring the PRI is set above the point where there is an appreciable risk of recruitment failure; and
- Any reference point used as a proxy for the MSY level maintains the stock well above the PRI and at levels of production and stock sizes consistent with B_{MSY} or a similar highly productive level.

Where proxy reference points are defined in this way, teams should take account of the difference between the reference point and the required (PRI or MSY) levels in their scoring.

Particular caution should be given regarding 'per-recruit' stock assessment approaches that do not include any form of stock-recruit relationship. Levels of $F_{0.1}$ or $F_{40\%SPR}$ will usually, for example, provide more reliable proxies of F_{MSY} than F_{max} when a per-recruit approach is used. Reference points such as BPA that are used as a precautionary buffer to reduce the chance of declining to a limit level such as the PRI should also not be assumed to be consistent with B_{MSY} . The $B_{MSYtrigger}$ approach used in ICES, for example, should be regarded

Fisheries Certification Requirements

as setting a lower limit to the likely range of values that B_{MSY} may take, and not as an estimated value for B_{MSY} .

In ICES assessments, fisheries with $B > B_{MSYtrigger}$ may be regarded as “fluctuating around B_{MSY} ” (thereby achieving an 80 score).

Proxy indicators and reference points or measuring stock status may also be used where the exact relationship with the PRI, B_{MSY} and F_{MSY} levels are not known. In these cases, the team must provide justification that these proxies are reasonable for the context in which they are used.

Examples: proxies

Examples of such proxies and necessary considerations are given below:

- Where empirical values of CPUE (not based on an explicit stock assessment) are used as reference points for monitoring biomass, teams could provide rationales that the values adopted are consistent with MSY or a similar highly productive level. Checks may be needed to ensure, in this case, that spatial changes in fishing, or changes in the catchability of gears do not reduce the reliability of the proxy indicators.
- Where reference points for measuring stock status are based on some historical state, the position of the stock at that time should be considered relative to the unexploited level and the likely proximity to B_{MSY} . Evidence should be presented that the stock was not over-exploited at the historical reference time and that the catch was sustainable and highly productive.
- Where mean fish sizes are used as reference points for the exploitation level, teams should provide rationales that the values adopted are consistent with F_{MSY} or similar levels.
- Other examples include crustacean fisheries that seek to protect from harvest the complete female reproductive capacity in the population (i.e., single sex harvest). The reference points used here could relate to metrics such as percent fertilised eggs and or other female population indicators that are evaluating the management system’s effectiveness at achieving its goal.

Where proxy reference points are used in scoring the stock biomass status, higher scores should be assigned where greater confidence is provided by the proxy information (such as with a ‘traffic lights’ approach to management).

Examples: using proxy reference points

Examples of how the 60, 80 and 100 SG levels may be justified in these situations are given below:

- **At SG60:** If no decline has been observed in **one proxy** of biomass for at least one generation time of the species and the proxy indicates that the stock is **likely above the PRI**.
- **At SG80:** If no decline has been observed in **two proxies** of biomass for one generation time and at least one proxy indicates that the stock is at a **highly productive level**.
- **At SG 100:** If no decline has been observed in three proxies of biomass for one generation time and at least **two proxies** indicate that the stock is at a highly productive level.

In these cases, where higher scores are justified by the use of more than one proxy indicators, such proxies should be independent of each other and also reasonably be expected to be proxies of the quantity of interest (such as CPUE in the case of stock biomass). The team should present a rationale for how the proxies conform to these principles.

In some cases, it may reasonably be argued that one good proxy is better than two or more weak proxies.

GSA2.2.4 Scoring stock status using fishing mortality rate (F) ▲

Clause SA2.2.4 also allows the use of fishing mortality as a means of scoring PI 1.1.1 when biomass information is not available. Obviously, a fishery that is currently at or below the point at which recruitment is impaired will not suddenly be at MSY if fishing mortality is reduced to F_{MSY} .

The history of fishing mortality should be examined to determine whether the stock biomass could be assumed to be at the required level for each SG. Obviously this depends on the starting status for stock biomass, the trajectory of fishing mortality and the length of time that fishing mortality has been at a certain level.

The following expectations should be applied if the starting biomass is unknown:

- At least a **60 score** is justified if F is likely to have been **at or below F_{MSY}** for at least **one** generation time of the species (or for at least two years, if greater). This level of F is generally expected to be able to recover, or maintain, a population to be “likely” above its PRI.
- At least an **80 score** is justified (B highly likely above the PRI and at or fluctuating around B_{MSY}) if F is likely to have been **at or below F_{MSY}** for at least **two** generation times (or for at least four years, if greater).
- A **100 score** is justified if F is highly likely to have been **below F_{MSY}** for at least **two** generation times (or for at least four years, if greater).

Clearly these are just guidelines, based on an assumption that fishing mortality will in these cases be at or very closely below F_{MSY} . The lower the fishing mortality has been, the shorter the time interval required for recovery. For instance, while most species require about 2 generation times to recover from the PRI to B_{MSY} when fishing is at F_{MSY} , when F is reduced

Fisheries Certification Requirements

to 80% F_{MSY} or 60% F_{MSY} , the time for recovery may be halved. CABs should take these issues into account when scoring.

Box GSA4: Generation time

Definition: Generation time (GT)

The MSC defines a generation time as the average age of a reproductive individual in an unexploited stock, consistent with the definition in Goodyear 1995¹⁴

$$G = \frac{\sum_{a-1}^A a E_a N_a}{\sum_{a-1}^A E_a N_a}$$

where a is age, A is the oldest age in an unfished state, E_a is the maturity at age a , and N_a is the number per recruit alive at age a in the absence of fishing, i.e.,

$$N_a = N_0 e^{-M a} \text{ where } M \text{ is natural mortality and } N_0 = 1 \text{ (per recruit).}$$

A reasonable approximation for GT, when $0.1 \leq M \leq 2$ is

$$1/M + A_{m50}$$

where A_{m50} is the age at 50% maturity.

Box GSA5: Consideration of fishing mortality rate in MSC assessments

Consideration of fishing mortality rate in MSC assessments

The guidance in this section covers the specific situation where fishing mortality (F) is being used as an indicator of the status of the stock, when actual biomass estimates are not available. In this case, F must have been low enough for long enough for the required biomass levels to have been achieved.

Guidance is also provided later on the use of fishing mortality information, where it is available, in its more normal context as an indicator of the level of exploitation in a fishery. This is particularly relevant in the scoring of the rebuilding PI, 1.1.2, and the harvest control rule (HCR) PI, 1.2.2. The general expectations in these cases are summarised below:

- **PI 1.1.2** (rebuilding): When Biomass (B) is below a level at which it could be regarded as 'fluctuating around B_{MSY} ', then F should normally be less than F_{MSY} , in order to achieve recovery to such level.
- **PI 1.2.2** (HCRs): To be regarded as working effectively, HCRs will normally maintain F equal to or less than F_{MSY} .

Only a few exceptions to these general 'rules' are allowed, as supported by clear justifications, such as the special nature of a stock assessment approach or the availability of other specific information. For further details, see the guidance sections [GSA2.3.4](#) and [GSA2.5](#) (scoring issue (c)). Teams should also note that F should be maintained at lower than MSY levels in key LTL fisheries.

¹⁴ Goodyear, C.P. 1995. Red snapper in U.S. waters of the Gulf of Mexico. NMFS/SEFSC. Cited by Thompson, G. G., Mace, P. M., Gabriel, W. L., Low, L. L., Maccall, A. D., Methot, R. D., ... Witzig, J. F. (1998). Technical Guidance On the Use of Precautionary Approaches to Implementing National Standard 1 of the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act.

GSA2.2.5 Stock complexes ▲

See comments on multi-stock and mixed stock fisheries and stock complexes in [Box SA1](#).

GSA2.2.7 Consideration of environmental variability (including climate change) and human-induced impacts ▲

MSC recognises that the productivity of fisheries is affected by a range of environmental factors, as much as by the levels of fishing and the management of the fishery. The actual values of reference points may thus change over time as reflected in stock assessments, and these changes may be allowed for in scoring the status of the stock in PI 1.1.1. Section [SA2.2.7.2](#) recognises the situation where the productivity of the fishery is reduced either by excessive fishing, or by other human-induced impacts (e.g. the clearance of mangrove swamps affecting fish nursery areas). In these cases there is no justification for reducing the reference points and the fishery should receive a lower score until effective management is in place and the stock returns to healthy levels.

However, the MSC recognizes the multipurpose nature of use patterns particularly in inland waters. Example uses include dam construction for water supply and power, channelization for navigation and flood control, land drainage and wetland reclamation for agricultural uses etc. Such uses are generally fundamental to the functioning of modern society and outside of the management control of the fishing sector. Where users from other sectors (non-fishery) have impacts on the fishery, management should take into account these impacts when devising a strategy for achieving management objectives.

Example:

If water is withdrawn for agriculture and urban supply and this has an adverse impact on fish stocks, the management of the fishery is expected to address this fact (perhaps by reducing fishing or time/area closures).

Although climate change is now generally accepted as a potential 'human-induced' impact on fishery productivity, it is not one that can be easily 'resolved' in the sense required by [SA2.2.7.2.a](#). Such changes are thus regarded as more similar to the situation with regularly occurring (e.g. decadal) cycles or regime shifts, as covered under [SA2.2.7.1](#). Teams should note the further guidance on scoring of climate changes in PIs 1.1.2 (Stock Rebuilding – see [GSA2.3](#)), 1.2.2 (Harvest Control Rules, and the scoring or uncertainty), and in 2.5.3 (Ecosystem Information – see [SA3.18.1.2](#)).

Consequently, in situations where there is evidence that productivity changes are related to the impacts of long-term climate change, CABs should that appropriate adjustments need to be made to reference points and indicators used to determine stock status.

GSA2.2.8 Treatment of key Low Tropic Level (LTL) stocks ▲

The MSC's intent for consideration of trophic level is that the management of all target species should in some way take into account their trophic level. To date the MSC has only defined specific management and outcome performance requirements for key LTL stocks, because of the highly important role that they play within ecosystems. CABs should also consider whether management needs to be particularly precautionary for very long lived or high trophic level species. For example, generic reference points appropriate for low trophic

Fisheries Certification Requirements

level, short lifespan, high fecundity species would be those appropriate to such species, rather than those appropriate for high trophic level, long lived, low fecundity species. See guidance above on reference points.

Box GSA6: Special management requirements for key Low Trophic Level stocks

Special management requirements for key Low Trophic Level stocks

The ecological importance of Low-Trophic Level (LTL) species such as sardines, anchovy and krill, also referred to as forage fish species, and the control they can exert on the rest of the food web has been well established (e.g. Cury et al, 2000). They are often a fundamental part of marine food webs, but are also used by humans for a variety of purposes. Ninety percent of the forage fish catch is “reduced” to fishmeal or fish oil for use in the agriculture, aquaculture, pet food, and other industries and to a limited extent also used for human consumption. In recent years, the extraction of forage fishes from the ocean has escalated enormously, and these species currently comprise approximately 37% of the global wild marine fish catch with further increases likely (Pikitch et al, 2012).

Due to their often significant ecological importance, unsustainable exploitation of forage fish populations can impact the marine food web (e.g. causing declines in seabird and marine mammal populations) or even threaten food security in some countries by diverting forage fish from use as food for humans.

The intent of the MSC requirements on the treatment of LTL stocks is focused on limiting the ecosystem impacts caused by the commercial harvest of these important species.

A principal distinction within the MSC requirements is the recognition of key LTL stocks as separate from non-key LTL stocks. The intent is that all forage (LTL) stocks need to be assessed against their potential ecosystem importance when applying for certification against the MSC standard, but the specific higher management requirements only apply to those stocks recognised as ‘key LTL’.

As defined in FCR section SA2.2.9, there are three criteria which are used to identify whether or not an LTL stock is key:

- the connectance of the species to other organisms within the system,
- the proportion of energy of that gets channelled through the species, and
- whether the system is wasp-waisted following the definition in Cury et al (2000).

Essentially, if it is evident that a species is highly connected in the food web and found in the diets of many predators, it will likely be a key LTL stock. The MSC guidance on this topic ([Section GSA2.2.9](#)) provides examples of how these criteria can be shown to be met or not met. Following a precautionary approach, if it is not possible to provide a justified argument that at least two of the criteria are NOT met, then the stock must be treated as key LTL.

The first two criteria are based on results from Smith et al, 2011 and Essington and Pláganyi, 2013 and the thresholds used relate directly to the levels of ecosystem impact that the depletion of the LTL species would have. If a species is determined to be key, the removal of this species beyond defined precautionary reference points would likely cause a cascade effect in the wider ecosystem. Other predators dependent on the LTL species as food may for example see a decrease of more than 70% in their abundance.

MSC defines the default precautionary reference points for management of key LTL species as either a biomass that is 75% of the unexploited level in the system, or a target exploitation rate of $0.5F_{MSY}$ or $0.5M$ (natural mortality of the species). In fisheries where

there is sufficient understanding of the system, these default reference points can be adjusted to specific levels appropriate to the fishery, which are shown not to have adverse ecosystem effects through the use of credible ecosystem models (as defined in SA2.2.13).

If an LTL stock is not key, it is assumed that the impacts of removing it are not of particular importance to the wider ecosystem. It can therefore be assessed as normal within the MSC system and evaluated against the standard MSY-equivalent levels of biomass and fishing mortality.

References

Cury, P., Bakun, A., Crawford, R. J. M., Jarre, A., Quiñones, R. A., Shannon, L. J., and Verheye, H. M. 2000. Small pelagics in upwelling systems: patterns of interaction and structural changes in “wasp-waist” ecosystems. *ICES Journal of Marine Science*, 57: 603–618.

Essington T and Pláganyi E., 2013. Model and data adequacy for Marine Stewardship Council key low trophic level species designation and criteria and a proposed new assessment index. *Marine Stewardship Council Science Serie*, <http://www.msc.org/business-support/science-series/volume-01-1/model-and-data-adequacy-for-marine-stewardship-council-key-low-trophic-level-species-designation-and-criteria-and-a-proposed-new-assessment-index>

Pikitch, E., Boersma, P.D., Boyd, I.L., Conover, D.O., Cury, P., Essington, T., Heppell, S.S., Houde, E.D., Mangel, M., Pauly, D., Pláganyi, É., Sainsbury, K., and Steneck, R.S. 2012. *Little Fish, Big Impact: Managing a Crucial Link in Ocean Food Webs*. Lenfest Ocean Program. Washington, DC. 108 pp.

Smith, A.D.M., Brown, C.J., Bulman, C.M., et al. 2011. Impacts of fishing low-trophic level species on marine ecosystems. *Science* 333, 1147–1150.

GSA2.2.9 Identification of key Low Trophic Level (LTL) stocks ▲

Ways of demonstrating whether a stock under assessment should be treated as a key LTL stock may include the use of qualitative information on the ecosystem, diet matrices to construct food webs and/or the use of ecosystem models that demonstrate the connection between species and trophic groups in the ecosystem.

- If ecosystem models are to be used they must be “credible”. “Credible” should be interpreted to mean:
 - Publicly available and well documented;
 - Fitted to time series data; and
 - Comprehensive (dealing with the whole ecosystem including all trophic levels). See also Essington & Pláganyi (2012, MSC Science Series).
- Where species are aggregated into trophic groups in ecosystem models, the degree of aggregation should adhere to the guidance provided in Fulton et al. (2003)¹⁵ that:
 - Aggregations do not include serially linked groups (predators and prey) and

¹⁵ Fulton, E.A., Smith, A.D.M. and Johnson C.R., 2003. Effect of complexity on marine ecosystem models. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 253: 1 – 16.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- That aggregations are not across species, age classes or functional groups with rate constants that differ by more than 2- to 3- fold. Where possible, information about trophic connection should be based on empirical evidence of trophic dependence.
- **Diet matrices**, which characterise the proportion of prey eaten by each predator in addition to the simple linkages between predators, may also be used. If diet matrices are used, they must also be constructed adhering to the guidance of Fulton et al (2003).
- In determining key LTL status, the **spatial scale** of the ecosystem that could be affected, and from which information should be derived, needs to be considered. This should generally correspond to the spatial distribution of the stock being fished, and could be broader in some instances (for example if the stock occurs within a well-defined spatial entity such as a gulf or regional sea). It will not necessarily correspond to the jurisdictional scale of the fishery. If the spatial scale of the ecosystem is considerably larger than the stock distribution, the potential impacts on predators of localised depletion would need to be considered.

Example:

In cases where key LTL stocks are identified by using total catch as a proxy for total biomass of the stock, this proxy needs to be scaled to the spatial extent of the stock and its predators. A low volume fishery in a major coastal upwelling system would be interpreted differently than one in a small embayment with several locally-dependent predators.

- Where the target stock or stock component under assessment is widely distributed and is present in more than one ecosystem, the assessment of sub-criteria i, ii and iii in paragraph [SA2.2.9a](#) in Annex SA of the CR should focus on the ecosystem containing largest abundance of the species.

The three sub-criteria in paragraph [SA2.2.9a](#) for identifying “key” LTL stocks follow the description of wasp-waisted ecosystems given by Cury et al. (2000, 2003)¹⁶ as being “typically dominated by only one, or at most a few” LTL species that transfer a very large proportion of the total primary production through the lower part of the food web, that account for the vast majority of predator diets and that control the abundance of both the prey and the predators of these LTL species. Guidance on assessing whether the each of the three sub-criteria are met is provided in the following sub-sections.

Teams should note that the MSC may, from time to time, modify the list of species in [Box SA1](#), where analyses indicate the consistency of other species with the criteria in paragraph [SA2.2.9b](#).

Key LTL criterion i – Connectivity

This sub-criterion requires that the LTL stock is eaten by the majority of predators, as stated: “a large proportion of the trophic connections in the ecosystem involve this species, leading to significant predator dependency”.

¹⁶ Cury, P., A. Bakun, R.J.M. Crawford, A. Jarre, R.A. Quinones, L.J. Shannon and H.M. Verheye (2000) Small pelagics in upwelling systems: patterns of interaction and structural changes in ‘wasp waist’ ecosystems. *ICES Journal of Marine Science* 57:603-619.

Cury, P., L. Shannon and Y.-J. Shin (2003) The functioning of marine ecosystems: a fisheries perspective. Pp103- 123 In *Responsible Fisheries in the Marine Ecosystem*, M. Sinclair and G. Valdimarsson (eds). FAO, Rome and CABI, Oxon UK.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

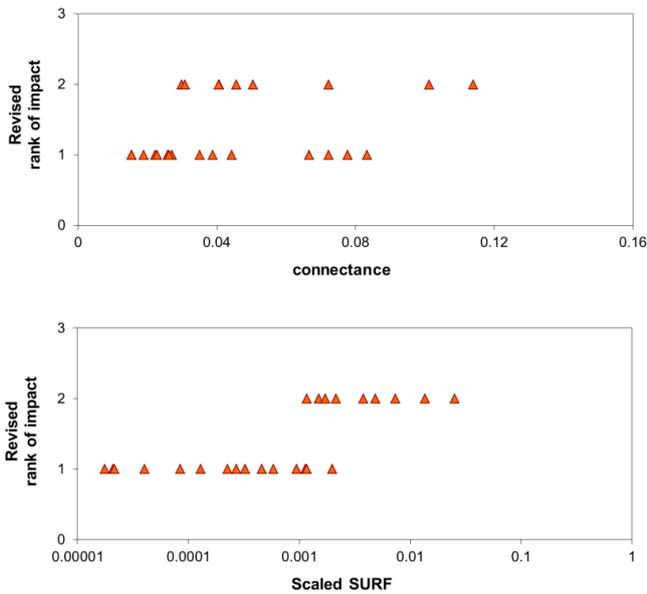
- In quantitative terms, food webs can be used to investigate connectance, which can be expressed as unweighted **Proportional Connectance** or the weighted **SURF index** (Supportive Role to Fishery ecosystems). SURF has the advantage that it is relatively insensitive to the grouping of predator and prey species; connectance is highly sensitive to them (Essington and Plaganyi, 2012 – MSC publication series).
- MSC has developed a spreadsheet which will calculate PC and SURF from a diet matrix. Many ecosystems have published diet matrices, including those that have had some basic ecosystem modelling undertaken such as ECOPATH. CABs and clients may request this spreadsheet from MSC.
- Proportional Connectance (PC) is calculated as follows, from a diet matrix that has n components, and only requires a knowledge of the interaction between groups, not the proportional diet fraction of each group.
 - The total connectance T in a diet matrix is the Number of all positive (non-zero) diet interactions between components (i.e., predator-prey).
 - The connectance C of a component is the total number of prey interactions plus the total number of predator interactions of that component calculated from the diet matrix.
 - Then the proportional connectance of prey i is $PC_i = \frac{C_i}{T}$
- **SURF** is calculated as follows
 - $SURF_i = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^n (p_{j,i})^2}{T}$
 - where p_{ij} is the diet fraction of predator j on prey i (the proportion of the diet of predator j that is made up of prey i).

Figure GSA2 shows the results, for key and non-key LTL species classified according to the MSC definition (as given in SA2.2.13): if, when fishing at $B/B_0=40\%$, no single ecosystem group is reduced by more than 70% of its B_0 , and no more than 15% of ecosystem groups are perturbed by more than 40% from their B_0) using the data in Smith et al (2011)¹⁷, of calculating connectance and SURF.

¹⁷ Smith, A.D.M. et al., 2011. Impacts of Fishing Low-Trophic Level Species on Marine Ecosystems. www.scienceexpress.org. 21 July 2011

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Figure GSA2: PC and SURF scores calculated from EwE ecosystem models presented in Smith et al (2011), plotted against their impact on the ecosystem: category 1 satisfies SA2.2.13a at $B/B_0 = 40\%$ and is classified as non-key LTL; category 2 fails SA2.2.13a and is classified as key-LTL



Based on the analyses illustrated in [Figure GSA2](#), the following should be assumed by assessment teams:

- Connectance values of less than 4% would normally indicate a non key-LTL stock; values of greater than 8% would indicate a key LTL stock.
- SURF values of less than 0.001 will normally indicate a non-key LTL stock. SURF values of greater than 0.005 will normally indicate a key-LTL stock.

In the intermediate zone, where the classification of the stock is uncertain, further qualitative evidence of predator dependency may be taken into consideration, e.g.:

- If the stock is important in the diets of many higher predators for much of the year ('importance' here might be shown by the species being the preferred diet of a predator, compared to other prey species that also occur in the diet depending on availability; or by the species having higher calorific value or other specific fitness, e.g. for the development of juveniles),
- If land-based colonies of predators (including seals, sea lions, penguins and other birds) are considered particularly dependent on this LTL stock, or
- If large aggregations of other species are known to gather to feed on this LTL stock.

In the absence of a credible quantitative model, assessing the percent of connections will require ecosystem-specific understanding of the food web connections in the whole ecosystem based on a comprehensive species list that identifies links for major prey and predators, particularly dependent predators of the LTL stock in question, and supported by the considerations presented in paragraphs above.

Key LTL criterion ii – Energy Transfer

This sub-criterion requires that “a large volume of energy passing between lower and higher trophic levels passes through this stock”;

- Argument to determine whether sub-criterion 1b is triggered may be based on 1) empirical data, 2) credible quantitative models, and/or 3) information about the relative abundance of the LTL stock in the ecosystem.
- Consumer biomass ratio is calculated as the biomass of the candidate key LTL stock, divided by the biomass of all consumers in the ecosystem (i.e., all ecosystem components that are not primary producers or detritus), i.e., $\text{Consumer Biomass Ratio} = \frac{B_{\text{LTL}}}{B_{\text{consumers}}}$.
- Model-based results suggest that any LTL stock that constitutes more than 5% of the consumer biomass in the ecosystem should be regarded as a key LTL stock.
- The importance of the size of a key LTL stock in determining whether there is a large volume of energy transfer through it will of course depend upon the size of the total energy in the ecosystem, and in the consumer biomass, as defined above.
- Although the size of the catch of a key-LTL stock is not directly indicative of its likely importance in energy transfer, nevertheless, in approximate terms catch size can be assumed to relate to ecosystem importance and may be used to support a plausible argument that a LTL species meets, or does not meet, criterion [SA2.2.13](#):
 - LTL stocks that are subject to small catches (<50,000 t average total catch from the stock over the last 5 years) by small scale fisheries will not normally be key LTL stocks. Catches less than this threshold may still indicate key LTL stocks in cases where they are taken from unusually small ecosystems.
 - The situation with LTL stocks that are subject to large catches (e.g. >100,000 t total catches from the stock over the last 5 years) in respect of key-LTL status is less easy to predict. CABs should, however, not assume that these fisheries are accessing non-key LTL stocks.

Key LTL criterion iii – Wasp-waisted-ness

The ‘wasp-waisted-ness’ sub-criterion requires that “there are few other species at this trophic level through which energy can be transmitted from lower to higher trophic levels, such that a high proportion of the total energy passing between lower and higher trophic levels passes through this stock”.

- Simple food webs will be sufficient to determine whether there are significant other functionally similar species (at a similar trophic level) to the candidate LTL stock.
 - Although for the candidate LTL species, the focus is on the adult component of the stock ([SA2.2.9.a](#), [SA2.2.9b](#)), the consideration of other species at the same trophic level should consider all life stages (including juveniles) of those species.
- Examination of catch statistics of other species of the types listed in [Box SA1](#) or [SA2.2.9.b.i](#) within the same ecosystem may also allow determination of whether there are few significant catches of other species at this trophic level.
 - In ecosystems where the catches of the candidate LTL stock are less than those of all other species at the same trophic level, the ecosystem may be regarded as not wasp-waisted and the candidate stock will not normally be a key LTL stock.

Example:

Sardine would be considered a key LTL species in the southern Benguela current system but not in the northern Humboldt system in its current state (as at 2010); if the Humboldt were to shift to a sardine-based rather than an anchovy-based system, it would once again become a key LTL species in that ecosystem.

As with other MSC guidance on ecosystem change (for instance relating to climate change, multi-decadal environmental cycles), CABs need to be aware of changes in ecosystem structure and productivity, and assess (in surveillance reports or in assessment / reassessment) the extent to which the fishery has taken these into account, for instance in the case of productivity by adjusting target/limit reference points, or in the case of ecosystem shifts such as above by reconsidering the species against the key LTL species definition.

GSA2.2.11–GSA2.2.16 Scoring stock status for key LTL stocks ▲

Estimates for B_0 referred to in SA2.2.12 and SA2.2.13 can be determined using credible single species or ecosystem models or from robust empirical data such as fishery independent surveys.

- See Smith et al (2011) for the justification of the impact levels required in SA2.2.13.b and the use of a default $75\%B_0$ target level for their achievement.
- In SA2.2.13.b, point i addresses broader “ecosystem-level” impacts, and point ii addresses individual species impacts.

GSA2.2.15 Scoring key LTL stocks based on fishing mortality rate (F) ▲

In the absence of robust estimates for B_0 , target fishing mortality rates that would achieve the appropriate target biomass levels can be adopted. Smith et al (2011) and the Lenfest task force¹⁸ found that exploitation rates about half MSY rates were required to limit the ecosystem impacts to the same levels obtained at the default $75\%B_0$.

For key LTL species, the default expectations provided in GSA2.2.4 (for non-key LTL species) should be modified to reflect the higher biomass levels expected and the lower fishing mortality rates needed.

- At least a **60** score is justified if F is likely to have been **somewhat below F_{MSY} but not as low as $50\%F_{MSY}$** for at least one generation time of the species (or for at least two years, if greater).
- At least an **80** score is justified if F is likely to have been at **$0.5F_{MSY}$ or $0.5M$** for at least two generation times (or for at least four years, if greater).
- A **100** score is justified if F is highly likely to have been **below $0.5F_{MSY}$ or $0.5M$** for at least two generation times (or for at least four years, if greater).

¹⁸ Pikitch, E., Boersma, P.D., Boyd, I.L., Conover, D.O., Cury, P., Essington, T., Heppell, S.S., Houde, E.D., Mangel, M., Pauly, D., Plagányi, É., Sainsbury, K., and Steneck, R.S. 2012. Little Fish, Big Impact: Managing a Crucial Link in Ocean Food Webs. Lenfest Ocean Program. Washington, DC. 108 pp. (see: <http://www.lenfestocean.org/foragefish>)

GSA2.2.16 Allowing for recruitment variability ▲

Environmental variability is generally high for fisheries based on key LTL species compared to non-LTL fisheries. In some cases, this makes biomass based reference points meaningless and better justifies the use of F-based management approaches.

GSA2.3 Stock Rebuilding PI (PI 1.1.2) ▲

Background

Where stocks are not regarded as 'fluctuating around' their target levels (B_{MSY} or higher levels for key LTL stocks) and they score less than 80 on PI 1.1.1, stock exploitation levels must be low enough to achieve stock rebuilding back up to the PI 1.1.1 SG80 level. The CR text does not refer to "formal recovery plans", as in some jurisdictions this terminology carries specific legislative or regulatory meaning. Fisheries are instead expected to have "recovery strategies", which may or may not be binding in a statutory context. Such recovery strategies are scored in the management component of Principle 1 (particularly PI 1.2.2). Here in PI 1.1.2, the material concerns are that an appropriate rebuilding timeframe is set, and that the exploitation rate and other factors confirm that rebuilding is likely to be achieved within that timeframe.

If PI 1.1.1 is scored lower than SG80, PI 1.1.2 must be scored. If PI 1.1.1 is rescored at SG80, PI 1.1.2 should be removed from the scoring of P1, regardless of whether any condition on the rebuilding timeframe has yet been met, and in this case such an unmet condition should be considered closed.

Scoring issue (a) - Rebuilding timeframes ▲

Where quantitative stock assessment information is used in scoring this PI, teams should note that stock rebuilding timeframes required in Sla relate to the time required for the stock to recover from the current level to the B_{MSY} level (or a level regarded as 'consistent with MSY' where proxies are used).

The rebuilding timeframe that may be reasonably expected will depend on the life history characteristics of the species, but MSC requires that even very slow growing stocks should have rebuilding plans that aim for a maximum of 20 years. On this basis, it may be impossible for some stocks to achieve recovery targets in a five year timeframe because of the life history parameters of the species under assessment: growth rate; size or age at maturity or recruitment to the fishery; stock size or age composition; longevity; and, natural mortality, among other things. On the other hand, some very fast growing stocks may recover faster than one certification period (5 years) and for this reason an extension to 5 years is allowed for these stocks.

As allowed in the scoring of other PIs, CABs should apply the definition of generation time given in [Box GSA4](#).

GSA2.3.2 – GSA2.3.3 Timeframes for achieving conditions ▲

Teams should note that stocks that trigger rebuilding may be allowed one year to put rebuilding strategies and monitoring in place. In this case, the fishery should not be immediately failed if the SG60 level is not met in this first year. In fisheries where stock assessments and the development of management advice are not an annual event, the team may consider allowances of more than one year.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

If PI 1.1.2 scores less than 80, due to a lack of evidence for rebuilding, the condition applied to develop such evidence should still be achieved within the normal maximum five year duration of the certificate (as required in SA2.3.3). While MSC's allowance for "exceptional circumstances" in FCR section 7.11.8 may still apply to rebuilding of the stock (which may be constrained by the species biology), it should not apply here to the necessary reduction in exploitation rate (which is regarded as being under the control of management and not constrained by the species biology).

MSC wishes to avoid the situation that fisheries appear in the upper left corner of a 'Kobe plot', with high exploitation rates even when stock size is reduced. Teams should thus consider whether any condition on rebuilding could reasonably be achieved in less than the maximum five year period, e.g. on an 'accelerated' two year timescale. Fisheries in this situation should be expected to begin effective rebuilding (and thereby achieve the SG80 level for this PI) as fast as reasonably possible.

GSA2.3.4 Scoring fishing mortality rate as evidence of rebuilding ▲

Teams should note the requirement to explicitly consider levels of fishing mortality rate in this PI, where this information is available (SA2.3.4).

The MSC's expectation of rebuilding is that for most stocks, scores of 80 or 100 will require fishing mortality to be lower than F_{MSY} , as described in SA2.3.4.1 and 2.3.4.2. The alternative allowance in SA2.3.4.3 would apply only in exceptional circumstances where there is real demonstrated recovery in the stock even though F is not less than F_{MSY} . This may still occur in some years, for example, in HCRs where F is specifically used as a target rather than a limit, as described in the examples in Box GSA3. It may also be temporarily acceptable following a series of recent high levels of recruitment due to good environmental conditions. In such cases, the "alternative clear evidence that the stocks are rebuilding" should include that the stock has increased in at least the last two years (or other period as used in the assessment of the fishery). Evidence of only one year/period of growth should not be accepted as sufficient evidence in these cases. The scoring rationale in these cases should thus include some understanding of why the stock is rebuilding even though F is higher than F_{MSY} .

Teams should give particular consideration to the level of fishing mortality in cases where environmental variability appears to be affecting the ability of the stock to recover.

In situations where climatic cycles (e.g. decadal-scale) are shown to be reducing the potential of the stock to achieve good recruitment, 80 or 100 scores may still be justified when fishing mortality rate is 'likely' or 'highly likely' below F_{MSY} and the expectation is that good recruitment will be restored when climatic conditions permit. Consideration should also be given to the target levels that are expected for rebuilding, consistent with GSA2.2.7.

GSA2.4 Harvest Strategy PI (PI 1.2.1) ▲

Background

This PI scores the overall performance of the harvest strategy, particularly the way that the different elements work together to keep the stock at levels consistent with reference points.

Scoring Issue (a) – Harvest strategy design ▲

The elements of the harvest strategy need to work together. CABs should therefore consider the overall performance of the harvest strategy, and how its elements contribute to allowing the management system to be responsive to the state of the stock.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Key elements of harvest strategies include:

- the control rules and tools in place, including the ability of the management system to control effort, taking into account issues such as overcapacity and its causes;
- the information base and monitoring stock status and the responsiveness of the management system and fleet to stock status.

CABs should also consider whether there are issues that might compromise the effectiveness of the harvest strategy, such as fishing overcapacity caused by subsidies. If overcapacity exists as a result of subsidies, the management system should be robust enough to deal with this issue and still deliver a sustainable fishery in accordance with MSC Principle 1 & 2.

Assessing informal approaches against PI 1.2.1

Assessment of data-deficient fisheries against this indicator should consider how elements of the harvest strategy combine to manage impact, such that susceptibility is maintained at or below acceptable levels given the productivity of the species.

- The assessment should factor in the likelihood of changes within the fishery that could potentially lead to an increase in the risk of impact from fishing activity over time.
- Teams should further consider how elements of the strategy are combining to ensure that the fishery is moving in the desired direction or operating at a low risk level and that qualitative or semi-quantitative objectives are being achieved.
- There should be evidence that the expected objectives are being achieved. Evidence may be demonstrated through local knowledge or research.
- CABs should determine the extent to which there is a feedback and learning mechanism to inform the harvest strategy on an ongoing basis. Depending on the scale of the fishery this could be through informal stakeholder processes that are based on local knowledge of the fishery or any other less subjective review process.

GSA2.4.1 Interpretation of terms ▲

As used in SI1.2.1b at the 100 level, an 'evaluation' may range from a subjective stakeholder process in small scale/data deficient (SS/DD) fisheries to quantitative Management Strategy Evaluation (MSE) as appropriate to the fishery.

'Testing' at the 80 level in SI1.2.1b can include the use of experience from analogous fisheries, empirical testing (for example practical experience of performance or evidence of past performance) and simulation testing (for instance using computer-intensive modelling such as Management Strategy Evaluation (MSE)). Testing and evaluation in Scoring Issue (b) at the Harvest Strategy level should consider the full interactions between different components of the harvest strategy, including the HCRs, use of information and the assessment of stock status. A score of 100 for this SI1.2.1b requires a broader evaluation than that considered in the evaluation of the robustness of HCRs in SI1.2.2b.

GSA2.4.3 Shark finning ▲

Background

At its December 2011 meeting, the MSC Board of Trustees resolved that shark finning shall not be undertaken within MSC certified fisheries.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The intent of scoring issues (e) in PIs 1.2.1, 2,1,2 and 2,2,2 is to provide a mechanism for scoring a fishery on the level of certainty that a CAB has that shark finning is not taking place. These scoring issues intend to assess the arrangements that are in place to ensure shark finning is not taking place. It is designed as a combination of regulations and external validation.

Regardless of a fishery's performance against these PIs, the CAB should not certify or maintain the certification of a fishery when there is objective verifiable evidence that indicates shark finning is taking place. Objective verifiable evidence could be any documented statement of fact based on observations, measurements or tests which can be verified.

GSA2.4.5 – GSA2.4.7 ▲

Fins naturally attached and fin: carcass ratios

The MSC considers that a policy requiring the landing of all sharks with fins naturally attached is the most rigorous approach to ensuring that shark finning is not occurring. However, the MSC recognises that in some fisheries this may be practically difficult to achieve when sharks are destined for processing and utilisation, and therefore also recognises that landing fins and other shark parts separately, including as meal, may be allowed if adequately regulated and observed.

Ratios vary within species and fishing fleets. Recent studies on 50 species of shark highlighted a variation of mean species specific fin to carcass ratios of 1.1% to 10.9% (Biery & Pauly, 2012). Accurate ratios for each species are essential for any meaningful monitoring of catches (Cortés & Neer, 2006; Ariz et al., 2008). Ratios should consider cutting practices, wet-fin-mass or dried fin mass to carcass ratio, and whether the carcass is wet weight or dressed (processed) weight. If fins have been dried and the carcass has been dressed at sea, then conversion factors should be used to calculate the ratios. Where there is no scientific consensus or lack of scientific evidence, the CAB should allow use of the ratio approach and require to land fins naturally attached.

Where reference is made to the requirement for fins to be naturally attached (FNA) to the body, in order to facilitate freezing and storage the fishery could partially cut the fins, including for the purposes of draining blood to avoid ammoniation, and fold them around the carcasses. FNA includes leaving the fins attached by just a small piece of skin so that the sharks can be packed at sea efficiently, and that the fins can be fully removed from the shark at the dock without having to thaw the shark. However, fins should be attached to a substantial part of the shark, not just some vertebrae.

Regulations

Regulations refer to regulations governing the management of sharks including but not limited to prohibiting shark finning, such as ratified RFMO conservation measures, national or international MOUs or agreements, implementation of NPOAs on sharks, national legislation regulating the management and catch of sharks, etc.

Processing and utilisation

Processing should involve the transformation and the retention of a substantial part of the shark apart from the fins. Retention of a minor body part, such as teeth, should not be counted as processing. The definition for processing includes "highly utilised", meaning that a major part of the animal is retained during the processing (either on board or once landed).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

External validation

The certification requirements mention levels external validation by way of indicating the types of confidence that the MSC would require to demonstrate that shark finning is not occurring.

The assessment team should use their expert judgement concerning the actual validation methods available and their ability to confirm the likelihood that shark finning is not taking place (SA2.4.4.1). However, the following guidance is available:

- At **SG 60** “some external validation” should be understood to indicate a validation level equivalent to a nominal observer coverage of 5% of effort, although the CAB may accept other rates and alternative measures/evidence (e.g. dockside monitoring) with sufficient justification that the same scientific outcome (likely confidence that finning is not taking place) is delivered.
- At **SG 80** “good external validation” should be understood to indicate a validation level equivalent to a nominal observer coverage of 20% of effort, although the CAB may accept other rates and alternative measures/evidence with sufficient justification that the same scientific outcome (highly likely confidence that finning is not taking place) is delivered.
- At **SG 100** “comprehensive external validation” is required. This gives consideration of the continuity of data collection, precision and accuracy of information, and any bias, etc, that is capable of supporting the measures in place given the level of precaution that is implicit in the measures and the ability of the measures for detecting any changes.

In cases where alternative evidence and alternative observer coverage is used, the CAB should ensure that it meets the same level of confidence as the default observer coverage. CABs should assess the adequacy of the methods used, particularly with respect to the precision, accuracy and bias (statistical and observational bias) of the method and its ability to provide externally verifiable data (see also GSA3.6.4).

Additional/alternative measures/evidence sufficient to ensure shark finning is not taking place could be effective electronic monitoring (e.g. using VMS-linked video monitoring with a high percentage coverage of fishing activity), dockside verification of catches where bodies and body parts are required to be landed together by law, and various combinations of these elements. Dockside monitoring can for instance, validate ratios between shark and the fins at the point of landing.

The percentage of on board observer coverage generally refers to coverage of total fishing effort of all vessels in the UoA. CABs may accept other expressions of the percentage coverage but should ensure in any case that the sampling strategy provides a reasonable representation of the catches of the UoA as a whole. In order to establish whether observer data or other monitoring mechanisms are representative of the activity of the UoA during a year, and can be relied upon to have detected representative encounters with sharks, CABs could seek evidence for the management system having examined the on board observer data, or other data, for consistency with the reported/landed/etc. catches of sharks.’ This could be done, for example, by comparing the on board observer reports to the logbooks.

When sharks are processed on board the number of animals taken should be recorded as specified in the reporting template. Given that after processing sharks are no longer whole, the CAB can use a ‘conversion factor’, to calculate the equivalent live weight based on the dressed (processed) weight.

GSA2.5 Harvest Control Rules & Tools PI (PI 1.2.2) ▲

Background

This PI assesses the harvest control rules (HCRs) and actions that management takes in response to changes in the fishery and/or changes in status in relation to reference points.

HCRs are the arrangements by which a fishery expects to achieve the stock status outcomes expressed in PI 1.1.1. They are defined as the pre-agreed rules and management actions that will be taken in response to changes in indicators of stock status with respect to explicit or implicit reference points, and MSC expects these elements to be part of HCRs. The values adopted for such reference points are critical to the performance of the HCR, and CABs should ensure that the interaction between the rules of the HCR and the reference points is part of their assessment.

With the removal of the reference points PI in version 2.0 of the standard, parts of the guidance originally applied to the Reference Points PI 1.1.2 in CR v1.3 have now been moved and adapted to more clearly apply in this PI.

For low trophic level species the target and limit reference points need to take into account the ecological role of the stock for the fishery to score 60 or above under PI 1.1.1. The harvest strategy, control rules, information requirements and assessment also need to be consistent with this distinction for low trophic level species.

There are conceptual differences in the reference points that may be involved in scoring PI 1.1.1 and PI 1.2.2. This is because fisheries may use different reference points for measuring stock status (outcome), and as triggers in the HCRs. Dowling et al (2011a, b)¹⁹ provide examples of such different types of reference points within the conceptual framework of HCRs and harvest strategies used by the MSC. A fishery that uses an explicit B_{MSY} reference point as a target for the fishery biomass may, for example have trigger reference points for adjusting F at values of biomass either at B_{MSY} , or above or below B_{MSY} . Other examples are available in Dowling et al (2011) and in some MSC fisheries (e.g. see Tristan da Cunha and Maine lobster). The focus in this PI is thus on the reference points used in a fishery to trigger changes in management actions, and how they work in combination to achieve the outcomes required in PI 1.1.1.

Scoring Issue (a) – HCR design and application ▲

This scoring issue focuses on the assessment of the design and plausibility of HCRs and management tools to control exploitation of the whole stock(s) under assessment.

HCRs and/or management tools should be based on plausible hypotheses about resource dynamics and be reasonable and practical, meaning that those measures possess a substantial likelihood of success. The basis for plausibility and practicality of design should be considered in relation to the scale and intensity of the fishery, for instance utilising empirical information; relevant science; or model based approaches such as MP and MSE.

The HCRs should be scored against their ability to deliver the levels expressed in Sla (consistent with the actual outcomes measured in PI 1.1.1).

- At the **60 level**, HCRs should be likely to ensure that stocks will be maintained above the PRI.

¹⁹ Dowling, N.A., Dichmont, C.M, Smith, A.D.M. Smith, D.C. and Haddon, M., 2011a. *Guidelines on developing harvest strategies for data-poor fisheries*. CSIRO.
Dowling, N.A., Haddon, M., Smith, D.C., Dichmont, C.M. and Smith, A.D.M., 2011b. *Harvest Strategies for Data-Poor Fisheries: A Brief Review of the Literature*. CSIRO.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- At the **80 level**, HCRs should also ensure that the stock is likely to fluctuate around a B_{MSY} level. Testing may show that this is achieved by the inclusion of a B_{MSY} consistent reference point as a trigger in the HCRs (such as an inflection in a 'hockey stick' form) at a point that would deliver B_{MSY} in the long term.
- At the **100 level**, greater certainty is required. Fisheries with HCRs that target stock levels above B_{MSY} (eg. B_{MEY}) should also be regarded as at least meeting the 80 level and projections in the fishery may show that the HCR would likely achieve the higher 100 score by fluctuating more above than around B_{MSY} .

HCRs will usually include some form of dynamic rule, requiring that a change of some sort will be made in response to a fishery indicator moving above or below one of the trigger reference points. In lightly exploited fisheries, it may be that some reference points are set to trigger changes in data collection or assessment approaches, as certain thresholds are reached (see Dowling et al, 2011a).

HCRs are often applied on a frequent basis, such as with the annual setting of TACs or effort restrictions. Such HCRs respond dynamically to the monitoring data from the fishery with regular adjustments to input/output type management measures. In data-poor fisheries which are managed without such input/output controls, management may comprise only technical measures such as size limits, gear restrictions, closed seasons and closed areas. In these cases, the specific terms of the technical measures are usually set and fixed for a relatively long period of time (several years), based on occasional strategic stock assessments, that are shown to deliver defined target and/or limit reference points. Such an arrangement may be regarded as equivalent to a dynamic HCR operating over a longer time scale in cases where some indicators are monitored to confirm that the HCRs are delivering the intended targets for the stock.

At the 80 level in scoring issue (a), 'well-defined' HCRs in these cases would be expected to explicitly include the conditions under which the technical measures in the fishery would be expected to be revised in the future.

Example:

Relatively sedentary bivalves often have fishery management trigger points based on population densities collected through systematic surveys, where these index densities are established based on the species population dynamics and the inherent productivity of the habitat and environmental conditions. There may be no formal stock assessment but yield is calculated on a proportion of the observed biomass and the harvested fraction determined on empirical evidence from historical catches and their consequences. While such arrangements can work, teams should note that HCRs based on taking a constant percentage of the year's estimated biomass should not be regarded as meeting the requirement of avoiding the PRI unless some lower threshold is defined.

The requirement that an HCR reduces exploitation rates as the limit reference point is approached should not always be interpreted as requiring the control rule to deliver an exploitation rate that is a monotonically decreasing function of stock size:

- Any exploitation rate function may be acceptable so long as it acts to keep the stock above a limit reference point that avoids possible recruitment failure and attempts to maintain the stock at a target reference point that is consistent with B_{MSY} or a similar highly productive level.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- This outcome includes the requirement that the HCR should act to cause stocks to rebuild to the target reference point when they are below it; maintenance of a stock at a level just above the limit reference point would not be acceptable.
- A reduction of exploitation rate may not always mean that the control rule requires a reduction in "total" exploitation rate, but instead could for instance involve reducing exploitation rate on parts of the stock (e.g., by age or sex).
- Reductions in exploitation rate are assumed to primarily refer to reductions in catches and effort, and not to gear modifications unless these have the effect of reducing catches/effort.

As noted in the guidance on PI 1.1.1, HCRs may include both explicit and implicit reference points.

Examples:

If a management strategy is based solely around a target reference point, the HCR, when combined with the target reference point should ensure that the stock remains well above the PRI and ensure that the exploitation rate is reduced as this point is approached. This is an implied limit reference point.

Equally, a management strategy based solely around a limit reference point should imply that there is a target reference point close to or at B_{MSY} (or some other measure or surrogate that maintains the stock at high productivity), and at a level that is well above the limit reference point.

Generally understood' HCRs at SG60 vs 'well-defined' HCRs at SG80

HCRs should be regarded as 'well-defined' in the sense required to achieve an 80 score when they exist in some written form that has been agreed by the management agency, ideally with stakeholders, and clearly state what actions will be taken at what specific trigger reference point levels.

HCRs should be regarded as only 'generally understood' as required to achieve a 60 score in cases where they can be shown to have been applied in some way in the past, but have not been explicitly defined or agreed.

GSA2.5.2 – 2.5.5 Scoring 'available' HCRs at SG60 ▲

In scoring issue (a), and the requirements given in SA2.5.2 to SA2.5.5, the expectation is that 'available' HCRs may meet the SG60 level in cases where stock biomass has not previously been reduced below the B_{MSY} level or has been above it for a sufficiently long recent time, and it is 'expected' that the management authority will introduce HCRs for this species in the future if needed.

Under clause 2.5.3.a, teams may provide a rationale that this could reasonably be 'expected' for the target species in cases where HCRs are currently being 'effectively' used by the same management agency on at least one other species of similar importance (i.e., of a similar average catch levels and value).

As an alternative, teams may provide a rationale under clause 2.5.3.b in cases where there is some sort of arrangement in place that clearly requires that management will put HCRs in place as and when the fishery reaches some pre-defined trigger level within the vicinity of B_{MSY} . Such arrangements would normally relate to lightly exploited fisheries that are still in the development stage, but should be explicit in requiring action at some defined point.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Although potentially driven by information and triggers, such arrangements are different to the actual HCRs as they relate to the development of the **HCRs** themselves while the HCRs define how **management measures** will be adjusted in response to changes in fishery status.

In all cases, there should be a real confidence backed up by 'evidence' (as reported against SI1.2.2c) that the management agency can and will act effectively and in a timely fashion when needed (such evidence being as described in SA2.5.5).

In cases where the stock has not yet been reduced and 'available' HCRs are scored as meeting the 60 level, the condition assigned to this PI may allow longer than the normal five year time period for delivery. While there will be advantages in designing and putting into place a 'well-defined' HCR during the certification period, it may also be acceptable to do this over a longer time period, for example if other conditions are being delivered first. This allowance is made on the basis that the stock remains abundant and the criteria given in SA2.5.2 are still met. As soon as these criteria are no longer met, the fishery will need to have at least 'generally understood' HCRs in place to score 60.

Stocks that change status and thereby fail to meet the SA2.5.2 criteria during the course of a certificate will need to put HCRs in place (in either a 'generally understood' sense or 'well defined'). Given the specific timeframes indicated in SA2.5.2, HCRs (either 'generally understood' or 'well defined') should be in place before a stock declines below B_{MSY} . Similar to the situation with the rebuilding PI (section GSA2.3) fisheries should be allowed one year to put HCRs in place, so that the fishery need not be immediately failed if the SG60 level is not met in this first year. If such fisheries fail to put in place either 'generally understood' or 'well defined' HCRs within one year, they should be suspended by the CAB as not meeting the SG60 level.

Scoring Issue (b) – Scoring uncertainty in the HCRs ▲

In scoring issue (b), teams must assess how well the HCRs are likely to function when the unexpected happens in the future. The scoring guideposts reflect the degree of confidence there is in the HCR performance in relation to risks, caused by both known and unknown factors. Known factors include observation and process errors which are often accounted for in stock assessments. Unknown factors may include unpredictable effects from climate, environmental or anthropogenic non-fishery related factors, which could, for example, lead to periods of low recruitment or growth, high natural mortality or migration. These and other changes to the population dynamics may not have been fully accounted for in the stock assessment or projections. Another important reason why there may be limited confidence in a HCR is where it has not been fully agreed by stakeholders, and it is uncertain whether the fishing community will comply with the HCR. This last issue is important to ensure HCRs are not only theoretical rules on paper, but are actually applied in practice.

The requirement that the control rules and/or management actions are designed to take into account uncertainty can be supported by testing. Testing can include the use of experience from analogous fisheries, empirical testing (for example practical experience of performance or evidence of past performance) and simulation testing (for instance using computer-intensive modelling such as MSE).

Although it may generally be the case that limit reference points are set at the point that reproductive capacity starts to be appreciably impaired, for some fisheries, especially those for small pelagic species and annual species where there the stock recruit relationship is very steep, management may choose to set a limit reference point above this level. Where this results in more precautionary management, it may assist the fishery in achieving the 80 or 100 level for scoring issue (b).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

HCRs in small scale fisheries may still achieve high scores if uncertainties are well considered. Simple HCRs linked to reliable indices of stock status may thus score highly on this issue without management strategy evaluations.

Scoring Issue (c) – Evaluating the effectiveness of HCRs (SA2.5.6 – SA2.5.7)



In the third scoring issue, teams must review the ability of the tools associated with the HCRs to achieve the exploitation levels. Such tools would include management measures like total allowable catches (TACs) and fishing limits, and arrangements for sharing TACs between participants in the fishery, including between states in shared stock fisheries. The examination here may consider the overall history of effectiveness of the tools used in the fishery (i.e., their ability to achieve the desired exploitation rates and biomass levels) as well as the current status.

Section SA2.5.6 requires that teams examine the current exploitation levels in the fishery, as part of the evidence that the HCRs are working. Evidence that current F is equal to or less than F_{MSY} should usually be taken as evidence that the HCR is effective. Current F levels greater than F_{MSY} may also sometimes be accepted in cases where stock biomass is currently higher than B_{MSY} or where stock assessment information is comprehensive, and it is appropriate to treat F_{MSY} as a target reference point (see Box GSA3). Teams should be confident in these cases that any such higher levels of F are not likely to lead to overcapacity in the fishery or to create a situation where B is likely to fall below a level at which it is regarded as 'fluctuating around B_{MSY} '. Lower levels of F should be expected when biomass is reduced, consistent with the scoring of the rebuilding PI. In any case, teams should justify how the current levels of fishing mortality are consistent with maintaining the stock fluctuating around a target level consistent with (or above) B_{MSY} .

Teams may also make allowance for the gradual adjustment of fishing mortality rates down to appropriate levels in cases where the pace of change is limited to avoid severe socio-economic impacts in a fishery. In these cases, projections of stock status should confirm that the expected future adjustments in F will still lead to fluctuations around MSY levels within a reasonable timescale.

Where proxy indicators and reference points are used in the fishery instead of explicit estimates of F and F_{MSY} (as allowed in SA2.5.7), higher scores should be assigned where greater confidence is provided by the proxy information, similar to the scoring of PI 1.1.1. Where higher scores are justified by the use of two or more proxy indicators, they should be independent of each other and also reasonably be expected to be proxies of the quantity of interest (such as mean fish size in the case of exploitation rates). The team should present a rationale for how the proxies conform to these principles.

As with the case of using proxies for scoring stock biomass in PI 1.1.1, it may sometimes be argued that one good proxy is better than two or more weak proxies.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Examples: 60, 80 and 100 SG levels

Examples of how the 60, 80 and 100 SG levels may be justified in these situations are given below:

- At least a **60 score** may be justified if **one proxy** indicates that overfishing is not occurring;
- At least an **80 score** may be justified if **one or more** proxies indicate that it is **likely** that overfishing is not occurring. In this case, the extra confidence may be due to the availability of a second proxy indicator, or when a minimum 70% probability level can be assigned to the single indicator used (as compared to the SG60 level where this probability level may not be demonstrated); and
- A **100 score** may be justified if **two or more** proxies indicate it is **highly likely** that overfishing is not occurring.

Assessing informal approaches to HCRs

In informally managed fisheries, CABs should assess the extent to which there are management tools and measures in place that are consistent with ensuring that susceptibility of the target species to removal is no higher than that which would cause the risk to the target species to be above an acceptable risk range. Measures could be spatial, temporal, or changes to gear overlap.

Assessments should also consider measures in place to respond to changes in the fishery, for example, by reducing the susceptibility of target species when the fishery is not heading in the direction of its objectives.

Metapopulations

Scoring issues (b) and (c) require that teams assess whether or not the selection and design of harvest control rules takes into account the main / wide range of uncertainties.

Uncertainties relating to the metapopulation structure should be specifically addressed by the assessment team. Teams should note the descriptions of different types of metapopulations in Section G7.4.7.

GSA2.6 Information Monitoring PI (PI 1.2.3) ▲

Background

This PI addresses the information base for the management of the target stocks. The information and monitoring required for the management of stocks should only include that which is needed to inform the harvest strategy, HCRs and control tools.

The intent of SG60 is that while only a limited amount of information may be available and regularly monitored this would normally be considered sufficient to support the HCR under the most likely stock hypothesis.

Information is required:

- To undertake assessment of stock status;
- To inform the design of a harvest strategy and effective HCRs;
- For the effective operation of harvest control tools.

GSA2.6.1 Information categories ▲

The following guidance is offered on information categories:

- **Stock structure** could incorporate information describing the distribution and geographical range of the stock, the relationship of the geographical range to the harvest control, and the age, size, sex and genetic structure of the stock.
- **Stock productivity** could incorporate maturity, growth, natural mortality, density dependent processes, the stock recruit relationship and fecundity.
- **Fleet composition** could incorporate information on associated effort by gear type/method of capture, including fleet characteristics in both targeted and non-targeted fisheries taking the species. The general assumption is that information is required for the stock as a whole, but better information would usually be expected from the fishery unit that is being assessed.
- **Stock abundance** could incorporate information relating to absolute or relative abundance indices including recruitment, age, size, sex and genetic structure of the stock. Reflecting the guidance on surrogate measures under PI 1.1.1, the requirement for 'stock abundance' information at SG60 and SG80 may be met by the use of surrogate indicators that provide an adequate proxy for stock abundance.
- **Fishery removals** could incorporate information describing the level, size, age, sex and genetic structure of landings, discards, illegal, unreported, unregulated, recreational, customary and incidental mortality of the target stock by location and method of capture. Information is required for the stock as a whole, but better information would usually be expected from the fishery being assessed.
- **Other data** may include environmental information such as temperature, weather and other factors that may influence fish populations and fishing.

See clause [GSA3.6.4](#) for more guidance on information PIs and discards data collection methods.

The intent behind the consideration in SG100 that additional information should be available that may not be directly relevant to the current harvest strategy, is that the information monitoring system should take into account information relevant to a wider set of possible stock hypotheses than addressed by the current harvest strategy. This is essentially "future proofing" the management system against alternative hypotheses and changes in the system.

Scoring issues (b) and (c) – Scoring fishery removals ▲

The distinction between scoring issues (b) and (c) for PI 1.2.3 at SG80 relates to the relative amount or quality of information required on fishery removals.

Scoring issue (b) relates to fishery removals specifically by those vessels covered under the unit of assessment which need to be regularly monitored and have a level of accuracy and coverage consistent with the harvest control rule.

The reference to 'other' fishery removals in scoring issue (c) relates to vessels outside or not covered by the unit of assessment. These require good information but not necessarily to the same level of accuracy or coverage as that covered by the second scoring issue.

Metapopulations

Understanding dispersal pathways and population connectivity is important for devising effective harvest strategies and therefore information related to the metapopulation structure should be specifically addressed by the assessment team.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Information that could be relevant to the assessment would include:

- life cycle of the species, including its spatial distribution and temporal distribution
- identification of local populations and the extent to which they are connected, and function as either sinks or sources, reflecting the dispersal of both larvae and adult
- the role of oceanographic features or any other mechanisms in controlling larval dispersal and connectivity
- existence of genetic studies comparing local populations
- variations in population structure and demographic parameters between sources and sinks

GSA2.7 Assessment of Stock Status PI (PI 1.2.4) ▲

Background

This PI considers how the fishery assesses information to provide an understanding of stock status and the effectiveness of the harvest strategy. Some harvest strategies assess stock status using empirical indicators and do not require use of quantitative assessment models. In such cases, the Assessment PI will be scored relative to the robustness of that indicator (which may also have contributed to the score for the Information PI).

This PI refers to stock assessments but in some circumstances, particularly under SG100, it may be useful to consider if MP/MSE approaches were used to test the robustness of the stock assessment to uncertainty and alternative hypotheses.

For some harvest strategies stock assessment methods may not be model based but based on stock status relative to empirical reference points (e.g., catch rate, density, survey abundance, among other things), and decision rules may be constructed of rules using these indices rather than analytical assessments. Other harvest strategies may utilise complex analytical models.

Metapopulations

Where several or many local populations exist within a metapopulation, it is unlikely that full stock assessments would be done annually for each local population. The degree of self-recruitment and demographic connectivity among sub-populations should dictate the specific assessment required to allow for responsible and sustainable harvest.

Assessment teams should specifically take into consideration the appropriateness of the stock assessment in relation to the metapopulation structure.

Teams should also assess whether or not the stock assessment identifies and takes into account major sources of uncertainties related to the metapopulation structure.

GSA3 Principle 2

GSA3.1 General requirements for Principle 2 ▲

Background

The Principle 2 assessment is divided into five components; which are considered to cover the range of potential ecosystem elements that may be impacted by a fishery (See [Table GSA2](#) below).

Table GSA2: Components of Principle 2

Component	Intent
Primary Species	Managed, in-scope (e.g. fish and shellfish) species. Primary species will usually be species of commercial value to either the UoA or fisheries outside the UoA, with management tools controlling exploitation as well as known reference points in place. In addition, the institution or arrangement that manages the species (or its local stock, see below) will usually have some overlap in jurisdiction with the fishery in the UoA.
Secondary Species	Secondary species include fish and shellfish species that are not managed according to reference points and birds/mammals/reptiles/amphibians (all species that are out of scope of the standard) that are not ETP species. These types of species could in some cases be landed intentionally to be used either as bait or as food for the crew or for other subsistence uses, but may also in some cases represent incidental catches that are undesired but somewhat unavoidable in the fishery. Given the often unmanaged status of these species, there are unlikely to be reference points for biomass or fishing mortality in place, as well as a general lack of data availability.
ETP Species	Endangered, Threatened or Protected Species
Habitats	The chemical and bio-physical environment, including biogenic structures, where fishing takes place.
Ecosystem	Broader ecosystem elements such as trophic structure and function, community composition, and biological diversity.

In general terms, the impacts of the fishery on the different P2 components are assessed as below:

- Primary species, secondary species and habitats are assessed for the direct impacts of fishing.
- ETP species are assessed for both direct and indirect impacts.
- The Ecosystem component is assessed for indirect impacts.

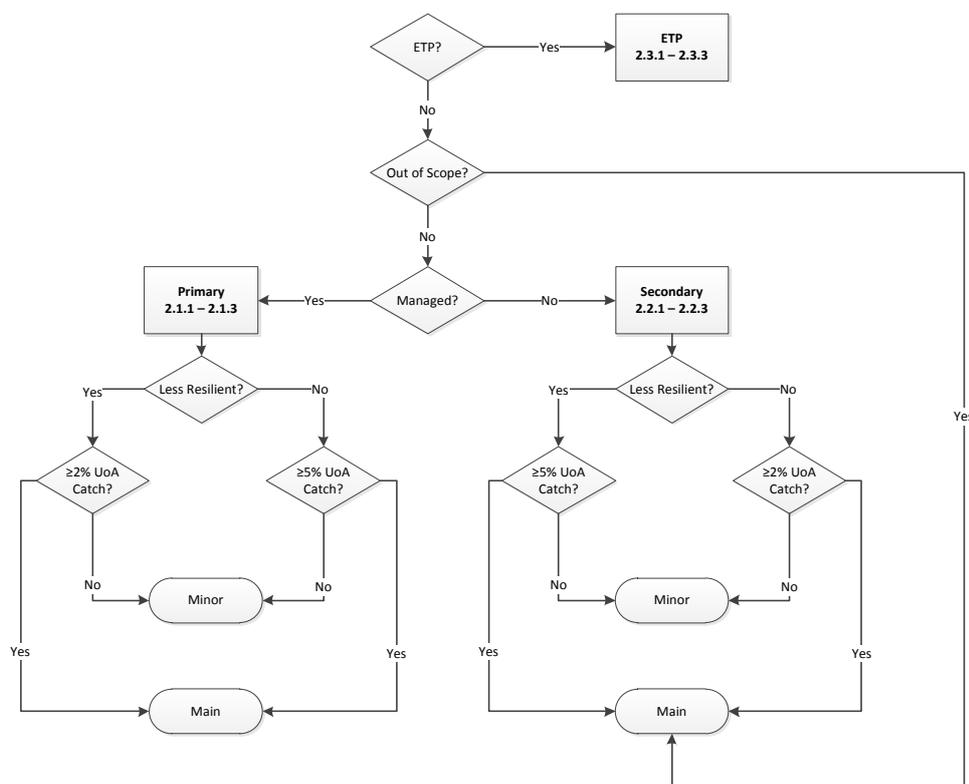
Direct impacts in this context include the actual capture of a species by fishing, and other types of direct mortality, such as following discarding or interactions with the fishing gear. Indirect impacts include situations where the removal of the target species reduces its availability as prey for a predator species, and a range of ecosystem level changes as described in section [GSA3.16](#).

GSA3.1.1 – 3.1.4 Designation of P2 species ▲

In Principle 2, the MSC use the term 'species' in scoring issues and requirements within primary, secondary and ETP PIs. As in Principle 1 (see [Box GSA3](#)), it is the MSC's intent that the term 'species' as used in Principle 2 could mean an entire species or only a stock or population of a species, as appropriate to the species and the context of the fishery in assessment. As an example, a large pelagic fishery in the Atlantic that takes a P2 catch of a certain tuna species would only include a P2 assessment on the Atlantic tuna stock, and need not consider any clearly separate Pacific stock. Assessment teams may thus score the primary, secondary and ETP PIs either as species or as stocks depending on their overlap with the fishery.

The decision tree outlined in [Figure GSA3](#) provides an overview of the intent of the separation between primary, secondary and ETP species. Teams may use the decision tree as a guide on the designation of P2 species, but should primarily be guided by the definitions of 'primary', 'secondary', 'ETP' and 'less resilient' in the FCR and GFCR.

Figure GSA3: Decision tree to assist teams in the designation of P2 species components



Fisheries Certification Requirements

Examples: Primary species

- A species with a full analytical stock assessment in place that is managed as a whole stock according to a scientifically established TAC.
- A species that does not have a full analytical stock assessment, but where established proxies for the PRI are in place and all fisheries impacting that stock are managed to maintain the stock above that proxy reference point.
- A species with a multi-jurisdictional distribution that is recognized to be below a scientifically established limit reference point, but only one jurisdiction has set up a recovery strategy which all fisheries operating in that area have to adhere to. The UoA targeting that species is subject to a different management authority, which has no management measures in place, but since the species distribution overlaps with an area that would classify that species as primary, the UoA also has to classify it as a primary species.

Examples: Secondary species

- A species managed according to a precautionary TAC that has no analytical or empirically derived stock assessment in place and the stock status in relation to the PRI is unknown.
- A species with some scientific advice on stock status indicating a limit reference point as well as a recommended TAC, but where this advice has not yet been adopted and operationalized by the relevant management authorities (when implemented by the authorities, such species would instead be a primary species).
- A species classified as out of scope (bird, reptile, amphibian, mammal) that is not recognized by national or international authorities as an ETP species.

Example: ETP species

- A species listed on CITES Appendix I, even though the national management authority does not recognize it as an ETP species (note also GSA3.1.5).

GSA3.1.5 ETP ▲

The team should consider all ETP species that are vulnerable to being impacted by the fishery in the assessment area.

In situations where data on interactions with ETP species is limited, the assessment team should take a more inclusive approach (i.e., all ETP species in the geographic area).

GSA3.1.5.2 Binding International Agreements ▲

When referring to international agreements, by “binding” the MSC means that the international legislation is binding on the parties to the agreement. Neither the flag state of the UoA, nor the state in which fishing takes place, need be a signatory to this agreement for it to be applicable to MSC certified UoAs.

Species listed under CITES Appendix 1 shall be considered ETP species, unless it can be shown that the particular stock of the CITES listed species impacted by the fishery under assessment is not endangered.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Example:

For example, if a species is listed in CITES Appendix 1 because it is endangered in the Pacific, and the fishery under assessment is catching the Atlantic stock which is not endangered, then the stock does not have to be assessed under the ETP component.

Several of the Agreements listed in FCR section SA3.1.5.2 have been developed under the aegis of the Convention of Migratory Species (CMS). The CMS is an intergovernmental treaty under which legally binding global or regional Agreements can be developed. Parties to the CMS are required to 'endeavour to provide immediate protection for migratory species included in Appendix I of the CMS' and to 'endeavour to conclude Agreements covering the conservation and management of migratory species included in Appendix II'.

Agreements are adopted to reflect the direct conservation needs of species and the requirements of regions (Sant et al, 2012). Species listed in any of these shall be classified as ETP for the purposes of an MSC assessment. Given that the Agreements have a limited and well-defined scope, both in terms of the number of species included as well as the geographic region covered, there is therefore no 'unless...' clause here as there is for those species classified as ETP by their inclusion in Appendix 1 of CITES.

GSA3.1.6 Unwanted catch ▲

Where a UoA has a management plan, some species and sizes may be considered and designated to be 'unwanted catch' (including through using terms such as 'non-target', 'bycatch' or 'discards' in the plan). If not designated, unwanted catch of species are those that are not covered under the plan. Unwanted catches of species may also be designated as catch that is prohibited in that fishery.

Unwanted catch may also include the part of the catch that has been thrown away or slipped where the components of that catch may not survive after release.

See [GSA 3.5.3](#) for a further description of unwanted catch.

GSA3.1.8 Unobserved mortality ▲

The total impact of the fishery on all components in P2 needs to include observed and unobserved fishing mortality:

Observed mortality includes:

- Catches;
- Catches that are thrown away, including slippage.

Unobserved mortality can include, but is not limited to:

- Illegal fishing and/or unregulated catches;
- Animals that are injured and subsequently die as result of coming in contact with fishing gear;
- Animals that are stressed and die as a result of attempting to avoid being caught by fishing gear

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- Ghost fishing (mortality of free living or benthic organisms arising from entanglement in lost fishing gear; see [Box GSA7](#) below):

Box GSA7: MSC Intent: “Ghost fishing” and impacts from gear loss

MSC Intent: “Ghost fishing” and impacts from gear loss

The Food and Agriculture Organisation of the UN (FAO) define ghost fishing as the term used for lost or abandoned fishing gear that continues to catch fish²⁰.

The MSC Principles and Criteria for Sustainable Fishing include Criteria that relate to ghost fishing and gear loss, including that the fishing operation shall:

- Make use of fishing gear and practices designed to avoid the capture of non-target species and non-target size, age, and/or sex of the target species); minimise mortality of this catch where it cannot be avoided, and reduce discards of what cannot be released alive (3.B.12);
- Implement appropriate fishing methods designed to minimise adverse impacts on habitat, especially in critical or sensitive zones such as spawning and nursery areas (3.B.13); and
- Minimise operational waste such as lost fishing gear, oil spills, on-board spoilage of catch, etc. (3.B.15).

These Criteria are operationalised in the MSC standard (default tree) throughout Principle 2. For example, when determining the fishing operation’s impact on primary, secondary and ETP species, assessment teams are required to consider unobserved, in addition to observed fishing mortality and impacts (SA3.1.8). The guidance associated with this clause stipulates that unobserved fishing mortality can include (but is not limited to) ghost fishing (GSA3.1.8). In version 2.0 of the FCR, assessment teams are required to consider whether fisheries review measures to minimise mortality of unwanted catch. This also includes consideration of unobserved mortality, such as that caused by ghost fishing.

The impacts of gear loss on habitats are considered under the Habitats components. In particular, there is Guidance on the Habitats Management PI (2.4.2) that indicates that in order for a fishery to score a 100, a management strategy should be in place even for gears that do not regularly contact benthic habitats since gear loss or unexpected seafloor impacts could occur (GSA3.15). An example is provided on what would be expected of a management strategy for a pelagic longline fishery where gear loss is considered (Table GSA8).

In addition, in the Ecosystem PIs, the team need to consider how the fishery impacts the wider ecosystem structure and function. Indirect effects of lost gear and other operational waste that are not considered directly under the primary, secondary and ETP PIs are considered here.

GSA3.1.9 Terms and interpretation ▲

Throughout the P2 section a number of keywords and phrases are used. The aim of

[Table GSA3](#) is to provide further guidance to [Table SA8](#) of the FCR. Specifics relating to application of these terms and probability levels in relation to each component are further discussed under the different PIs for each component.

²⁰ <http://www.fao.org/fishery/topic/14798/en>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table GSA3: Further explanation and examples of Principle 2 Phrases (see Table SA8)

Term	Definition and discussion
Biologically based limits	<p>The PRI is commonly used as a single-species biologically based limit, but many proxies are also acceptable to this level, depending on the information that is available and the nature of the ecosystem feature of concern (for example, percent of an area impacted by the UoA).</p> <p>The wider role of the component in the ecosystem is important in identifying biologically based limits, which may for example be modified so as to avoid excessive depletion of dependent predators.</p> <p>Alternative concepts to defining biologically based limits include determining a minimum viable population size (MVP), which is the number of individuals required to have a specified probability of persistence over a given period of time (Shaffer, 1987). This method is used in the IUCN Red List for small and range-restricted populations.</p> <p>Another concept relating fishery-induced mortality to an indication of stock/population status, developed for use with cetaceans (Wade, 1998) and subsequently adapted for seabirds (Dillingham & Fletcher, 2011; Richard & Abraham, 2013), is Potential Biological Removal (PBR). PBR is defined by NOAA as the maximum number of animals, not including natural mortalities, that may be removed from stock while allowing that stock to reach or maintain its optimum sustainable population.</p>
Broadly understood	<p>Primary, secondary and ETP species' status are broadly understood when there is general knowledge of the impact of the type of UoA on a species/species group, although it may not be specific to the unit of assessment (UoA).</p> <p>Habitat distribution is broadly understood when there is basic knowledge of the types and locations of habitats.</p> <p>The key elements of the ecosystem are broadly understood when the main features of the ecosystem and their major inter-relationships can be specified.</p>
Does not hinder	<p>This should be interpreted as not materially or significantly impeding recovery or rebuilding, and relates to the potential impact of the UoA rather than an observed change in the absolute status of the component.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If there is a formally planned recovery then the management of the UoA(s) should be consistent with that plan and should not prevent the planned recovery from being achieved in the intended timeframe. • If there is no formally planned recovery then the UoA(s) would permit recovery on a timeframe that is consistent with the natural dynamics of the species. <p>Sometimes a species is depleted or otherwise experiencing very low productivity for reasons that are unrelated to the impacts of the UoA (e.g. highly unfavourable environmental conditions, effects of contaminants on reproduction, etc.). Due to such factors, there is never a guarantee that a species will recover promptly, even in the absence of fishing. The key concern is thus whether or not the UoA could prevent a potential recovery from occurring. Hence it is appropriate to evaluate this component relative to the impact of the UoA on the</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition and discussion
	species (or all MSC UoAs where appropriate), but not actually require evidence that the status of the species is improving. This is different to the treatment of target species in P1, where low status would preclude certification irrespective of the cause of that low status
If necessary	“If necessary” is inserted in some Management PI scoring issues to indicate that if the UoA does not have any impact on a certain component (e.g. species), then no specific rationale need be given in order to achieve the relevant SG level. For example, if there are no “main” primary species, then a management strategy would not be required at SG60 or SG80. “If necessary” does not appear in the Management PI scoring issue (a) at SG100, meaning that in order to score 100 a management strategy should be in place even if there is no interaction of the UoA with that component.
Information is adequate	Information is adequate if, given consideration of the continuity of data collection, precision of estimates, comprehensiveness of information and any bias, etc. it is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Capable of supporting an outcome score with relevant confidence levels, or • Capable of supporting the management strategy given the level of precaution that is implicit in the strategy and the requirements of the strategy for detecting changes in either impact or outcome status of affected components (e.g. species).
Measures / Partial Strategy/ Strategy/ Comprehensive Strategy	<p>“Measures” could include the closure of an area that was primarily been put in place to avoid the catch of juvenile target species and enhance target species sustainability, but also has a beneficial effect on the unwanted catch of sensitive species such as other juvenile finfish.</p> <p>For a “partial strategy”, specific measures may not have been designed to manage the impact on that component specifically, but if such a measure/ measures are effective in assisting the UoA to achieve the SG80 level for the primary or secondary species Outcome PI then this could be considered as a management measure under the primary or secondary species Management Strategy PI.</p> <p>A “strategy” could include voluntary or customary arrangements, agreements or practices, codes of practice (if they can be demonstrated to be working).</p> <p>For a “comprehensive strategy” to be achieved information is required to ensure and continue to confirm that the UoA has no impact upon that component.</p>
MSC UoAs and the assessment of cumulative impacts	<p>To ensure that the cumulative impact of all MSC fisheries is within sustainable limits, a UoA assessed against standard v2.0 may need to consider the combined impact of itself and other overlapping UoAs. This determination will include other UoAs assessed against earlier versions of the CR (e.g. v1.3).</p> <p>UoAs assessed using default trees prior to CR v2.0 would not have to make this evaluation.</p> <p>Teams should refer to Annex GPB for additional guidance on the harmonisation of cumulative impacts of MSC UoAs, particularly noting the language on flexibility in the setting of milestones for a condition</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition and discussion
	<p>and avoiding the creation of unrealistic conditions.</p> <p>Teams should note that the ‘overlapping UoAs’ are assessed at different levels depending on which PI is evaluated. For P2 primary species, teams need to evaluate whether the cumulative impact of overlapping MSC UoAs hinders the recovery of ‘main’ primary species. For secondary species, cumulative impacts only need to be considered in cases where two or more UoAs have ‘main’ catches that are ‘considerable’, defined as a species being 10% or more of the total catch. For ETP species, the combined impacts of MSC UoAs needs to be evaluated, but only in cases where either national and/or international requirements set catch limits for ETP species.</p> <p>All of the requirements for cumulative impacts for species are applicable to their respective Outcome PIs. For habitats, in contrast, cumulative impacts are evaluated in the management PI (2.4.2). The requirements here aim to ensure that vulnerable marine ecosystems (VMEs) are managed such that the impact of all MSC UoAs does not cause serious and irreversible harm to VMEs.</p>
Objective basis for confidence	<p>At the SG60 level in the P2 Management PIs, expert knowledge can be acquired from diverse sources, including studies that may have been conducted in the area although not for the purpose of certification, studies of the same or similar species or ecosystems in other places, established ecological theory and modelling, and community or experiential knowledge.</p> <p>At the SG80 level, an “objective basis of confidence” may exist where information augmenting the expert knowledge has been collected in a sound manner, but might be opportunistically collected rather than collected as part of a systematic monitoring program or a research project targeted on the specific component. How extensive the more specific information is may vary, but it should be appropriate to the scale and intensity of the UoA.</p> <p>At the SG100 level, information should come from systematic monitoring and/or research. This does not mean that information exists on everything, particularly for the Habitats and Ecosystem components, but information is reliable and complete for all the major points of interaction between the UoA and component, to a level of detail appropriate to the scale and intensity of the UoA.</p>
Serious and irreversible harm to “structure and function”	<p>Serious or irreversible harm to habitat includes changes in the structure and/or function (e.g. biological diversity), abundance, and disruption leading to regime shifts that imply that recovery to 80% of the unimpacted level may not automatically occur even in the absence of fishing. This includes the loss or extinction of habitat, depletion of key habitat-forming species or associated species to the extent that they meet criteria for high risk of extinction, and significant habitat alteration that causes major change in the structure, function, and/or diversity of the associated species assemblages.</p> <p>Although the intent of the MSC is that biological diversity be included in this definition, we recognise that current limitations to the methods available for measuring biological diversity mean that surrogates are often used such as species diversity (including parameters commonly used to measure this, like species richness and evenness) and</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition and discussion
	<p>abundance.</p> <p>Serious or irreversible harm to the ecosystem includes many of the concepts presented for habitats (which are usually also ecosystems) but additionally includes trophic cascade, depletion of top predators and key prey species in 'wasp-waisted' food webs, severely truncated size composition of the ecological community to the extent that recovery would be very slow due to the increased predation of intermediate-sized predators, permanent changes in the species diversity of the ecological community caused by direct or indirect effects of fishing, and change in genetic diversity of species caused by selective fishing and resulting in genetically determined change in demographic parameters.</p>

GSA3.2 General requirements for outcome PIs ▲

Background

The outcome PIs assess the current status of each component and whether the fishery is posing a risk of serious or irreversible harm to the component or hindering its recovery.

Explicit targets may not be appropriate or available for all of the components, in some cases, because there is no scientific or general consensus on appropriate targets. While performance can sometimes be scored in relation to targets, the generic performance requirements relate to the increasing confidence and safety margins by which serious or irreversible harm may be avoided, including through the management tools, measures and strategies that are in place.

Table GSA4 shows MSC's intent for the maintenance of each P2 component in relation to sustainability levels.

Table GSA4: MSC outcome expectations for each P2 component

Component	Outcome expectation
Primary	The intent of the SGs is that a fishery is managed such that the stock biomass is maintained above the point at which recruitment could be impaired (PRI). This reflects the language used for PI 1.1.1.
Secondary	The SGs refer to being 'within' biologically based limits. These limits are equivalent to the PRI concept used for P1 and primary species, but may take many forms and may be expressed as upper or lower limits in relation to the index that is being measured.
ETP	The intent is that ETP populations and stocks are 'within' national and international limits and not creating unacceptable impacts.
Habitats	The SGs refer to the changes caused by the UoA that fundamentally alter the capacity of the habitat to maintain its ecological structure and function or to recover from the impact.
Ecosystem	Changes caused by the fishery that fundamentally alter the capacity of the ecosystem to maintain its key structure and function or to recover from the impact. This may also be interpreted as seriously reducing the ecosystem services provided by the component to the fishery, to other fisheries and human uses.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The components of P2 may be subject to human impact from sources other than the assessed fishery. For example primary or secondary species may be target species in other fisheries, while habitats and ecosystem processes may be impacted by coastal zone or other development or introduced species.

If the component status is low, for whatever reason, then the operative issue for the majority of the SGs in P2 assessments is then whether the UoA is hindering recovery as defined in [Table SA8](#) and [Table GSA3](#). The assessment in these cases is based on the 'marginal contribution' that the UoA makes to the status or recovery of the component under consideration. If the UoA is not the root cause of human impacts on the component then actions of the UoA cannot redress the situation. However in any event the UoA is required not to hinder recovery or rebuilding.

For primary, secondary and ETP species, the language above applies to all scoring issues at the SG 60 level. However, at the SG80 level, the team needs to consider the cumulative impact of any other MSC UoAs where applicable. Please see [Table GSA 3](#) under 'MSC UoAs and the assessment of cumulative impacts' for an overview of how each species PI is evaluated differently in this regard. Please also [GSA3.4.6](#) and [GSA 3.10](#) for more guidance on how to evaluate the cumulative impact of primary/secondary species and ETP species respectively.

GSA3.2.3 Interpretation of likelihood levels ▲

The terms in SA3.2.3 may be interpretable either:

- qualitatively (e.g. through analogy with similar situations, plausible argument, empirical observation of sustainability and qualitative risk assessment) or,
- quantitatively (e.g. through measured data from the relevant fishery, statistical analysis, quantitative risk assessment and quantitative modelling).

The specific language on what level of information needs to be available to meet the associated probability at each scoring issue will be addressed in the information PIs for each component. The team should also look to the guidance on the information adequacy for each PI for a further overview on the levels of information required in order to determine the probabilities listed in [Table SA9](#) in [SA3.2.3](#). For example, the guidance on information adequacy for primary species can be found in [GSA3.6.3](#).

GSA3.3 General requirements for Information PIs ▲

Background

The requirements in the Information PIs are framed in terms of information adequacy. The information used by the assessment team to score the UoA may come in many forms (e.g., written, verbal, photographs, first-hand accounts) and come from different, potentially competing sources (e.g., the client, fishers, community members, non-governmental organisations, government agencies).

The team will need to exercise their expert judgement about these different forms and sources of information and should investigate whether or not they can be supported by credible independent sources.

For some forms of information, support can be derived from published scientific literature that refers directly or indirectly to the subject of interest, and further support may be obtained from the client or stakeholders or by first-hand observations. The assessment team will need

Fisheries Certification Requirements

to be satisfied that information is objective, has been generated through acceptable scientific methods, and can be independently verified.

When presented with information that may not be verifiable, the team may find it useful to “triangulate opinions” (see also [GSA3.6.3](#)), cross-checking statements made by people against other opinions and perspectives held by other stakeholders. A range of triangulated opinions will offer different perspectives, highlight diverse views, or potentially reveal vested interests. These opinions can also help to verify or authenticate information, or challenge others’ assumptions or biases. Triangulation may not reveal the one true answer; it may simply yield a fuller, more complete understanding when all the information is brought together. Ultimately, the team will need to use its expert judgement and make decisions based on the best available information, independent of its source.

In addition to the terms defined in [Table SA7](#) of the FCR and the examples in [GSA3](#), throughout the P2 Information PIs, certain statistical terms are used, including: precision, coefficient of variance (CV), bias (statistical), variance, accurate, qualitative data and quantitative data. These terms have been added to the [MSC-MSCI Vocabulary](#), appended to this document.

GSA3.4 Primary Species Outcome PI (PI 2.1.1)

GSA3.4.1 Approach to the assessment of main and minor species ▲

The MSC requirements in P2 apply particularly to those species that are defined as ‘main’ species, according to their importance in the fishery, or by virtue of their low resilience (see specific criteria in the CR and below). Requirements are specified for such ‘main’ species at each of the 60, 80 and 100 SG levels. Additional separate requirements are specified for the remaining ‘minor’ species, but only at the 100 level. Similar arrangements are specified both for primary and secondary species and for habitats, and for the Outcome, Management and Information PIs for each component. No such distinction is made for the ETP component, where all species are scored at 60, 80 and 100.

GSA3.4.2 Designation of ‘main’ species ▲

When considering species for designation as ‘main’; in addition to the listed requirements in the CR, teams should also give consideration to the temporal trend in catches and use a precautionary approach to determine whether species shall count as ‘main’.

This should include taking into account the variability of the catch composition over the last five years or fishing seasons and recognizing that some species might be ‘main’ some years but not in others. Depending on data availability, teams may choose a different length of the time series, but a rationale should be provided in all cases of the method chosen. The overall intent when designating ‘main’ species, is that there should be a good understanding of the long-term average catch composition of P2 species of the UoA before the PCDR is released; and further, that teams are confident that the species compositions, as well as their respective catch volumes, are unlikely to change over the lifetime of the certificate.

In all cases teams may still designate species as main, even though it falls under the designated weight thresholds of 5% or 2%, as long as a plausible argument is provided as to why the species should warrant that consideration.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

For example, a stock might be in such a poor state, that all impact by the UoA is important enough to consider, even in cases where the catch proportion is so low that it would normally be classified as a minor species (also see [GSA3.4.2.2](#) below).

The mortality of unwanted catch should be incorporated into the determination of main/minor categories and the assessment of Outcome and Management PIs, irrespective of the fact that it is unwanted.

Bait species should be subject to the same Main filters as other species. When bait species are purchased from outside the UoA, the calculation of Main is still in relation to the volumes of total catch of the UoA, not the volumes of total weight from the fishery that the bait is purchased from. The latter volumes could, however, be used as part of the rationale as to whether or not the amount of bait purchased by the UoA is hindering/not hindering recovery of the bait-stock. This also means that if bait is purchased and it is main, teams need to assess the management and information PIs for the bait fishery for all scoring issues at the SG 60 and 80 levels. Although this might present a challenge in some cases, the MSC expectations are that all aspects of the fishery need to be sustainable, which include bait. Therefore, rationale needs to be presented that even purchased bait comes from well-managed and healthy stocks.

Main primary species should also include any LTL species that are currently in a low abundance regime and not regarded as 'key' but may be expected to increase again in future to the point of becoming a key LTL species.

Shark fins are considered to have high commercial value. Thus, when a fishery trades shark fins, the shark should be considered a main species, even when sharks comprise less than 5% of the catch.

In cases where the catch percentages are unknown or too uncertain to make a determination on which species are main, a qualitative information-gathering process should be used and documented to determine whether the catch of the species by the UoA comprises more than 2%, 5% or 10% of all species by the UoA. Teams should be precautionary in their classification of main and minor species. This implies that more species might be considered main unless the team provides rationale to justify otherwise. This might for instance be the case for fisheries that need to use the RBF methodology and/or have very low sample sizes so that the standard deviation is really high.

[GSA3.4.2.2 Designating less resilient species as 'main' at 2%](#) ▲

The 'Main' threshold for less resilient species is set at a lower 2% of the total catch of the UoA by weight, because the risk of overfishing these species is inherently greater.

Teams should note that less resilient species should be assessed as such based on their life history characteristics and the risk to the stock from anthropogenic activities, not the actual impact of the UoA on the stock. The latter is assessed instead under the respective Outcome PIs.

As the levels of credible information needed to assess the intrinsic resilience of a species will be of varying quality and consistency, a wide range of source materials may be used. Scientific literature and other sources of material specific to the species and region under assessment are normally the most applicable.

In addition, the productivity part of the PSA may be used as both a precautionary and robust method of quickly determining the intrinsic resilience of a species, in cases where it scores either low or medium productivity (SA3.4.2.2.a.i).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

In cases where the intrinsic resilience is high but the species is still at risk for other reasons, investigating species declines, population size, and extrinsic threats could here be considered.

For instance, the current abundance of the population may affect natural resilience if depensation effects are apparent and impair natural reproductive ability.

The parameters used in determining a Productivity score can be found on FishBase.org for most fish species. See Annex PF for full details on the PSA analysis.

The assessment team may also consider the spatial distribution of the species as well as the degree of spatial overlap with commercial fishing operations to determine:

- Whether the species is at risk of being locally depleted in the assessment area or;
- If the species has only a limited distribution, so that it is likely to be more severely affected by fishing pressure or;
- If the species is part of a widely distributed and highly migratory population, the cumulative impacts on the population may be greater as well as more difficult to account for.

GSA3.4.3 Post Capture mortality ▲

Teams should interpret very low post capture mortality as no less than a 90% survival rate. This should be proven by scientific evidence, independent observer coverage, tagging studies or similar information.

In cases where scientific evidence is not available for the particular fishery, but there are studies pertaining to similar fisheries, these can also be used, with appropriate rationales provided. In this regard the following document might be helpful: <http://nsrac.org/wp-content/uploads/2012/08/EU-discard-survival-short-study-version-001.pdf>.

GSA 3.4.4 Exceptionally large catches and main species ▲

In considering whether a species should be treated as 'main', CABs should take account of the relative catches of both target and the P2 species and determine whether the risk to the population of the impacted P2 species is significant enough to warrant a designation as 'main'. In the absence of full information, CABs should regard a catch by the UoA of 400,000mt of the target species as being 'exceptionally large'.

GSA3.4.6 MSC UoAs collectively not hindering recovery ▲

If a species is below the point where recruitment might be impaired, the second part of the clause in scoring issue (a) 'the UoA does not hinder recovery':

- At **SG 60** refers only to actions that the UoA can take in order to ensure that this outcome is met.
- At **SG 80**, in contrast, the impact of all MSC UoAs with that species as main needs to be considered, to ensure that recovery of the stock is not being hindered.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Teams should note at SG80 that the recovery of a species in P2 that is below a PRI or a biologically based limit is only required to levels above the PRI or biologically based limit, and not to the MSY or equivalent target levels required in P1 (as specifically referred to in PI 1.1.2 on stock rebuilding). P1 and P2 set critically different bars in this regard.

The text in this clause and its associated scoring issues require teams to evaluate whether a species below the PRI is actually recovering or if either the over-arching management strategy or a specific strategy employed by UoA(s) allows for a species to recover, even in the absence of recovery at the time of assessment. Although this determination can be reached using a combination of factors as outlined in SA3.4.6, teams may find it useful to first evaluate whether recovery of a species below the PRI is actually happening on a stock level, as evidenced by a demonstrably increasing trend in biomass. Where direct evidence from time series estimates of stock status is not available, proxy approaches may be used, including reference to fishing mortality levels and the use of simulation studies. In a very general sense, if fishing mortality for the entire stock – **not** just the marginal fishing mortality of the UoA – is less than F_{MSY} (the fishing mortality that would deliver maximum sustainable yield) the recovery of the stock can reasonably be expected to not be hindered. Although this determination will hold true in most cases, the extent to which total F is below F_{MSY} may in some cases need further consideration to ensure that rebuilding objectives are likely to be achieved. Simulation studies which combine information on recent and expected F levels, stock size and recruitment etc. may also be used to confirm that the stock is expected to recover, and thus that the strategy can be regarded as ‘demonstrably effective’.

If a species below the PRI has an overarching recovery strategy in place, with effort controls set on total fishing mortality that are adhered to, an 80 score may also be achieved where evidence exists that the fishing mortality caused by all MSC UoAs is within the limits set by the recovery strategy in place for the species. This intent is also reflected in Table GSA3 under the definition of “does not hinder”.

If there is no evidence of recovery as outlined above, by either evaluating stock biomass or total fishing mortality, SA3.4.6d allows an 80 score in cases where the proportion of combined catch by all relevant MSC UoAs is effectively not hindering recovery. In other words, in cases where total fishing mortality is **not** below F_{MSY} , teams need to evaluate whether the marginal fishing mortality caused only by the relevant MSC UoAs is material to the stock’s ability to recover. This could be determined in a practical way by examining likely population trajectories if all the other fisheries reduced their catches to zero (i.e., the only catches were being taken by the fishery under assessment). Since this will often be difficult to determine, MSC allows that the UoA’s catch in proportion to the total catch of a stock may be used as a reasonable proxy of whether that UoA on its own or cumulatively with other UoAs, could be considered to be hindering recovery.

To illustrate this approach, even if the total catch of a species is clearly hindering recovery, UoA catches of less than 30% of the total catch of a species may not normally be influential in hindering a recovery in a marginal sense, i.e., nothing the UoA does would be likely to change the situation. On the other hand, catches of more than 30% might be influential, such that if the UoA took action to reduce its catches, the stock might well start to recover. A judgement on whether the UoA is hindering recovery will depend not only on the proportion of catch, but on the overall level of F that is causing the problem. In some cases, it might be more useful to simply assess the marginal F by the UoA in terms of the weight of catch removed in relation to the overall abundance of the stock, rather than in relation to the total catches. In this regard, investigating if the UoA’s impact is more pronounced on certain size classes of the stock, e.g. only juveniles may also be warranted, as the actual impact of the UoA on the biomass of the population might then be different as opposed to if only mature adults were targeted. In making the overall evaluation on whether the UoA’s stock removals are hindering recovery, teams may also find it useful to evaluate the overall resilience of the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

species as outlined in SA and [GSA3.4.2.2](#), taking into account the spatial distribution and evaluating e.g. if the species is at risk of being locally depleted etc. (see [GSA3.4.2.2](#)).

Teams should note that the impact of a UoA should here be assessed in terms of stock removals and the marginal F of the UoA and the percentages listed here should therefore not be confused with the percentages used to designate 'main' species, which are based on the proportion of a species as part of the total catch of the UoA ([SA3.4.2](#)).

Although SG80 only makes reference to being above a point of recruitment impairment, there is a requirement at SG100 that primary species are at biomass levels consistent with MSY. Primary species will often be taken in multi-species complexes. In a multi-species fishery context, the target levels of biomass or fishing mortality for some species that would be acceptable at SG100 may be different from that usually applied to a single species, although in all cases should result in primary species having a low risk of serious or irreversible harm.

Teams should also refer to Annex GPB for additional guidance on the harmonisation of scores and conditions when evaluating the cumulative impacts of MSC UoAs.

Determining the point of recruitment impairment (PRI) and the use of proxies

Teams should refer to the Principle 1 guidance in [GSA2.2.3.1](#) relating to the point of recruitment impairment (PRI) for additional help on the interpretation of this term, including the use of proxy reference points.

Recovery strategies differing between UoA jurisdictions

There may be instances where stocks below the PRI have a distribution across multi-jurisdictional boundaries (shared, straddling, HMS, high seas non-HMS stocks) but there are no comprehensive management efforts in place set to manage and recover the majority of the stock complex across all boundaries. Instead separate parts of the stocks may only be governed through regional management measures and separate UoAs impacting the same stock may thus have to comply with separate strategies for their respective jurisdiction.

In these cases and other applicable situations, where a demonstrably effective strategy between MSC UoAs needs to be in place, the different jurisdictional strategies do not have to be aligned and harmonized between UoAs in order to meet this requirement at SG80, but the intent is instead to evaluate whether the separate strategies together achieve the outcome that recovery of the species is not hindered by those MSC UoAs. If not, teams should require some alignment of mitigation processes between UoAs.

Examples: UoAs in different jurisdictions

Examples of such a case would be where separate jurisdictions set different landing limits on the same depleted species, where e.g. one UoA would have to comply with a requirement to release all catches alive and another might have an allowance to only land a small amount each year. Teams would here have to evaluate the validity of each separate strategy, calculate the combined mortality caused by each UoA as described in the language on 'do not hinder' and make a determination on whether these two strategies combined sufficiently constitute a demonstrably effective strategy to not hinder recovery".

GSA3.4.7 Consideration of efforts to minimise the mortality of unwanted catches ▲

The intent of this clause is to clarify that where there is unwanted catch as defined in SA3.1.6 and associated Guidance ([GSA3.1.6](#)), the efforts of the UoA to minimise the mortality of this catch are taken into account by the team in the Outcome, Management and Information PIs (see [Box GSA8](#)).

The team should also take into account any changes or lack of changes to the status of the unwanted species when alternative measures are not implemented. For example, if a fishery does not implement alternative measures because there are none or because they are cost prohibitive, the team should still note whether the catch or mortality of unwanted catches decreases, stays the same or increases. Such consideration may occur either at full assessment, or at surveillances depending on the timing of reviews and the implementation of mitigation measures in the fishery.

Example:

For example, a UoA undertakes a review of measures to minimise the mortality of the unwanted catch for a species. Based on this review (it is shown that the measures have been effective in similar fisheries and the costs are not prohibitive), the UoA implements the measures. The existence of this review and the implementation of the measures are scored in the Management PI using SA3.5.3 and its sub-clauses.

The adequacy of information to evaluate the effectiveness of the measures, including any reduction of unwanted catch, e.g. lower catch rate, is scored in the Information PI, using [SA3.6.4](#) and associated guidance.

This information on the reduced catch rate of the species may improve certainty that a species is above the PRI/biologically based limits or, if below PRI/biologically based limits, form part of a strategy to ensure that the MSC UoAs do not collectively hinder recovery of this species. It is this that the team should consider when scoring SI (a) of the Outcome PI. A statement describing any improvements and whether they change the degree of certainty or prevent the UoA from hindering recovery of a species should be included in the scoring rationale.

GSA3.5 Primary Species Management Strategy PI (PI 2.1.2) ▲

Background

The intent of the P2 Species Management PIs (2.1.2, 2.2.2, 2.3.2) is to assess the arrangements in place to manage the impact that the UoA has on the P2 species to ensure that it does not pose a risk of serious or irreversible harm to them (or, in the case of ETP, that the UoA complies with any national or international requirements for protection of the species). The SGs contain a mixture of requirements for either measures or strategies to be in place (see [Table SA7](#) and Section [GSA3](#)). Also, it is to encourage the development and implementation of technologies and operational methods that minimise mortality of unwanted catch where it occurs.

The arrangements in place to manage impacts on the species may include measures to address both wanted and unwanted catch (see [Figure GSA3](#) and [Box GSA8](#) below). With respect to unwanted catch, measures may include (FAO, 2011):

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- Input and/or output controls;
- Improvements of the design and use of fishing gear and unwanted catch mitigation devices;
- Spatial and temporal measures;
- Limits and/or quotas on unwanted catches;
- Bans on throwing away or slipping catch that create an incentive to reduce unwanted catch, provided that the unwanted catch cannot be released alive;
- Measures to increase survivorship of unwanted catch that is thrown away or slipped;
- Incentives for fishers to comply with measures to manage and/or reduce mortality of unwanted catch.

In these PIs, CABs should also consider incentives that might compromise the effectiveness of the management strategy meeting P2 outcomes, such as fishing overcapacity caused by subsidies. If overcapacity exists as a result of subsidies, the management system should be robust enough to deal with this issue and still deliver a sustainable fishery in accordance with MSC Principle 2. If the management system is not robust enough to deal with overcapacity caused by subsidies, a condition should be set in accordance with 7.11 against the relevant management PI (see [GSA2.1](#) for consideration of incentives in P1).

Box GSA8: MSC intent on unwanted species and habitats

The MSC intent on reducing fisheries' impacts on unwanted species and on habitats

Prior to the release of CR v2.0, the MSC Certification Requirements did not adequately take into account the MSC Principles & Criteria (Ps&Cs) in relation to bycatch, namely that fisheries should “make use of fishing gear and practices designed to avoid the capture of non-target species (and non-target size, age, and/or sex of the target species); minimise mortality of this catch where it cannot be avoided, and reduce discards of what cannot be released alive” (Criterion 3B.12).

In addition, FAO (1995), states that “selective and environmentally safe fishing gear and practices should be further developed and applied, to the extent practicable, in order to maintain biodiversity and to conserve the population structure and aquatic ecosystems and protect fish quality. Where proper selective and environmentally safe fishing gear and practices exist, they should be recognized and accorded a priority in establishing conservation and management measures for fisheries.”

Because there are currently no internationally-accepted definitions of bycatch and discards (FAO, 2011), the MSC has used the term ‘unwanted’ catch of species. The MSC definition of unwanted catch has been adapted from part of the description of ‘bycatch’ in FAO (2011); it is the part of the catch that a fisher did not intend to catch but could not avoid, and did not want or chose not to use.

In order to operationalise the intent of criterion 3B.12 in the MSC Ps&Cs and the statement from FAO (1995), changes in the P2 Species PIs in CR v2.0 have been made with the following intent:

- To motivate fishers to continually “think smart” about their impact on the environment (species and habitats); both in delivering the sustainable impact most efficiently, and continuing to reduce their impact beyond that
- To balance this desire with efficiency by not spending a lot of money and time generating only marginal improvements.

To achieve this for species, a new scoring issue has been added to the P1 Harvest

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Strategy (PI 1.2.1) and P2 Species Management PIs (PI 2.1.2, 2.2.2, 2.3.2) requiring fisheries to continually review alternative measures to encourage the development and implementation of technologies and operational methods that minimise mortality of unwanted catch or ETP species, taking into account the practicality of the measures, their potential impact on other species and habitats and on the overall cost of implementing the measures.

Fisheries need to either review alternative measures that are shown to minimise mortality of the species or species group in question (SA3.5.3). Fisheries need also to consider alternative measures to reduce impacts on habitats. Fisheries should take account of the potential for both positive and negative impacts of alternative measures on species and habitats (refer to GSA3.14.2) when considering whether such measures should be implemented.

Alternative measures should avoid capture of the species in the first place or increase its survivability if released. Alternatively, in the case of in-scope species, they could utilise the unwanted catch in some way so that it would no longer be 'unwanted'. If there are no unwanted species, the scoring issue on reviewing alternative measures does not need to be scored in that PI.

The language used in the scoring issue is based on FAO (2011), which provides management planning guidelines for all significant sources of fishing mortality in a fishery, and FAO (1995). FAO (2011) presents requirements for management actions pertaining to bycatch and discards, which include:

- Reviewing effectiveness of existing initiatives to address bycatch and discard problems
- Reviewing potential effectiveness of alternative methods to address the bycatch/discard problem

In addition, the MSC's intent is that the efforts of the UoA to minimise the mortality of this unwanted catch are taken into account by the team in the Outcome and Information PIs. Information on the effectiveness of the measures, including any reduction of unwanted catch, e.g. lower catch rate, should be scored in the Information PI (GSA3.6.4). This information on the reduced catch rate of the species may improve certainty that a species is above the PRI/biologically based limits or, if below PRI/biologically based limits, form part of a strategy to ensure that the MSC UoAs do not collectively hinder recovery of this species. Teams are required to consider this when scoring the Outcome PI (SA3.4.7).

References

FAO.1995. *Code of Conduct for Responsible Fisheries*. Rome: FAO.

FAO.2011. *International Guidelines on bycatch management and reduction of discards*. Rome: FAO.

Scoring issue (a) Management strategy in place ▲

The different types of management arrangement (measures, partial strategy, strategy) referred to in this scoring issue (and referenced in scoring issues (b) and (c)) are clarified in Table SA7 of the FCR and Table GSA2 of this document, and relate to the management undertaken by the UoA.

Scoring issue (c) Management strategy implementation ▲

Scoring issue (c) on management strategy and implementation should also take into consideration any alternative measures that have been implemented by the UoA if it meets SG80 or 100 under scoring issue (e) (see [SA3.5.3](#) & [GSA3.5.3](#)).

GSA3.5.1 -Scoring issue (d) Shark finning ▲

Scoring issue (d) is only scored where the primary species is a shark, regardless of whether it is wanted or unwanted catch. See [GSA2.4](#), guidance on PI 1.2.1 to score SI (e) related to shark finning.

Scoring issue (e) Review of alternative measures ▲

When assessing this scoring issue, CABs are expected to review evidence to determine whether the client (UoA) has undertaken a review of the potential effectiveness and practicality of alternative measures to minimise mortality of unwanted catch of main species, in order to achieve the SG60 level. This evidence could be, for example, a summary document listing information and measures reviewed along with an analysis of the measures and their appropriateness for the UoA, or the minutes of a meeting which has considered alternative measures.

GSA3.5.1 'if necessary' ▲

If the UoA has no (or negligible: see below) impact on this component, scoring issue (a) does not need to be scored for SG60 and SG80 (see definition of 'if necessary' in Table SA3 and Table GSA2).

However, there is no 'if necessary' clause in SG100 so that in order to score a 100 on this component, a management strategy should be in place for the UoA for P2 species, since gear loss or other incidental impacts could still occur.

GSA3.5.3 Reviewing measures for reducing unwanted catch ▲

Any non-negligible proportion of the catch that meets the unwanted definition (see SA3.1.6 and [GSA3.1.6](#)) for a particular species should be assessed as unwanted catch.

However, in cases where there is negligible unwanted catch of a species, the team may use their discretion as to whether the scoring issue would be scored, but the decision should be made in accordance with a precautionary approach. When determining what is 'negligible' the MSC does not specify a set cut-off; the team may consider the significance of the catch in relation to things like the proportion of the unwanted catch as part of the total catch or as part of the total amount of unwanted catch, as well as the regularity of the catch occurring when deciding whether it is negligible.

If there is no unwanted catch of primary species, or no primary species at all, then the 'Review of alternative measures' scoring issue (e) is not scored.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Example 1:

In a North Sea groundfish UoA, a percentage of the catch includes gurnard, all of which are thrown back dead. In this case the gurnard would be unwanted and this scoring issue should be scored for this catch. However, if all or almost all of the gurnard were to be kept for crew consumption or landed and sold, etc., the catch would no longer be considered unwanted and scoring issue (e) would not be scored.

Example 2:

In a longline UoA where a percentage of the catch includes a skate species, the skate species is immediately cut from the line rather than being landed. In this case the skate should be considered unwanted catch and the alternative measures reviewed should reflect the need to minimise the mortality of the species, with the expectation that released skate will have high survivability, or avoid capture in the first place.

Example 3:

In a developing world mixed species UoA, all species are landed and consumed or sold, so there is no unwanted catch and scoring issue (e) is not scored.

Example: Review of alternative measures

The management body for a fishery has investigated a number of measures that could be used to minimise the catch of Species A, a species that is discarded with poor survivability. They selected four potential measures that have been used in similar gears in other fisheries or to minimise mortality of this species. They do not have quantitative estimates of the exact levels that the potential measures might reduce the catch of Species A through their own field testing, but they have considered studies that have been done that show that implementing three of these measures would have no or little effect on reducing the catch of this species. The fourth measure, however, is estimated to reduce catch of this species by 80%. The measure is not expensive to implement (i.e., will not require replacing of current gear) and will not affect crew safety or significantly add time to vessel operations. It slightly reduces the catch of the target species, but not significantly so. It does not cause increased catches of other P2 'unwanted' or ETP species, nor does it negatively impact habitat. The management body recommends use of this measure but has not yet required it in legislation, nor has the fishery chosen to adopt it. This fishery has clearly reviewed alternative measures but has not yet implemented them. It would meet the SG60 level.

If the fishery were to adopt the use of this measure and it was being used at the time of the site visit, but there were no plans to undertake another review of measures, it would still only meet the SG60 level.

If the fishery were to adopt the use of this measure and it was being used at the time of the site visit, and another review was scheduled to take place in three years' time, it would meet the SG80 level. If the plan was that alternative measures would be reviewed every two years, it would meet the SG100 level.

GSA3.5.3.1 ▲

The assessment team should also consider how the alternative measures for review have been selected and whether appropriate gears and practices have been considered as part of the review.

The requirement is that the measures selected for review are those that have been shown to reduce unwanted catch levels to the 'lowest achievable levels.'

Where best practice measures in a gear/species/region have been established as achieving the lowest achievable levels – and therefore meeting the FAO's description of "proper selective and environmentally safe fishing gear" (see [Box GSA8](#)) – these measures should be included in the review.

Where best practice has not been established, or it is not clear which measures reduce catch to the lowest achievable levels, the assessment team should assess whether the review considers measures that are expected or known to minimise mortality of the unwanted species.

The gear and practices selected for review may be from a number of sources, including those that have been shown to be effective in similar fisheries or regions, or those presented as 'best practice' in international fora.

Some international fora with information and/or expertise on reducing unwanted catches include [Note: this list is provided to highlight some repositories of expertise for mitigation methods – it is not intended to be an exhaustive list]:

- Bycatch Reduction Techniques Database, Consortium for Wildlife Bycatch Reduction²¹
- Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels (ACAP)²²
- Agreement on the Conservation of Small Cetaceans of the Baltic, North East Atlantic, Irish and North Seas (ASCOBANS)²³
- Inter-American Convention for the Protection and Conservation of Sea Turtles (IAC-Sea Turtles)²⁴
- International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN)²⁵
- UNEP-CMS (United Nations Environment Programme – Convention on Migratory Species)²⁶

In addition, many national bodies and regional fishery management organisations (RFMOs) have developed policies and procedures to reduce unwanted catch, e.g. the US NOAA Bycatch Reduction Engineering Program (BREP) and the Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources (CCAMLR). The Western and Central Pacific Fisheries Commission also maintains a Bycatch Mitigation Information System²⁷ for that region.

Where the P2 components are required to be harmonised with other MSC certified fisheries, teams should consider whether the UoA under assessment has considered the gear and practices used in these fisheries as part of their list of 'alternative measures', if they have been shown to minimise unwanted catches.

²¹ <http://www.bycatch.org/>

²² <http://www.acap.aq/>

²³ <http://www.acap.aq/>

²⁴ <http://www.iacseaturtle.org/>

²⁵ <https://www.iucn.org/>

²⁶ <http://www.cms.int/>

²⁷ <http://www.wcpfc.int/bmis>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

In situations where the proposed alternative mitigation measures are cost prohibitive or impractical for the fishery to implement, other lower cost alternative measures may be considered, such as improved education for fisheries regarding best practice approaches. This is not meant to be a means to avoid the costs associated with implementation of gear modifications or other measures, but as an alternative to achieve minimisation when other measures would render the fishery economically unviable.

GSA3.5.3.2 ▲

This clause requires that a regular review occurs at a minimum at least once every 5 years, which is at least once per certification cycle. Some fisheries may need to review alternative measures more frequently, depending on the extent and nature of the unwanted catch (e.g. due to changes in stock size). If information becomes available that the existing measures are ineffective, i.e., do not lead to any reductions in mortalities of unwanted species (e.g. at a surveillance audit), the assessment team may determine that a review should occur more frequently.

The 'regular review' at SG80 may be met if at least one review of alternative measures has been undertaken, that measures are implemented as appropriate, and there is a commitment from the client or the management body to have another review within the 5 year window.

GSA3.5.3.3 Evidence of implementation ▲

At SG80, the alternative measures may be implemented either within the UoA or in the wider fishery as part of a sub-strategy or code of conduct, etc. on unwanted catch (which could be either species-specific or covering all unwanted catch).

Evidence of implementation may, for example, include the development and use of codes of conduct or a description of appropriate ways of handling gear and catch on board vessels and in crew training records, and evidence from the fleet or observers that measures are being implemented by fishers.

The alternative measures should be implemented 'on the water' in order to achieve the SG80 or SG100 scores, unless any of the 'as appropriate' clauses under GSA3.5.3.3 are triggered.

Example:

Alternative measures were reviewed and decided on in 2008 and implemented in 2009. An assessment undertaken after the measures were implemented in 2009, and where another review of measures is scheduled within the next five years, should meet SG80 for this scoring issue. If, however, the assessment were undertaken in 2008 before the measures were implemented, this scoring issue should not yet meet the SG80.

Decisions surrounding implementation

Overall, the UoA should ensure that they balance the benefits of implementing a measure for one species against the likely impacts on another species or on habitats, and against the practical and economic consequences of implementation.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

If measures reviewed are all equally effective at minimising the mortality of the unwanted species, and the practicality and costs are also similar, the UoA should choose the measure that might also lead to the minimisation of impacts on other species and/or habitats.

Where the measures reviewed are shown to be more effective at minimising unwanted catch, but the measures are not implemented, the assessment team should review the reasons for this which can be:

- Evidence that the practicality (e.g. crew safety, target catch, vessel operations) would be adversely affected by implementing the measures reviewed;
- Evidence that the UoA has assessed the economic costs and benefits of implementing the measure and determined that the potential costs would adversely impact the economic viability of the fishery, or
- Evidence that the UoA has considered the implications of relevant solutions on other species and habitats and found that there are negative consequences for species (e.g. causing them to fall below the PRI or outside biologically based limits or hindering their recovery from such a state) or habitats (e.g. causing serious or irreversible harm to the habitat), such that the measures should not be implemented.

FAO (2011) recognizes that there are both costs and benefits to implementing different measures that include direct and indirect costs, such as cost of the gear, impact on revenue from catch volumes or quality, operational efficiency and access or restriction to fishing opportunities. In addition, costs can be mitigated through the application of grants/loans and preferential treatment on duties and taxes for investment in new technologies. The judgement of whether costs are prohibitive should take into these issues into account together with the size and scale of a fishery.

Example: Prohibitive costs ▲

The management body of a small scale UoA in a developing country reviews potential mitigation measures on a regular basis. One measure reviewed has been shown in similar fisheries to reduce mortality of unwanted catch but does not affect target catch efficiency or crew safety. However, the UoA vessels decide not to implement the measure because they determine that there would be a 10% increase in costs arising from greater length of time for setting gear that – even when offset with potential benefits – would significantly impact their economic viability. In this case the assessment team would review evidence that the costs would be projected to increase by 10% (e.g. based on projected cost of purchasing measure and loss/gain in target species catches/quality) and that this increase would have a significant impact on the economic viability of the UoA (e.g. based on comparison to profit and loss, or turnover). If the assessment team concludes that implementing this measure would be cost prohibitive for the UoA and that the measure review was not implemented on this basis, the UoA could still meet SG80 for this scoring Issue (e).

On the other hand, if in this UoA, the cost of implementation was partially covered by a donation for the purpose from a funding body and an NGO, so that the increased cost to the UoA was not prohibitive to them, and all other criteria were met, the team should consider that the measures would need to be implemented to achieve an SG80 score or higher.

GSA3.6 Primary species information PI (PI 2.1.3) ▲

Background

The P2 species information PIs (2.1.3, 2.2.3, 2.3.3) address the information base for the management of the primary, secondary and ETP species respectively. The information and monitoring required in these PIs is intended to include that which is needed to determine the risk posed by the UoA and the effectiveness of the strategy to manage these species.

For each scoring element in each component, it is expected that the assessment team will use their expert judgement to decide whether the information provided is adequate to estimate the stock status in the Outcome PI and to evaluate methods and measures in the Management PI.

If the management approach is very precautionary or the status of the species is very high or the catches and impact of those catches are very low, information with low precision may be adequate for both the estimation of current status and the performance of the management strategy. Conversely, where the status is unknown or based on limited information, CABs would be expected to be more precautionary in their assessment of information adequacy to support the Outcome or Management PIs.

Scoring issue (a) Information adequacy for assessment of impact on main species ▲

In scoring issue (a), information is needed at the stock level in order to assess the impact of the UoA on the stock as a whole in relation to the point at which recruitment would be impaired.

Scoring issue (b) Information adequacy for assessment of impact on minor species ▲

For scoring issue (b), the guidance on adequacy for information to assess impacts of main species (GSA3.6.3 and sub-clauses) also applies to minor species, with the exception that minor species are only assessed at the SG100 level, noting that this level is equivalent to the SG80 level for main species.

GSA3.6.3 Scoring the adequacy of information ▲

At SG60

At SG60, to determine adequacy, CABs are required to assess the validity of the qualitative information used.

This may involve the review of a number of different sources of information (data triangulation). For example:

- The assessment team could start by identifying different stakeholder groups. Interviews could then be conducted with each of these groups and feedback from these groups could be compared to determine areas of agreement and areas of divergence.
- Another form of triangulation that could be used is methodological triangulation, involving the use of multiple qualitative methods to investigate an issue – for example, results from surveys, focus groups and interviews could be compared to see if similar trends are found. If conclusions from each are the same then validity is established (Guion et al, 2011).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

In addition, benchmarks may be used to evaluate whether or not catch rates and magnitudes are low enough to be sustainable and avoid serious harm, and qualitative advice may be adequate to assess this (DFO, 2012).

Example:

If only life history information is known (i.e., no fisheries-independent survey data) methods for assessing mortality of unwanted species could include: indirect methods for estimating natural mortality (if only size or age or length-at-age data are available) or unstructured demographic approaches (if data on reproduction, natural mortality, age at maturity and lifespan are available) (DFO, 2012).

At SG80

At SG80, the information adequacy required for the estimation of the impact of the UoA on the outcome of the species should be balanced against the likely impact on that particular species.

The likelihood that the UoA impacts the species is set out in the Outcome PI (likely, highly likely, high degree of certainty) in a probabilistic context (70%, 80%, 90% for primary and ETP species; 60%, 70%, 80% for secondary species), see [SA3.2.3](#). In order to meet this scoring guidepost, some quantitative information needs to be available in addition to the qualitative information required at SG60. The data triangulation method described at SG60 above would also apply to this SG.

Generally, having only one form of data collection with a high level of potential bias or other limitation (e.g. logbooks or interviews with fishermen) by itself should not be enough to meet SG80 – additional information sources that compensate for the limitations would also need to be provided and assessed (see examples of information sources and how they could be combined in [GSA3.6.3](#)).

At SG100

At SG100 the scoring issue requires that estimates of catch and UoA-related mortality of all species are quantitative and available with a 'high degree of certainty'.

This should be equivalent to greater than or equal to the 90th percentile in the distribution (for primary and ETP species) or 80th percentile in the distribution (for secondary species).

It is intended that this information builds on the qualitative and quantitative information included at SG60 and SG80.

Observer programmes

With regard to observer programmes, teams may consider factors such as how representative the sampling is, whether observer coverage is based on the total effort or number of trips, any spatial or temporal limitations on data collected, definition and rigour of data collection protocols, what training observers have had in terms of species identification, and the priorities for observer time on the vessel (Bravington et al, 2003; DFO, 2012; Wolfaardt, 2011).

The level of observer coverage required to assess the impact of the UoA on outcome status depends on factors such as the frequency of capture/mortality, the variability in rates of capture/mortality, a desired CV and/or information required to show that upper confidence limit on mortality for a species is below a pre-defined sustainability threshold (Bravington et al, 2003; Wolfaardt, 2011). There is not a single optimum level of observer coverage that covers all fisheries and species caught/killed. Generally, for species that are highly variable, clumped in distribution and/or relatively rare, higher levels of observer coverage are needed

Fisheries Certification Requirements

(Wolfaardt, 2011). For more normal species, observer coverage rates above 20% provide only diminishing returns and small incremental improvements in the CV of catch estimates (Lawson, 2006).

GSA3.6.3.1 ▲

The catch of a species may be estimated using a variety of methods and each can have certain advantages and/or disadvantages associated with them. It is up to the assessment team to use their expert judgement to assess the adequacy of the methods used, particularly with respect to the precision and bias (statistical and observational bias) of the method and its ability to provide externally verifiable data. For instance, the observational bias of logbook data is generally regarded as being much higher than electronic or observer monitoring, but may still be adequate if e.g. triangulated with other data sources that compensate for this bias or otherwise provide reassurance.

Where limited information is available, teams should be more precautionary in their assessment of information adequacy to support an Outcome PI score.

Some examples of data collection methods include (but are not limited to) those specified in [Table GSA5](#). Column A contains data collection methods that have higher validity as they are less subject to bias than those in Column B.

Table GSA5: Examples of data collection methods according to their level of verifiability

Column A (higher level of verifiability, lower bias)	Column B (lower level of verifiability, higher bias)
Observer programmes	Standardised logbooks
Electronic monitoring of location/position (e.g. VMS, AIS)	Interviews with fishers
Other technologies to monitor impact/compliance (e.g. cameras)	Enforced mandatory retention of all catch with full dockside monitoring
Independent research projects or programmes	Information obtained from co-management and community based management.

At the SG80 and 100 level in scoring issue (a), where a species is close to or below its limit or its status is uncertain, the team should expect that the UoA uses at least one method from Column A or an equivalent data source, and one or more from Column B to collect information to support the Outcome score for that species. However, where there is a high level of certainty that a species is well above its limit, less precaution is necessary and only two or more methods from Column B could be acceptable.

Some methods of recording data that are inherently open to bias, such as logbooks, are also less likely to provide accurate data on non-fish species, and therefore when considering the need for accurate information on interactions with out of scope species CABs should seek higher quality data sources (column A of the table).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Example:

During the assessment of a developing world, small scale gillnet UoA, it became clear that there is some evidence that local fisheries in general are having an impact on the endangered Ruby Dolphin as a local NGO interview reveals that they have approximately 10 sightings per year of stranded individuals with signs of gear interactions reported (Column B-type information source). However, it is not clear whether these interactions have come from the UoA or another fishery in the area.

Interactions with ETP species such as the Ruby Dolphin are monitored through sporadic landings monitoring by a government agency (Column B-type information source). The agency reports the gear used and any bycatch species that are landed, to the species level where possible. Through this monitoring, there was one report of 1 Ruby Dolphin mortality in the past two years in this UoA.

In addition, interviews with the government officer in charge of the inspections, the fishers themselves have indicated that entanglements with cetaceans are rare in this fishery, but that when they do occur that the species are able to be safely released (Column B-type information sources).

The evidence from the landings data and interviews is assessed by the team as meeting the SG60 requirement for Ruby Dolphin. However, due to the poor conservation status of this species and the uncertainty over the true impact of the fishery on this species, it does not meet the SG80 level, i.e., there are no Column A-type data sources to validate the information.

If in addition to the above, the local NGO or a University researcher were to undertake a short-term quantitative research project investigating the number of interactions within this fishery and their likely outcome (mortality, injury, release without harm), and that this research validated that the impact was in fact very low, then the combined evidence would meet the SG80 level.

In addition to the catch, the UoA-related mortality of caught species needs to be understood, particularly for unwanted catch. If not killed outright, the eventual mortality of unwanted catch returned to the sea, i.e., the number that will eventually die if released, thrown away, or slipped can be estimated using methods such as confinement, field observations, tagging and telemetry (Suuronen, 2005; Neilson et al, 2011). However, these methods can be expensive and alternative methods to estimate mortality based on proxies can be effective with certain species or in certain circumstances, including:

- Observer assessment of individual species vitality (e.g. prior to release/throwing away) or physical condition as a proxy for mortality (Richards et al, 1995; DFO, 2012);
- Time to mortality (TM) estimates (Benoit et al, 2013);
- Biochemical indicators (Beamish, 1966)

GSA3.6.3.2 ▲

In scoring issue (a) CABs are required to consider a number of factors when determining the adequacy of the information in relation to its ability to determine and to detect changes in the outcome indicator score.

The background document to the FAO Guidelines on the Precautionary Approach to Fisheries (FAO, 1996) suggests that fisheries assess statistical power of the tests and methodologies used for comparing the relative 'soundness' of the information available. The statistical power measures the probability that the monitoring programme will effectively detect the reduction of the reproductive capacity below safe thresholds, and is strongly influenced by the elements listed in SA3.7.4.2. The lower the statistical power of the assessment, the more precautionary the management response should be (FAO, 1996).

GSA3.6.4 ▲

If there is unwanted catch and Scoring Issue (e) on the 'review of alternative measures' is scored in the Management PI 2.1.2, information should also be adequate to support understanding the effectiveness and practicality of measures used by the UoA as well as potential alternative measures.

GSA3.7 Secondary species outcome PI (PI 2.2.1)

GSA3.7.1 Treatment of out of scope species ▲

Out of scope species (birds, reptiles, amphibians, mammals) are always considered a main species regardless of their total catch volume.

GSA3.7.2 Recognition of 'considerable' catches for out of scope species ▲

To determine whether catches are considerable as defined in SA 3.7.4 for out of scope species, teams should use their expertise and a precautionary approach to determine whether the UoA impact is considerable or not. For such species, the 10% default catch weight requirement may be less applicable than for in-scope species. Precautionary measures may include looking at proxies for fishing related mortality as defined in [GSA2.2.3](#).

GSA3.7.3 Consideration of efforts to minimise the mortality of unwanted catches ▲

The guidance for clause [GSA3.4.7](#) applies here also.

GSA3.8 Secondary species management strategy PI (PI 2.2.2) ▲

The guidance for clause [GSA3.5](#) applies here also.

GSA3.9 Secondary species information PI (PI 2.2.3) ▲

GSA3.6 applies here also.

GSA3.10 ETP species outcome PI (PI 2.3.1) ▲

Scoring issue (a) – Combined impacts of MSC UoAs

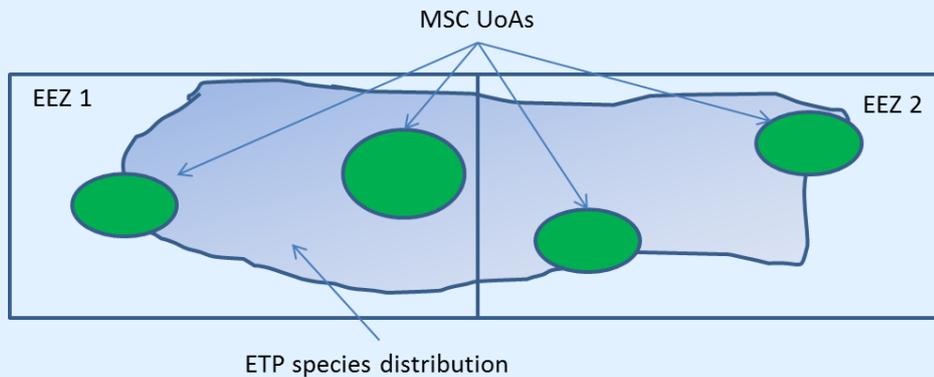
The team should consider whether the ETP species overlaps with other MSC UoAs and whether there are limits set that pertain to these UoAs in either national legislation or binding international agreements.

As indicated in [GSA3.1.5.2](#), the intent of the MSC when referring to agreements that are “binding” is that the international legislation is binding on the parties to the agreement. Neither the flag state of the UoA, nor the state in which fishing takes place, need be a signatory to this agreement for it to be applicable to MSC certified UoAs.

Example 1: Two EEZs, one with limits and one without

For example in [Figure GSA4](#) below, an ETP species distribution overlaps with four MSC UoAs, two of which are in EEZ 1 and two in EEZ 2. EEZ 1 has national limits set for the ETP species, but EEZ 2 does not. There are no international limits set through international agreements for the ETP species. In this case, the assessment team should score the MSC UoAs in EEZ 1 using scoring issue (a) and should take the combined impacts of only the EEZ1 MSC UoAs into account. The assessment team should score the MSC UoAs in EEZ 2 using scoring issue (b) and would not need to take their combined impacts into account.

Figure GSA4: Example ETP species distribution



Example 2: Two EEZs. both with different limits

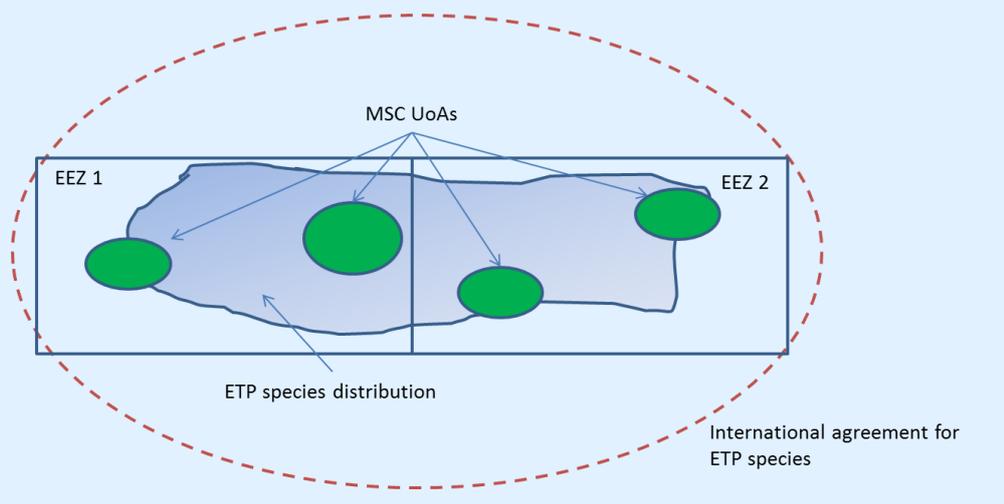
In [Figure GSA4](#) above, let us instead suppose that both EEZ 1 and EEZ 2 have set national limits for the ETP species, but these limits are only for the fisheries within their respective EEZs. There are no international limits set through international agreements for the ETP species. In this case, the MSC UoAs in both EEZs would use scoring issue (a) to score the species. However, the assessment team should consider the combined impacts of MSC UoAs in EEZ 1 and the combined impacts of UoAs in EEZ 2 separately (i.e., the 2 MSC UoAs in EEZ 1 in relation to EEZ 1 limits and the 2 MSC UoAs in EEZ 2 in relation

to EEZ 2 limits).

Example 3: Two EEZs, one with limits and one without, and international agreement with limits

In [Figure GSA5](#) below, EEZ 1 has national limits for the ETP species for fisheries within their EEZ and EEZ 2 does not. However, there is also an international agreement for the ETP species that sets a limit within a specified area. EEZ 1 is a signatory to this agreement and EEZ 2 is not, although both operate in the agreement area. In this case, the assessment team should consider that as there are limits set by the international agreement, the species should be scored in scoring issue (a) for all UoAs, irrespective of whether they are in EEZ 1 or EEZ 2. The limits set by the international agreement should be the ones that the combined impacts of MSC UoAs need to be within, regardless of whether they are within their own separate national limits.

Figure GSA5: Example of ETP distribution in relation to MSC UoAs and two national EEZs, with international agreement for ETP species



GSA3.10.3 ▲

Guidance for clause [GSA3.4.7](#) applies here also, noting that where those clauses refer to mortality of unwanted catch they apply here to mortality of ETP species.

GSA3.11 ETP species management strategy PI (PI 2.3.2) ▲

Guidance [GSA3.5](#) applies here also.

GSA3.11.1 ▲

At all three scoring guideposts in scoring issue (a), teams are required to consider the need to minimise mortality. At SG80 and SG100, however, the scoring issue refers to the need for the strategy or comprehensive strategy to manage the UoA's impact on ETP species (see definitions in [Table SA8](#) and associated guidance in GSA3).

In addition to minimising mortality, the teams should consider the strategy/ comprehensive strategy's ability to manage indirect impacts here, in line with scoring in the Outcome PI 'indirect effects' scoring issue.

GSA3.11.3 ▲

Guidance for clauses [GSA3.5.3](#) and its sub-clauses applies here, noting that in primary and secondary PIs the aim is to minimise UoA-related mortality of unwanted catch but in ETP the aim is to minimise UoA-related mortality of all ETP species.

GSA3.12 ETP species information / monitoring PI (PI 2.3.3) ▲

Guidance [GSA3.6](#) applies here also, except for guidance on specific scoring issues (a) and (b) as there is no 'main' distinction for ETP.

GSA3.13 Habitats outcome PI (PI 2.4.1) ▲

Use of UoA

In PI 2.4.1, the impact of the UoA itself is assessed. Thus, the "status" of the habitat, in terms of its current state and likely recoverability (see [GSA3.13.3](#)), should be determined with respect to the impacts of the UoA rather than all fishing impacts.

Treatment of vulnerable marine ecosystems

The definition of serious and irreversible harm (see [Table SA8](#), [SA3.13.3](#), and the [associated guidance](#)) allows for there to be some continued fishing on all habitats. Even UoAs operating in very slow-recovering habitats, for instance vulnerable marine ecosystems (VMEs), may be managed so that the impact from fishing continues but is minor and tolerable.

The MSC requirement is that habitats are not impacted beyond the point at which they could recover to 80% (or more) of their unimpacted level within 5-20 years. VMEs are generally habitats with slow recovery rates that are unlikely to be able to recover within 5-20 years from states below 80% of their unimpacted levels. For this reason and due to the fact that VMEs are afforded specific consideration in international and customary law (the UNGA resolutions and FAO Guidelines), VMEs should not be reduced to a state below 80% of the unimpacted level.

Although an individual UoA may achieve an 80 score in the outcome PI 2.4.1 when fishing on a VME because its individual impact is unlikely to cause the VME serious and irreversible harm, the MSC recognises the unique value of VMEs and the possibility that all fishing (all MSC UoAs plus other fisheries – see [SA3.14.3](#), the subclauses, and the [associated guidance](#)) may nevertheless be causing more than 20% damage to VMEs. Therefore, unless there is a comprehensive management plan (see [SA3.14.2.1](#) and the [associated guidance](#))

Fisheries Certification Requirements

covering all fishing impacts on the VME, under the management PI 2.4.2, MSC requires that UoAs avoid VMEs even if they score higher than 80 on the outcome PI 2.4.1.

GSA3.13.1 Habitat structure and function ▲

The habitat's structure and function (i.e., the ecosystem services that it provides), including abundance and biological diversity, is of concern in an MSC assessment. Thus, an assessment should look not only at the impact on the habitat but also the habitat's delivery of ecosystem services. For instance, if only a part of the habitat is affected by fishing but this part delivers the greatest ecosystem services, then this should be taken into account in the assessment. Particular habitats may determine the carrying capacity of the target, primary, secondary, and/or ETP species, and a mosaic of habitats may be necessary for some species to complete their life cycle or determine the overall composition of the ecological community.

GSA3.13.1.1 Use of the RBF ▲

Teams may score the outcome PI 2.4.1 for data-rich UoAs using the default assessment tree or for data-deficient UoAs using the alternative Consequence Spatial Analysis (CSA) (Annex PF).

When using the default assessment tree to score the PI, the UoA should have information of sufficient quality to undertake an analytical approach effectively. First, the CSA defines a habitat using the SGB nomenclature ([SA3.13.2](#); see also [Table GSA6](#)). Second, the CSA utilises inferences and proxies for the habitats' and gears' attributes to extrapolate the risk to habitats from the fishing gear.

The default assessment tree requires knowledge of the likelihood that the UoA does not cause serious or irreversible harm to the habitat, meaning that the following questions must be answered:

- What habitats are encountered by the UoA?
- What are the impacts of the gear(s) on those habitats?

To answer the first question in a non-data-deficient situation, the team should have UoA-specific (quantitative) SGB information and/or data, such as detailed habitat mapping for the relevant area (as defined in [SA3.13.5](#)). To answer the second question in a non-data-deficient situation, the team should have gear-specific (quantitative) impact information and/or data, such as fishing-effort mapping with knowledge of regeneration ability that is specific to the UoA and/or habitat-specific research results that examine the impact of the gear(s) on habitats in the relevant area.

If the available information is not UoA specific but more generic (qualitative) relating to the general area in which the UoA operates or to a broader region, the CSA will likely be needed to score the outcome PI effectively. Finally, if the type and quality of information is uncertain, the CAB would need to rationalise whether or not the CSA is needed.

GSA3.13.2 Habitats characteristics ▲

Usually habitats impacted by the UoA are benthic habitats (i.e., associated with or occurring on the bottom) rather than pelagic habitats (i.e., near the surface or in the open water column), but impacts on the biotic aspects of pelagic habitats could be considered.

When determining which benthic habitats are impacted by the UoA, the team should consider habitats on the basis of the substratum, geomorphology, and (characteristic) biota (SGB) characteristics.

Table GSA6 provides examples of what constitute the SGB characteristics. For example, one habitat may be defined as fine – low relief – no fauna or flora. (Note that this nomenclature is also used within the CSA, which is used to assess habitat impacts in data-deficient situations.) It is not the intent that the team creates a table of this nature for the UoA's habitats. Rather, the intent is that the team uses this table to categorise the habitats affected by the UoA prior to assessment.

Table GSA6: GB habitat nomenclature (modified from Williams et al., 2011²⁸)

Substratum	Geomorphology	Biota
Fine (mud, sand) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mud (<0.1 mm particle diameter) Fine sediments(0.1-1 mm) Coarse sediments (1-4 mm) 	Flat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Simple surface structure Unrippled/flat Current rippled/directed scour Wave rippled 	Large erect Dominated by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Large and/or erect sponges Solitary large sponges Solitary sedentary/sessile epifauna (e.g., ascidians/bryozoans) Crinoids Corals Mixed large or erect communities
Medium <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gravel/pebble (4-60 mm) 	Low relief <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Irregular topography with mounds and depressions Rough surface structure Debris flow/rubble banks 	Small erect/encrusting/burrowing Dominated by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Small, low-encrusting sponges Small, low-standing sponges Consolidated (e.g., mussels) and unconsolidated bivalve beds (e.g., scallops) Mixed small/low-encrusting invertebrate communities Infaunal bioturbators
Large <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cobble/boulders (60 mm - 3 m) Igneous, metamorphic, or sedimentary rock (>3 m) 	Outcrop <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subcrop (rock protrusions from surrounding sediment <1 m) Low-relief outcrop (<1 m) 	No fauna or flora <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No apparent epifauna, infauna, or flora
Solid reef of biogenic origin <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Biogenic (substratum of 	High relief <ul style="list-style-type: none"> High outcrop (protrusion of consolidated substrate >1 m) 	Flora Dominated by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Seagrass species

²⁸ Williams, A., Dowdney, J., Smith, A.D.M., Hobday, A.J., and Fuller, M., 2011. *Evaluating impacts of fishing on benthic habitats: A risk assessment framework applied to Australian fisheries*. Fisheries Research 112(3):154-167.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

biogenic calcium carbonate) • Depositions of skeletal material forming coral reef base	• Rugged surface structure	
---	----------------------------	--

GSA3.13.3 Commonly encountered ▲

The determination of commonly encountered habitats and VMEs (both of which are treated as “main” habitats in the information PI 2.4.3) should be supported by evidence provided by the UoA to the assessment team. If a habitat’s designation is uncertain, the team should take the precautionary approach, identify uncertain habitats as commonly encountered or VMEs as appropriate, and then most likely use the CSA (Annex PF).

GSA3.13.3.1 Commonly encountered ▲

Commonly encountered habitats would likely include those that the target species favours, that the UoA’s gear is designed to exploit, and/or that make up a reasonable portion of the UoA’s fishing area.

GSA3.13.3.2 VME ▲

VMEs have one or more of the following characteristic, as defined in paragraph 42 of the FAO Guidelines:

- Uniqueness or rarity – an area or ecosystem that is unique or that contains rare species whose loss could not be compensated for by similar areas or ecosystems
- Functional significance of the habitat – discrete areas or habitats that are necessary for survival, function, spawning/reproduction, or recovery of fish stocks; for particular life-history stages (e.g., nursery grounds, rearing areas); or for ETP species
- Fragility – an ecosystem that is highly susceptible to degradation by anthropogenic activities
- Life-history traits of component species that make recovery difficult – ecosystems that are characterised by populations or assemblages of species that are slow growing, are slow maturing, have low or unpredictable recruitment, and/or are long lived
- Structural complexity – an ecosystem that is characterised by complex physical structures created by significant concentrations of biotic and abiotic features

The FAO Guidelines’ Annex identifies the following species groups, communities, and habitat-forming species that may form VMEs and may be indicative of the occurrence of VMEs:

- Certain coldwater corals and hydroids (e.g., reef builders and coral forest, such as stony corals, alcyonaceans, gorgonians, black corals, and hydrocorals)
- Some types of sponge-dominated communities
- Communities composed of dense emergent fauna where large sessile protozoans and invertebrates (e.g., hydroids and bryozoans) form an important structural component of habitat

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- Seep and vent communities comprised of invertebrate and microbial species found nowhere else (i.e., endemic)

The FAO Guidelines' Annex also lists various geographical features that are often associated with these communities.

The MSC's intent is that, even though the FAO Guidelines were written for deep-sea fisheries, the Guidelines' VME characteristics also apply to non-deep-sea fisheries. Further, when the FAO Guidelines are applied in shallow, inshore waters, the definition of VME could include other species groups and communities (e.g., seagrass beds, complex kelp-dominated habitats, biogenic reefs).

GSA3.13.4 Serious or irreversible harm ▲

The MSC's definition of "serious or irreversible harm" is very similar to the FAO Guidelines²⁹ definition of "significant adverse impacts". A key consideration in both definitions is the concept of reversibility or recoverability. Both definitions consider the time frame required for a habitat to recover. Damage requiring 5-20 years (or more) from which to recover should be considered "serious or irreversible" or "significantly adverse", consistent with FAO (2009).

The MSC defines "recovery" as recovering to at least 80% of the level to which the habitat would eventually recover in the absence of all fishing, considering the existing environmental and anthropomorphic conditions – a hypothetical climax state under existing conditions. This is often referred to in the text as an "unimpacted" level.

For VMEs the pre-existing historical extent of the habitat should be considered in the calculation of the current state of the VME in relation to unimpacted levels if the historical extent is known and if recovery in those areas of historical extent would be possible. If the habitat has been altered completely so that the pre-existing state does not exist, recovery of that state is not expected; however if recovery of the pre-existing state is possible, this should be considered.

Example:

Off the north coast of Australia, several shelf-break VME areas have been damaged but are still there in reduced form and would recover if left undisturbed for several years. Therefore, these areas should be considered within the scope of the habitat's recovery.

The MSC has nominated the 80% level as a reasonable point at which to expect most of the habitat's structure and function (including abundance and biological diversity) to have been restored, taking into consideration the likely logistic population growth of habitat-forming organisms.

Likelihood of recovery should take into account the likely speed of recovery (a higher score for recovery within 1 year, for instance, than within 20 years) as well as the certainty of recovery of a habitat.

Example:

Figure GSA6 and Table GSA7 provide some examples of recovery rates and resulting

²⁹ Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, 2009. *International guidelines for the management of deep-sea fisheries in the high seas*. FAO, Rome.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

habitat status in some hypothetical situations. For each of these examples, it is assumed that the UoA is the only one impacting the habitat (i.e., all fishing impacts on the habitat are covered by the one UoA). If multiple UoAs were impacting the habitat, the individual UoAs' impacts would be less.

Example A (dotted line) represents the current status (in relation to unimpacted status) of the habitat impacted by a moderate-impacting UoA (e.g., demersal longline). This UoA impacts 60% of the entire distribution of this habitat type (shown in [Figure GSA6](#)). It also fully protects 40% of the habitat type inside a closed area (not shown in figure). Because the gear is moderate impacting, the habitat status in the fished parts of the habitat is 50% of the unimpacted level. The recovery rate for this habitat type is fast, and it is likely that the overall status of the habitat would rise above 80% of the unimpacted level in around 5 years. Combined with the unimpacted status of the habitat in the closed area, this means that the habitat would recover to 80% of the unimpacted level in 5 years, achieving at least an 80 score and potentially a higher score if there is greater confidence supported by evidence for this expected recovery.

Example B (dotted and dashed line) represents the status of the habitat impacted by a high-impacting UoA (e.g., demersal trawl) that protects 40% of the habitat type and fishes the other 60%. Again, the status of the impacted habitat area is shown in the figure but not the status of the habitat within the protected area. Since this is a high-impacting gear, the habitat has been degraded in the fished areas to 10% of the unimpacted level. This habitat is not very resilient, barely reaching the 80% level in 20 years and not reaching it in 5 years. Across both the closed area and the impacted areas, the UoA would be unlikely to be causing serious or irreversible harm but with less confidence than Example A (possibly achieving a 60 score in this case).

Example C (solid line) represents the same high-impacting UoA that protects 40% of a slow-growing habitat and fishes the other 60% of that habitat, the latter which has been degraded to 10% of the unimpacted level. This habitat has a very slow recovery rate and will take longer than 20 years to reach the 80% unimpacted level. This UoA is, therefore, causing serious or irreversible harm to this habitat and would not be likely to score a 60.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Figure GSA6: An illustration of different example recovery rates for habitats over time under different fishing conditions where fishing is removed at year 0

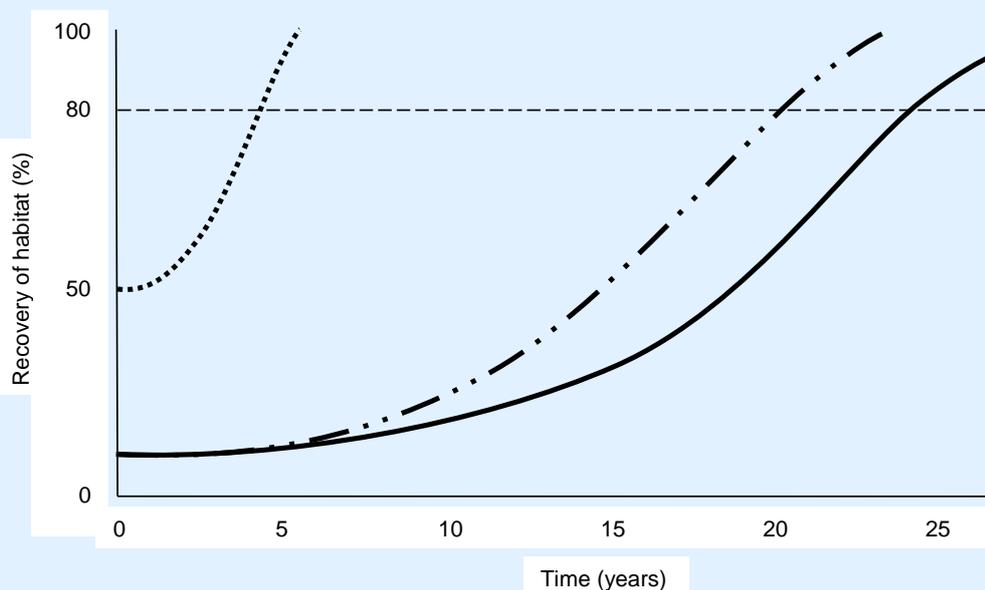


Table GSA7 provides additional details on the UoAs and habitats to accompany the examples provided in Figure GSA6. Rows A-H illustrate in a qualitative sense how the overall habitat status could be estimated, both at the current time and in the future depending on (1) the extent of habitat protection in a closed area, (2) the level of habitat degradation outside the closed area, and (3) the habitat recovery rate. Any current scenario that results in the overall habitat being less than 80% of the unimpacted level is considered serious or irreversible harm. Row I gives the likelihoods of the UoAs causing serious or irreversible harm (see Table SA9), and Row J gives the corresponding MSC scores.

Table GSA7: UoA and habitat characteristics for the examples in Figure GSA6

UoA and habitat characteristics	Example A (dotted line)	Example B (dotted and dashed line)	Example C (solid line)
A. Proportion of habitat fully protected in closed area	40%	40%	40%
B. Area of habitat subject to fishing	60%	60%	60%
C. Level of gear impact	Moderate	High	High
D. Current status of habitats in fished areas (% of unimpacted level)	50%	10%	10%
E. Current overall status of habitat, compared to unimpacted level (A + [B x D])	70%	46%	46%
F. Habitat recovery rate	Fast	Medium	Slow

Fisheries Certification Requirements

G. Expected future status of habitats in fished areas in 20 years if fishing ceases (% of unimpacted level)	100%	80%	50%
H. Expected future overall status of habitat in 20 years, compared to unimpacted level (A + [B x G])	100%	88%	70%
I. Likelihood that the UoA is causing serious or irreversible harm	Highly unlikely	Unlikely	Not unlikely
J. MSC score	80 or higher, depending on confidence and evidence (unconditional pass)	60 (pass with condition)	<60 (fail)

GSA3.13.4.1 ▲

The special consideration of serious and irreversible harm afforded to VMEs derives from both their generally long recovery times and the special status afforded them in international and customary law (see above, [PI 2.4.1](#)). While many VMEs may have long recovery times, some may not, but they are all subject to the specific VME requirements in this clause.

MSC's adoption of the FAO Guidelines for identifying VMEs (see [GSA3.13.3.2](#)) means that habitats with recovery times substantially greater than 20 years should usually be identified as VMEs. Habitat recovery here relates to the whole habitat, not just some species within a habitat. There may be some habitats with long recovery times that for some reason do not meet the FAO Guidelines' definition on VMEs. However, even for these non-VME habitats, an inability to recover from small reductions in state in fewer than 20 years should lead to a conclusion under the provisions of [SA3.13.4](#) that it would not be possible to deplete them below 80% and still expect them to recover to 80% within 5-20 years.

Note that the minimal VME damage that occurs when a move-on rule is triggered should not be counted as serious or irreversible harm even when a VME habitat is below 80% of its unimpacted level.

GSA3.13.5 Full area ▲

The MSC's intent in specifying the "area covered by the governance body(s) responsible for fisheries management in the area(s) where the UoA operates" (the "managed area" for short) is to consider by default the habitat impacts within the areas controlled by the management regimes under which the UoA operates. This may be a single EEZ, a combination of EEZs in the case of a UoA that fishes on a shared stock, a combination of an EEZ and an RFMO, or entirely an RFMO. For many UoAs, the managed area may be only part of an EEZ (for example, the jurisdictional area for the UoA or the area covered by a management plan under which the UoA operates).

However, where there is reasonable evidence that the habitat distribution extends beyond the "managed area", the assessment of habitat impacts should be based on this extended distribution. The basis for concluding that the habitat range extends beyond the "managed area" should be documented clearly.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Two types of exceptional cases exist:

- Situations where the range of the habitat is much smaller than the area of the governance body's control (e.g., where the RFMO covers an entire ocean but the habitat is restricted in distribution) or where it is not sensible to consider the entire area because areas under that governance body's control are not contiguous (e.g., where an EEZ covers two separate areas) or have quite different bio-physical and habitat characteristics.
- Situations where the managed area is extremely restricted, such as cases where an EEZ has only a very narrow extent due to encroaching baselines of adjoining EEZs, and it does not make sense to consider such a narrow habitat within the assessment.

Examples of these exceptional cases:

- The Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources (CCAMLR) manages fishing throughout the Southern Ocean. Clearly, it would not be appropriate or feasible to include the entire area covered by CCAMLR when considering the range of the habitat(s) affected by vessels fishing only in the Ross Sea.
- A fishery that operates mainly in the Norwegian Trench overlaps with the North Sea and the Norwegian EEZ. These latter two areas cover more than 3 million km² in total. It is likely that the UoA is fishing a relatively small portion of this total area and therefore impacting a small portion of the habitat(s). Again, it would not be reasonable to consider the entire range of the habitat(s) across the total area.
- The Gambia coastline is only 800 km and the EEZ is only 19,500 km². Several habitats extend along much of the western coast of Africa, extending into other EEZs. Given the small area controlled by the Gambian government, it would be appropriate to consider the habitat(s) range beyond the Gambian EEZ.

In such exceptional cases, it would be reasonable for the assessment team to scale up or scale down the “managed area” when determining the appropriate habitat range to consider.

The team should apply expert judgement and provide rationale for such scaling.

GSA3.14 Habitats management strategy PI (PI 2.4.2) ▲

MSC's approach to management of VMEs

The MSC's approach to the assessment of sustainability with regard to VMEs is based on the UNGA resolutions (especially 61/105 and 64/72) and more specifically the FAO Guidelines for deep-sea fisheries. The central requirements of the FAO Guidelines are as follows:

- A set of criteria for identifying VMEs
- Impact assessments to determine if fishing activities are likely to produce significant adverse impacts on VMEs
- Acquisition of data to determine the fishing footprint and the interaction of fisheries with VMEs

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- Development of a “functioning regulatory framework” that includes regulations to protect VMEs
- In the absence of a functioning regulatory framework, establishment of an interim precautionary approach that allows for the development of appropriate conservation and management measures to prevent significant adverse impacts on VMEs while preventing such impacts from taking place inadvertently and that consists of (a) closing of areas where VMEs are known or likely to occur and (b) refraining from expanding the level or spatial extent of effort of vessels involved in deep-sea fisheries

These elements are incorporated into the MSC requirements by requiring either a comprehensive management plan (see [SA3.14.2.1](#) and the [associated guidance](#)) that determines that all fishing will not cause serious and irreversible harm to VMEs or that MSC UoAs should avoid VMEs individually and cumulatively (implementing the final bullet above).

The wording of the management PI 2.4.2 requires that management measures/strategies are expected to deliver the outcome PI’s SG80 level, which is based on an assessment of the UoA’s impact.

This should be taken as the desired outcome of the management measures/strategies for non-VME habitats as well.

Scoring issue (a) Management strategy in place ▲

“If necessary” does not appear in the scoring issue (a) at the SG100 level, meaning that in order to score 100, a management strategy should be in place for all UoAs (see [Table GSA3](#)), even those that do not regularly contact benthic habitats since gear loss or unexpected benthic change could occur.

[Table GSA8](#) provides an example of a strategy for a pelagic UoA.

GSA3.14.1 ▲

Where there is a VME in the UoA’s “managed area” (see [SA3.13.5](#), the subclauses, and the [associated guidance](#)), the management PI 2.4.2 is scored in relation to both non-VME habitats and VMEs.

GSA3.14.2 ▲

Generic guidance is given on the differences between measures, partial strategy, and strategy (see [Table GSA3](#)). [Table GSA8](#) provides examples of measures, partial strategies, and strategies in terms of benthic habitats. These are only examples of such management levels and do not necessarily meet the whole of the scoring rationale requirements. Assessment teams should always use their expert judgement to determine how well, or otherwise, management measures, partial strategies, or strategies are designed to ensure the UoA does not pose a risk of serious or irreversible harm to relevant habitats.

A strategy should include regular review of alternative measures to reduce the impact of the UoA on the habitat. Appropriate alternative measures determined in this review should also be considered during the review of measures to minimise unwanted catch (PIs 2.1.2, 2.2.2, and 2.3.2), particularly when making a decision on which measures to implement (refer to [Box GSA8](#) and [SA3.5.3](#)).

GSA3.14.2.1 ▲

UoAs may qualify for a higher score on this PI if they have a comprehensive management plan that is supported by a comprehensive impact assessment that determines that all fishing activities will not cause serious or irreversible harm to VMEs. The MSC equates this higher level of performance to the FAO Guidelines' best management practice "functioning regulatory framework". A comprehensive management plan could also include avoidance measures to ensure that serious or irreversible harm to VMEs does not occur.

Some damage to VMEs is acceptable as long as overall serious or irreversible harm to structure and function is avoided. If a strategy chooses not to afford complete protection to all VMEs in an area, this decision should include an impact assessment to demonstrate that serious or irreversible harm is avoided and that VMEs are not impacted more than 20% of their unimpacted levels. In cases where the historical distribution of VMEs is known and it can be expected that damaged areas could recover, these should be included in the calculation of "unimpacted level".

In cases where a comprehensive management plan is in place but the VME is below the 80% recovery criterion, the plan should first allow the VME to recover to at least 80% before fishing continues. In other words, the only allowance for continued fishing by MSC UoAs on a VME is (a) if there is a comprehensive plan that shows that all fishing will keep the VME at 80% or recover it to 80% and (b) when the VME has recovered or is above 80%.

A comprehensive, formal impact assessment may not be necessary in all cases (e.g., when benthic gear are prohibited but pelagic gear are permitted because the risk to benthic habitats is very negligible). Refer to [Table GSA8](#) for an example of a strategy for a pelagic UoA.

GSA3.14.2.2 ▲

In the absence of a comprehensive management plan that takes all fishing activities into account, MSC UoAs cannot necessarily assume that their impacts, while unlikely to cause serious and irreversible harm on their own (and therefore potentially meeting the SG80 level under the outcome PI 2.4.1), will not contribute to a cumulative impact that is serious and irreversible to VMEs.

Therefore, the MSC will expect these MSC UoAs to take appropriate action within measures/strategies to avoid impacting VMEs. Given the complexity of undertaking an impact assessment on VMEs, the MSC expects that most UoAs will choose to apply the simpler approach of avoiding VMEs.

The partial strategy should include a mechanism by which to consider a habitat that might be a VME (i.e., designated as a "potential VME" by another MSC UoA or a management authority). Since the characteristics of a VME are not directly physical features but relate to a number of different elements ([GSA3.13.3.2](#)) as well as recoverability, a VME is often difficult to determine. Therefore, a management system should be open to the possibility that habitats that contain high densities of VME-indicator organisms may or may not be VMEs, and a habitat's VME status will need to be determined by subsequent research. However, the appropriate precautionary approach is to treat these areas as potential VMEs and to implement precautionary measures to protect them ahead of confirmatory evidence, as outlined in the FAO Guidelines paragraphs 63-67.

A common precautionary response to the presence of VMEs is to develop avoidance measures (e.g., move-on rules) with the intention that the UoA is able to avoid any further encounter with VMEs or potential VMEs. This response ensures that serious and irreversible harm is avoided.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The minimal VME damage that occurs when a move-on rule is triggered does not constitute serious or irreversible harm even when a VME habitat is below 80% of its unimpacted level.

Reviews of move-on rules (e.g., ICES, 2010³⁰; Rogers and Gianni, 2010³¹; Weaver et al., 2011³²) have detected the following frequent problems:

- There is limited or no scientific basis on whether the thresholds used for move-on rules are indicative of VMEs and often they are not specific to different gears, species, or habitat and do not identify an effective move-on distance.
- In cases where the move-on distance is small, the effect may simply be to increase damage to VMEs.
- The materials necessary to help observers and fishers identify and quantify VME taxa are inadequate and/or not standardised.
- Good information collection, including vessel monitoring systems (VMS) and automatic identification systems (AIS), and full observer coverage is often needed to apply the move-on rules correctly.

In acknowledgement of this, [SA3.14.2.2](#) requires that at the SG80 level, the move-on rules be scientifically based and specific to the gear and VME. Therefore, at the SG80 level, some justification for the use of a specific move-on rule is expected, whereas at the SG60 level, a commonly accepted, default rule could be used.

The lifting of a closure implemented using a move-on rule should be based on a high level of scientific evidence to identify conservation and management measures that prevent significant adverse impacts to VMEs. Note that because a comprehensive impact assessment has not been done at this level of performance, effectively all VMEs and potential VMEs should be afforded some level of precautionary protection.

A partial strategy for a UoA using a pelagic gear or a low-impacting bottom gear (e.g., a gear footprint score of 1 in Table PF16) may not need to include requirements and implementations (as per [SA3.14.2.2](#)). The team should provide rationale in those cases. The team may find it useful to refer to the pelagic examples in [Table GSA8](#).

GSA3.14.2.3 ▲

At the SG60 level, commonly accepted move-on rules can be used as “Measures”. These may be rules that are used for the same gear in other situations or in other areas of the world but that have not been specifically designed for the UoA’s gear and/or encountered VMEs.

³⁰ ICES, 2010. *Report of the ICES/NAFO joint working group on deep-water ecology (WGDEC), 22–26 March 2010, Copenhagen, Denmark*. ICES CM 2010/ACOM:26, 160 pp.

³¹ Rogers, A.D. and Gianni, M., 2010. *The implementation of UNGA Resolutions 61/105 and 64/72 in the management of deep-sea fisheries on the high seas*. Report prepared for the Deep-Sea Conservation Coalition, International Programme on the State of the Ocean, London, United Kingdom, 97 pp.

³² Weaver, P.P.E., Benn, A., Arana, P.M., Ardron, J.A., Bailey, D.M., Baker, K., Billett, D.S.M., Clark, M.R., Davies, A.J., Durán Muñoz, P., Fuller, S.D., Gianni, M., Grehan, A.J., Guinotte, J., Kenny, A., Koslow, J.A., Morato, T., Penney, A.J., Perez, J.A.A., Priede, I.G., Rogers, A.D., Santos, R.S., and Watling, L., 2011. *The impact of deep-sea fisheries and implementation of the UNGA Resolutions 61/105 and 64/72*. Report of an international scientific workshop, National Oceanography Centre, Southampton, 45 pp.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table GSA8: Potential measures, partial strategies, and strategies in relation to habitat impacts

Examples of potential measures, partial strategies, and strategies in relation to habitat impacts (modified from Grieve et al., 2011³³)

General UoA description	Measures	Partial strategy	Strategy	Rationale
<p>Cod UoA using fixed gear (e.g., gillnets) in inshore zones and mobile gear (e.g., otter trawl) in offshore zones – There are some closed areas and closed seasons for specific gears in either or both the inshore and offshore zones, though these are primarily stock and bycatch management measures. Some habitat protection is afforded by these management arrangements. Monitoring and information gathering efforts are directed at species management arrangements.</p>	✓			<p>The management arrangements in place are designed to manage impacts on other components under the assessment tree (e.g., P1 and P2 species). They indirectly contribute to management of habitats because of closed inshore areas to mobile gears, seasonal closures in the offshore environment, and distribution of relevant habitats extends well beyond known fishing areas (i.e., the areas of fishing activity). The arrangements might be considered cohesive, but there is no evidence of efforts to investigate them through the lens of habitat management in order to understand how they work to achieve desirable habitat outcomes (i.e., how they avoid posing risk of serious or irreversible harm to relevant habitats).</p>

³³ Grieve, C., Brady, D.C. and Polet, H., 2011. *Best practices for managing, measuring, and mitigating the benthic impacts of fishing: final report to the Marine Stewardship Council*. Unpublished work.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

<p>Multi-species trawl UoA in inshore tropical waters – Trawling is banned in inshore waters during the seasonal monsoon to protect juvenile and spawning habitat for fish and invertebrate species.</p>	✓		<p>The seasonal closure can be considered an individual tool or action that seeks to explicitly protect juvenile and spawning habitat despite being designed to enhance the sustainability of species of interest. However, there is little evidence to suggest that impacts of the arrangement are investigated to determine whether or not habitat protection is occurring or to understand how the measure works to achieve habitat protection; nor are there any other measures, plans, or statutes that would determine how managers would change the seasonal closure if it ceased to be effective from a habitat perspective.</p>
<p>Groundfish trawl UoA in offshore zones with explicit links to other species/multi-gear management plans – Some closed areas within the groundfish UoA prohibit use of any bottom-contacting fishing gear. Non-UoA (i.e., environmental protection-led) regulations designate two habitat areas of concern, which are also closed to bottom-contacting fishing gear. Vessel monitoring systems and other enforcement efforts aim to ensure no violation of closed or protected areas. Information gathering seeks to monitor the protected zones, and fishing impacts are considered in subsequent analyses. Arrangements about the use or otherwise of bottom-contacting gear have changed according to shifting distributions of benthic species of interest to the other UoAs.</p>		✓	<p>There is a clear multi-species management approach with the linking of species/gear management plans. The closed areas indirectly contribute to the management of habitats for the groundfish UoA, though they were established to protect the stocks of other sessile target species (e.g., scallops). The habitat protection zones, though designed for broader conservation purposes, serve to protect habitats of concern. The arrangements could be considered cohesive, particularly as there is evidence of strict enforcement of the protection zones and closed areas, coupled with high sanctions imposed for violators. Similarly, there are some efforts to understand how bottom-contacting gear might impact other benthic biota, but these are aimed at interests other than those in the UoA. The closed areas and protection zones were not designed specifically to manage habitats in relation to the groundfish UoA, nor are there specific mechanisms described that would enable managers to appropriately modify fishing practices if unacceptable impacts to habitats were identified.</p>
<p>Co-managed and community-based managed tropical UoAs using multiple gears on a diverse range of habitats – Under a broad</p>		✓	<p>There is science-based rationale for protecting the habitats as spawning, larval, or juvenile areas for the sustainability of fish species.</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

<p>marine management area, which was not specifically designed to manage fishing but general community uses of the marine environment, protection is afforded to a mosaic or patchwork of seagrass, mangrove, and coral reef habitats where bottom-contacting gear use is restricted or banned altogether. The cultural context and scale of the various UoAs lend themselves to the community-based management approach.</p>			<p>The arrangements are cohesive, comprising several measures that indirectly protect habitats for biodiversity purposes. There is some understanding of how this works to protect habitats and a demonstrable awareness of the need to change measures if they stop being effective from a habitats perspective. While the management approach is not explicitly designed to manage fishing impacts on habitats, there is a functioning management framework (although not strictly speaking “regulatory”) that suggests UoAs in the area do not cause serious or irreversible harm to habitats. There are some efforts aimed at understanding how specific strategies might work in relation to the various habitats impacted by the community’s fishing. Despite the cultural context and relatively small scale of individual UoAs, the total approach does not add up to a “strategy” within a functioning regulatory framework that is directed specifically at management of habitat impacts of the UoA or other MSC UoAs.</p>
<p>Midwater trawl UoA on continental slope where some seamounts are encountered and rare bottom-contact is made – In acknowledgement that these features can be considered VMEs, some seamounts are afforded strict protection from any bottom-contacting gears, including midwater trawl gear, and there is a complete ban on the use of bottom/otter trawl gear on all seamounts. This gear restriction constitutes the key part of the UoA management strategy.</p>		✓	<p>The strategy is cohesive by virtue of permitting only midwater trawling on any seamount in the region. The functioning regulatory framework is explicit with the ban on bottom-contacting gear on all seamounts and as such represents a precautionary approach. Other MSC UoAs are also required to comply with these rules. Managers have implemented a mechanism to avoid contact with VMEs (seamounts) by mandating the use of only non-bottom contact gears. However, while the strategy is designed to avoid serious or irreversible harm to these VMEs, it can only be considered a partial strategy as it relies upon the generally accepted rarity of bottom contact by midwater trawls and other gears rather than an explicit means of understanding the effectiveness of the management approach in ensuring that serious and irreversible harm is not</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

				happening to seamounts or the mechanism that might need to be in place if it ceases to be effective.
Demersal trawl UoA in inshore and offshore areas – Overarching management framework takes an ecosystem-based fisheries management approach involving impact assessments for management plans (including impacts on habitats), spatial controls like closures to protect essential fish habitat, effort reduction rules, and buyout/lease-back arrangements incentivising the use of less bottom-contacting gear to catch fish quotas.			✓	Management is cohesive and strategically aimed at managing the impacts of the UoA, other MSC UoAs, and non-MSC fisheries on relevant habitats within a comprehensive ecosystem-based management plan. There are a suite of measures and tools available and evidence of their use. Ecological risk and impact assessments have been carried out and have determined that all fishing activity will not cause serious or irreversible harm to habitats, including VMEs. There is active management seeking to reduce the impact of the UoA on both essential fish habitat and other habitats that were rated higher risk from an ecosystem-management perspective, including VMEs. The management plan has clearly articulated objectives relating to the Habitats component and sets out how management will be modified if undesirable impacts are detected. Monitoring and evaluation are enshrined within the management plan and are directed at understanding fishing impacts on habitats, as well as the usual species-related monitoring and evaluation. Explicit strategies aim to manage the cumulative impacts of fishing, by the UoA, other MSC UoAs, and non-MSC fisheries, on “main” habitats so as to avoid serious or irreversible harm.
Multiple UoAs targeting mixed-species complexes using multiple gears (bottom- and non-bottom-contacting gears, including hand rakes, dredges, trawl gear, gillnets, and trap and line methods) in inshore and offshore environments ranging from cool temperate waters to warm tropical seas – A bioregional marine planning framework uses an ecosystem-based fisheries management approach involving ecological risk assessments and risk management planning for fish. Precautionary management approach to risks identified for			✓	Management is cohesive and strategic, aimed specifically at managing fishing impacts on species, habitats, and other ecosystem components within a comprehensive management plan. Several measures are in place, and research, monitoring, and evaluation are aimed at understanding the impacts of the UoA on habitats. Management strategies (e.g., plans) contain explicit mechanisms for modifying fishing practices based on unacceptable impacts coming to light through research, monitoring, or evaluation. There is evidence

Fisheries Certification Requirements

<p>habitats includes closed areas for a variety of gears (that may change from year to year) and a system of marine protected areas, offering more permanent protection from any bottom-contacting gears. Habitat mapping and strategic research planning and execution are progressively closing the information gaps on the impacts of fishing on habitats, as well as the relative health of relevant habitats. Results are routinely used to inform fishery management decisions.</p>				<p>these have been implemented to modify fishing impacts on relevant habitats. As this is one of the most comprehensive and cohesive management approaches, “main” habitats, including VMEs, and cumulative impacts are explicitly considered by managers in the risk assessment and management process, the research strategy, and the management decision-making processes.</p>
<p>Pelagic longline UoA targeting migratory pelagic species – There is little or no known bottom-contact by the gear, except perhaps in cases of gear loss. The species targeted cannot be caught using trawl or other bottom-contacting gear.</p>			✓	<p>The use of the gear, the understanding that comes from years of peer-reviewed research about its impacts, and the specific management strategy that mandates only its use could be construed as a cohesive and strategic arrangement. This is supported by demonstrable understanding about how the use of pelagic longlines work to avoid impacting benthic habitats specifically, and some understanding about the impacts of lost gear on habitat and the relative effects of such impacts are deemed to be low risk for overall habitat health. Periodic assessments (i.e., directed research and risk assessments) are undertaken to inform management decision makers about lost-gear impacts to ensure that management strategies are working and are demonstrably avoiding serious or irreversible harm to “main” habitats and to determine whether changes need to be made to mitigate unacceptable impacts.</p>

GSA3.14.3 ▲

If there is no impact on a VME (i.e., either by the UoA, another MSC UoA, or a non-MSC fishery, where relevant – see [SA3.14.3.2](#) and the [associated guidance](#)), scoring issue (d) is not scored.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

GSA3.14.3.2 ▲

An MSC UoA needs to have some way of assessing whether the actions of all MSC UoAs and other non-MSC fisheries, where relevant, are applicable to it avoiding impacts on VMEs. For instance, a “precautionary VME closure” might be declared by a trawl UoA on triggering a move-on rule, and MSC UoAs impacting in that closure area would be required to respect this closure under the requirements of the management PI 2.4.2. However, other measures, such as changing to a semi-pelagic gear, may not be relevant or appropriate for other MSC UoAs.

When an MSC UoA/non-MSC fishery closes an area for reasons other than VME conservation (e.g., for operational reasons to gain a market advantage), other MSC UoAs need not abide by such a closure.

GSA3.14.4 ▲

For scoring issue (d), the team should be able to demonstrate that, where appropriate, area protection is respected; that move-on rules are applied appropriately; and that information from all MSC UoAs and non-MSC fisheries, where this information is available and relevant, on likely areas of VMEs is being handled correctly by the UoA.

In addition to VMS and AIS, electronic monitoring might include data taken from chart plotters, mobile phone signal triangulation, on-deck CCTV, and net-mounted camera systems as long as these can be externally verified.

“Qualitative evidence” should include results from non-verified surveys and/or stakeholder interviews to confirm that management requirements (including move-on rules) are applied effectively. The expectation at the SG60 level is that the UoA avoids all areas closed by its management entity and those closed by the UoA’s own move-on rules.

“Some quantitative evidence” at the SG80 level should include verified electronic data or some other method of external verification (e.g., observer coverage, inspections) consistent with the scale and intensity of the UoA to confirm that management requirements are applied effectively.

“Clear quantitative evidence” at the SG100 level should include verified electronic data and some other method of external verification consistent with the scale and intensity of the UoA to confirm that management requirements are applied effectively. The expectation at the SG80 and SG100 levels is that the UoA additionally respects the areas closed by all MSC UoAs and non-MSC fisheries to ensure the cumulative protection of VMEs.

Observer programmes and inspection programmes may be used depending on the scale and intensity of the UoA. That is, for a small-scale developing-world UoA operating gear with a likely small impact on VMEs, it may be acceptable to use chart plot information supported by occasional inspections, whereas for a large-scale industrial UoA operating gear with a likely large impact on VMEs, it would normally be necessary at the SG80 level to operate VMS or AIS systems together with significant observer coverage.

GSA3.15 Habitats information PI (PI 2.4.3) ▲

Assessing informal approaches against PI 2.4.3

Teams should consider whether qualitative and/or quantitative information is available to understand the distribution of habitat and the impact of the UoA on habitat. The assessment

Fisheries Certification Requirements

should factor in the likelihood of changes within the UoA that could potentially lead to an increase in the risk of impact from fishing activity over time.

Teams should further consider whether information is collected to detect these changes to ensure that the UoA is moving in the desired direction or operating at a low-risk level.

Information may be from local knowledge or research from fishers or community members. It may be place-based (i.e., local to a particular geographical area) and may have social, economic, or ecological dimensions. It will reflect the knowledge and opinions about issues held by individuals and groups local to the UoA. Local knowledge can be valuable first-hand experience that might provide information on a wide range of topics, including habitat distribution and range, gear impacts on local habitats, gear and UoA spatial overlap with habitats, and scale and intensity of the UoA. Depending on the scale of the UoA, this information could be collected through informal stakeholder processes or a less subjective review process.

Guidance on scoring issue (c) – Monitoring ▲

When scoring issue (c) at the SG80 level, the team should consider all potential increases in risk, such as changes in the scoring of the outcome PI, in the operation of the UoA, or in the effectiveness of the measures.

GSA3.15.2 ▲

See guidance [GSA3.13.3.1](#) and [GSA3.13.3.2](#).

GSA3.15.3 ▲

If the CSA is used to score the outcome PI for any scoring element, the team is required to evaluate scoring issues (a) and (b) using the RBF alternative at the SG60 and SG80 levels for that scoring element.

GSA3.16 Ecosystem outcome PI (PI 2.5.1) ▲

Background

The Ecosystem component considers the broad ecological community and ecosystem in which the fishery operates. The Ecosystem component does not repeat the status assessment of the other components individually but rather considers the wider system structure and function – although if all these components scored highly it might be expected that the Ecosystem component would also score highly. The Ecosystem component addresses system-wide issues, primarily impacted indirectly by the fishery, including ecosystem structure, trophic relationships and biodiversity.

GSA3.16.2

PI 2.5.1 requires that “the fishery does not cause serious or irreversible harm to the key elements of ecosystem structure and function.” Please refer to [Table SA8](#) and [Table GSA2](#) for more details on such harm. Assessments of the risks of “serious or irreversible harm” to

Fisheries Certification Requirements

the ecosystem in PI 2.5.1 may be made in reference to the maximum levels of impacts allowed under [SA2.2.13.b](#). While P1 scores the setting of TRPs and the theoretical evidence that they will achieve the allowed impact levels, PI 2.5.1 scores the evidence that such levels are being achieved in practice.

Serious or irreversible harm in relation to the capacity of the ecosystem to deliver ecosystem services could include:

- Trophic cascade (i.e., significantly increased abundance, and especially decreased diversity, of species low in the food web) caused by depletion of predators and especially 'keystone' predators;
- Depletion of top predators and trophic cascade through lower trophic levels caused by depletion of key prey species in 'wasp-waist' food webs;
- Severely truncated size composition of the ecological community (e.g. greatly elevated intercept and steepened gradient in the community size spectrum) to the extent that recovery would be very slow due to the increased predation of intermediate-sized predators;
- Gross changes in the species diversity of the ecological community (e.g. loss of species, major changes in species evenness and dominance) caused by direct or indirect effects of fishing (e.g., discarding which provides food for scavenging species);
- Change in genetic diversity of species caused by selective fishing and resulting in genetically determined change in demographic parameters (e.g. growth, reproductive output).

Relatively few fisheries would have the information needed to address ecosystem issues quantitatively, and usually they will be assessed using surrogates, analogy, general observations, qualitative assessment and expert judgement. Harm to ecosystem structure is normally inferred from impacts on populations, species and functional groups, which can often be measured directly. Harm to ecosystem functions is normally inferred from impacts on ecosystem processes and properties such as trophic relationships, community resilience etc. and often have to be inferred from conceptual or analytical models or analyses.

GSA3.17 Ecosystem management strategy PI (PI 2.5.2) ▲

Refer to [Table SA7](#) and [Table GSA2](#) for more details on 'measures'

GSA3.18 Ecosystem information / monitoring PI (PI 2.5.3)

GSA3.18.1 ▲

Key ecosystem elements may include trophic structure and function (in particular key prey, predators, and competitors), community composition, productivity pattern (e.g. upwelling or spring bloom, abyssal, etc.), and characteristics of biodiversity.

GSA3.19 References

Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels (ACAP).2013. Report of the Fifth Meeting of the Seabird Bycatch Working Group, La Rochelle, France, 1-3 May 2013. ACAP AC7 Doc 14 Rev 1. Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels

Fisheries Certification Requirements

(ACAP).2013. *Report of the Fifth Meeting of the Seabird Bycatch Working Group, La Rochelle, France, 1-3 May 2013*. ACAP AC7 Doc 14 Rev 1.

Beamish, F.W.H. 1966. *Muscular fatigue and mortality in haddock *Melanogrammus aeglefinus*, caught by otter trawl*. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 23(10): 1507-1521.

Bravington, M., Burridge, C, and Toscas, P. 2003. *Design of observer programme to monitor bycatch species in eastern tuna and billfish fishery*. 16th Meeting of the Standing Committee on Tuna and Billfish, 9-16 July 2003. SCTB15 Working Paper SWG-7.

Benoit, H.P., Plante, S., Kroiz, M. and Hurlbut, T. 2013. *A comparative analysis of marine fish species susceptibilities to discard mortality: effects of environmental factors, individual traits and phylogeny*. ICES J of Marine Sci 70(1): 99-113

FAO.1995. *Code of Conduct for Responsible Fisheries*. Rome: FAO.

FAO.2011. *International Guidelines on bycatch management and reduction of discards*. Rome: FAO.

Fisheries and Oceans Canada (DFO). 2012. *Guidance related to bycatch and discards in Canadian commercial fisheries*. DFO Can. Sci. Advis. Sec. Sci. Advis. Rep. 2012/022.

Guion, L.A., Diehl, D.C, and McDonald, D. 2011. *Triangulation: establishing validity of qualitative studies*. University of Florida IFAS Extension, Document FS6014.

IUCN 2013. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. Version 2013.1. <<http://www.iucnredlist.org>>.

Lawson, T. 2006. *Scientific aspects of observer programmes for tuna fisheries in the Western and Central Pacific Ocean*. WCPFC Scientific Committee Second Regular Session, 7-18 August 2006, Manila, Philippines. WCPFC-SC2-2006/ST WP-1.

Neilson, J. D., Busawon, D. S., Andrushchenko, I. V., Campana, S. E., Carruthers, E. H., Harris, L. E., and Stokesbury, M. 2011. *A review of approaches to assess survival of released catch from Canadian large pelagic longline fisheries*. DFO. Can.Sci.Advis.Sec.Res. Doc.2011/091.

Richards, L.J., Fargo, J., and Schnute, J.T. 2011. *Factors influencing bycatch mortality of trawl-caught Pacific halibut*. NA Journ of Fisheries Mgt 15(2): 266-276

Sant, G., Goodman, G., Crook, V., Lack, M., and Oldfield, T.E.E. 2012. *Fish and Multilateral Environmental Agreements (MEAs): developing a method to identify high risk commercially exploited aquatic organisms in trade and an analysis of the potential application of MEAs*. JNCC Report No. 453. Peterborough: JNCC.

Suuronen, P. 2005. *Mortality of fish escaping trawl gears*. FAO Fisheries Technical Paper 478. Rome, FAO.

Wolfaardt, A. 2011. *Data collection requirements for RFMOs to improve knowledge of fishery impacts on ACAP-listed species*. Fourth meeting of ACAP's Seabird Bycatch Working Group. Doc 26. Guayaquil, Ecuador, 22-24 August, 2011.

GSA4 Principle 3

GSA4.1 General requirements for Principle 3 ▲

Background

The intent of Principle 3 (P3) is to ensure that there is an institutional and operational framework appropriate to the size and scale of the UoA for implementing Principles 1 and 2, and that this framework is capable of delivering sustainable fisheries in accordance with the outcomes articulated in these Principles. The P3 default tree structure divides the PIs into two components as shown in [Figure SA3](#) in Annex SA of the CR and summarised below.

Table GSA9: P3 PI component descriptions

Component	PIs	Focus	Description
'Governance and Policy'	3.1.1 3.1.2 3.1.3	Captures the broad, high-level context of the fishery management system within which the UoA is found.	Performance elements within this component include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The overarching legal and/or customary framework for the UoA, which may include fisheries that are subject to international cooperation for management of the stock, or other fisheries under the same management framework. • the consultation processes and policies; • the articulation of the roles and responsibilities of people and organisations within the overarching management system; • other overarching policies supporting fisheries management.
'Fishery Specific Management System'	3.2.1 3.2.2 3.2.3 3.2.4	Focuses the team on the management system directly applied to the fishery. The focus should be on the management system of the fishery, which for some fisheries will include both national and international components.	PIs under this component consider: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the fishery-specific management objectives (i.e., fishery management objectives for the fishery, specifically); • the decision-making processes in the relevant fishery; • the fishery's compliance and enforcement system and implementation; • evaluation of the performance of the fishery's management system.

A MSC UoA might include only a sub-set of fishers (vessels, fleet operators, and individual fishermen) within a wider fleet of fishers fishing for the same biologically distinct stock, using the same method, under the same or similar management system or arrangements. However, teams should note that it is the management of the wider fleet which denotes the specific "fishery" that is the subject of assessment under the fishery-specific management system PIs. Special or additional management arrangements or features unique to the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

vessels in the UoA may be considered and reflected in the scores under the fishery-specific management system PIs.

Example:

In some Regional Fisheries Management Organisations (RFMOs), compliance can be the responsibility of a Compliance Committee, and sanctions can be brought by the RFMO itself (e.g. through loss of access to resources, such as when a Member's vessel is identified as IUU, or loss of access by a Member itself) through its negotiation process, or by the Flag State of the vessel having the violation. If a violation is not in any way under the control of the national management authority of the fishery (e.g. if the fishery consists of vessels registered with flag state X, and the non-compliance is by vessels registered with flag state Y), its internal compliance should not be part of the assessment (i.e., in the previous example the fishery consisting of vessels from flag state X should not be held responsible for the non-compliance of flag state Y vessels). However, the effectiveness of actions at the national level (i.e., the compliance of flag state X vessels) and the RFMO level (the overall effectiveness of compliance to deliver sustainable outcomes) should be considered.

GSA4.1.1 Assessment of multi-level management systems ▲

In order to effectively assess multi-level the management systems against Principle 3, the assessment team should determine which biological and/or jurisdictional levels apply to the management system of this UoA. These levels of management should then be considered for all PIs within the relevant P3 component.

Table GSA10: Examples of types of jurisdiction for different management systems

Type of Jurisdiction	Management system
Purely domestic fishery	The fishery management framework may exist at a local, regional or national scale within the jurisdiction of a single State. Additionally, a purely domestic UoA may exist in multiple jurisdictions within a State, for example under a Federal system of government
Trans-boundary fish stocks, straddling fish stocks, stocks of highly migratory fish species and discrete high seas fish stocks	Are exploited by two or more States, international law becomes relevant. These multi-level management systems may have a variety of jurisdictional arrangements that might apply to that UoA and are therefore required to be considered by the assessment team.

GSA4.1.3 ▲

Under international law, as set out in the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS) and related instruments, the States concerned, including the relevant coastal States in the case of shared stocks, straddling stocks, and highly migratory species, are required to cooperate to ensure effective conservation and management of the resources.

The relevant instruments that set out these requirements are:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea (UNCLOS), 1982;
- United Nations Agreement for the Conservation and Management of Straddling Fish Stocks and Highly Migratory Fish Stocks, 1995 (UNFSA);
- FAO Code of Conduct for Responsible Fisheries, 1995 (including the FAO Compliance Agreement of 1993).

The MSC considers UNFSA Article 10 and the UNCLOS requirements as a basis for MSC requirements relating to cooperation for UoAs that are subject to international cooperation for management of the stock. These requirements to cooperate should apply to UoA participants even if cooperation is not formally required by the relevant RFMO/RFMA or if an RFMO/RFMA does not exist. These requirements should also apply to UoAs in the high seas even if the target species are not HMS or shared or straddling stocks and are not formally covered by the UNFSA requirements. The requirement is further elaborated in [SA4.3.1–SA4.3.4](#).

The intent is to limit the extent of responsibility of the UoA for the actions of non-UoA management bodies, unless they impact directly on the delivery of P1 and P2 outcomes.

GSA4.1.4 Traditionally managed ▲

A key characteristic of management mechanisms and measures in traditionally managed or self-governing UoAs is that they may be undocumented or may not be formally ratified.

The CAB could use semi-structured interviews with a range of stakeholders or other participatory tools to collect information. The information in the sample should be representative of the reality of the UoA.

Multiple stakeholder participatory approaches can be used to cross check opinions and views from different segments of the stakeholder community.

Both of the above could be used by the CAB to support the rationale and validate the conclusions provided for the scores as required in clauses under SA4.3.

GSA4.3 Legal and/or Customary Framework PI (PI 3.1.1) ▲

Background

Understanding what is meant by the legal and/or customary framework is key to determining if fisheries management occurs within a framework that both respects relevant laws and is compatible with relevant instruments of international law capable of delivering sustainable fisheries in accordance with P1 and P2.

A fishery management system's local, regional, national or international legal and/or customary framework is:

- The underlying formal or informal supporting structure that incorporates all the formal and informal practices;
- Procedures and instruments that control or have an impact on a UoA. This includes policies and practices of both government and private sectors, including (but not limited to):
 - Implementing agencies (e.g. fisheries agencies, conservation agencies);

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- Fishery business groups (e.g. catch sector cooperatives, industry associations);
 - Fishing vessel owners;
 - Indigenous groups;
 - Local civil society or community groups.
- The government sector, including all applicable government systems, the courts and the relevant parliamentary and regulatory bodies. The management system is the complex interaction of government legislation, or industry or customary practice, but is not limited to all such elements, controls and practices that are used in a UoA and result in “hard” (law) or “soft” (accepted practice) controls over actual on-water catching practices.

Assessing informal and traditional approaches

In all scoring issues in this PI, for management systems which are less clearly articulated, such as informal and traditional management systems, evidence of the extent to which this scoring issue is met could be through:

- Accepted norms;
- Commonly held values;
- Beliefs and/or
- Agreed rules across the fishing communities of which the UoA is part.

Scoring issue (a) – Compatibility of laws or standards with effective management ▲

The first scoring issue for this PI relates to the presence or absence of an appropriate and effective legal system, including at the international level a legal and/or customary framework that is capable of delivering sustainable fisheries in accordance with P1 and P2. To score this part of the PI, assessment teams should focus on the existence of a national and/or international framework itself and if it is capable of delivering sustainable fisheries, including through management cooperation where required.

This may be determined by examining:

- The presence or absence of the essential features of an appropriate and effective structure within which management takes place;
- If those features are hard or soft;
- If the framework has a focus on long term management rather the short term;
- How it manages risk and uncertainty;
- If the framework is transparent and open to scrutiny, review and adaptation as new information becomes available.

The essential features needed to deliver sustainable fisheries are defined by their relevance to achieving sustainable fisheries in accordance with P1 and P2 appropriate to the size and scale of the UoA, and may include:

- Establishing when and where people can fish;
- Who can fish;
- How they may fish;
- How much they can catch;

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- What they can catch;
- Who they talk to about the “rules” for fishing;
- How they might gather relevant information and decide what to do with it;
- How they know that people are abiding by whatever rules are made and
- How they catch, sanction or penalise wrongdoers.

With these features, the operational framework could be said to be compatible with local, national or international laws or standards.

Scoring issue (b) – Resolution of disputes ▲

Issues and disputes involving allocation of quota and access to marine resources are outside the scope of an assessment against the MSC fisheries standard.

When there are no immediately obvious structures for dispute resolution, participatory techniques could be used to:

- Identify and evaluate the presence of dispute resolution mechanisms used in the UoA;
- Obtain information on these dispute mechanisms;
- Assess the effectiveness of such mechanisms.

To minimise the likelihood of subjectivity, assessment teams should include participants and/or interviewees from a wide variety of stakeholder types and from stakeholders operating outside the UoA. Fishers may be able to draw up charts or use other visual or non-textual means to help explain or demonstrate the process for resolving conflicts in the UoA.

The level of transparency and effectiveness of the systems can be determined by:

- Information on the proportion of stakeholders that are aware of the existence of any dispute resolution arrangements;
- The history and stories of how disputes have been dealt with in the past;
- Ascertaining whether the presence or absence of unresolved disputes can be considered significant indicators of the existence and/or effectiveness of dispute resolution mechanisms.

Evidence of consistency with this requirement can be determined by using field observations and structured interviews with fishers and fishing community leaders to ascertain the following:

- The extent to which fishery participants are aware of established rights;
- Responses in the past within the UoA to disputes over established rights;
- Accepted norms and practice across the UoA that is supportive of such established rights.

GSA4.3.2.3 Cooperation ▲

With respect to UNFSA Article 10, the requirement under SG60 (SA4.3.2) extends to the generation of scientific advice, not its implementation (Article 10 paragraphs d, e, f, g). A framework for cooperation with other parties could include for example the ability for parties to coordinate scientific advice to respective management agencies. At SG60 it is expected that the flag state(s) of vessels from the UoA will be participating with a relevant RFMO at least as a cooperating non-contracting party or cooperating non-Member.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

GSA4.3.3.2 ▲

At SG80, organized and effective cooperation with other parties extends to UNFSA Article 10 paragraphs a, h and j, and could include for example the establishment of appropriate cooperative mechanisms for effective monitoring, control, surveillance and enforcement. Also at SG80 and SG100 the flag state(s) of vessels from the UoA should be participating with a relevant RFMO or other arrangement as Members or, if Membership is prohibited for political reasons, as cooperating non-contracting party or cooperating non-Member.

GSA4.3.4 ▲

At SG100, binding procedures governing cooperation with other parties could include for example the agreement and compliance with conservation and management measures, to ensure the long-term sustainability of straddling fish stocks and highly migratory fish stocks.

GSA4.3.5.1 ▲

These practices or procedures could be formalised under rule of law, or be informal but known through traditional or customary means.

GSA4.3.6 ▲

Decisions of legislatures (through statutes or national treaties relating to aboriginal or indigenous people), or courts will establish if rights have been conferred upon any particular group or individual. The main consideration in relation to performance against scoring issue (c) is whether a suitable framework exists or does not exist to address the legal rights created explicitly or established by custom of people dependent on fishing for food or livelihood, not on the effectiveness or results (e.g. allocation of access) of such a framework.

GSA4.4 Consultation, roles and responsibilities PI (PI 3.1.2) ▲

Background

Assessment teams may include consideration of the roles and responsibilities of the fishers in relation to their cooperation with the collection of relevant information and data (e.g. catch, discard, and other information of importance to the effective management of the resources and the UoA), where relevant and/or necessary, in scoring this PI.

Scoring Issue (a) – Roles and responsibilities: Assessing informal and traditional approaches ▲

In some traditionally managed UoAs or UoAs under self-governance, specific roles and responsibilities may not always be clearly articulated or immediately apparent. This does not mean that different institutions or organisations do not undertake specific and agreed roles. A range of entities, ad-hoc committees and other groups with a variety of labels including NGOs may have responsibility for different fishery management roles. The arrangements may not be formally codified but may be widely understood across the UoA.

To verify the extent to which roles and responsibilities are defined across the management system, CABs may need to work with stakeholders to prepare simple governance, institutional or system maps.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The maps can provide a visual representation of the different groups and organisations involved in the UoA, how they function, which aspects of the management process they are responsible for, and how they relate to one another.

Scoring issue (b) – Consultation processes ▲

The main point of scoring issue (b) is that the management system is open to stakeholders and that any information that is viewed as important by those parties can be fed into and be considered by the process in a way that is transparent to the interested stakeholders.

GSA4.4.1 Transparency ▲

SG80 and SG100 under scoring issue (b) introduce the added elements of demonstrating that whatever information is gathered, it is considered and that there is transparency about its use or lack of use.

SG100's demonstration may not necessarily be additional reporting beyond what may already occur in a fishery management system. Examples include:

- Regular newsletters, broadcasts or reports that go out to stakeholders;
- Information pages published and distributed;
- A public record of the minutes of meetings (including use of email or other e-technologies);
- If dealing with stakeholders who don't have access or ability to read reports, watch broadcasts or use computers there may be report back meetings or other such means to report what happened.

Teams will need to be satisfied that what evidence is offered does meet the standard of demonstrating consideration of the information (i.e., being transparent) and also explains how the information was or was not used. A UoA cannot score 100 without being transparent on how information provided is or is not used.

GSA4.4.3 – GSA4.4.4 Effectiveness ▲

Evaluation of effectiveness of consultation processes might consider the general absence of discrimination against any individuals and/or organisations from any known consultations as part of the measure of performance against this scoring issue. However, any such conclusions need to be supported by valid information collected by rigorous and robust means.

Effective consultation processes within the management system must be appropriate to the scale, intensity and cultural context of the UoA. For example, but importantly not confined to, consultation at the level of broad policy development and at the level of research planning.

Affected parties, depending on the context, may include but are not limited to individuals, mandated representatives, and/or participants in the UoA.

In multinational arrangements there should be adequate consultation at the UoAs' national and international level. Thus the management authority dealing with the UoA directly (e.g. the coastal State or the Flag State) and the international organisation, where such exists, should be assessed for consultation requirements. It is not a requirement that elements are scored against this PI for other non-UoA States which are members of the international organisation, or members of a bilateral/multilateral arrangement.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Assessing informal and traditional approaches

In the absence of a documented consultation procedure, evidence to verify the extent and transparency of consultation processes can be demonstrated by alternative means.

This can include identifying the existence, content and relative frequency of invitation letters to meetings. It can also include a consideration of activities of UoAs' extension officers, how well local announcements are used, the use of posters, and the extent of awareness of fishers about meeting agendas, meeting content and outcomes.

CABs may need to interview fishers about selected case studies to determine how information collected from stakeholders has been used in the past.

Information from such interviews may be considered representative of how the information collected from stakeholders is generally used, providing the CABs demonstrate that valid and rigorous methods were used. Conducting interviews with different stakeholder and cross checking the information is one way of validating the results.

GSA4.4.5 Local knowledge ▲

Local knowledge may be long-term knowledge held by many fishers or the community. It might be location-based (i.e., local to a particular geographical area), and may have social, economic or ecological dimensions. It will reflect the knowledge and opinions about issues held by individuals and groups local to relevant UoAs. Local knowledge can be valuable first-hand experience that might inform any fisheries management process, including fisheries research, data collection and resource assessment, monitoring, control and surveillance operations, policies and processes, and fisheries management policies, practices and/or decisions.

Evaluation of the relative value and robustness of local knowledge in the management process may form part of the process of being transparent about how information is considered and used or not used under SG80 and SG100.

Individuals or groups as referred to in SA4.4.5 could include, but not be limited to, fishers, indigenous people, local community representatives or groups, local civil society groups like local NGOs, local fishing businesses and/or their representatives, local government representatives or politicians.

GSA4.5 Long term objectives PI (PI 3.1.3) ▲

Background

The emphasis of this PI is on the presence or absence of long term objectives at the broader management level, i.e., the objectives of the management agency for all UoAs under its control. Where UoAs fall under dual control (e.g. internationally managed UoAs where management falls to both a national agency and a bilateral/multilateral agreement or organisation, or federally managed UoAs which have some provincial or state management component), the subject of PI 3.1.3 should be the wider organisation.

This PI deals only with the broader management policy context – perhaps within overarching legislation, or perhaps policy or custom that applies to many or all UoAs within a broader management system. Consideration should focus on whether laws, policies, practices or customs at that higher level imply and/or require long term objectives that are consistent with the precautionary approach.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Scoring issue (a) – Objectives assessing informal approaches in PI 3.1.3 ▲

Within the scoring issue in this PI, the CAB could infer consistency with requirements in scoring issue (a) by the practices operating within the UoAs covered by the management system.

The CAB could use the following to evaluate how the UoA is considered to perform against this scoring issue:

- A review of the factors that have influenced recent decisions in the UoA;
- Knowledge of the extent to which such factors are consistent with achieving sustainability and
- The application of the precautionary approach.

The CAB should consider if decisions have been taken on the basis of the ecological health of the UoA and associated ecosystems, or for other reasons that are not compatible with achieving sustainability over the long term.

Scoring should focus on the consistency of any long-term objectives within overarching management policy with the notions of being cautious when information is uncertain, and taking action even when information is inadequate.

The definition of the precautionary approach given in the MSC-MSCI vocabulary was derived from Article 6, UN Agreement for the implementation of the provisions of UNCLOS of 10 December 1982 relating to the conservation and management of straddling fish stocks and highly migratory fish stocks; also known as the “Fish Stocks Agreement”.

This PI forms an important part of the overall understanding of the use or otherwise of a precautionary approach in the UoA but is not concerned with the operational implementation of the precautionary approach within the ‘day-to-day’ management of the UoA itself. This PI is not a second opportunity to score UoAs on the use or otherwise of target and limit reference points which are scored under P1 of the default tree, nor to point teams towards Article 6, Annex II of the Fish Stocks Agreement for a prescriptive list of what must appear in management policy in relation to the precautionary approach. It is also not a direction to re-score management strategies or outcomes covered both in P1 and P2, or decision-making processes covered in a separate PI under P3 where precaution and the precautionary approach are also mentioned.

GSA4.7 Fishery-specific objectives PI (PI 3.2.1) ▲

Background

This PI deals **only** with the fishery-specific policy context, such as within national or provincial/state or joint authority policy or custom, specifically applied to the fishery as set out in [GSA 4.1](#).

Scoring issue (a) – Objectives Assessing informal and traditional approaches ▲

In some traditionally managed fisheries, or fisheries under self-governance, objectives may not always be stated quantitatively or be expressed specific to the particular species or fishery. Objectives may specify social and/or economic objectives. In some fisheries, objectives may be defined in terms of addressing further declines, rather than specifically maintaining optimum yields or biomass levels.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Compliance of the fishery with MSC requirements can be determined by how well these variously formulated objectives align with achieving sustainability as expressed by MSC Principles 1 and 2. Objectives that are defined to meet social needs may in some cases be consistent with achieving sustainability as articulated in Principles 1 and 2. However, to be considered as consistent with achieving sustainability, such objectives should not be designed to meet social needs at the expense of ecological considerations.

In evaluating such objectives for consistency with achieving outcomes in Principles 1 and 2, the CAB needs to determine if the fishery is subject to considerations which may lead the emphasis on social or economic objectives to pose potential risks to achieving the outcomes required by Principles 1 and 2.

GSA4.7.2 ▲

Example:

An example of an explicit measurable objective is “the impact on dependent predators will be reduced by x% over y years”.

GSA4.8 Decision-Making Processes PI (PI 3.2.2) ▲

Background

The focus for this PI is on the decision-making processes themselves, and if they actually produce measures and strategies **within the fishery-specific management system**. It is not an evaluation of the quality of those measures and strategies as this is covered elsewhere in the tree structure under P1 and P2. SG60, SG80 and SG100 refer to decision-making processes taking account of the wider implications of decisions. This means the processes take account of, for example, the consequences of decisions on management objectives for target species on the ecosystem, and of the impacts on those who depend on the fishery for their livelihoods.

Scoring issue (a) –Objectives Assessing informal and traditional approaches ▲

“Established” decision-making processes should be understood to mean that there is a process that can be immediately triggered for fisheries-related issues, the process has been triggered in the past and has led to decisions about sustainability in the fishery. These processes may or may not be formally documented or codified under an official statute.

Key considerations for assessing whether the system is well-established or not include the extent to which the system is recognised by stakeholders in the fishery and the durability or permanency of the decision-making process.

CABs may need to use semi-structured interviews with a range of stakeholders to obtain information about how any decision-making process works. This may involve selecting a case study event (e.g. stock decline in the past, a specific observation across the fishery or other ecological change) and determining from interviews if, and how decisions were made in response to the event. As with general requirements relating to the use of semi-structured interviews, a means of cross checking views and validating CAB conclusions and scores should be evidenced.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Scoring issue (d) – Decision making process ▲

Scoring issue (d) considers the importance of stakeholder access to fishery information and data, and access to information on actions taken by management to ensure stakeholders are able to provide quality input into the decision-making processes.

Accountability should be understood in the general sense of the word, essentially that management is answerable to stakeholders on management of the fisheries, and that this is demonstrated by the provision of information on the fishery to stakeholders.

The team could assess the extent to which transparency and accountability is embedded within the management system by considering the extent and means by which management provides account of, and information on, the fishery to stakeholders.

The data that are required to be available to stakeholders excludes data or information that is subject to national privacy and data protection regulation and laws associated with the fishery.

When considering the public access to information on the fisheries' performance and data, the team could include consideration of:

- The extent to which accurate and up to date data available to management is reported to the public or at least accessible on request to stakeholders.
- The resolution at which data are available and ensuring that it is appropriate to the nature and type of the fishery and of sufficient clarity to ensure meaningful engagement of stakeholders in the decision making process.

The availability of information to stakeholders on actions taken by management that have implications for sustainable use of fisheries resource could include:

- Availability of information, or at least non-confidentiality of information, on subsidies that may be considered to have implications for sustainability.
- Availability of information, or at least non-confidentiality of information, on who has access (license holders) to the resource.
- Availability of information on infractions against fishery regulation and consequent penalties and/or fines.
- Availability of information on outcomes and impact of management decision where such information is available.

At the **SG60** level, it should be expected that at least a general summary of information listed on [SA4.8.5](#) on, subsidies, allocation, compliance and fisheries management decisions) is available to (fishery, government and non-government) stakeholders on request.

At the **SG80** level, it should be expected that in addition to the information provided at the SG60 level, information listed in [SA4.8.6](#) decisions, data supporting decisions, and the reasons for decisions, are made available to all stakeholders on request.

At the **SG100** level, it should be expected that the information listed in the SG60 and SG80 levels are available openly, publicly and regularly to all stakeholders.

Scoring Issue (e) Approach to disputes ▲

Scoring issue (e) relates to the issue of approach to disputes through the presence or absence of actual legal disputes.

If a fisheries management agency is subject to court challenges, it is the record of repeated violation of the same law or regulation, the timely attempts to comply with binding judicial

Fisheries Certification Requirements

decisions, or acting proactively to avoid legal disputes that are important in determining the level of performance against this part of the PI.

When assessing the importance of any evidence relating to this issue, the team should consider if any violations of the same law or regulations compromise the ability of the management system to deliver sustainable fisheries in accordance with the outcomes intended by P1 and P2.

Assessment of fisheries against this issue may consider the extent to which there may be other or higher authorities to whom fishers or other stakeholders may appeal if they are dissatisfied with fishery rules or their implementation in the fishery by local managers.

If any such appeals have been made, the responsiveness or otherwise of local managers or leaders should be considered and scored.

Semi-structured interviews may be used by CABs to determine the extent to which stakeholders believe that local 'managers'/leaders respect or otherwise, any judgements or decisions made by any higher or other authority.

The interviews can also be used to determine the extent to which:

- Managers implement their own rules.
- Stakeholders believe the management system is sufficiently proactive to avoid disputes.

CABs may consider collective, participative and publically accountable involvement in management of the fishery by a broad spectrum of local stakeholders of the fishery as potential evidence of the presence of proactive avoidance of legal disputes. Supporting evidence may come from multiple and cross-checked, semi-structured interviews from a range of stakeholders representing different interests within the community.

GSA4.9 Compliance and Enforcement PI (PI 3.2.3) ▲

Background

The MSC fisheries standard recognises, but does not require, continued improvement in fisheries management beyond the MSC defined "best practice" standard. To meet the MSC fisheries standard, there must be a monitoring control and surveillance (MCS) system in place as evidence that fishers comply with the requirements of the management system and there is no evidence of systematic non-compliance (PI 3.2.3).

This requirement extends to compliance with management measures associated with MPAs and other spatial management approaches. Compliance is judged with respect to the formal requirements of an MPA's management system relating to fishing activity, including any requirements for research and impact assessment, rather than with respect to an MPA's objectives, which are unsupported by specific PIs (see [GSA3.14](#) for discussion of habitat management strategies).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Box GSA9: Marine protected areas and other spatial management approaches

Considering marine protected areas and other spatial management approaches

Marine protected areas (MPAs) and other spatial management approaches are potentially valuable management tools. In this context, the term “MPAs” refers to the full range of MPA categories defined by the IUCN³⁴, from strict nature reserves to protected areas with sustainable use of natural resources, and “other spatial management” including requirements that are part of fishery management arrangements or plans. While there is not an explicit requirement to have MPAs or other spatial management approaches in place for fisheries to meet the MSC standard, MSC does require that the effectiveness of the management system—to which an MPA or other approach may contribute—is sufficient to achieve the sustainability of fish and other species and ecosystem impacts. It should be noted that an MPA may or may not contribute to the delivery of a sustainable fishery. (See GSA4.9 for discussion on MPAs and compliance.)

Assessing informal and traditional approaches

In all scoring issues in this PI, assessments may consider the likelihood of infractions in a particular fishery as the basis for determining the suitability of the MCS system for the fishery.

Evaluation of effectiveness of MCS in fisheries where a less formalised MCS system exists may consider the role and effectiveness of a range of factors in deterring illegal activity. These factors may include the following:

- Social disapproval;
- Prevailing norms;
- Self-monitoring;
- Presence of community fish watchers or wardens;
- Accessibility to the resource;
- Ability to smuggle catches onshore without detection;
- Mobility and homogeneity of the members of the fishery;
- Exclusivity of access and market-related factors such as value, demand or preferences (e.g. preferences regarding size).

The extent to which fishery participants are subject to fines, penalties or other repercussions, or disincentives such as public “naming and shaming”, for violating fishery customs, rules or regulations important for sustainability may also be considered. These may include fines and penalties imposed by community institutions or other local bodies.

Scoring issue (b) Sanctions ▲

At SG80 and SG100 for scoring issue (b), in some fisheries management systems, or for particular types of fisheries, it may be difficult to demonstrate an ability to enforce relevant management measures, strategies and/or rules if violations are rare. However, an absence of violations (or absence of a record of sanctions and penalties for violations) does not

³⁴ Dudley, N. (editor), 2008. *Guidelines for applying protected area management categories*. Gland, Switzerland, IUCN.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

necessarily indicate that compliance and enforcement are effective; it could mean that MCS is in fact ineffective and what is happening is an absence of detection.

Scoring issue (c) Compliance ▲

In scoring issue (c), at SG60, SG80 and SG100, while assessing the existence and implementation of MCS surveillance systems, efforts to inform fishers about their obligations under the fishery-specific management system may be considered, but the assessment should not be limited to this.

GSA4.10 Monitoring and Management Performance Evaluation PI (PI 3.2.4) ▲

Background

This PI focuses on whether the management system has a process of monitoring and evaluating management performance, appropriate to the cultural context, scale and intensity of the fishery, and relevant to fishery-specific management and supporting structures that are able to effect change. This PI intends to evaluate if the management system itself is reviewed, not to re-assess the efficacy of the previous PIs.

Fishery-specific management system

In both scoring issues and in each SG under this PI, relevant parts of the fishery-specific management system may include:

- A decision-making process that responds to both wider management issues of stock wide, and/or specific local stakeholder concerns;
- Data collection;
- Scientific research;
- MCS (i.e., Compliance and Enforcement PI 3.2.3);
- Collaborating in and initiating a fishery-specific or national research plan;
- Responding to feedback and response, and
- Monitoring systems as required by the Management Strategy and Information PIs in P1 and P2.

Assessing informal and traditional approaches

Assessments against this PI may consider whether there are opportunities and/or forums for decision-makers to receive feedback on the management system. It should also consider other practices such as exchange of information between the community and the management institution. The regularity of such opportunities should be considered in scoring fisheries against both scoring issues in this PI.

Where community organisations are operational, these monitoring systems can be self-determined, but do require the support of an external evaluation from a higher authority, and evidence that specific checks may be made. The external authority might include provincial or national government agency, university, NGO or donor. Activities that should be verified should ensure compliance with the following indicators: an effective organisational structure to implement decisions and corrective actions; evidence that policies are formulated, initiated and monitored, and where relevant take account of community and scientific advice, which

Fisheries Certification Requirements

may include consideration of supporting risk assessments undertaken by a scientific organisation or University; evidence of an effective system of custodial management and self-determined fisheries control systems.

The process of review, should however, not be explicit to a sub-management or community organisation. In the event that national or provincial government departments delegate specific duties to sub management organisations, where key parts of the management system require stock wide management, beyond community level, a review should also include the higher authorities and their performance in ensuring management against national and international measures, and that the correct tools are in place to ensure that appropriate decisions at national level and passed down to the sub management and community organisations.

GSA4.10.1 External review ▲

At SG80 and 100, “external review” means external to the fisheries management system, but not necessarily international. Depending on the scale and intensity of the fishery, it could be by:

- Another department within an agency;
- Another agency or organisation within the country;
- A government audit that is external to the fisheries management agency;
- A peer organisation nationally or internationally, and
- External expert reviewers.

End of Annex GSA Guidance

Annex GSB Modifications to the Default Tree for Enhanced Bivalve Fisheries – Guidance ▲

Foreword to Annex GSB

Annex GSB is intended to provide supplemental guidance and interpretation when applying the default assessment tree (Annexes SA, GSA) and the modifications to it (Annex SB) for assessing enhanced bivalve fisheries. The numbering of sections in this Annex corresponds to the equivalent sections in the CR.

This Annex contains guidance on the following:

GSB2 Principle 1	468
GSA2.1 General requirements for Principle 1	468
GSB3 Principle 2	470
GSB3.1 General requirements for Principle 2	470
GSB4 Principle 3	472
GSB4.1 General requirements for Principle 3	472

GSB2 Principle 1

GSB2.1 General requirements for Principle 1 ▲

With enhanced catch-and-grow (CAG) bivalve fisheries, management is not based on reference points or the concept of managing stock size. Shellfish are either captured as larvae on ropes or caught as seed and moved to favourable areas for grow out. Instead of removing animals from the system, survivorship is improved through the provision of substrate and better growing conditions. In the end, this process may actually contribute to increasing stock size and biomass instead of reducing it. Since bivalve culture cannot lead to exploitation rates that approach limit reference points, it is not managed as such. Scoring enhanced CAG bivalve fisheries for P1 stock status is therefore not usually appropriate. However, teams still need to determine that there is no threat to the target species, and if so confirmed there is no need to score P1 nor to have a P1 expert on the team.

Management strategies for bivalve culture are based on limiting the impact of the farming activity on the environment, with a particular focus on carrying capacity and benthic habitats. The strategies usually contain a number of elements such as number of farms per site, number of lines per farm, and locations where farming can and cannot occur (to protect certain habitat types). Information on biomass produced is gathered but not for the purpose of assessing stock status. Production surveys can provide management with useful information when used in combination with other environmental indices to give a good picture of the risk posed by the farming activity to the environment. However, they are not measures designed to maintain the wild population at high productivity levels or B_{MSY} . Therefore, scoring the harvest strategy and harvest control rules and tools PIs for shellfish farming is not appropriate.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

GSB2.1.2 ▲

Enhanced CAG bivalve fisheries involving translocations that remove seed stock from source locations should be scored against the stock status, harvest strategy/control rules and tools PIs to ensure that the exploitation of the source seed resource is properly managed. Since it is problematic to assess stock size in relation to biomass or fishing mortality, the RBF may be used.

Translocations of native species among different geographic areas may also pose risks to the genetic diversity of wild populations. This issue is most often associated with escapes from salmon net pen culture. However, the life history and genetic characteristics of bivalve populations are very different from those of salmon and other finfish. Salmon populations are highly structured by homing behaviour and adaptations to natal freshwater spawning grounds. Marine shellfish, on the other hand, have widely dispersing planktonic larvae and typically show minimal genetic divergence over broad spatial scales.³⁵ While there is a low risk for translocations of marine shellfish to affect the genetic integrity of wild populations (depending on the scale of the translocation), it is still necessary for assessment teams to examine each situation and provide rationale and evidence explaining the level of risk if it exists. This will be achieved by scoring the Genetic outcome PI.

GSB2.1.3 ▲

The use of hatchery propagated seed in bivalve fisheries is increasing. Although beneficial to stocks undergoing restoration or rebuilding, hatchery enhancement may also pose a risk to wild populations. Hatchery-based enhancement may reduce the genetic diversity of wild stocks, leading to reduced fitness and adaptability. This is brought about by intentional or unintentional artificial selection (“domestication” selection) in the hatchery environment. Certain practices that are used in hatcheries to maximise larval survival and growth may lead to decreased survival when seed is placed in the wild. For example, the fine-mesh screens used in shellfish hatcheries to cull small individuals from larval cultures may also select for rapid larval development. If rapid larval development in the hatchery environment were to correlate with poor post-settlement survival and growth, the reproductive success of the wild population may be compromised. This is especially true if the use of hatchery seed is widespread and overwhelms local wild stocks. Many traits could be subject to such domestication selection, and it would be difficult to develop a practical methodology by which to measure genotype-by-environment interaction for larval traits across both hatchery and natural habitats. Nevertheless, risks from hatchery enhancements on genetic diversity or adaptation are manageable with appropriate designs and monitoring.³⁶

Efforts should be made to address genetic concerns specific to the species and the geographic region where the seed will be out-planted. Best practices for managing the genetic impacts of hatchery enhancement include:

- maintaining a large number of broodstock to ensure against inbreeding and random genetic changes;
- rotating broodstock within spawning seasons and between years;
- avoiding the return of hatchery-propagated stock to the hatchery and using it as broodstock;

³⁵ Hedgecock D, S Edmands, and P Barber. 2007. *Genetic approaches to measuring connectivity*. *Oceanography* 20:70-79.

³⁶ Hedgecock D, and K Coykendall. 2007. Genetic risks of hatchery enhancement: The good, the bad, and the unknown. In *Ecological and Genetic Implications of Aquaculture Activities*. Edited by TM Bert, pp. 85-101. Dordrecht: Springer.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- using local broodstock to limit the mixing of genetically divergent populations;
- maintaining the scale of hatchery enhancement and the reproductive potential of hatchery seed well below the size and reproductive potential of the wild population.

GSB3 Principle 2

GSB3.1 General requirements for Principle 2 ▲

All Principle 2 PISGs are applicable to enhanced hatch-and-catch (HAC) bivalve fisheries.

GSB3.1.1

There are normally no primary or secondary species captured in enhanced CAG bivalve fisheries based solely on sprat collection; therefore PIs for primary and secondary species do not need to be scored. Fisheries with some level of dredging, however, may involve the capture of primary or secondary species; for these species the primary and secondary PIs are required to be scored as per the requirements in Annex SA.

There is a potential for enhanced CAG bivalve fisheries to interact with ETP species.

GSB3.1.3.1 ▲

For suspended culture, the scoring of Principle 2 habitat PIs should clearly focus on the benthic impacts of bio-deposition and organic enrichment, and the scoring of ecosystem PIs should clearly focus on issues relating to carrying capacity and the trophic effects of bivalve filtration/feeding.

Benthic Organic Enrichment

One way in which suspended bivalve culture can impact the environment is by increasing the amount of organic material that settles on the seabed. When shellfish feed, they filter organic matter from the water column and repackage it into faster sinking particles. As this organic sediment builds up underneath bivalve farms, changes to benthic habitat and communities may occur. The extent and severity of these habitat changes is most often site specific and relate to a variety of factors including the following:

- Scale, duration, and intensity of shellfish production.
- Growing practices and methods.
- Concentration of suspended organic matter available for shellfish filtration.
- Water depth and sedimentation rate.
- Local currents and prevailing winds.

During certain situations these factors may combine to produce significant negative effects that can be seen at both the local and wider ecosystem level.

Total 'free' sulphide (S^{2-}) in surficial (0-2 cm) sediments is a cost-effective indicator of the organic enrichment effects of suspended shellfish cultivation on benthic communities. In general, there is a consistency between changes in various biological and geochemical variables and total S^{2-} in surface sediments along organic enrichment gradients. Other

Fisheries Certification Requirements

metrics such as redox potential, sediment oxygen demand, sediment organic content and benthic diversity indices may also be used to assess a specific farming operations impact on the benthic environment but are less ideal due to measurement challenges, costs and/or inherent variation.³⁷

Impacts to benthic biodiversity resulting from increased S²⁻ concentrations can be significant and occur even at low S²⁻ levels. The transition from normal to hypoxic conditions has been identified as occurring at 1,500 µM S²⁻. This threshold represents a transition from “moderate” to “reduced” macrobenthic sulphide concentration and changes in the benthic macrofauna community structure. Anoxic sediments are characterised by S²⁻ concentrations >6,000 µM. A transition within the hypoxic class of sediments at 3,000 µM has been identified where less S-tolerant taxa disappear but more tolerant opportunistic species have not yet increased in abundance. S²⁻ levels above 3,000 µM represent a condition that exerts severe hypoxic stress on benthic community structure and characterise a polluted sediment condition that poses a high risk to benthic habitat.³⁸

Shellfish farming may occur where the natural benthic environment is already heavily enriched with organic matter prior to the initiation of any culture activities. In these cases, comparing measurements taken underneath farms to control sites outside of the farm can show that the culture activity is not directly responsible for the anoxic conditions.

Assessment teams could apply the sulphide methodology in justifying their scores for habitat status:

- For the **SG 60** level for habitats, assessment teams must justify that the fishery is **unlikely** to reduce habitat structure and function to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm. This could correspond to levels of total ‘free’ sulfide in surficial sediment beneath farms of ≤ 3,000 µM.
- For the **SG 80** level for habitats, assessment teams must justify that the fishery is **highly unlikely** to reduce habitat structure and function to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm. This could correspond to levels of total ‘free’ sulfide in surficial sediment beneath farms of ≤ 1,500 µM.
- For the **SG 100** level for habitats, assessment teams must justify that there is **evidence** that the fishery is highly unlikely to reduce habitat structure and function to a point where there would be serious or irreversible harm. This could correspond to negligible levels of total ‘free’ sulfide in surficial sediment beneath farms, such as would be found at background levels for that environment.

Phytoplankton Depletion/Ecological Carrying Capacity

Bivalve aquaculture dominates the energy flow of a marine system when the phytoplankton consumed by the total production of cultured molluscs exceeds the combined reproduction rate and tidal replenishment rate of phytoplankton in the system. If phytoplankton consumption due to culture activities exceeds ecological carrying capacity, significant changes to ecological processes, species, populations, or communities in the growing environment may occur. Methods for determining the impact of suspended bivalve farming operations range from simple clearance and retention time calculations to expensive and complex computer modelling of ecological carrying capacity of affected water bodies. While it can be difficult to account for all the variables involved in coastal ecological processes, relatively simple calculations can be used to determine whether or not production is likely to be sustainable.

³⁷ Bivalve Aquaculture Dialogue. 2010. Bivalve Aquaculture Dialogue Standards. <http://www.worldwildlife.org/what/globalmarkets/aquaculture/WWFBinaryitem17872.pdf>

³⁸ Hargrave, B.T., Holmer, M., Newcombe, C.P. 2008. Towards a classification of organic enrichment in marine sediments based on biogeochemical indicators. *Mar. Poll. Bull.* 56: 810-824.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

The main threat associated with the translocation of shellfish is the introduction of diseases, pests, or invasive species. There are many historically documented cases of shellfish introductions serving as vectors for disease and non-native species. In some of these cases the introductions have resulted in mass mortalities of native species and severely disrupted ecosystems. Biosecurity measures have been put in place in many areas in order to prevent such occurrences; yet regulations and enforcement may be insufficient to prevent intentional or accidental introductions. It is important that these risks are assessed through established protocol and validated through independent scientific review. For general guidance on translocation see [GFCR 7.4.1.b](#).

The removal of seed from an area either through dredging or spat collection may have P2 impacts (e.g. habitat impacts of the dredging activity or ecosystem impacts from seed removal). For this reason CABs should consider P2 impacts for all sources of shellfish seed.

GSB4 Principle 3

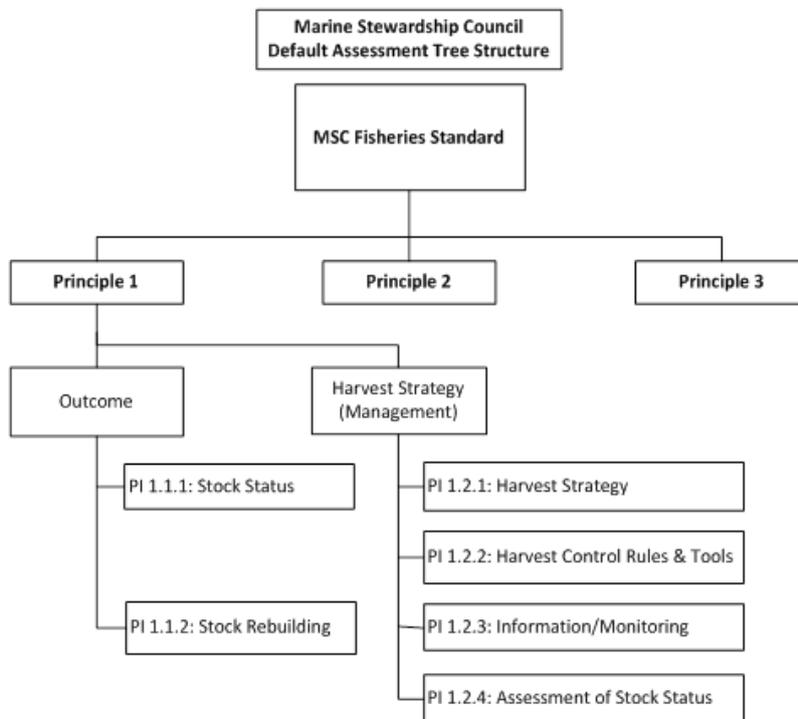
GSB4.1 General requirements for Principle 3 ▲

In cases where P1 is not scored, scoring of P3 should focus only on the relevant management systems applicable to maintaining sustainable P2 outcomes.

Assessment Trees for Enhanced Bivalve Fisheries

See following Figures

Figure GSB1: Default assessment tree: Principle 1



Fisheries Certification Requirements

Figure GSB2: Default assessment tree: Principle 2

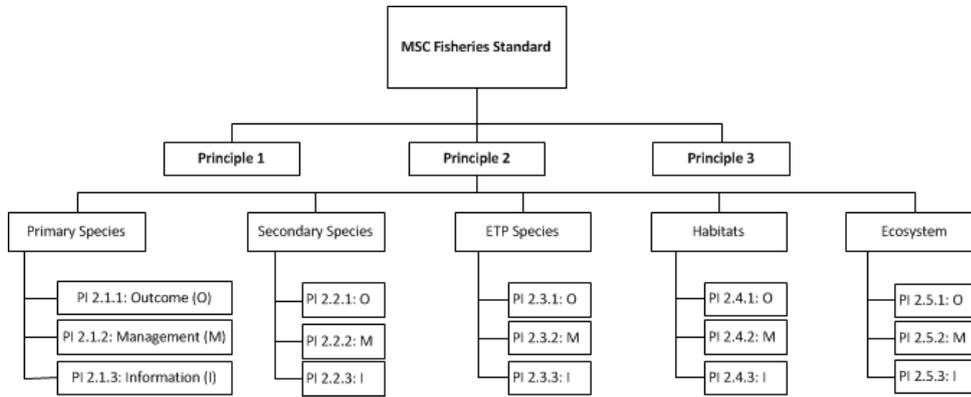
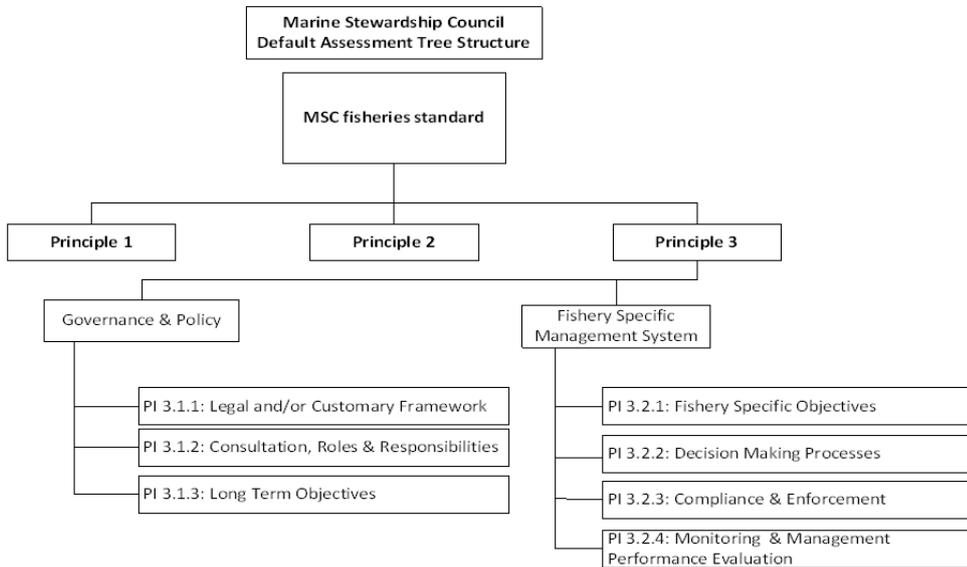
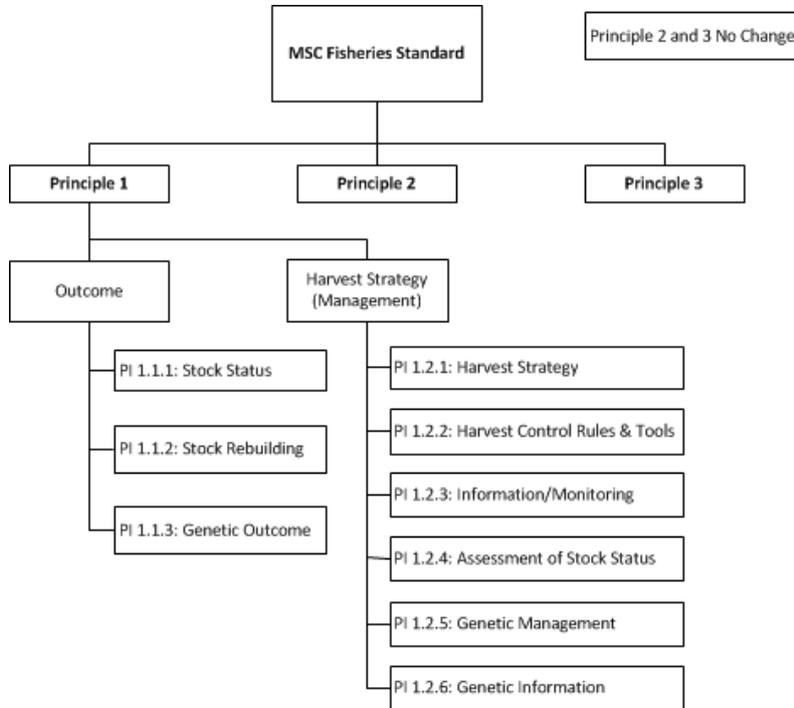


Figure GSB3: Default assessment tree: Principle 3



Fisheries Certification Requirements

Figure GSB4: Enhanced HAC bivalve fishery Principle 1



Fisheries Certification Requirements

Figure GSB5: Enhanced CAG bivalve fishery based solely on spat collection without translocation: Principle 2

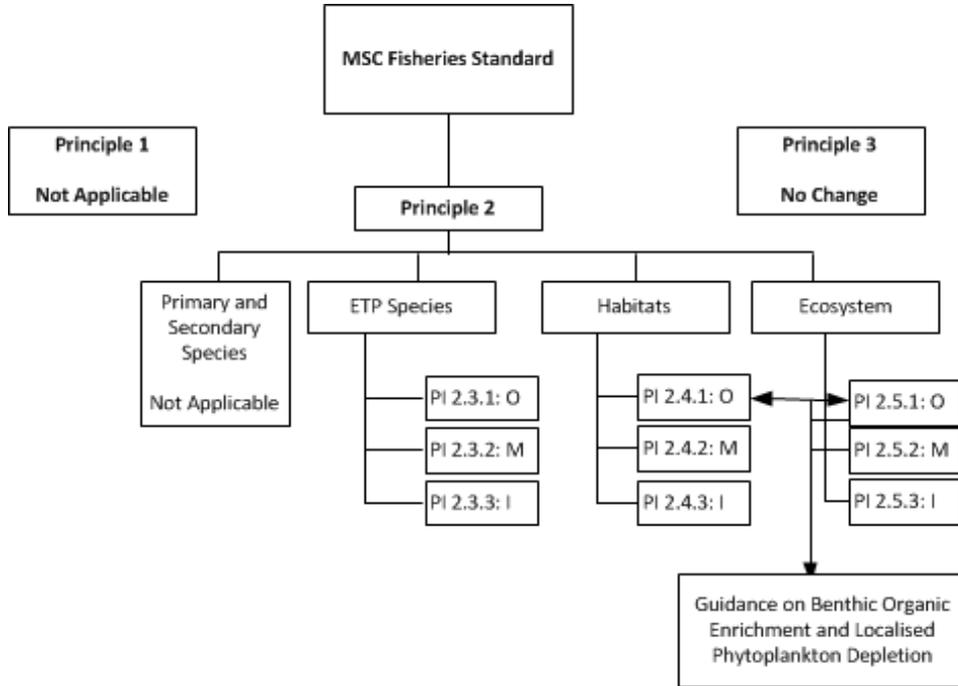
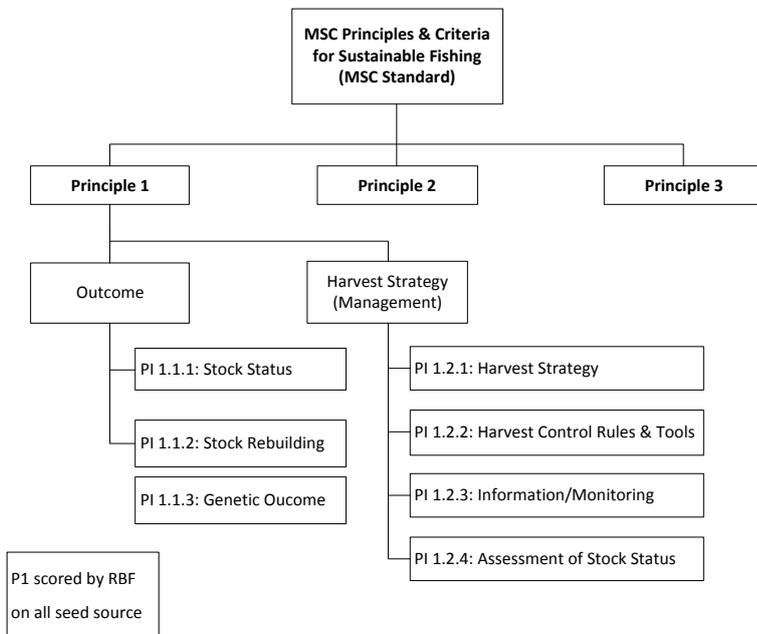


Figure GSB6: Enhanced CAG bivalve fishery based solely on spat collection with translocation: Principle 1



Fisheries Certification Requirements

Figure GSB7: Enhanced CAG bivalve fishery based solely on spat collection with translocation: Principle 2

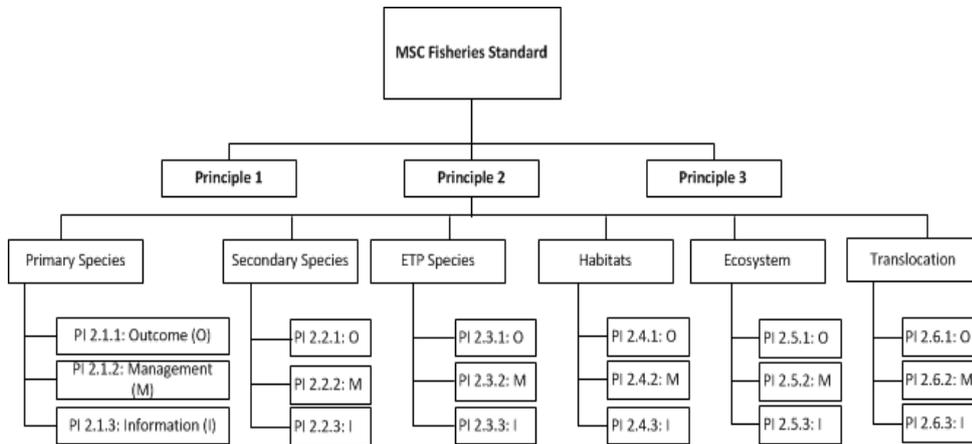
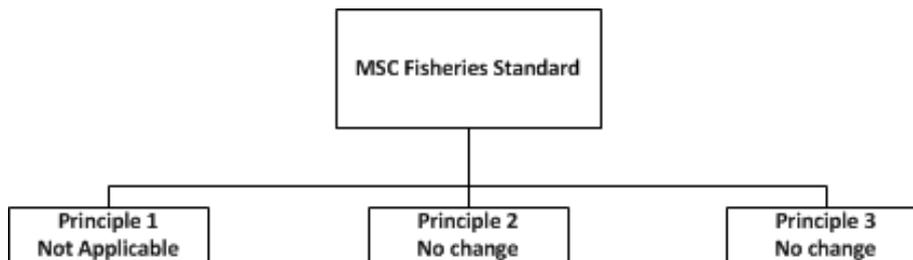
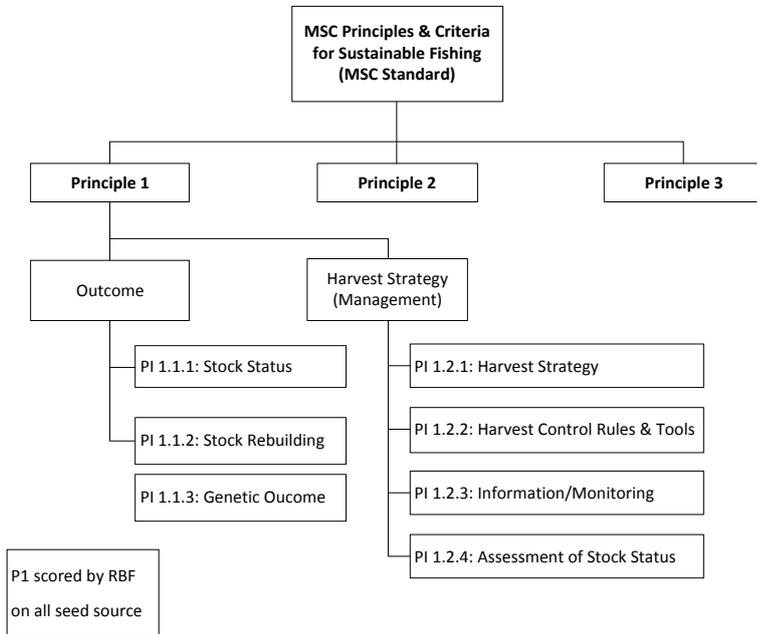


Figure GSB8: Enhanced CAG bivalve fishery with seed collection by dredging/fishing and no translocation: Principles 2 and 3



Fisheries Certification Requirements

Figure GSB9: Enhanced CAG bivalve fishery with seed collection by dredging/fishing and translocation: Principle 1



Fisheries Certification Requirements

Figure GSB10: Enhanced CAG bivalve fishery with seed collection by dredging/fishing and translocation: Principle 2

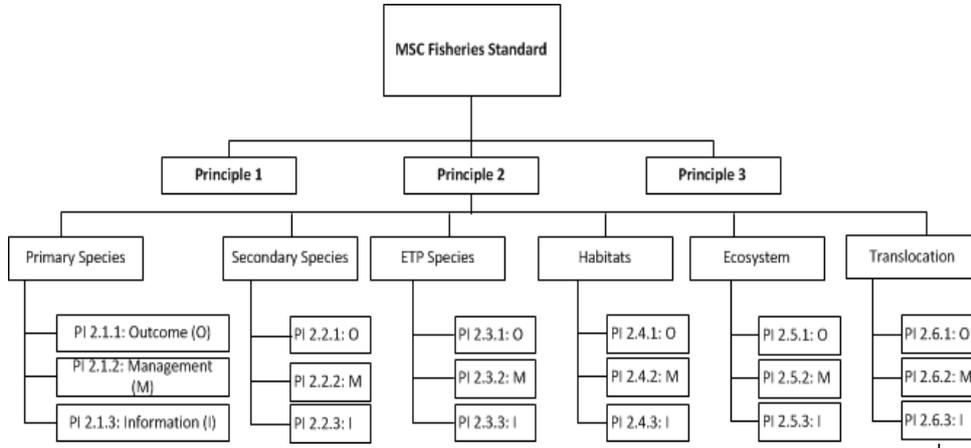


Table GSB1: Summary of scoring required for different types of enhanced bivalve fisheries

Fishery Type			Scoring Required For:						
	Enhancement Type	Spat/Seed collection	Trans-location	Principle 1	Genetic Outcome (P1)	Genetic Management & Information (P1)	Translocation PIs (P2 impacts)	Primary Species	Secondary Species
1	HAC	Hatchery produced		✓	✓	✓		✓	✓
2	CAG	On ropes/collectors							
3	CAG	On ropes/collectors	✓	✓ (RBF)	✓		✓		
4	CAG	By dredging						✓	✓
5	CAG	By dredging	✓	✓ (RBF)	✓		✓	✓	✓

End of Annex GSB Guidance

Annex GSC Modifications to the Default Assessment Tree for Salmon Fisheries –Guidance ▲

This Annex contains guidance on the following:

GSC1 General Requirements	480
GSC2 Principle 1	481
GSC2.1 General requirements for Principle 1	481
GSC2.2 Stock status PI (PI 1.1.1)	482
GSC2.3 Stock rebuilding PI (PI 1.1.2)	483
GSC2.4 Harvest strategy PI (PI 1.2.1)	485
GSC2.5 Harvest control rules and tools PI (PI 1.2.2)	485
GSC2.6 Information and monitoring PI (PI 1.2.3)	486
GSC2.7 Assessment of stock status PI (PI 1.2.4)	487
GSC2.8 General guidance to enhancement PIs	492
GSC2.9 Enhancement outcomes PI (PI 1.3.1)	492
GSC2.10 Enhancement management PI (PI 1.3.2)	498
GSC2.11 Enhancement information PI (PI 1.3.3)	499
GSC3 Principle 2	500
GSC3.1 General requirements on Principle 2	500
GSC3.13 Habitats outcome PI (PI 2.4.1)	501
GSC3.14 Habitats management strategy PI (PI 2.4.2)	502
GSC3.15 Habitats information PI (PI 2.4.3)	503
GSC3.16 Ecosystem outcome PI (PI 2.5.1)	503
GSC3.17 Ecosystem management performance Indicator (PI 2.5.2)	504
GSC3.18 Ecosystem information PI (PI 2.5.3)	505
GSC4 Principle 3	507
GSC4.1 General requirements for Principle 3	507
GSC4.4 Consultation, roles and responsibilities PI (PI 3.1.2)	507
GSC4.5 Long term objectives PI (PI 3.1.3)	507
GSC4.7 Fishery-specific objectives PI (PI 3.2.1)	508
GSC4.8 Decision-making processes PI (PI 3.2.2)	508
GSC4.10 Monitoring and management performance evaluation PI (PI 3.2.5)	509
GSC5 Weighting to be Applied in Enhanced Salmon Fisheries	509
GSC6 Allowances for Inseparable or Practicably Inseparable (IPI) Catches in Salmon Fisheries	509
GSC6.1	509

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Foreword to Annex GSC Guidance ▲

Salmon assessments differ from assessments of wholly marine species due to their complex population structure and the existence of artificial production in some places. They are complicated by the fact that any one salmon fishery may simultaneously harvest multiple populations and/or species, where each population and species can have different inherent abundances and productivities and therefore different abilities to persist in the presence of a given long-term harvest rate.

Annex GSC provides guidance and interpretation in applying the default assessment tree ([Annex SA](#)) and the modifications for salmon fisheries ([Annex SC](#)), based on the above considerations.

Assessment teams should not deviate from this guidance without justification.

For the purposes of the MSC, salmon fisheries with an enhancement component are required to conform to the scope criteria in Table C1 in the Fisheries Certification Requirements 7.4. Enhancement is used to define any activity aimed at supplementing the survival and growth of one or more aquatic organisms, or at raising the total production or the production of selected elements of the salmon populations beyond a level that is sustainable by natural processes.

GSC1 General Requirements

GSC1.1.1 ▲

For the purposes of salmon assessments, the assessment team should consider Annex GSC guidance as taking precedence over Annex GSA. Where no guidance is provided, [Annex GSA](#) should be used.

GSC1.1.2 ▲

All salmon fisheries, even those that are not enhanced, are scored in all PIs in Annex SC.

GSC1.1.3 ▲

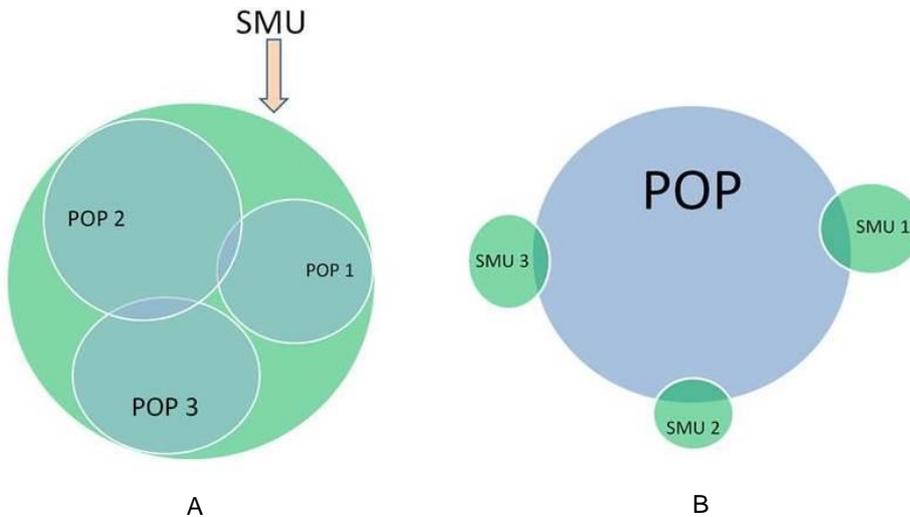
Examples of SMUs and populations are in [Table GSC1](#).

Table GSC1: Terms and definitions

Term	Guidance to definitions in Annex SC
Population	Examples of populations, one or more of which would normally comprise a single SMU, include Conservation Units (CUs) under Canada's WSP or Evolutionarily Significant Units (ESUs) under NOAA's application of the US Endangered Species Act for salmon.
Stock Management Unit (SMU)	In practice, an SMU may be comprised of an array of wild production components, such as populations of Prince William Sound Pink salmon (Figure GSC1 A) or it may represent a collection of populations such as Early Summer, Summer, or Late Fraser River sockeye. In some

situations, a population may be larger and more widely distributed than the localized management units such as terminal chum fisheries in British Columbia (Figure GSC1:B). In this situation, these component SMUs may be treated as one SMU for assessment purposes as long as the impacts of fishing on the population and the component SMUs are similar. **Reference points** are set for and evaluated at the SMU level, taking into account specific thresholds or other constraints that apply to one or more component populations of that SMU.

Figure GSC1: Two potential scenarios illustrating the relationship between populations and SMUs



GSC2 Principle 1

GSC2.1 General requirements for Principle 1

GSC2.1.1 ▲

The complexity of salmon population dynamics requires that within Principle 1 the sustainable management of salmon should be considered at two levels (Portley and Geiger 2014³⁹);

- **Level 1: the level of the SMU.** The objective of management should be to ensure that spawner abundance in the SMU is maintained at a level consistent with high production (for example a target such as S_{MSY} , or a proxy that reflects equal or lower risks to one or more populations).

39

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- **Level 2: the level of the populations within an SMU.** The objective of management should be to ensure that the diversity and productivity of these populations are maintained at levels that ensure a high probability of persistence over time, and to allow that they could rebuild to high production in time in the absence of fishing.

GSC2.2 Stock status PI (PI 1.1.1) ▲

In PI 1.1.1 the status of an SMU is assessed in relation to reference points.

The definition of the SMU, establishment of its reference points, and design of its related management strategy should take into consideration the need to manage populations within the SMU to reflect the different productivities and other features of those populations, and should follow the guidance for PIs, 1.2.1 to 1.2.4 as appropriate.

GSC2.2.1 ▲

Escapement based reference points generally refer to spawner abundance only in assessments of current status relative to limit and target reference points. Where other reference points are used, such as target harvest rate, fishing mortality or other proxies teams may refer to [GSA 2.2.3.1](#).

GSC2.2.2 ▲

Assessment teams are required to evaluate whether achievement of spawning goals is solely for wild (natural-origin) salmon, i.e., after excluding hatchery fish, the contribution from spawning channels, and removal of fish for hatchery brood stock.

GSC2.2.2.1 ▲

Factors that should be considered in estimating escapement of only wild fish include:

- relative abundance of artificially-produced versus wild salmon
- presence and enumeration of artificially-produced fish in the salmon fishery and on the wild spawning grounds, and
- management system's intent of how artificially-produced fish are accounted for in terms of meeting reference points.

GSC2.2.2.2 ▲

Where the management does not make a distinction between wild and artificially-produced salmon, assessment teams should reduce the score of the PI by a factor which reflects the magnitude of the uncertainty in the estimates of stock status caused by the lack of enumeration of artificially produced fish.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

GSC2.2.3 ▲

In some situations scoring PI 1.1.1 for salmon fisheries is not straightforward. Where the following situations arise, the following guidance applies:

- If there are no limit reference points defined by management, as is often the case with salmon fisheries, assessment teams should refer to the guidance in [GSC2.7](#).
- In the event that 15 years of data are not available equivalent percentages should apply to the timeframe that is available.
- If the target reference point is expressed as a range, with an upper and a lower bound, the SMU should have met or exceeded the mid-point of the escapement goal range and/or the assessment team should look for evidence that directed fishing is lowered as the lower bound is approached.
- The threshold levels in SC2.2.3.1 and 2.2.3.2 assume an approximately random distribution of performance over the 15 year period. Where this is not the case, and there is instead a consistent trend downwards such that most of the failures to reach the escapement goals were in the most recent years, then SG 80 is not met.
- For species or stocks that display cyclic dominance, such as pink salmon where separate stock dynamics pertain to alternate years, or Fraser sockeye where each cycle line spawns only every fourth year, each cycle line may be considered separately.

For example, pink salmon even-year and odd-year populations should be assessed separately.

- Long-term climate and ecosystem changes often affect salmon production and abundance.

Consideration of environmental variability and its impact on stock status is covered in [Annex SA2.2.7](#).

GSC2.3 Stock rebuilding PI (PI 1.1.2) ▲

The requirements for rebuilding salmon SMUs differ from those for other species in the following ways;

- The complex structure of salmon stocks requires rebuilding strategies to account for specific populations that may have lower productivities than the SMU average. One example is effective differential harvest protection through proven time and area strategies to minimize harvest impacts on low-abundance or less productive populations.
- Reduced stock status may be caused by the fishery, other human intervention such as habitat degradation, or environmental change. In the former case the rebuilding strategy is the responsibility of the fishery management agency.

If, in the latter two cases, the impact is out of the management control of the fishery (i.e., the fishery management agency) the fishery response should take into account the multipurpose nature of the use patterns in those waterways (e.g. adjust management goals either up or down to be appropriate to the new productivity of the system).

Scoring issue (c) – Use of enhancement in stock rebuilding ▲

In scoring issue (c), Use of enhancement in stock rebuilding, the team should consider the following:

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- **Routine use** of artificial production to meet escapement goals as a rebuilding strategy could be described as simply using artificial production to mitigate overfishing and maintain harvest rates that are not sustainable, and therefore would generally not meet the SG60 guidepost.
- **Habitat modification** may be occasionally used to assist rebuilding.

Given that the focus of the MSC assessment is on the wild stock, there should be only limited and temporary use of such methods to rebuild wild stocks, consistent with MSC guidance on scope criteria for enhanced fisheries.

- Under exceptional circumstances, use of hatchery production as a rebuilding strategy could be targeted at a specific population within an SMU that is severely depleted and has not responded to other significant management action. In the extreme case this would include recovery hatchery programs (see [GSC2.9](#)) designed to prevent the extirpation of severely depleted populations. It is important that any population where artificial production is used as part of the rebuilding strategy is neither targeted by the fishery nor exposed to non-targeted harvesting that substantially reduces rebuilding attempts. In the case where an artificial production strategy is used, it should be considered as an interim strategy of short, finite duration in order to address immediate demographic risks to the population.

In such a case the team should assess the circumstances driving the program and verify that it has been carefully designed to contribute to the long-term viability of the depleted wild population.

Under these types of programs, addressing demographic risks often result in unintentional interactions between cultured and wild fish that will exceed any routine interaction benchmarks.

- The **rebuilding plan** should justify the need to use enhancement tools (if used), evaluate the potential risk involved, define the time bound duration for supplementation, and include monitoring and evaluation of the supplementation effort to assess the natural population response in productivity, abundance, life history and genetic diversity.

(These are in compliance with the scope criteria for “Hatch and Catch” fisheries as defined in Table 1, A.iv of the FCR).

GSC2.3.1 ▲

In the default tree, PI 1.1.2 is triggered for any score below 80 in PI 1.1.1. However, salmon fisheries may score below 80 in PI 1.1.1 for 3 reasons; due to reduced abundance, due to a failure to enumerate hatchery origin fish in spawning escapements, or a combination of both.

PI 1.1.2 is only triggered when PI 1.1.1 scores below 80 due to a reduced stock status, not if the sub 80 score is due solely to a failure to enumerate artificially-produced fish on the spawning grounds. In the latter case, a condition should be added in PI 1.3.3.

GSC2.3.2 ▲

There should be a clear expectation of component population rebuilding except under well documented exceptional circumstances; none should remain chronically depressed relative to their biologically based limits or population-specific reference points (if estimated).

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Evidence to verify that no fisheries are targeting or otherwise excessively harvesting populations that are below their LRP during the rebuilding period would include the use of specific and effective management strategies to differentially avoid interception of those SMUs and depleted populations while conducting other fisheries. The rebuilding timeframes for individual populations may exceed those for the SMU.

GSC2.4 Harvest strategy PI (PI 1.2.1) ▲

The harvest strategy is an important element in management's maintenance of the diversity and productivity of component populations.

GSC2.4.1 ▲

Activities that demonstrate fisheries managers attempt to minimise harvest on weak populations include:

- Fisheries are managed to achieve objectives at the SMU scale, but population-level units are also defined for conservation and research purposes;
- Population-specific reference points are established and stock status against those benchmarks is monitored when stock status problems are perceptible at the SMU level; and
- When faced with stock-status problems, provisions linking population status with management of SMUs are enacted. Generally population-specific reference points have not replaced SMU reference points, but harvest control rules can be adapted to account for component population status.

GSC2.4.2 ▲

Proven management strategies designed to control exploitation rates on wild stocks include differential harvest of artificially produced fish at higher rates than wild fish, and ensuring wild harvest rates are consistent with meeting SMU TRPs (escapement goals) for wild fish. This would include fish produced from spawning channels, which even if not marked, could be subject to time and area management strategies to achieve differential harvest rates.

GSC2.5 Harvest control rules and tools PI (PI 1.2.2) ▲

As a result of the stock structure of salmon, there will likely be a distribution of impacts across populations.

Teams should consider this in terms of the population's natural productivity as well as the differential harvesting from each population.

This may vary over time due to changes in both natural processes and fishery activities or management.

GSC2.5.2 ▲

In the event that it is not possible to distinguish component populations while the fishery is operating or to regulate catches of specific populations, the team should evaluate whether

Fisheries Certification Requirements

fishery managers attempt to utilize differential harvest and selection pressure on fish with different life-history traits (such as return timing and size/age at return) which may vary among component populations, in order to minimize impact on any one life history.

Further considerations may include:

- Demonstrated understanding that underlying component population structure exists and needs to be conserved within the SMU;
- The range in productivity levels of different component populations;
- Expected variability in environmental conditions that could differentially affect population capacity and productivity; and
- Expected variability in meeting SMU goals due to natural variation in catchability of fish, non-compliance with regulations by fishing vessels, and management error.

GSC2.6 Information and monitoring PI (PI 1.2.3) ▲

In this PI, Assessment teams should consider whether the information collected supports the Harvest Strategy at the SMU level while also maintaining individual component populations include.

GSC2.6.1 ▲

For example, 'sufficient relevant information' (SG80) might include:

- evidence that the abundance of wild component populations has been maintained at levels and spatial distributions as described from aerial and other index survey counts of spawners that show persistence of the populations.
- evidence that the management strategy has incorporated approaches that minimize fishery impacts on weak wild populations for example, time/area closures to minimize harvests of weak populations, and/or targeting and achieving the upper end of the TRP escapement range for the SMU as a means to maintain populations with lower productivity.
- explicit trade-off and risk analyses, such as that undertaken for the Skeena River Independent Science Review (Walters et al. 2008⁴⁰), which considers how the current definition of SMU reference points and management strategies, combined with possible variability in status and productivity of individual stock components, affects the status of individual populations.

A 'comprehensive range' (SG100) of information would include more rigorous analyses, for instance in addition to the above, stochastic simulations/risk analyses that also explicitly take into account observation error and uncertainty reflected by deviations between management targets and final end-of-season outcomes. An example of such analyses includes the harvest control rules recently developed for Fraser River, British Columbia sockeye salmon (Pestal et al. 2012⁴¹). The paper explored alternative harvest control rules/guidelines that can respond to decreases in productivity.

⁴⁰ <http://www.psf.ca/sisrp.pdf>

⁴¹ Pestal, G., A-M. Huang, A. Cass and the FRSSI Working Group. *Updated methods for assessing harvest rules for Fraser River Sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka)*. Research Document 2011/133, Pacific Region, Canadian Science Advisory Secretariat.

GSC2.7 Assessment of stock status PI (PI 1.2.4) ▲

The assessment of stock status includes consideration of reference points. Reference points in salmon fisheries often differ from those of wholly marine species.

While these reference points may not be expressed in terms of MSY nor PRI, the intent should be consistent with [Box GSA3](#) in guidance for the Default Tree.

Scoring issue (b) – Assessment approach

In scoring issue (b), Assessment approach, reference points in salmon fisheries may take several forms.

Target reference points are required to be consistent with maximum sustainable yield (MSY), or a proxy that reflects equal or lower risks to one or more component populations.

For example, a Biological Escapement Goal (BEG) is defined as the escapement that provides the greatest potential for maximum sustained yield, and is generally developed using the best biological information (ADF&G⁴²). Another approach is S_{MSY} , or the spawner abundance at maximum sustainable yield (DFO⁴³). Where such quantitative reference points cannot be defined, the following guidance allows for proxies so long as they are consistent with maintaining high production.

- d. Target reference points may be expressed as escapement goals, target harvest rates or fishing mortality targets. The goals may take the form of Biological Escapement Goals (BEG), Management Escapement Goals (MEG), and Sustainable Escapement Goals (SEG), along with Conservation Unit Benchmarks, among others. They may be calculated using a variety of methods such as Ricker spawner recruit analysis, yield analysis, spawning habitat capacity, or sustained yield analysis. Target reference points may be single points or ranges. Any method of analysis is acceptable as long as the goal is maintaining high production or achieving a high probability of maintaining a substantial (e.g. $>B_{MSY}$) population over the long term. Examples are provided in [Table GSC2](#).
- e. Limit reference points are only sometimes explicitly defined in salmon fisheries and may take the form of minimum stock size threshold, S_{gen} , or others as defined by management (examples in [Table GSC2](#)).

Where a limit reference point is not defined a default limit reference point should be an escapement of at least 50% of the S_{MSY} escapement goal, or some other proxy of high abundance as described in (a) above (Portley and Geiger 2014⁴⁴).

For escapement goals expressed as **ranges**, the team should consider whether the range is quantitatively derived, and the logic by which it was established. The Assessment team should determine whether the range will maintain the population around S_{MSY} and subsequently whether the default LRP is more appropriately defined as 50% of the lower bound of the range the lower bound of the range, or 50% of the midpoint of the range.

Table GSC2 shows Example Target and Limit Reference Points for salmon fisheries in selected jurisdictions. This list is not all inclusive and other reference points may be used so long as they are consistent with an annual percent harvest rate that achieves maximum sustainable yield or spawner abundances at MSY (S_{MSY}).

⁴² <http://www.adfg.alaska.gov/index.cfm%3Fadfg%3Dsonar.escapementgoals>

⁴³ <http://www.pac.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/publications/pdfs/wsp-eng.pdf>

⁴⁴ Portley, N and Geiger, H.J. 2014. Limit Reference Points for Pacific Salmon Fisheries, North American Journal of Fisheries Management. 34:2, 401-410, DOI: 10.1080/02755947.2014.882453.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Table GSC2: Example Target and Limit Reference Points for salmon fisheries in selected jurisdictions

Management Region	Existing Target Reference Points	Existing Limit Reference Points	Suggested Proxy Limit Reference Points when LRPs are not established by management
1. Alaska	<p>Three types of escapement goals expressed in numbers of fish all are potentially useable based on the data available and the method used:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Biological Escapement Goals (BEGs) • Sustainable Escapement Goals (SEGs) • Optimal Escapement Goals (OEGs) 	<p>Minimum stock size thresholds (for stocks harvested by the Southeast Alaska troll fishery): 50% of the escapement goal's lower bound with the exception of those Chinook salmon escapement goals that have been reviewed by the Pacific Salmon Commission's Chinook Technical Committee (for these stocks. The minimum threshold amounts to 50% of the midpoint between the escapement goal upper and lower bounds).</p>	<p>50% of the escapement goal S_{MSY} point estimate</p>
2. British Columbia	<p>Various escapement goals expressed in numbers of fish and specific to particular fisheries, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Management Escapement Goals (MEGs) • interim escapement goals • minimum escapement goals • escapement goals • S_{lim} (85% of the escapement that produces MSY – for Chinook) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • S_{gen} (currently integrated into the harvest control rules for the Barkley Sound, B.C. fishery, foreseen in other fisheries in the future). • Total Allowable Mortality rule cutoffs (Fraser River, B.C. sockeye) • Tye test fishery escapement cutoff (Skeena River, B.C. sockeye) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • S_{gen} (if a benchmarking result is available) • 50% of the escapement goal S_{MSY} point estimate
3. Russia	<p>escapement goals (generally expressed in terms of habitat capacity, i.e., 70-100% filled habitat capacity)</p>	<p>None defined</p>	<p>35-50% filled habitat capacity</p>
4. Pacific Northwest	<p>Various escapement goals expressed in numbers of fish and specific to particular fisheries, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • escapement goals • upper management thresholds 	<p>Minimum stock size thresholds (generally 50% of escapement goals, but with some exceptions described in Amendment 16 of the West Coast Salmon Management Plan).</p>	<p>50% of the escapement goal S_{MSY} point estimate</p>

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Scoring issue (g) – Definition of Stock Management Units (SMUs)

In scoring issue (g), Definition of Stock Management Units (SMUs), the following issues could be considered relevant at **SG60**:

- Knowledge of physical habitat (lakes, rivers, etc.) and the wild populations that inhabit them and,
- A rationale for choosing those populations as the basis for an SMU taking into account the objective of maintaining diversity and productivity of component populations.

Additional information is expected at **SG80** such as:

- Identification and description of wild populations,
- Description of which wild populations have management goals,
- Description of which wild populations are monitored and,
- Rationale for choice of wild populations having goals and monitoring, in respect of their representativeness of the complete range of productivity and diversity amongst populations in the SMU.

GSC2.7.1 ▲

The team should assess the adequacy of SMU reference points for SMUs with higher numbers of populations, which are characterized by substantial population diversity and varying productivities, as compared to simpler and more homogeneous SMUs.

- If the SMU is composed of a single population, then the concepts of single stock management apply, and the reference points of the SMU should apply to the population.
- If the SMU is composed of multiple populations, then the establishment of reference points may be defined as an aggregate for the components. However, the aggregate reference points and management strategies for the SMU should ensure that the wild production components are maintained at a level that ensures a high probability of their persistence over time.

GSC2.7.1.1 ▲

For salmon fisheries that are influenced by artificial production, reference points should be based only on natural-origin (wild) fish. Evaluation of reference points for enhanced fisheries should consider the potential for artificially produced fish to confound evaluation. The assessment team should consider relative abundance of artificially produced versus wild salmon; both presence and abundance of artificially produced fish in the fishery and on the spawning grounds. For such fisheries reference points are expected to be based only on natural-origin (wild) fish. Evaluation of reference points for enhanced fisheries should consider the potential for artificially produced fish to confound evaluation.

The intent of management should be to maintain high production of the wild SMU and productivity of component populations to the extent to which the natural environment will allow.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

GSC2.7.2 ▲

Within a watershed geographic proximity and habitat type are predictors of correlations in abundance of component population.⁴⁵

Therefore, indicator populations should:

- Contain representative numbers of various spawning habitat types found within the watershed and
- Be distributed geographically throughout the SMU.

In assessing coherence and correlation that team may interpret

- **'Some evidence of coherence'** at the **SG80** level to be a mean pairwise correlation of at least 0.4, and
- **'Well correlated'** at the **SG100** level to be a mean pairwise correlation of at least 0.6 or by means with similar outcome and intent.

GSC2.7.3 ▲

The assessment of this indicator includes biological factors as well as how the rationale and definition of the SMUs have informed reference points (PI 1.2.4) and management strategies (PI 1.2.1).

A well-defined SMU is one that managers can directly influence through management actions and harvest controls, which implies an understanding of how changes to harvest patterns impact escapement.

Inclusion of populations within an SMU (since the SMU is typically defined to aggregate populations for the purpose of defining a management objective for practical fishery decision making) should be based on sharing, to some extent, similar characteristics, such as

- Run timing,
- Common region of origin,
- Genetic characteristics,
- Coastal migration patterns (i.e., exposure to interception fisheries),
- Population productivities, and
- Exposure to environmental conditions that affect annual survival rates.

GSC2.7.3.1 ▲

Enhancement increases the chance of overharvesting the less-abundant and/or less-productive salmon stocks that migrate through fishing areas at the same time as the artificially-produced fish.

The team should assess whether wild and artificially influenced components are clearly distinguished in defining SMUs and when evaluating their adequacy to support establishment of reference points and management strategies.

⁴⁵ Stewart, I. J., Hilborn, R., and Quinn, T. P. 2003. Coherence of observed adult sockeye salmon abundance within and among spawning habitats in the Kvichak River watershed. *Alaska Fishery Research Bulletin* 10:28–41.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

In the special case of side channel enhancement facilities, in order to estimate SMU status, it is important to identify the overall channel and wild stock contributions to catch and escapement. These estimates might be based on run reconstruction techniques (e.g., back calculating relative contributions of component populations at various prior times and areas based on relative spawning escapement abundances). Assessment might also include periodic evaluation of juveniles produced from the channels in relation to the number of adults spawning. In some cases, depending on the population differences within a river system, it might be possible to estimate the contribution of spawning channel fish by use of genetic stock identification techniques. The assessment team may also consider how similar the channel environmental conditions are relative to the natural environmental conditions (i.e., flow, temperature, complexity, competitors, predators, etc).

GSC2.8 General guidance to enhancement PIs ▲

Enhancement activities are assessed against their impacts on the natural reproductive component of the associated wild salmon stock under assessment in Principle 1 (impacts of enhancement activities on other species, the same species outside of the UoA and the receiving ecosystem will be assessed under Principle 2). This mirrors the treatment of salmon in existing MSC fishery assessments and is consistent with FAO's 2010 Guidelines for Ecolabelling of Fish and Fishery products from Inland Capture Fisheries.

Table GSC3: Enhancement Terms and Definitions

Term	Definition
Habitat enhancement	May take the form of spawning channels, lake fertilization, predator removal, artificial gravel beds etc.
'Integrated' hatchery production	This is typically used for supplementation and recovery type programs.
pHOS	These fish may be strays or may be the result of returns of hatchery fish that were intended.
'Segregated' hatchery production	This type is typically used for harvest augmentation hatcheries.

GSC2.9 Enhancement outcomes PI (PI 1.3.1) ▲

This performance indicator was added to address the potential for negative effects of enhancement activities on the genetic diversity, local adaptation and reproductive capacity of the wild salmon stocks.

Potential negative impacts may include:

- Outbreeding depression due to translocation of dissimilar brood stock into locally-adapted populations;
- Inbreeding depression or loss of native genetic diversity due to directed or inadvertent hatchery selection or domestication;
- Excessive impact on wild fish for hatchery broodstock;
- Reduced natural juvenile survival due to predation, competition and other ecological interactions;

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- Increased natural adult pre-spawn mortality due to handling and migration delays resulting from effects of weirs;
- Changes in spawning distribution due to weir effects resulting in reduced reproductive success;
- Increased prevalence and impacts of disease, and
- Reduction in smolts per spawner due to increased density dependent effects.

The risks (probabilities as well as magnitudes of various negative effects) of these impacts are a function of:

- Adult broodstock collection sources and their level of influence from natural populations;
- Hatchery mating, incubation and rearing practices;
- Juvenile release numbers, life stage at release, size, acclimation, and geographical distribution, and
- Straying of returning adults (hatchery fish to natural spawning grounds and natural-origin fish used for hatchery broodstock).

Scoring issue (a) Enhancement impacts ▲

In scoring issue (a), the CAB may consider the following situations;

- In systems subject to **low levels of artificial production** the comprehensiveness of the studies required for the team to judge that outcomes are likely being met can be considerably less than in cases with substantial artificial production programs. Low-level systems of artificial production will be characterised by, inter alia:
 - The proportion of hatchery releases or production of juveniles from artificial habitat compared to total artificially produced and wild production in a unit of certification is relatively small (<10%);
 - The management system has implemented measures and strategies that are known to be effective at limiting the level and spatial extent of straying, and
 - Unique wild populations are not likely to interact with hatchery fish spawning naturally.
- **Recovery hatchery programs** (artificial production programs designed for the specific conservation purpose of preventing the extirpation of severely depressed populations) are generally subject to more stringent design characteristics and performance benchmarks than other hatchery programs. The goal of a recovery hatchery is typically to increase the number of naturally spawning adults in the population. Consequently, the standard default assumptions ([Box GSC1](#) below) do not apply.

Recovery hatchery programs are implemented only after targeted commercial fishing on the population has been eliminated or severely restricted. These programs are temporary in nature and are intended to supplement depressed natural populations or provide fish for artificial recolonization of streams that have experienced local or brood-year extinctions, to maintain genetic diversity within and among stocks, and to conserve valuable or rare genes and genotypes. They may, or may not, rely on captive broodstock to accomplish these goals. Recovery hatcheries attempt to minimize or eliminate negative effects common to fish culture, resulting in as close to wild fish as possible (primary success criteria are increased abundance of spawners and/or outmigrants, increased abundance of natural origin spawners, maintained or increased long term fitness (productivity and life history), lowered chance of extinction, recolonization of a

Fisheries Certification Requirements

self-sustaining population, and/or brood-year reconstruction, while avoiding negative hatchery impacts as much as possible).

- **Spawning channels** differ from hatchery programs but they should be scored in a similar way.

In these systems, the entire natural reproduction life cycle occurs in a natural habitat, with the main artificial production interventions being enhanced spawning gravel habitat and controlled channel flows. Once fish enter the spawning channel, all reproduction processes (e.g., mate selection, redd building, incubation and any rearing) occur without human intervention. Spawning channels differ from hatchery programs but they should be scored in a similar way. In these systems, the entire natural reproduction life cycle occurs in a natural habitat, with the main artificial production interventions being enhanced spawning gravel habitat and controlled channel flows. Once fish enter the spawning channel, all reproduction processes (e.g., mate selection, redd building, incubation and any rearing) occur without human intervention.

The potential impacts of spawning channels would not be assessed according to Box GSC 1 because the consequences of straying of adult returns would typically not present the same concerns as hatcheries, as long as the channel was (a) isolated from other spawning populations that were genetically dissimilar to the population being enhanced in the spawning channel or (b) the channel exactly or very closely mimics the natural environment.

However the assessment team should consider the size of the program and similarity with populations in proximity (based on expected straying distances) in assessing the likelihood that the spawning channel operation could be having a significant impact on genetic and life history diversity of wild populations.

GSC2.9.1.1 ▲

'Relevant studies' may include, but are not limited to, studies on the same species as the UoA, studies in the same or similar geographic area, and/or studies in the same or similar habitat.

GSC2.9.1.2 ▲

Box GSC1 presents default acceptable impact guidelines for artificial production

The guidance in **Box GSC1** establishes default criteria for evaluating whether proportions of pHOS and proportion of wild populations/ spawning areas being affected by artificial production are likely to have significant negative impacts on wild stocks. If other system specific benchmarks have been adopted by the fishery management system, the team should evaluate their appropriateness in terms of delivering similar levels of performance to those in **Box GSC1** (see below).

Box GSC1 was developed following specific best practice considerations and science developed from fitness modelling and empirical studies of yearling smolts released from the riverine species such as Chinook, coho, and steelhead hatcheries (e.g. Ford 2002, Grant 1997, Paquet et al 2011).⁴⁶

⁴⁶ Ford, M. J. 2002. Selection in captivity during supportive breeding may reduce fitness in the wild. *Conservation Biology* 16:815–825. [contd.]

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Specific studies on chum and pink salmon are rare but the Recovery Implementation Science Team (RIST 2009⁴⁷) concluded that hatchery strategies that involve release of fish at earlier life stages probably lead to smaller genetic changes than strategies that involve release of fish at later life stages. It may therefore be reasonable to modify pHOS criteria for pink and chum salmon because their hatchery rearing is the shortest of all species. While the magnitude of relaxation will be situation specific, assessment teams should provide rationale to support their decisions.

If additional evidence from species-specific studies is considered by the CAB to be more relevant to a specific situation a reasoned argument for adjusting the default impact guidelines should be made.

[Refs contd] W. Stewart Grant (editor). 1997. *Genetic effects of straying of non-native fish hatchery fish into natural populations: proceedings of the workshop*. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-30, 130 pp. (especially see 'Conclusions of Panel, pp. 140-157)

Paquet, P.J., T. Flagg, A. Appleby, J. Barr, L. Blankenship, D. Campton, M. Delarm, T. Evelyn, D. Fast, J. Gislason, P. Kline, D. Maynard, L. Moberg, G. Nandor, P. Seidel and S. Smith. 2011. Hatcheries, conservation, and sustainable fisheries—achieving multiple goals: results of the Hatchery Scientific Review Group's Columbia River basin review. *Fisheries*, 36:11, 547-561.

⁴⁷ RIST, 2009 http://www.nwfsc.noaa.gov/trt/trt_documents/RIST_RME_Review_2009_09_16_09_cor.pdf

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Box GSC1: Default acceptable impact guidelines for artificial production

Default acceptable impact guidelines for artificial production

The intent of this guidance is to help ensure that the majority of genetic diversity and productive capacity of the SMU is protected from the risks of enhancement activities in freshwater production areas. The guidelines in the Box are primarily derived from studies on Chinook, coho, sockeye and steelhead. Impact guidelines for pink and chum may be relaxed from these levels with sufficient justification (see above).

At the eSG60 level

- Regardless of hatchery production strategy, pHOS at the level of the population should be negligible (<1%) in greater than (>) 50% of populations, and these populations should be representative of the productivity and genetic diversity of populations within an SMU.
- pHOS at the level of the SMU should be:
 - no more than 10% for segregated hatchery programs, such that individual population pHOS values above 10% would be expected to occur only in areas in closer proximity to hatchery facilities where values might be affected by smaller wild spawning populations that are not important potential contributors to the wild diversity or productive capacity of the SMU.
 - no more than 33% for integrated hatchery programs
- The level of enhancement in the remaining populations is unspecified at SG60.

At the SG80 level

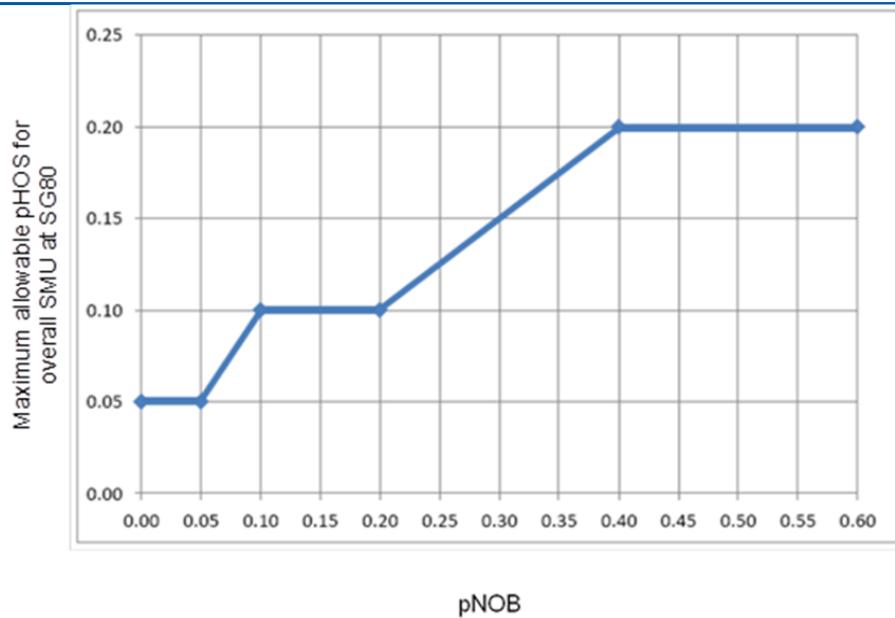
Further **pHOS at the level of the SMU** should be:

- For segregated hatchery programs:
 - no more than 5%;
- For integrated hatchery programs (These limits are presented graphically in [Figure GSC2](#)):
 - Where pNOB < 5%, no more than 5%
 - equal or less than pNOB, where 10% > pNOB > 5%
 - no more than 10% for programs where pNOB is less than 20%;
 - no more than 0.5 x pNOB for programs operating between 20% and 40%pNOB;
 - no more than 20% for programs operating at pNOB > 40%.

Figure GSC2 below depicts the maximum allowable average proportion of hatchery origin fish in natural spawning populations (pHOS) within an SMU at SG80, in relation to the proportion of natural origin (wild) fish contributing to the hatchery broodstock (pNOB). These guidelines are based primarily on studies of riverine species such as Chinook, coho, and steelhead. They may be modified for pink and chum salmon, and for other species, with sufficient reasoned argument and justification.

Figure GSC2: Maximum allowable pHOS for overall SMU at SG80

Fisheries Certification Requirements



At the SG100 level

pHOS should be negligible (< 1%) in all populations in an SMU.

Further Guidance in application of Box GSC1:

- pHOS at the level of the SMU is intended to reflect an estimate of the proportion of hatchery-origin fish spawning naturally in the SMU divided by the total natural spawning escapement in the SMU, which may be calculated as the simple 4-yr arithmetic mean of these estimates.
- Where there are both segregated and integrated hatchery fish spawning naturally within the SMU, the assessment team should consider the limits above in their assessment.
- Where there are hatchery-origin spawners on the spawning grounds of the SMU under assessment that originate from outside the SMU under assessment, they should be assessed at segregated criteria limits above. Strays from outside the SMU present a greater genetic risk than those originating within the SMU and are therefore only permitted at lower limits.

GSC2.9.1.3 ▲

In the event that there are no scientific studies available and no information or estimates of pHOS nor pBNOB exist the team should carefully consider the potential impact based on the magnitude of hatchery origin fish released or the percentage of hatchery fish in the harvest of the SMU.

Scoring should be precautionary, and sufficient justification provided as to why the magnitude or percentage of hatchery fish is likely to have a small impact with minimal hatchery origin fish reaching the spawning grounds (i.e., a small pHOS). Factors that might be considered include whether the hatchery type is an integrated or segregated hatchery program, whether there is differential harvesting to avoid hatchery fish on appearing on the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

spawning grounds, the location of the hatchery, the release site, and where the fish are eventually harvested, and whether the management agency remove hatchery fish prior to accessing the spawning grounds.

GSC2.10 Enhancement management PI (PI 1.3.2) ▲

Management is expected to address the potential for negative effects of enhancement activities on the local adaptation, genetic diversity and reproductive capacity of the wild salmon stocks.

Scoring issue (a) – Management strategy in place ▲

For scoring issue (a), 'Management strategy in place', in achieving the **SG80** outcome, the management system would reasonably be expected to design and manage its hatchery-program outcomes with an understanding of the wild population structure and characteristics that its hatchery programs could be expected to affect, as well as the development of some basic hatchery management objectives with respect to limits on impacts within this context. It could consider, inter alia,

- Identification and description of populations within the SMU;
- The level and spatial distribution of genetic and life history diversity (e.g., run timing, spawning timing, age structure, juvenile life history forms, other unique phenotypic traits) ;
- Populations with unique characteristics;
- The relative abundance of wild populations (magnitude, spatial distribution);
- Expected spatial distribution and magnitude of natural spawning of hatchery returns in relation to wild population abundance and diversity; and
- Objectives/intent for limiting the magnitude and spatial distribution of pHOS consistent with protecting the diversity and productive capacity of the SMU and its component wild populations.

GSC2.10.1 ▲

A likelihood of minimizing the numbers and proportions of hatchery fish interbreeding with wild fish in natural spawning areas is expected to be supported by the use and evaluation of proven artificial production and harvest management strategies. Common examples typically include:

- Siting of hatchery facilities in areas that are isolated from areas of high wild salmon abundance and diversity for the species being produced;
- Ensuring release at sites and with strategies that are likely to maximize imprinting and homing;
- Identifying high value watersheds where hatcheries are not used;
- Fishing strategies that result in differential harvest rates between hatchery and wild fish to both limit straying and ensure sustainable wild harvest rates;
- Marking hatchery fish releases so that the distribution and composition of hatchery and wild fish can be monitored in fisheries, spawning grounds and in hatchery broodstock;

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- Active exclusion of marked hatchery fish from spawning in the wild through management of passage through weirs;
- Scaling hatchery release numbers to a level that is consistent with not exceeding hatchery stray benchmarks in concert with other strategies.

GSC2.11 Enhancement information PI (PI 1.3.3) ▲

This performance indicator was added to address information needed to evaluate the potential for negative effects of enhancement activities on the genetic diversity and reproductive capacity (such as density-dependent competition for spawning habitat) of the wild salmon stocks consistent with the direction identified in MSC guidance on scope criteria for enhanced fisheries (FCR section 7.4.3). Guideposts address the same potentially damaging enhancement effects identified under PI 1.3.1. Specific guideposts in this indicator are based on those identified in other comparable P1 indicators regarding collection of relevant information (PI 1.2.3) and assessment adequacy (PI 1.2.4). Marking and monitoring programs will be particularly relevant to evaluations of sufficiency for this indicator.

The reason for this monitoring is to enable the management system to effectively meet wild stock escapement goals, evaluate harvest strategies to meet these goals and evaluate the interaction between hatchery and wild fish on spawning grounds. It is acknowledged that there are no such marking requirements for fish produced in artificial habitat, but important information, such as the amount of fry emigrating from these habitats are expected to be monitored annually to help gauge the potential impact on wild populations.

Scoring issue (a) – Information adequacy ▲

- At **SG60**: ‘**some relevant information**’ should be interpreted to mean that some artificially produced fish carry recognizable marks (e.g., fin clips, coded-wire tags, otolith marks, parent-based tagging (PBT) or thermal marks) such that approximate estimates can be made of contributions of hatchery salmon to harvests, hatchery broodstocks and spawning populations. It is reasonable to expect these contribution estimates are either being made or can be reasonably inferred from an understanding of the dynamics of the fishery and enhancement programs, including from an existing understanding of size, location and general release-to-adult contribution rates.
- At **SG80**: ‘**sufficient relevant qualitative and quantitative information**’ should be interpreted to mean a large representative fraction of artificially produced fish carry recognizable marks (e.g., fin clips, coded-wire tags, otolith marks, parent-based tagging (PBT) or thermal marks) to accurately estimate contributions of hatchery salmon to harvests, hatchery broodstocks, spawning populations and escapes. For large hatchery programs this may be up to 100%. A reasonable expectation is that these estimates are currently being made via data collected through associated harvest, hatchery and escapement monitoring programs at a level of precision and accuracy necessary to support the harvest management strategy. As the levels of hatchery origin spawners approach the limits stated in Box GSC1, the necessary sampling frequency increases to achieve the required accuracy of estimates of pHOS. Direct estimates are supplemented by other analytical methods.
- At **SG100**: ‘**comprehensive range of relevant quantitative information**’ should be interpreted to mean that all artificially produced fish, regardless of program size, carry marks (e.g., fin clips, coded-wire tags, otolith marks, parent-based tagging (PBT) or thermal marks) allowing highly accurate and precise estimates of hatchery salmon to harvests, hatchery broodstocks, spawning populations and escapes. A reasonable

Fisheries Certification Requirements

expectation is that these estimates of hatchery and wild contributions are currently made through associated harvest, hatchery and escapement monitoring programs, at a scale and intensity of temporal and spatial coverage that provides comprehensive information and understanding.

GSC2.11.1 ▲

Artificially produced fish are expected to be marked, and monitored in catch and escapement, in sufficient quantities in order to enable the fishery to define target reference points for wild salmon populations and SMUs (e.g., escapement goals), implement harvest strategies and evaluate levels of interaction between hatchery and wild fish on spawning grounds. Requirement of this information is implicit within the evaluation of stock status and reference points, which do not include artificially produced salmon.

However, the explicit scoring of enhancement information should only be scored in this PI.

GSC2.11.1.1 ▲

The marking requirements described above in the guidance on specific scoring issues do not routinely apply to fish produced from artificial spawning channels because the same monitoring and information tools generally are not available for spawning channels as compared to hatcheries. The absence of confined hatchery methods for incubation and rearing within a spawning channel limits the practical marking tools available. Nevertheless, in situations where there is an increased likelihood of interactions between spawning channel strays and dissimilar wild populations in areas of potential interaction, there would be an expectation that the management system would assess those risks via visual marking of juveniles at emigration from the weir or perhaps via the use of genetic marking techniques. The need for such information and monitoring would be greater where the conditions of spawning channels differ greatly from the natural environment or where the magnitude of adult production originating from the spawning channel exceeds the natural production of wild populations with which the spawning channel fish might interact.

GSC3 Principle 2

GSC3.1 General requirements on Principle 2

GSC3.1.1 ▲

In Principle 2 only ETP (PI 2.3.*), Habitats (PI 2.4.*) and Ecosystem (PI 2.5.*) are modified for salmon assessments.

Primary species (PI 2.1*) and secondary species (2.2.*) should still be scored as in Annex SA. Additionally, all Annex SA requirements and Annex GSA guidance should be consulted in addition to the modifications in Annex SC and the supplemental guidance in Annex GSC.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

GSC3.1.2 ▲

In Principle 2 modifications to the Default Assessment Tree in require the impact of enhancement activities on Principle 2 components is assessed.

All Performance Indicators and scoring issues should be scored even in the absence of enhancement activities.

GSC3.13 Habitats outcome PI (PI 2.4.1) ▲

Enhancement activities typically operate under a wide range of environmental regulations and monitoring requirements intended to minimize their impacts on aquatic habitat important for local biota in the ecosystems where the facilities are located. Like other land and water uses that can negatively impact fishery resources, enhancement facilities often must be authorized through a variety of environmental permits or reviews.

Scoring issue (d) – Impacts due to enhancement ▲

In scoring issue (d), Impacts due to enhancement, the team should consider the following as examples to demonstrate that hatchery facilities are **highly unlikely** to have adverse impacts at the **SG80 level**:

- Facility design, construction and operations limit effects on the riparian corridor and are consistent with fluvial geomorphology principles (for instance, avoid bank erosion or undesired channel modification).
- Water withdrawals and in-stream water diversion structures for artificial production facility operation do not prevent access to natural spawning areas, affect spawning behaviour of natural populations, or impact juvenile rearing environment. For instance, in-stream flows between diversion and discharge return points, as well as further flow impacts downstream are not significantly diminished.
- Effluents from artificial production facilities conform with accepted or required levels that do not detrimentally affect natural populations.
- Weir/trap operations used to collect hatchery broodstock do not prevent access to natural spawning areas, do not affect spawning behaviour or success of wild fish, and do not result in significant stress, injury, or mortality in natural spawners.
- A record of compliance with applicable environmental laws designed to protect natural populations and habitats from potential adverse impacts of artificial production program operation.

GSC3.13.2 ▲

Habitat modifications due to salmon enhancement activities can include both physical changes to the river course (e.g., spawning channels), changes to water quality due to hatchery discharge, and the use of a range of man-made structures associated with the rearing habitat.

Examples of adverse impacts include:

- Delay in reaching spawning grounds that reduces spawning success;
- Blockage of access to spawning habitat from weirs used for hatchery broodstock collection;

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- Dewatering of downstream water channels used for spawning and rearing;
- Increased water temperature from human activities such that fish mortality rate increases
- Improper screening of water intake systems that cause mortality or entrainment of wild fish, and
- Discharge of effluents or pollutants contrary to water quality standards.

The team should identify the types and extent of habitat modifications that are associated with enhancement activities, and determine that they are unlikely to have adverse impact.

GSC3.14 Habitats management strategy PI (PI 2.4.2) ▲

Enhancement facilities typically operate under a wide set of environmental regulations and review requirements with respect to their potential impacts on aquatic habitat, such as use of drugs, fish passage requirements, water discharge permits, and water withdrawal authorization.

The team should examine evidence to determine whether these requirements are in place and are being met as part of the overall strategy for meeting the habitat status outcome.

GSC3.14.1 ▲

The team should expect to see management strategies that seek to achieve the typical outcomes in [GSC3.13](#).

Examples of such strategies could include:

- Facility design or maintenance plans and construction permit applications that specifically consider and avoid known impacts;
- Routine (e.g. daily) inspections, maintenance and assessment activities of physical parameters such as flows, screen, and weir operations and a record of taking actions in response to these activities;
- Withdrawal permit operating requirements are being implemented, and if the system does not operate under a formal permitting system, similar operating criteria are being applied;
- Implementation of regular fish passage procedures based on explicit hatchery objectives to pass naturally spawning fish above any hatchery weir to enable sustaining natural production consistent with available habitat capacity;
- Implementation of fish handling protocol, and staff provided with associated training/guidelines, for instance, to ensure that captured adult wild fish are not injured and that upstream migration delays are minimized;
- Active implementation and maintenance of water quality management strategies to meet effluent discharge requirements;
- Annual or periodic reports that demonstrate review and mitigation actions for any such impacts.

Enhanced salmon fishery interventions may also include lake fertilization to enhance natural food production, and removal of predators or competitors to maximize early stage salmon survival.

These impacts should be evaluated in accordance with PI 2.5.1.

GSC3.15 Habitats information PI (PI 2.4.3)

GSC3.15.1 ▲

Examples of information that may be expected for enhancement activities include:

- Proportion of diversion of total stream flow between intake and outfall water;
- Withdrawals compared to applicable passage criteria and to juvenile screening criteria;
- Discharge water quality monitoring data required by or equivalent to any environmental permit provisions;
- Water flow and temperature data above the hatchery intake and below the discharge;
- Logs of periodic inspection above any hatchery weirs to ensure passage of fish upstream is not being impeded;
- Number of adult fish aggregating and/or spawning immediately below water intake point compared to number of adult fish passing water intake point;
- Records of any fish mortalities or injuries occurring of fish or other aquatic resources in the hatchery weir/traps and in the natural habitat near (or within a zone of influence) of the hatchery.

GSC3.16 Ecosystem outcome PI (PI 2.5.1) ▲

Ecological interaction risks between artificially produced salmon, non-ETP wild salmon populations and other non-ETP species are evaluated in the Ecosystem PIs. Salmon ecosystem components include effects of disease transmission, as well as intra- and inter-specific competition (including that which arises from ecosystem carrying capacity) and predation within and among salmon species in freshwater, near shore and high seas ocean waters. Generally, impacts on Principle 1 target species in the UoA are assessed in PI 1.3.1–1.3.3 and not explicitly considered in this section. Impacts on the same species outside of the UoA or impacts on other salmonid species within the UoA are considered in this section.

Scoring issue (b) – Impacts due to enhancement ▲

In scoring issue (b), Impacts due to enhancement, the team should consider the scale and size of the programs being assessed as part of creating a general risk framework alongside objective evidence for negative interactions, or lack of negative interactions.

In this context the team may consider the following factors:

- The magnitude of releases and returns of artificially produced fish in the area being assessed compared to the wild production from the same area.
In situations where artificially-produced fish constitute a significant proportion of either juveniles or returning adults to an area, a higher level of evidence should be required to make a judgment about likelihood.
- The likelihood that hatchery releases coincide in space and time with the presence of juvenile wild salmon.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

- The level of total species production in UoA compared to historic levels while also considering potential changes in current habitat conditions and natural reproduction capacity compared to those levels.
- Indicators of any density dependent processes that could potentially be related to the enhancement program by virtue of known temporal and spatial overlap with species or stocks that are exhibiting demonstrated changes in population dynamics.

GSC3.16.1 ▲

Evaluation of ecological and ecosystem effects of enhancement activities includes the potential effects on both wild salmon and other aquatic species. Note that impacts on the wild stock(s) under assessment (UoA) are considered in PI 1.3.1.

The team should consider interactions at any life stage in both freshwater and marine habitats. Consideration should be given to the ecosystem impacts of enhancement activities across the entire geographic range of the salmon populations.

GSC3.16.2 ▲

Disease transmission and predation/competition are different issue areas that have very different levels of active management and information, monitoring and compliance requirements and capacities.

The team should assess the degree of likelihood that enhancement activities have minimal negative effect on the productive capacity of wild salmon and other aquatic populations as a result of predation and competition for resources such as prey or spawning habitat.

GSC3.17 Ecosystem management performance indicator (PI 2.5.2) ▲

Current best practice for disease management in enhancement facilities reflects a very rigorous monitoring and adaptive management system using well-established policies, guidelines, performance indicators, benchmarks and procedures designed to carefully protect hatchery and natural fish populations from the importation, dissemination, and amplification of fish pathogens and disease conditions.

The team should assess and verify the degree to which the hatchery management system is implementing an approved, proven protocol in a manner that ensures the likelihood of meeting these objectives and related outcome for PI 2.5.1.

Scoring issue (d) – Management of enhancement activities ▲

In scoring issue (d), 'Management of enhancement activities', the team should devote particular attention to management of potential impacts of the release of fish from large scale artificial production operation; in particular the strategies for avoiding adverse competition and predation effects on the receiving ecosystems including inter- and intra-species competition, both inshore and offshore, including issues of carrying capacity.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

GSC3.17.1 ▲

The team should consider management of the impact of the fishery on the ecosystem as well as management of any enhancement activity on the receiving ecosystem, in particular the management of disease and competition/predation. For example, practices that minimize overlap in time and space between hatchery releases and the wild component could be implemented.

Examples:

Examples of strategies for minimizing ecological risk include⁴⁸

- Methods to minimize disease transmission
- Hatchery programs scaled to fit carrying capacity of the watershed or basin
- Coordination with other hatcheries to limit releases at a regional scale (i.e., the North Pacific, Columbia Basin, or major sub-basins)
- Releasing only smolts that will promptly out-migrate, unless the release of other life stages is part of a specific biological objective
- The use of acclimation ponds and volitional releases as a means to minimize residual fish and straying of returning adults
- Careful timing of releases; e.g. release of predatory hatchery fish after wild salmon reach large enough sizes to avoid being consumed
- Careful consideration of both the timing and magnitude of releases because high concentration of hatchery fish in time and space may attract predators, but may also have an offsetting effect to some unknown extent by "swamping" the predators with so many prey that the percent mortality on wild fish is also reduced
- Rigorous marking and monitoring of hatchery fish and adaptive management.

GSC3.18 Ecosystem information PI (PI 2.5.3)

GSC3.18.1 ▲

With respect to hatchery operations, relevant information to understand the impacts on the receiving ecosystem may include:

- the collection of environmental health conditions, culture and general health histories, pathogen detection collected at a relevant level of accuracy and coverage throughout the artificial production cycle consistent with requirements of implementing the disease management strategy.
- information on the distribution and size of artificially produced and wild fish at various life cycle stages in freshwater and marine areas that may be used to identify the times and areas where artificially produced fish could compete with or prey upon wild fish of the

⁴⁸ Kostow, K. 2009. Factors that contribute to the ecological risks of salmon and steelhead hatchery programs and some mitigating strategies. *Rev Fish Biol Fish* 19:9-31.
Kostow, K. 2012. Strategies for reducing the ecological risks of hatchery programs: Case studies from the Pacific Northwest. *Env Biol Fish* 94(1): 285-310.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

same species or with other aquatic species, with these potential interactions understood at a level of detail relevant to the scale and size of the enhancement programs.

GSC4 Principle 3

GSC4.1 General requirements for Principle 3

GSC4.1.1 ▲

In Principle 3 the following Performance indicators have modifications to the requirements; PI 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.3 and 3.2.4. PI 3.1.1 should still be scored in accordance with Annex SA.

Further, all Annex SA requirements and Annex GSA guidance should be consulted in addition to the modifications in Annex SC and the supplemental guidance in Annex GSC.

GSC4.1.2 ▲

The team is required to assess the features of each modified indicator that have relevance to the fishery and associated enhancement activities to ensure there is an institutional and operational framework for these activities, appropriate to their size and scale, for implementing the related provisions of Principles 1 and 2 capable of delivering sustainable outcomes. This additional assessment would include examining specific relevant evidence and documenting its consideration relative to the scoring process.

The size and scale of enhancement activities (to gauge the appropriateness of the institutional and operational framework) can be simply considered by a rough comparison of the magnitude of releases and returns of artificially produced fish in the area being assessed compared to the wild production.

GSC4.4 Consultation, roles and responsibilities PI (PI 3.1.2)

GSC4.4.1 ▲

The team should assess whether the management system has effective consultation processes that are open to stakeholders related to aspects of both the fishery and the enhancement activities.

GSC4.5 Long term objectives PI (PI 3.1.3)

GSC4.5.1 ▲

It is necessary for the salmon management agency to demonstrate that its key ecological objective for its enhancement activities is managing sustainable wild salmon populations while minimizing potentially adverse effects of enhancement activities. The high level or broad management policy context with respect to the fisheries enhancement activities incorporates a **precautionary approach** which places the burden on the enhancement programs to demonstrate that they are minimizing adverse impacts identified in Principle 1 and 2 indicators, and that this burden increases as the size of the enhancement activities,

Fisheries Certification Requirements

individually and cumulatively, increase. That burden of proof will also be higher for hatcheries than for other forms of artificial production that generally have lower impacts.

GSC4.7 Fishery-specific objectives PI (PI 3.2.1)

GSC4.7.1 ▲

'Clear objectives' may be interpreted to mean whether a management system, with any significant level of enhancement, has documented enhancement objectives and operational requirements related to minimizing various impacts on natural population components and ecosystem function in a clear operational plan.

GSC4.8 Decision-making processes PI (PI 3.2.2)

GSC4.8.1 ▲

In cases where enhancement programs are significant and uncertainties exist about the level of program impacts, the team should consider whether the management system is making these decisions about production, measures and strategies in a precautionary manner.

For example the team may consider decisions about increasing or decreasing release levels, whether measures are being implemented and evaluated that could be expected to reduce the scale and magnitude of potential interactions between wild and enhanced populations, and whether monitoring and evaluation programs are being initiated and/or maintained to collect essential information to inform future decisions.

It is widely recognized internationally in marine fisheries that an ideal way to increase the chance of meeting management objectives, improving future decision making, and increasing fairness is to conduct, through probabilistic simulation models/risk assessments, thorough evaluations of a wide range of management options, data collection procedures, and in some cases methods of data analysis (Walters and Martell 2004⁴⁹). Some such analyses, variously called Management Strategy Evaluations (Sainsbury et al. 2000⁵⁰) and closed-loop simulations (Walters 1986⁵¹), have been done for Pacific salmon (Walters 1986; Collie et al. 2012⁵²; Pestal et al. 2012). The most comprehensive examples of Management Strategy Evaluations take into account not only time dynamics of fish populations, but also dynamics of the fishery, observation error, implementation uncertainty (reflecting when regulations are followed imperfectly), and other sources of uncertainty. The outcome of such evaluations is identification of state-dependent decision-making rules that will best meet complex management objectives in the presence of these uncertainties. For a given fishery, the state-dependent rules are identified prior to the fishing and/or enhancement-activity season, and are the agreed-upon method for altering regulations based on in-season updates to the states of the system. Those rules are not subject to change in-season based on lobbying by special interest groups.

⁴⁹ Walters, C.J. and S.D. Martell. 2004. *Fisheries Ecology and Management*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J., 399 pp.

⁵⁰ Sainsbury K.J., A.E. Punt, A.D.M. Smith. 2000. Design of operational management strategies for achieving fishery ecosystem objectives. *ICES Journal of Marine Science* 57: 731–741.

⁵¹ Walters, C.J. 1986. *Adaptive Management of Renewable Resources*. MacMillan, New York, 374 pp.

⁵² Collie, J.S., R.M. Peterman, and B.M. Zuehlke. 2012. A fisheries risk-assessment framework to evaluate trade-offs among management options in the presence of time-varying productivity. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 69(2):209-223, plus supplement.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Most decisions in salmon management involve trade-offs between long-term conservation objectives and short-term fish-harvesting objectives, as well as trade-offs among user groups. Learning which decisions work best at meeting such complex objectives can be facilitated by decision makers publicly documenting the reasons for various decisions on fishing regulations and enhancement activities and comparing the expectations against outcomes.

The assessment team should consider whether such public documentation is provided in their scoring.

GSC4.9 Compliance and enforcement PI (PI 3.2.3) ▲

No modifications to Annex GSA

GSC4.10 Monitoring and management performance evaluation PI (PI 3.2.5) ▲

Scoring issue (b) – Internal and/or external review ▲

In scoring issue (b) Internal and/or external review:

- At the **SG60 level**, information should be available **internally** for hatchery program performance review.
- At the **SG80 level**, information should be available **externally and publicly** to enable external scrutiny of the hatchery performance.

GSC5 Weighting to be Applied in Enhanced Salmon Fisheries

Default weighting is applied in the MSC scoring spreadsheet, adjusted as appropriate for the additional PIs in salmon fisheries.

GSC6 Allowances for Inseparable or Practicably Inseparable (IPI) Catches in Salmon Fisheries

GSC6.1.1 ▲

Different from other wholly marine species, in salmon fisheries there may be two different types of IPI catch. These are 'non-target' and 'non-local' IPI as described below. Both types may qualify for IPI allowances so long as the stocks are not certified separately.

- f. Non-target IPI: This type of IPI will be a different species than that being assessed in Principle 1.

Non-local IPI: This type of IPI is the same species as that being assessed under Principle 1, but it originates from outside of the UoA.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Example: Salmon IPI catches

In British Columbia the P1 target species is Chinook. Other species such as coho may be incidentally caught at small percentages and thus may fall under IPI allowances. Furthermore, some Chinook originating from the United States may be caught as they migrate past the fishing ground in Canada.

GSC6.1.1.1 ▲

The limitations applied under SC6.1.1.1 mean that IPI salmon stocks are only eligible for consideration as IPI if they are less than 5% by weight of the catches. These IPI stocks must meet the additional requirements of Annex SA as normal.

GSC6.1.1.2▲

The intention of this clause and subclauses is to demonstrate that the UoA is not hindering recovery of the IPI stocks and rationale should be consistent with [GSA3.4.6](#).

As such, “a significant portion of the total catch” may be interpreted as 30% or more of the total removal of the stock and ‘not to significantly hinder’ should be consistent with [GSA3.4.6](#).

GSC6.1.3 ▲

This amendment to the normal requirement to use the most recent year’s data reflects the multi-cohort nature of salmon species.

For pink salmon, which have a two year life history, the average catch should be calculated across the most recent years of each cycle line.

For longer-lived salmon species, average recent catches may be calculated across periods appropriate to their life history in the region of the fishery.

In cases where different salmon species are in consideration as target and IPI species, average catches should first be calculated based on data from the number of years appropriate to each species; after which the percentage catches should be determined.

End of Annex SC Guidance

Annex GSD: Introduced Species Based Fisheries (ISBF) – Guidance ▲

Background

Fisheries that are based on non-native species were previously ineligible for certification to the MSC standard.

The MSC acknowledges that there are longstanding cases of fisheries introductions wherein the introduction of the non-native species occurred prior to the existence of guidelines and regulations on introduction of exotic species into new locations and that in many instances these introductions are now irreversible and that the fisheries in their current state are subject to management measures that are designed to ensure sustainable use of the target species and associated ecosystems.

In light of this and in recognition of the increasing number of these types of fisheries seeking to be evaluated against the MSC's standard, the MSC has developed a set of scope criteria to define the conditions under which an ISBF may be considered within scope of the MSC standard and programme.

Consistent with best international practice, the intent of this policy is to enable participation in the MSC of fisheries with longstanding introductions which are irreversible and which are subject to management measures that promote sustainable use of the resources.

There are certain ecological considerations which may be pertinent to fisheries and management systems where introductions of non-native species have occurred. Such considerations may require modifications to the guidance and default tree used in their assessment. Initial guidance on aspects of the assessment that may require such modifications is provided.

Annex SD is expected to be applicable over a pilot phase period of 18-24 months after which it is expected that the scope criteria and associated assessment guidance will be subject to review and revision.

Assessment of introduced species at Principle 1 is potentially complicated because of the varying, but valid ecological objectives that can exist for fisheries that are based on introduced species. In most ISBFs, objectives are set to ensure optimum productivity of the target (introduced) species. In certain other fisheries, objectives may be set to keep populations of the introduced species at a level that ensures wider ecosystem objectives are met. These wider ecosystem objectives may include keeping the target stock at sub-MSY levels in order to allow for some level of restoration of biodiversity.

GSD2.1.1 ▲

ISBFs are required to meet the intent of Principle 1, which is to ensure that exploited populations are maintained at high abundance levels.

End of Annex SD Guidance

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Marine Stewardship Council

MSC-MSCI Vocabulary



V1, 1st October 2014

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Marine Stewardship Council

MSC-MSCI Vocabulary



V1, 1st October 2014

MSC-MSCI Vocabulary – Normative

1 Purpose and Scope

- 1.1. This vocabulary defines terms and abbreviations used by the MSC and MSCI.

2 Introduction

- 2.1 Where possible, definitions in this document are taken from or based on definitions taken from authoritative sources, including:
- 2.1.1 The International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO).
 - 2.1.2 The glossary of the Fisheries and Aquaculture Department of the Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations.
 - 2.1.3 ISEAL Alliance's Code of Good Practice for Setting Social and Environmental Standards – Implementation Manual.
 - 2.1.4 The OECD Glossary of Statistical Terms.
- 2.2 Modifications made to these definitions have been made when necessary to address the specific circumstances of the MSC Certification Requirements.
- 2.3 Where a definition contains bold text, this indicates that the term used is also defined.

3 Vocabulary

Table 1: MSC-MSCI Terms and definition

Term	Definition
AAPG	Accreditation Audit Practice Group, a joint project of ISO and IAF
AB	See Accreditation Body .
ABC	See Allowable Biological Catch .
Accreditation	Third-party attestation related to a conformity assessment body (CAB) conveying formal demonstration of its competence to carry out specific conformity assessment tasks.
Accreditation Body	An organisation that assesses whether or not CABs are competent to carry out conformity assessment(s) against specified standards. This includes MSC's Contract Accreditation Body, ASI.
Accreditation Services International GmbH	See ASI .
Accurate	Accurate data refers to the Closeness of computations or estimates to the exact or true values that the statistics were intended to measure.
Achieving its Objective	The measure or strategy is having the consequences that were expected when the measure or strategy was implemented. It is not necessary to have evidence that a long term goal or objective is being or has been achieved. It is necessary to have evidence that the measure or strategy is producing some results with regard to performance of the fishery, and the results are consistent with movement along an identified pathway towards a specific long term goal or objective.
Actual Eligibility Date	The date from which product harvested from a certified fishery may be eligible to be identified as MSC, and may be permitted to bear the MSC Ecolabel, subject to Under-MSC-Assessment Fish requirements. This date is confirmed when the Public Certification Report is issued for the fishery.
Affiliate	Any direct or indirect holding company or subsidiary company of the relevant entity. A company is a "Subsidiary" of another company, if the latter company: (a) holds a majority of the voting rights in it; or (b) is a member of it and has the right to appoint or remove a majority of its board of directors; or (c) is a member of it and controls alone, pursuant to an agreement with other shareholders or members, a majority of the voting rights in it. "Company" includes any corporate or any legal entity capable under law of making a contract.
Allowable Biological	A term used by a management agency which refers to the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
Catch	range of allowable catch for a species or species group. It is set each year by a scientific group created by the management agency. The agency then takes the ABC estimate and sets the annual total allowable catch (TAC).
Annual Fees	Specified in the Ecolabel Licensing Agreement
Appeal	Request by a client for reconsideration of any adverse decision made by the CAB related to the client's desired certification status where a response is expected.
Applicant CAB	A CAB applying for MSC accreditation.
Aquaculture	The farming of aquatic organisms: fish, molluscs, crustaceans, aquatic plants, crocodiles, alligators, turtles, and amphibians. Farming implies some form of intervention in the rearing process to enhance production, such as regular stocking, feeding, protection from predators, etc. Farming also implies individual or corporate ownership of the stock being cultivated. For statistical purposes, aquatic organisms which are harvested by an individual or corporate body which has owned them throughout their rearing period contribute to aquaculture.
Aquaculture operation	A (commercially managed) operation aimed at farming of aquatic organisms.
Aquaculture Stewardship Council	A certification and labelling programme for responsibly farmed aquatic organisms.
ASC	See: Aquaculture Stewardship Council .
ASC's aquaculture standards	An ASC standard is a means for farmers of aquatic organisms to measurably demonstrate their efforts towards sound environmental development and social sustainability of their farming operations
ASC-Certified	A (commercially managed) operation aimed at farming of aquatic organisms or products resulting from - this operation which has been found in compliance with the species specific ASC standard.
ASC-Certified aquaculture products	Aquaculture products which meet the requirements as set out in the standards of the Aquaculture Stewardship Council and are certified by an accredited, independent Conformity Assessment Body.
ASC Scope	Certification to the MSC Chain of Custody standard relating to ASC-certified products
ASI	Accreditation Services International GmbH, provider of accreditation services for the MSC programme.
Assessment	A process that connects knowledge and action regarding a problem. Review and analysis of information derived from research for the purpose of informing the decision-making process. It may not require new research and involves assembling, organising, summarising, interpreting and reconciling existing knowledge, and communicating it to the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	policy-maker or other actors concerned by the problem. Assessment is used to refer to the initial certification and re-certifications of fisheries.
Assessment Contract	A contract specifying the terms and obligations on all parties for an assessment.
Assessment Methodology	The methodology followed by CABs when assessing conformity against standards.
Assessment Team	Two or more assessors conducting a fishery assessment, supported if needed by technical experts. NOTE One assessor of the assessment team is appointed as the assessment team leader.
Assessment Tree	The hierarchy of Principles, Components, Performance Indicators and Scoring Guideposts that is used as the basis for assessment of the fishery for conformity with the MSC fisheries standard. See: Default Tree , Draft Tree .
Audit	Systematic, independent and documented process for obtaining audit evidence and evaluating it objectively to determine the extent to which the audit criteria are fulfilled. Audit is used to refer to the surveillance of fisheries and all CoC audit activities.
Audit Criteria	Set of policies, procedures or requirements. NOTE: Audit criteria are used as a reference against which audit evidence is compared.
Audit Evidence	Records, statements of fact or other information, which are relevant to the audit criteria and are verifiable. NOTE: Audit evidence may be qualitative or quantitative.
Audit Findings	Results of the evaluation of the collected audit evidence against audit criteria. NOTE: Audit findings can indicate either conformity or non-conformity with audit criteria or opportunities for improvement.
Audit plan/planning	The proposed activities, and timings of these activities, to be carried out by the CAB to determine the extent to which certification criteria are fulfilled.
Audit Sampling	The application of audit procedures to less than 100% of the population of e.g. certificate holders.
Audit Scope	Extent and boundaries of an audit. NOTE: The audit scope generally includes a description of the physical locations, organisational units, activities and processes, as well as the time period covered.
Audit Team	One or more auditors conducting a CoC audit, supported if needed by technical experts. NOTE 1 One auditor of the audit team is appointed as the audit team leader.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	NOTE 2 The audit team may include auditors-in-training.
Auditor	Person with the competence to conduct an audit.
Bias (statistical)	An effect which deprives a statistical result of representativeness by systematically distorting it, as distinct from a random error which may distort on any one occasion but balances out on the average. Bias is different from variance; it is a measure of the difference with the true value because the samples are not representative of the data population.
Biologically Based Limit	In the SGs for P2 refers, at a minimum, to the point of serious or irreversible harm.
Board of Trustees	The MSC's governance group.
Breach	A violation by the licensee of the terms of its licence agreement with MSCI.
Bycatch Species	Organisms that have been taken incidentally and are not retained (usually because they have no commercial value).
C1	Criteria 1 (under any of the Principles in the MSC standard).
C2	Criteria 2 (under any of the Principles in the MSC standard).
CAB	See Conformity Assessment Body .
CAG	See Catch and Grow Fisheries .
Cancellation of Accreditation	Voluntary cancellation of an accreditation contract by any party to it according to the contractual arrangements.
Capture-Based Aquaculture	See Catch and Grow Fisheries .
CAR	See Corrective Action Request .
Catch and Grow Fisheries	Production systems that involve wild harvest followed by a grow-out phase (e.g. mussel farming based on wild spat collection).
CB	See: CAB , Conformity Assessment Body .
Certificate	A formal document issued by a CAB or accreditation body as evidence that the party (ies) named on the certificate is in conformity with the standard(s) noted on the certificate for the scope given.
Certificate Holder	An entity which holds a certificate issued by an MSC accredited CAB.
Certificate Sharing Mechanism	The agreement between the client group and any other eligible fishers or other entities detailing the certificate cost sharing mechanism to be used and any other requirements needed to enable the other eligible fishers or entities to access a fishery certificate.
Certification	Procedure by which a third party gives written or equivalent assurance that a product, process or service conforms to specified requirements.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
Certification Body	See Conformity Assessment Body, CAB .
Certification Requirements	Mandatory requirements applicable to CABs.
Certification Scheme	Certification system related to specified products or services, to which the same specified requirements, specific rules and procedures apply.
Certification System	Rules, procedures, and management for carrying out certification.
Certified	Certificate of conformity to an MSC standard granted by an accredited certification body.
Certified Fishery	A fishery that has been granted a certificate of conformity to the MSC P&Cs by a CAB.
Certifier	See Conformity Assessment Body (CAB) .
Chain of Custody	The procedures implemented by a fishery and subsequent entities handling fish and fish products to ensure that products from a certified fishery are not mixed with products from any other fishery and remain fully traceable during processing, storage, distribution and sale.
Chain of Custody Standard	The MSC International standard applied for all Chain of Custody audits.
CITES	Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora.
Client	The legal entity applying to the CAB for certification or that holds valid MSC certificate.
Client Group	Includes fishing operators within a unit of certification or other entities that the client identifies as being covered by and/or able to access the certificate. In cases where the client group does not fully control all fishing activity on a stock, the members should recognise that the achievement of any conditions placed on the fishery may be dependent on the actions of other parties, and thus outside their control (though some forms of influence may also be possible).
CoC	See Chain of Custody .
Coefficient of variance/ Coefficient of variation (CV)	The standard deviation of a random variable divided by the mean.
Competence	Demonstrated personal attributes and demonstrated ability to apply knowledge and skills.
Complainant	Person or organisation filing a complaint.
Complaint	Expression of dissatisfaction, other than appeal or objection, by any person or organisation, relating to the activities of an accreditation body, a CAB a Certificate Holder, the Peer Review College or the MSC, where a response is expected.
Component	The second level of three within the Assessment Tree

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	structure.
Condition	A requirement to achieve outcomes in order to achieve a score of 80 or above.
Conformity	Fulfilment of a need or expectation that is stated, generally implied or obligatory.
Conformity Assessment Body	<p>Body that performs conformity assessment services and that can be the object of accreditation.</p> <p>NOTE 1: Whenever the word CAB is used in the text, it applies to both the “applicant and accredited CABs” unless otherwise specified.</p> <p>NOTE 2: The terms Certification Body and CB refer to accredited CABs.</p>
Consensus	<p>General agreement, characterised by the absence of sustained opposition to substantial issues by any important part of the concerned interests and by a process seeking to take into account the views of interested parties, particularly those directly affected, and to reconcile any conflicting arguments.</p> <p>NOTE: Consensus need not imply unanimity.</p>
Consequence Spatial Analysis	See CSA .
Consumer Facing Product	Any Licensed Product that is not a Non-Consumer Facing Product including products listed on menus.
Consumer Ready Tamper Proof Product	Any single item for presentation as such to the ultimate consumer consisting of a foodstuff and the packaging into which it was put before being offered for sale, whether such packaging encloses the foodstuff completely or only partially, but in any case in such a way that the content cannot be altered without opening or irreversibly changing the packaging.
Contract Processors	<p>An organisation that is contracted by a certified organisation (including a subsidiary or affiliate of the certified organisation) wherein the product is altered in some way. Specifically:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the processor does not own the product; the processor processes the product on instruction from the certified organisation, usually the owner of the product; packaging may be supplied to the contract processor or the contract processor may commission the printing of the packaging themselves. <p>This definition excludes contract processors that take ownership of the product since they are required to have their own chain of custody certification.</p>
Controlled Document	An approved document that must be maintained for uniformity, process control, and tracking. There is one approved original for each document, instruction, procedure, standard, or form. It may be maintained on paper, or as an electronic file. The master copy of any MSC controlled

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	document is the electronic file available for viewing on the network.
Corrective Action	Action to eliminate the cause of a detected non-conformity or other undesirable situation.
Corrective Action Request (CAR)	Describes detected non-conformity along with a request for corrective action by the responsible organisation. Can be issued by a CAB or accreditation body. See Non-conformity .
Criterion (Criteria)	A sub-division of an MSC Principle.
CSA	The Consequence Spatial Analysis (CSA) is a tool within the RBF and is a semi-quantitative approach to examine several consequence and spatial attributes in order to provide a relative measure of the UoA's risk to the habitat. Each habitat (scoring element) is assigned its own CSA score.
CSR	Corporate Social Responsibility.
Culture-Based Fisheries	See Hatch and Catch Fisheries .
Current CAB	The CAB to which an entity is currently contracted.
Current Requirements	MSC scheme documents that are in force and made available for use to CABs by ASI in accordance with the accreditation contract between ASI and each CAB.
CV	See Coefficient of variance .
Day(s)	Calendar days unless otherwise stated.
Decision Making Entity	The individual or committee that makes a decision on whether or not to grant, suspend, withdraw or change the certificate or scope of certification(s).
Default tree	The standard assessment tree used as a starting point to develop an assessment tree for each fishery assessment.
Derogation	The suspension of an MSC requirement for a defined term, often only for those in specific circumstances.
Destructive Fishing Practices	Fishing with poisons or fishing with explosives.
Determination	Recommended certification outcome.
Discrete high seas non-HMS	Species or stocks distributed exclusively in the high seas, i.e., in waters beyond the areas of national jurisdiction (which can be 200 miles or less) excluding species fixed on the continental shelf which remain under the sovereign rights of the coastal States, and which are not highly migratory species or stocks.
Document Administrator	Staff member appointed to take full responsibility for the control of all scheme documents and for maintaining the document status register.
Draft tree	Proposed assessment tree; modified version of the default tree.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
eCert	Common name for MSC Database.
Ecolabel	A label that conforms to the principles described in ISO 14020:2000 Environmental labels and declarations: General Principles.
Ecological Role	In the context of Principle 1, the trophic role of a stock within the ecosystem under assessment against the MSC standard.
Ecosystem Services	Ecosystem services are the benefits people obtain from ecosystems. These include provisioning services such as food and water; regulating services such as flood and disease control; cultural services, such as spiritual and cultural benefits; and supporting services, such as nutrient cycling or waste degradation, that maintain the conditions for life on Earth.
Eligibility Date	The eligibility date from which product from a certified fishery is eligible to bear the ecolabel under certain conditions.
Endangered, Threatened or Protected Species	Species recognised by national legislation and/or binding international agreements to which the jurisdictions controlling the fishery under assessment are party. Species listed under Appendix I of CITES shall be considered ETP species for the purposes of the MSC assessment, unless it can be shown that the particular stock of the CITES listed species impacted by the fishery under assessment is not endangered.
Enhanced Fisheries	Any activity aimed at supplementing or sustaining the recruitment, or improving the survival and growth of one or more aquatic organisms, or at raising the total production or the production of selected elements of the fishery beyond a level that is sustainable by natural processes. It may involve stocking, habitat modification, elimination of unwanted species, fertilisation or combinations of any of these practices.
Entity	See Legal Entity .
Environmental Label	See Ecolabel .
Estimated Length of Full Assessment	The time between commencing an assessment and the predicted date by which an assessment is expected to be completed and certification awarded if the assessment result is positive.
ETP	See Endangered, Threatened or Protected Species .
Expedited Audit	Irregularly timed unannounced or short-notice audits. No more than 1 calendar day's advance notice to be given to the Certificate Holder.
Expiry of (Ecolabel) Application	An application is deemed to have expired, if no response is received by MSC I from an applicant to license the MSC ecolabel during a period of 9 months from the dispatch of any request. MSC I will then withdraw the application.
External Influences	A description of external influences (such as environmental issues) that may affect the fishery and its management.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
FAD	Fish Aggregating Device.
FAM	See Fisheries Assessment Methodology .
Fisheries Assessment Methodology	Fisheries Assessment Methodology, now superseded by the MSC Certification Requirements.
FAO	Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations.
FAO Statistical Area(s)	FAO statistical area/s – See ftp://ftp.fao.org/fi/maps/world_2003.gif).
Fees	See Annual Fees and Royalties.
Final consumer	A person or group of persons that purchase/receive certified seafood and consume it
Final Report	The Final Report of an assessment of a fishery prepared by the team and the CAB, after public comment, peer review and the determination of the CAB. Includes scores, weightings and special conditions.
Financial Year	<p>Any period of 12 months beginning on 1st April and ending on 31st March. The only exceptions to this would be:</p> <p>The first Royalty year shall commence on the Commencement Date of the license agreement. For example if the license agreement start on 4th of August the Financial Year will run until the 31st of March</p> <p>Where a license agreement is terminated the Financial Year will be from the commencement date of the last Royalty year until the date the licence agreement is terminated. For example if the license agreement is terminated on the 4th of August the Financial year will be from the 1st April until the 4th of August.</p>
Fish and Fish Products	Whole fish or products that are, or are derived from, any aquatic organism.
Fishers	Individuals who take part in fishing conducted from a fishing vessel, a floating or fixed platform, or from shore. Does not include fish processors or traders.
Fishery	<p>FAO defines a fishery as a unit determined by an authority or other entity that is engaged in raising and/or harvesting fish. Typically, the unit is defined in terms of some or all of the following: people involved, species or type of fish, area of water or seabed, method of fishing, class of boats and purpose of the activities.</p> <p>The MSC requirements also use this term to refer to a Unit of Assessment (or a group of such UoAs) that is under assessment or certified against the MSC fisheries standard.</p> <p>In Principle 3, however, it is the management of the wider fleet which denotes the specific “fishery” that is the subject of assessment under the fishery-specific management system PIs (i.e. 3.2.1-3.2.4).</p>
Fishing Operators	Fishing vessels, or other catching units, included within the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	Unit of Assessment and Unit of Certification.
Fishing Season	The seasonal operation of the fishery.
Fluctuation	Variability over time around the target reference point.
Forced labour	All work or service which is exacted from any person under the menace of any penalty and for which the said person has not offered himself voluntarily (International Labour Organisation Forced Labour Convention, 1930: Article 2 paragraph 1). This includes other unethical labour practices recognised under law as forced labour, including debt bondage, human trafficking and other forms of modern slavery.
Generation Time	The average age of a reproductive individual in a given fish stock.
Green Weight	The weight of a catch prior to processing.
Grey Literature	Information produced on all levels of government, academics, business and industry in electronic and print formats not controlled by commercial publishing i.e., cannot be found easily through conventional channels such as publishers. It is frequently original and usually recent.
Group	A group entity and its associated individual sites which collectively apply for certification.
Group Entity	The central function that performs the activities required of the group. Usually an entity that employs or contracts individuals to carry out activities required of the group.
Guidance	Examples, explanations, illustrations, background and other information to help users understand MSC Certification Requirements.
Habitat	The chemical and bio-physical environment, including biogenic structures, where fishing takes place.
Habitat Function	The range of services provided to an organism, including, but not limited to, mediating trophic interactions, reproduction, shelter, and feeding, and influencing the behaviour of organisms.
Habitat Modified	Production systems that involve the modification of habitats to increase production or favour desirable species (e.g. lobster casitas, fish attracting devices – FADs, mussel ropes or other structures).
Habitat Structure	The arrangement of physical and biogenic formations that support plant and animal communities.
HAC	See Hatch and Catch Fisheries .
Harvest Control Rule	A set of well-defined pre-agreed rules or actions used for determining a management action in response to changes in indicators of stock status with respect to reference points.
Harvest Strategy	The combination of monitoring, stock assessment, harvest control rules and management actions, which may include an

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	MP or an MP (implicit) and be tested by MSE.
Hatch and Catch Fisheries	Production systems that involve the introduction of fish either as eggs, larvae or juvenile and subsequent recapture (e.g. salmon stocking).
HCR	See Harvest Control Rule .
Highly Migratory Species or Stocks	Marine species whose life cycle includes lengthy migrations, usually through the EEZ of two or more countries as well as into international waters. This term usually is used to denote tuna and tuna-like species, marlins and swordfish.
HMS	See Highly Migratory Species or Stocks .
History of the Fishery	A description of the general history of the fishery, including initial development of the fishery and significant changes within the history of the fishery.
HM	See Habitat Modified .
IAF	International Accreditation Forum
Implemented Successfully	There is objective evidence that the fishery is following the practice(s) required by the measure or strategy, and that some expected consequences of that measure(s) are seen in the performance of the fishery. It is not necessary to have evidence that the measure or strategy has resulted in benefits to the component being modified.
Inform	Provide information to a party, keeping a record of having provided the information.
Informative	Supplemental information such as recommendations, tutorials, commentary, background, and history which is not a requirement.
Inseparable	Situations where the target stock(s) and non-target stock(s) cannot be distinguished during normal fishing operations. Ability to separate catches of target stock(s) from catches of non-target stock(s) in these cases could require, for example, post-capture genetic analysis.
Intellectual Property Rights	Any and all rights to copyright, topography, databases, designs, patents, trade or service marks, know-how and all other intellectual property, any and all proprietary or other rights (whether or not any of the same are registered or registrable, and including any applications or rights to apply for registration of any of the same) which may exist anywhere and in any form worldwide.
Interested Party	Any person or group concerned with or directly affected by a standard – used synonymously in this procedure with the term ‘stakeholder’.
Interim Certification	The issuance of a temporary CoC certificate in advance of an on-site audit by a CAB. The issuance follows permission being sought by the CAB and granted by the MSC, provided that the risk is low and manageable.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
Internal Audit	The mechanism of verifying a site's compliance with internal requirements and MSC CoC requirements. This may include onsite audits, remote paperwork reviews, or other means, and will be appropriate to the size and nature of the site.
International Standard	Standard that is adopted by an international standardising/standards organisation and made available to the public.
Introduced Species Based Fishery	Any fishery which prosecutes a target fin or shellfish species that was intentionally or accidentally transported and released by human activity into an aquatic environment beyond its natural distribution range. Note: Does not include species that are "introduced" into a location due to an expansion in their natural geographic range.
IPI	Inseparable or practicably inseparable
ISEAL Alliance	International Social and Environmental Accreditation and Labelling Alliance.
ISBF	See Introduced Species Based Fishery .
ISO	International Organisation for Standardisation.
ISO Guide 65	ISO/IEC Guide 65: 1996, General requirements for bodies operating product certification systems.
IUCN	International Union for the Conservation of Nature.
Justification	Rationale establishing that no adverse impact on the competence, consistency and impartiality of the certification body's operation of the certification scheme has resulted.
Key elements	Aspects of the fishery which are essential to determining how the fishery performs against the MSC P&Cs.
Key Information	Key information is defined as all information used by the assessment team for scoring and in rationales that is not considered confidential information under FCR4.3, and that would be required to enable a stakeholder to be able to properly review the logic used by the team in their conclusion about a particular PI score.
Key personnel	Staff within the CAB who make decisions on certification, and top management, or staff within an organisation that are responsible for making decisions, setting procedures, or verifying conformity as related to MSC requirements.
Internal Group Entity Review	For group CoC: Review carried out by a group on its own organisational units, including the group entity and all certified sites, to review conformity with MSC group CoC requirements and determine the suitability of its management systems to meet its desired objectives.
Lead Assessor / Lead Auditor	Assessor / Auditor who is given the overall responsibility for specified assessment/ audit activities related to management systems conformity assessment / audit.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
Legal Entity	Any individual, partnership, proprietorship, corporation, association or other organisation that has, in the eyes of the law, the capacity to make a contract or an agreement and the abilities to assume an obligation and to pay off its debts. A legal entity, under the law, is responsible for its actions and can be sued for damages.
Legal Requirements	Any present or future law, regulation, directive, instruction, direction or rule of any competent authority including any amendment, extension or replacement thereof which is from time to time in force.
Level	Layer within the assessment tree hierarchy: principle; component; performance indicator; or scoring issue.
Licence	The “Licence”, which when signed incorporates the Terms & Conditions of the Agreement and its Annexes and which together with MSCI approval constitute the Agreement.
Licensed Products	The products described in a MSCI standard Pro-Format Product Approval Form or similar signed by the Licensee.
Limit Reference Point	The point beyond which the state of a fishery and/or a resource is not considered desirable and which management is aiming to avoid.
Local Fisheries Management Areas(s)	Local fisheries management area/s (e.g. ICES divisions VI, VII, and VIII a, b, c), Preferably the area is marked on a map.
LRP	See Limit Reference Point .
Main Commercial Market	The main markets within which fish and fish products resulting from the fishery are sold.
Management Procedure	The combination of pre-defined data, together with an algorithm to which such data are input to provide a value for a TAC or effort control measure; this combination has been demonstrated, through simulation trials, to show robust performance in the presence of uncertainties. Additional rules may be included, for example to spread a TAC spatially to cater for uncertainty about stock structure.
Management Review	Review carried out by the top management of an entity on its own organisational units to determine the on-going suitability of its management systems to meet its desired objectives.
Management Strategy Evaluation	Usually synonymous with MP approach; often used to describe the process of testing generic MPs or harvest strategies.
Management System	The framework of processes and procedures used to ensure that an organisation can fulfil all tasks required to achieve its objectives. In a fisheries context includes agencies involved in the management of the fishery, the legislative framework within which the fishery is undertaken and the core management measures implemented (including the TAC for the fishery for which certification is sought).
Maximum Sustainable	The highest theoretical equilibrium yield that can be

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
Yield	continuously taken (on average) from a stock under existing (average) environmental conditions without affecting significantly the reproduction process.
May	A permitted course of action, within the limits of the standard.
MCS	Monitoring, control and surveillance.
Method of Catch	The fishing method(s) employed in the fishery.
MP	See Management Procedure .
MP (Implicit)	A set of rules for management of a resource that contains the elements of an MP, but has not yet been evaluated through simulation trials.
MP Approach	Management of a resource using a fully specified set of rules incorporating feedback control; the approach is explicitly precautionary through its requirement for simulation trials to have demonstrated robust performance across a range of uncertainties about resource status and dynamics.
MSC	The Marine Stewardship Council.
MSC CoC Audit Checklist⁵³	The audit checklist developed by the MSC which CABs shall use to record evidence of conformity with the CoC standard. Two versions of the MSC CoC Audit Checklist have been developed; one for single and multi-site CoC certificates and one for group CoC.
MSC Accredited Certification Body	A CAB which is accredited by ASI to undertake certification audits of applicants for the MSC certification scheme, issue MSC certificates and the conduct surveillance within the scope set by ASI.
MSC Certification	See Certified .
MSC Certification Standards	All MSC requirements as amended and re-issued from time to time in relation to the certification of fisheries or of chain of custody operators.
MSC group CoC requirements	All MSC scheme documents and requirements that organisations need to conform with for group Chain of Custody requirements of the Certification Requirements and the Chain of Custody standard.
MSC Database	A collection of records on the fishery and CoC certification programme held by the MSC.
MSC Ecolabel	The Type III Environmental Label trademarked by MSC and licensed for use on products and to promote products certified by a certification body accredited to the MSC certification scheme. An 'ingredient brand' that reassures customers that independent, third party certification has been carried out to demonstrate the product comes from a sustainable fishery.
MSC P&Cs	See MSC Principles and Criteria .

⁵³ TAB 22, date of application 31 March 2014

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
MSC Principles and Criteria	The MSC Principles and Criteria for Sustainable Fishing.
MSC procedure for product authentication sampling	The procedure provided by the MSC to organisations and individuals taking seafood samples on their behalf for product authentication testing.
MSC Representative	For group CoC: The one person who has the responsibility to ensure the group's conformity with all MSC group CoC requirements. Appointed by the group entity.
MSC Requirement	An element mandated by MSC for CABs or for certified entities.
MSC Standard	Either Annex SA for Fisheries or the Chain of Custody standard.
MSC Trustee	A member of the MSC Board of Trustees.
MSC-certified fish	Whole fish or products that are, or are derived from, any aquatic organism harvested in a certified fishery, as defined in the Unit of Certification of a valid MSC certificate.
MSC-eligible fish	Whole fish or products that are, or are derived from, any aquatic organism harvested in a certified fishery, as defined in the Unit of Certification of a valid MSC certificate.
MSCI	Marine Stewardship Council International Ltd.
MSCI Director	A member of the Board of Directors of MSCI.
MSCI Licensing Requirements	MSCI Licensing Agreements, together with the Terms and Conditions, and all Rules for ecolabel use.
MSE	See Management Strategy Evaluation .
MSY	See Maximum Sustainable Yield .
Multi-site	Two or more sites that are individually audited and that share a chain of custody certificate
Name of Fishery	To be determined by the fishery client and the certification body. The name determined must be unique and unambiguous and in addition to specifying the species for which certification is sought, may also incorporate details of the client group for the assessment, geographical location of the fishery and the fishing method employed.
Non-conforming Product	Fish or fish products that are claimed to be MSC-certified (including, but not limited to, being labelled with the MSC Ecolabel) for which a certificate holder is unable to prove that the product is from a MSC-certified source.
Non-conformity	Failure of a CAB to conform to one or more MSC Certification Requirements, or of a certificate holder to conform to any requirement of an MSC standard.
Non-Consumer Facing	A Licensed Product or material that is not available directly to consumers (including bulk package products, or the use of the ecolabel on websites not associated with any particular product, supplier price lists, or business-to-business

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	catalogues).
Non-Reduced Risk Group (non-RRG)	For group CoC: A group that does not meet the Reduced Risk Group eligibility criteria in BB2.5 and is certified against the standard (non-RRG) certification requirements
Normal surveillance	Surveillance level that requires on-site audits annually.
Normative	A prescriptive element; a requirement.
Notification Report	Report from the certification body formally notifying the MSC of a fishery client's intent to undergo a full assessment.
Objections Procedure	Procedure as described in Annex PD
Objective Evidence	Verifiable information or records pertaining to the quality of an item or service or to the existence and implementation of a quality system element, which is based on visual observation, measurement or test that, can include independent witnesses, peer-reviewed scientific research, or otherwise verifiable and credible information.
OP	See Objections Procedure .
Other Eligible Fishers	MSC fisheries standard as part of the Unit of Assessment; and are not currently part of the Unit of Certification but are potentially eligible to join the Unit of Certification under a certificate sharing arrangement. This group will be defined by the CAB and would normally comprise fishers targeting the same stock using the same methods/gear and operating under the same management regime as the fishers included in the Unit of Certification. It might also include other situations, for instance the catches of a stock defined in the Unit of Assessment that are taken as incidental catch in another certified fishery.
Other Fisheries in the Area	A description of other fisheries in the vicinity not subject to the certification that may interact with the fishery being assessed.
Overfished	The stock may remain overfished (i.e., with a biomass well below the agreed limit) for some time even though fishing pressure might be reduced or suppressed.
Overlapping assessment	An assessment of Overlapping Fisheries
Overlapping Fisheries	Two or more fisheries which require assessment of some, or all, of the same aspects of MSC Principles 1, 2 and/or 3 within their respective units of certification.
P1	Principle 1 of the MSC Principles and Criteria.
P2	Principle 2 of the MSC Principles and Criteria.
P3	Principle 3 of the MSC Principles and Criteria.
Peer Review Draft Report	The draft report of the assessment of the fishery prepared by the team and the CAB submitted to peer reviewers. Follows preliminary draft report, precedes Public Comment Draft Report.
Performance Indicator	The lowest level of sub-criterion of a MSC Criterion in the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	decision tree; the level at which the performance of the fishery is scored by the team.
PI	See Performance Indicator .
PISG	Performance Indicators and Scoring Guideposts.
Policy Advisory	A type of MSC scheme document.
Potential Scope	Scope of certification that a client submitted to a CAB at the time of its application for CoC certification.
Practicably Inseparable	Situations where the ability to separate catches of target stock(s) from catches of non-target stock(s) requires significant modification to existing harvesting and processing methods employed during normal fishing operations.
Pre-Assessment Report	Report to a client from the CAB following a pre-assessment.
Precautionary approach	The precautionary approach shall be interpreted to mean being cautious when information is uncertain, unreliable or inadequate and that the absence of adequate scientific information shall not be used as a reason for postponing or failing to take conservation and management measures
Precision	Precision is a quality associated with a class of measurements and refers to the way in which repeated observations conform to themselves; and in a somewhat narrower sense refers to the dispersion of the observations, or some measure of it, whether or not the mean value around which the dispersion is measured approximates the “true” value. It is the inverse of uncertainty.
Pre default tree PI equivalents	Prior to the use of the default tree (FAM v1) CABs developed their own trees unique to each fishery. Each tree had performance indicators which can be considered similar to those in the default tree.
Preliminary Draft Report	The draft report of the assessment of the fishery prepared by the team and the CAB provided to the client prior to peer review. Precedes peer review draft report.
Preservation	The process designed to protect products from natural spoilage and to allow their long-term storage. These processes include but are not limited to freezing, canning, dehydrating, drying, curing, smoking, sterilising.
Preventive Action	Action to eliminate the cause of a potential non-conformity or other undesirable potential situation.
PRI	Point of Recruitment Impairment – the stock level below which recruitment may be impaired.
Principle	A fundamental element, in the MSC’s case, used as the basis for defining a well-managed and sustainable fishery.
Probability	Probability interpretations of terms such as “Highly likely” are provided for general guidance and for when quantitative measures are available, not to imply that a quantitative measure is required.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	Probability interpretations are intentionally defined differently in the default tree for Principle 1, for the Retained and Bycatch Species Components for Principle 2, for the ETP Component for Principle 2, and for the Habitats and Ecosystem Components for Principle 2. They reflect differences in understanding about these components, legal requirements or past MSC practice.
Processes and Production Methods Standard	A standard that sets out criteria for the processes and/or production methods by which a product or service is produced, in pursuit of specific social and/or environmental objectives.
Product authentication testing	The use of DNA analysis or other product authentication tools which identify seafood by species, catch area or farm of origin
PSA	The Productivity-Susceptibility Analysis (PSA) used as the 'Level 2' analysis in the RBF. This semi-quantitative approach examines several attributes of each species that contribute to or reflect its productivity or susceptibility, in order to provide a relative measure of the risk to the scoring element from fishing activities. The PSA is required when using the RBF to score target species in P1, and may also be triggered for retained species or bycatch species in P2. Each species (scoring element) identified within a given PI is assigned its own PSA score.
Public Certification Report	The report of the fishery assessment accepted by the MSC for publication on the MSC website; includes the Final Report and any written decisions by the CAB and/or independent Objections Panel arising from any objections raised about the fishery assessment outcome or process.
Public Comment Draft Report	The draft report of the assessment of the fishery prepared by the team and the CAB released for public comment. Follows peer review draft report. Precedes final report.
Public Surveillance Report	Surveillance report without the inclusion of any confidential annexes.
Qualitative data	Qualitative data are data describing the attributes or properties that an object possesses. The properties are categorized into classes that may be assigned numeric values. However, there is no significance to the data values themselves, they simply represent attributes of the object concerned.
Quantitative data	Quantitative data are data expressing a certain quantity, amount or range. Usually, there are measurement units associated with the data, e.g. metres, in the case of the height of a person. It makes sense to set boundary limits to such data, and it is also meaningful to apply arithmetic operations to the data.
Quarter	One of four 3 month periods of a calendar year.
RBF	See Risk Based Framework .

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
Re-assessment	Assessment of a fishery within two years of the expiration of a valid fishery certificate
Reduced Risk Group (RRG)	For group CoC: A group that meets the Reduced Risk Group eligibility criteria in BB2.5. RRG eligible groups may elect to become certified against a designated set of certification requirements (found in Annex BC) applicable only for RRGs
Reduced Surveillance	Surveillance level that requires on-site surveillance audits on the 2nd and 4th anniversaries of certification.
Reduction of scope of accreditation	Process of suspending or withdrawing accreditation for part of the scope of accreditation.
Reference Points	Biological reference points; Stock Status Reference Points used to define management action in response to stock status.
Reinstatement	Re-activation or lifting by written approval of the suspended part(s) of the scope of certification or accreditation following successful implementation of corrective action.
Remote surveillance	Surveillance level that requires annual audits alternating on-site and off-site audits ('non-consecutive off-site audits').
Retained Species	Species that are retained by the fishery (usually because they are commercially valuable or because they are required to be retained by management rules).
RFMO	Regional Fisheries Management Organisation.
Risk Based Framework	A framework of assessment tools for scoring 'outcome' Performance Indicators in cases where insufficient information is available to score the UoA using the default Scoring Guideposts. See CSA , PSA and SICA .
Root Cause	The source or origin of non-conformity, as well as any contributing factors involved.
Royalty	The royalty payable on the Net Sales Value (or Net Purchase Price for restaurants/fish mongers) of the Consumer Facing Products payable by the Licensee for that Royalty Year at the royalty rate set out in the Licence.
Royalty Year	Any period of 12 months beginning on 1st April and ending on 31st March, save in respect of a first Royalty Year which shall commence on the Commencement Date of a licence agreement, or, if a licence agreement is terminated on a date other than 31st March, the period from the commencement of the last Royalty Year during the term of the agreement to the date of such termination.
Rules	The rules contained in the document entitled "Ecolabel User Guide" including any amendments or additions notified by MSCI to the Licensee in writing from time to time.
Scale Intensity Consequence Analysis	See SICA .
Scheme Document	Official documents setting out rules and procedures for

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	accreditation, certification, assessment and audit relevant to the MSC certification scheme.
Scope	Can mean scope of certification or scope of accreditation or both depending on context.
Scope of Certification	Specific activities and products for which certification is sought or has been granted.
Scope of MSC Accreditation	Specific tasks for which accreditation is sought or has been granted.
Scoring Elements	A list of matters that are to be taken into account when determining the performance score on an indicator; also the matters used in determining a SG benchmark. In the case of Principles 1 or 2, used to mean a sub-division of individual parts of the ecosystem affected by the fishery, such as different species/stocks/sub-stocks or habitats within a Component.
Scoring Guidepost	The benchmark level of performance established by the team in respect of each numeric score or rating for each indicator sub-criterion.
Scoring Issues	The different parts of a single scoring guidepost, where more than one part exists and covering related but different topics.
SDO	See Standard Development Organisation .
Semester	If the Licensee is selling Licensed Products to the value of USD 10m or over in a Royalty Year, it shall be the same as a Quarter. If the Licensee is selling Licensed Products less than USD 10m in a Royalty Year, either the first or the second 6 month period of a Royalty Year.
Semi structured interviews	Formal interview based on questions prepared in advance but with sufficient flexibility that allows the questioner to adapt to the specific situation on hand by probing emerging themes with additional questions that may deviate from those planned in advance
SG	See Scoring Guidepost .
Shall	Denotes a requirement.
Shared Stocks	Stocks of fish that migrate across the boundaries of adjacent Exclusive Economic Zones (EEZs) of two or more coastal States.
Shark finning	The practice of removing any of the fins of a shark (including the tail) while at sea and discarding the remainder of the shark at sea.
Should	Denotes a requirement that shall be followed unless there are reasons not to. If so the justification for not following the requirement shall be recorded.
SICA	The Scale Intensity Consequence Analysis used as the 'Level 1' analysis in the RBF. This qualitative approach identifies the

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	activities mostly likely to be associated with 'worst case' impacts on any species, habitat or ecosystem. A SICA is best conducted with the participation of a diverse group of stakeholders who are able to provide a range of knowledge about the fishery under assessment.
Simulation Test	See Simulation Trial .
Simulation Trial	A computer simulation to project resource dynamics for a particular scenario forward for a specified period, under controls specified within an MP, to ascertain performance; such projections will typically be repeated a large number of times to capture variability.
Site	A discrete physical location.
Species Common Name(s)	Common name(s) for the species. This should include common names used in the key commercial markets for the species.
Species Latin Name	Latin name for the species.
Stakeholder	Any person or group (including governmental and non-governmental institutions, traditional communities, universities, research institutions, development agencies and banks, donors, etc.) with an interest or claim (whether stated or implied) which has the potential of being impacted by or having an impact on a given project and its objectives. Stakeholder groups that have a direct or indirect "stake" can be at the household, community, local, regional, national, or international level.
Standard	A document established by consensus and approved by a recognised body that provides for common and repeated use, rules, guidelines or characteristics for activities or their results, aimed at the achievement of the optimum degree of order in a given context.
Standard Development Organisation	An organisation that assumes responsibility for developing, coordinating, promulgating, revising, amending, reissuing, interpreting, or otherwise maintaining standards. Note: MSC is an SDO.
SC	MSC Stakeholder Council.
Stock	The living resources in the community or population from which catches are taken in a fishery. Use of the term stock implies that the particular population is a biologically distinct unit. As noted in the FAO Fisheries Glossary, some species form a single stock (e.g. southern bluefin tuna) while others are composed of several stocks (e.g. albacore tuna in the Pacific Ocean comprises separate Northern and Southern stocks).
Stock Assessment	An integrated analysis of information to estimate the status and trends of a population against benchmarks such as reference points.

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
Stock Name	A textual description of the biological unit stock exploited by the fishery, as commonly used in management and assessment reports.
Stock Region	A textual description of the geographic area within which the fishery is undertaken.
Straddling Stocks	Stock which occurs both within the EEZ and in an area beyond and adjacent to EEZ.
Stratification	The process of dividing a population into sub-populations, each of which is a group of sampling units, which have similar characteristics.
Subcontracting	The process of contracting out to third parties or affiliates and that there is a written, legal agreement between the parties.
Subcontractors	An entity that is contracted to carry out work for a third party or affiliate (includes contract processors, transportation companies, distribution companies and any other storage or processing facilities).
Sub-criterion	A criterion below the level of the MSC Criteria; the assessment tree may contain any number of levels of sub-criteria.
Succeeding CAB	The CAB to which a client wishes to move.
Superseded	MSC certification scheme documents that have been withdrawn and replaced with a new version.
Supply Chain Reconciliation	The reconciliation of purchases and sales of MSC certified seafood between buyers and sellers over a defined period of time.
Surveillance	Set of activities, except re-assessment, to monitor the continued fulfilment by accredited CABs of requirements for accreditation, or of certificate holders of requirements for certification.
Surveillance Audit	The periodic or random review and assessment of a certificate holder's activities in order to determine on-going conformity with standards and compliance with conditions and/or non-conformities raised.
Surveillance level	Audit type (off-site or on-site audit) and frequency of Surveillance. See Normal , Remote and Reduced Surveillance .
Surveillance Report	The report of a Surveillance Audit.
Surveillance cycle	All surveillance audits and activities carried out within the timeframe of a certificate.
Suspension of Accreditation	Process of temporarily making MSC accreditation invalid, in full or in part of the scope of accreditation.
Suspension of Certification	Process of temporarily making MSC certification invalid, in full or for part of the scope of certification.
TAB	See Technical Advisory Board .

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
TAB Directive	A document approved by the Technical Advisory Board, usually providing a ruling or interpretation about an aspect of the MSC Ps & Cs, Chain of Custody Standard or other documents from the MSC certification scheme.
TAC	See Total Allowable Catch .
Target Reference Point	The point which corresponds to a state of a fishery and/or resource which is considered desirable and which management is trying to achieve.
Target Stock(s)	Those fish stocks which have been assessed under Principle 1 of the MSC fisheries standard for Sustainable Fishing. Only the Target stock(s) from the UoC shall be eligible to carry the MSC logo.
Team	The team leader and team member(s) working on a conformity assessment of one organisation. While a team for a CoC audit may be one person, a team for a fishery audit will always be two or more persons.
Team Leader	A person who manages assessment activities.
Team Member	A person who performs assessment activities.
Technical Advisory Board	A body appointed by the Board of Trustees.
Termination	Voluntary cancellation of the certification contract by either party according to the contractual arrangements See Cancellation .
Terms and Conditions	The terms and conditions appended to a Licence Agreement.
Territory	The territories set out in the MSC I Pro-Format.
Testing	The involvement of some sort of structured logical argument and analysis that supports the choice of strategy. In the context of fishery, it can include the use of experience from analogous fisheries, empirical testing (for example practical experience of performance or evidence of past performance) and simulation testing (for instance using computer-intensive modelling such as management strategy evaluation).
The MSC Claim	MSC approved text which must accompany the MSC ecolabel when displayed on products, menus or catering lists.
Tools	Mechanisms for implementing strategies under Principles 1 or 2. For example, total allowable catches, mesh regulations, closed areas, etc. could be used to implement harvest control rules.
Total Allowable Catch (TAC)	The TAC is the total catch allowed to be taken from a resource in a specified period (usually a year), as defined in the management plan. The TAC may be allocated to the stakeholders in the form of quotas as specific quantities or proportions.
Traceback or Tracing	The activity to identify the origin of a specified unit and/or batch of product located within the supply chain by reference

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	to records held by individuals or companies that hold MSC Chain of Custody certification. In the MSC's context a specified unit and/or batch of product are fish, fish materials or fish products from a certified fishery.
Transfer Date	Date on which all rights and obligations for maintaining the certificate shall be passed from the current CAB to the succeeding CAB.
Transfer Notice Date	The date on which the client provided written notice to the current CAB of their wish to transfer CABs.
TRP	See Target Reference Point .
Type III Environmental Label	Quantified environmental life cycle product information, provided by a supplier, based on independent verification, (e.g. third party), (critically reviewed) systematic data, presented as a set of categories of parameter (for a sector group).
Uncertainty	Lack of perfect knowledge of many factors that affect stock assessments, estimation of biological reference points and management, and the consequence of this lack of perfect knowledge.
UNCLOS	United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea
Uncontrolled Copy	Any copy of a controlled document not on the MSC server (e.g. used for audits, training, revisions or public information) will be considered as an uncontrolled copy and will not be updated. Users should ensure that any copy they have is the latest version.
UNFSA	Agreement for the Implementation of the Provisions of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982 Relating to the Conservation and Management of Straddling Fish Stocks and Highly Migratory Fish Stocks
Under-MS-C-Assessment Fish (UMAF)	Whole fish or fish products that are, or are derived from, any aquatic organism harvested in a fishery (as defined in the Unit of Certification) under full assessment for certification and caught on or after the 'target eligibility date' specified on the MSC website by the CAB responsible for the assessment.
Unit of Assessment (UoA)	The target stock(s) combined with the fishing method/gear and practice (including vessel type/s) pursuing that stock, and any fleets, or groups of vessels, or individual fishing operators or other eligible fishers that are included in an MSC fishery assessment. In some fisheries, the UoA and UoC may be further defined based on the specific fishing seasons and/or areas that are included.
Unit of Certification (UoC)	Target stock(s) combined with the fishing method/gear and practice (including vessel type/s) pursuing that stock, and any fleets, or groups of vessels, or individual fishing operators that are covered by an MSC fishery certificate. Note that other eligible fishers may also be included in some Units of

Fisheries Certification Requirements

Term	Definition
	Assessment but not initially certified (until covered by a certificate sharing arrangement)
Unpublished Information	Does not include peer-reviewed, published or grey literature.
Unwanted catch (of species)	The part of the catch that a fisher did not intend to catch but could not avoid, and did not want or chose not to use.
Variance	The variance is the mean square deviation of the variable around the average value. It reflects the dispersion of the empirical values around its mean.
Withdrawal Accreditation	Process of terminating a certification, in full or for part of the scope.
Withdrawn	Tier 1, 2 & 3 MSC certification scheme documents that are no longer in force and are not to be used.
Writing	Includes e-mail and fax but not SMS.
Year	12 months commencing 1st April.

End of Vocabulary
